

Manual for FOMA® P700i '05.2



Contents/Precautions

Confirming before Use

Making Calls/
Receiving Calls

Making/Receiving
Video-phone Calls

Phonebook

Tone/Display/
Light Setting

Safety Settings

Camera

i-mode

Mail

i-αppli

i-motion

Data Display/Edit/
Management

Other Useful Functions

Network Service

Data Transmission

Entering Characters

Appendix

Index/Quick Manual

Notice of Correction

Inaccurate information has been found in the manual for FOMA P700i. We apologize for the inconvenience and ask you to refer to the revised information.

In the table of “Mail Settings” on page 291
Descriptions should be revised as follows.

<Error>

Receiving display	You can set whether to display the Message Receiving and Reception Result displays, even during operation of another function. Alarm preferred.....Prioritizes the Message Receiving and the Reception Result displays when you have new mail. (Setting at purchase) Operation preferred.....Prioritizes the display of the current operation when you have new mail.
--------------------------	---



<Corrected>

Receiving display	You can set whether to display the Message Receiving and Reception Result displays, even during operation of another function. Alarm preferred.....Prioritizes the Message Receiving and the Reception Result displays when you have new mail. Operation preferred.....Prioritizes the display of the current operation when you have new mail. <u>(Setting at purchase)</u>
--------------------------	---

In the “Information” section on page 322
Descriptions should be revised as follows.

<Error>

Information

You can download the image from the “P-SQUARE” site that can be set to each area in order as shown below:

☎ Menu メニューリスト (Menu List) ケータイ電話メーカー (Mobile phone maker) P-SQUARE

<Corrected>



Information

You can download the image **to be set to “風景” (Landscape) from the “P-SQUARE” site** in order as shown below:

☎ Menu メニューリスト (Menu List) ケータイ電話メーカー (Mobile phone maker) P-SQUARE

In the table of “Function List” on page 502
Descriptions should be revised as follows.

<Error>

Receiving display	Alarm preferred	P.291
-------------------	-----------------	-------



<Corrected>

Receiving display	<u>Operation preferred</u>	P.291
-------------------	----------------------------	-------

DoCoMo W-CDMA system

Thank you for selecting the “FOMA P700i”.

Before or during use of the FOMA P700i, make sure that you read this manual and the separate manuals such as for the battery pack thoroughly so that you can use the FOMA P700i correctly. If you feel any inconvenience in reading the manual, contact the DoCoMo Information Center listed on the back page of this manual.

The FOMA P700i is designed to be your close partner.

Treat it carefully at all times to ensure long-term performance.

Before using your FOMA Phone

Because the FOMA phones use radio waves, they cannot be used in places where radio waves do not reach, such as inside tunnels, underground, or in buildings; or the outside where radio waves are weak or out of the FOMA service area. They may not be used in the high-rise buildings even when the antennas are unobstructed. You may also experience interruption of calls even when using without moving while the radio waves are strong enough for the three antennas to appear on the display.

Use the FOMA phone carefully to avoid disturbing other people when in public, or in crowded or quiet places.

Since the FOMA phones use radio waves as the medium of telecommunication, calls may be tapped by the third party.

However, the W-CDMA system automatically supports tapping prevention, so your conversation will be incomprehensible to the third party.

The FOMA phones change your voice into digital signals and send them to the other party. In places where the radio waves are weak, the digital signals may not be converted correctly, and in such a case, the voice heard may sound different from the actual original voice.

It is recommended that you make separate notes of the information stored in the FOMA phone and keep such notes in a safe place. DoCoMo cannot be held responsible in any way for the loss of data stored in the phone.

The user hereby agrees that the user shall be solely responsible for the result of the use of SSL. Neither DoCoMo nor the certifier as listed herein makes any representation and warranty as for the security in the use of SSL. In the event that the user shall sustain damage or loss due to the use of SSL, neither DoCoMo nor the certifier shall be responsible for any such damage or loss.

Certifier: VeriSign Japan K.K. Betrusted Japan Co., Ltd. GeoTrust Japan, inc.

The FOMA phone can be used only via the FOMA network provided by DoCoMo.

Before using this manual

The following ways are available to search for the functions you want to know.

- **Search for from the Contents** •••••Page 2

You search for the functions from the contents.

- **Search for from the Index** ••••••Page 550

You search for the functions from key words such as the function names or service names.

- **Search using the Tab** ••••••••Cover page

You search for the functions from the tabs affixed to pages (title for each chapter).

The detailed contents by functions are described on the first page of each chapter.

- **Search for from the features** •••••Page 4

You search for the functions from the features of P700i.

The Quick Manual is available as handy-to-use quick reference when you go outing.

- **Search for from the Quick Manual** ••Page 556

Cut the Quick Manual off this volume for using when you go outing.

Note that “FOMA P700i” is referred to as “FOMA phone” in this manual.

The functions which use a miniSD memory card are described in this manual; however, you need to obtain a miniSD memory card separately to make these functions available. See page 376 for the miniSD memory card.

It is prohibited to copy all or part of this manual without permission.

The instructions contained in this manual may be changed without notice.

How to Read This Manual

Illustrations and symbols are used in the explanations so that you can easily understand how to use the FOMA phone correctly.

Indicates the function name. You can search for the function from Index.

Indicates the menu number. (See page 32)

Shows the operating procedures. (See page 33)

Describes the option and explanations displayed on the screen.

Describes details, cautions, or references required for using each function.

Describes the item names displayed on the screen. (Some items may not be available depending on the operation.)

Describes the setting at purchase. The "Function List" also lists the settings at purchase. (See page 502)

You can search for Chapters from the tabs.

Shows the display at an important point in the procedure. See this while referring to the display of the FOMA phone you are using. (Values, settings, and entered characters are for reference.)

Contains the explanation and operating method for each item.

Indicates that the description or procedure for the function continues to the next page.

Setting Menu Display

You can change icons and background images displayed for the main menu.

Pattern1 → Sets to Pattern 1. The setting is completed.
 Pattern2 → Sets to Pattern 2. The setting is completed.
 Customize → Select an image for each menu icon and for background respectively.

2 Select a menu icon or Background image to be changed

▶ Select a folder ▶ Select an image

Repeat step 2 and set an image for menu icon or background.
 While selecting a menu icon or background image, press [OK] to confirm the currently set image.
 While confirming the background image, press [F4] to set a frame color indicating the group. Select a color and press [Enter]. Press [F4] to switch between 16 Color and 256 Color. See page 334 for the still image folder and list.

Information

The image file you can customize is in JPEG format or GIF format of VGA (640 x 480) or less size and of 16 to 150 KHz. You cannot set the animation GIF for the background.
 You cannot set Customize during PIM Lock. Further, the image of Pattern 1 is displayed if PIM Lock is set.
 If you delete the image set by Customize, the image of Pattern 1 is displayed.
 When you set Pattern 2 or Customize, the image for the main menu does not switch even if you

Function Menu of the Icon/Background Selection Display

1 Icon/Background Selection display ▶ [OK] ▶ Do the following operation.


Function menu	Operations
Reset	Resets the image to the same image of "Pattern1" (setting at purchase). ▶ YES To cancel, select "NO" and press [Enter]
All reset	Resets all the menu icons and background to the same images of "Pattern1" (setting at purchase). ▶ YES To cancel, select "NO" and press [Enter]

Next Page

Note: The above page is a sample.

Contents

How to Read This Manual.....1	Safety Precautions .....8
Contents.....2	Notes on Handling.....16
Features of FOMA P700i.....4	Intellectual Property Rights.....18
Making Full Use of FOMA P700i! .....6	Accessories and Main Options .....20

Confirming before Use 21	Phone Parts and Functions, Display, Icon Descriptions, Method for Selecting Menu, Guide, UIM (FOMA Card), Battery, Charging, One-push Open, Power ON/OFF, Select Language, Initial Setting, Set Time, Notify Caller ID, Own Number, etc.
Making Calls/Receiving Calls 47	Making a Call, WORLD CALL, Redial, Pause Dial, Noise Reduction, Hands-free, Receiving a Call, Answer Setting, Open Phone, Fold Setting, Received Calls, Earpiece Volume, Ring Volume, On Hold, Holding, Drive Mode, Record Message, etc.
Making/Receiving Video-phone Calls 73	About Video-phone, Making a Video-phone Call, Receiving a Video-phone Call, Using Chara-den, Useful Functions for Video-phone Calls, Setting an Image for Video-phone Calls, Moving Image Quality, Camera Image Sending, Select Image, Voice Call Auto Switch, Remote Observation, Video-phone Display Setting
Phonebook 91	Phonebook, Add to Phonebook, Add to Phonebook (UIM), Storing Displayed Phone Number/Mail Address in Phonebook Entries, Group Setting, Search Phonebook, Editing Phonebook Entries, Deleting Phonebook Entries, Number of Phonebook Entries, Making Full Use of Phonebooks, Utilities, Two-Touch Dial
Tone/Display/Light Setting 109	Select Ring Tone, Vibrator, Voice Announce, Mail/Message Ring Time, Manner Mode, Display Setting, Private Window, Display Light, Color Pattern, Menu Display Set, Illumination, Desktop, Font, Main Window Clock, etc.
Safety Settings 139	Passwords, Change Security Code, PIN Setting, Releasing PIN Lock, All Lock, Self Mode, PIM Lock, Keypad Dial Lock, Secret Mode, Mail Security, Restrictions, Call Setting w/o ID, Ringing Time, Reject Unknown, etc.
Camera 155	Before Using Cameras, Still Image Shot, Moving Image Shot, Settings for Shooting Images, Setting Image Size and Image Quality, Bar Code Reader, Text Reader
i-mode 185	What is i-mode?,  Menu, Last URL, My Menu, Change i-mode Password, Enter URL, URL History, Display Home, Bookmark, Screen Memo, Save Image, Download, Operations from Highlighted Information, i-mode Settings, Message R/F, SSL Certificate Operation, User Certificate Operation, etc.
Mail 227	i-mode Mail, Deco Mail, Photo-sending, Kirari Mail, Mail Receive Option, Check New Message, i-motion Mail, Inbox/Outbox/Draft Box, Auto-Sort, Template, Chat Mail, Short Message (SMS), etc.

<p>i-αppli 307</p>	<p>What is i-αppli?, i-αppli Download, i-αppli Launch, Pre-installed i-αppli Software, Starting i-αppli Automatically, i-αppli Stand-by Display, Settings for when Running i-αppli</p>
<p>i-motion 327</p>	<p>What is i-motion?, i-motion Download, i-motion Auto Play</p>
<p>Data Display/Edit/ Management 331</p>	<p>Picture Viewer, Edit Picture, Original Animation, i-motion Player, Edit i-motion, Chara-den, Melody Player, miniSD Memory Card, Ir Exchange, etc.</p>
<p>Other Useful Functions 393</p>	<p>Multiaccess, Multitask, Alarm, Schedule, ToDo, Private Menu, Own Number, Voice Memo during a Call, Voice Memo during Standby, Call Duration/Charge, Calculator, Free Memo, UIM Operation, Reset Settings, Initialize, etc.</p>
<p>Network Service 425</p>	<p>Check Messages, Voice Mail, Call Waiting, Call Forwarding, Bar Nuisance Call, Caller ID Notification, Caller ID Request, Dual Network, English Guidance, Arrival Call Act, Set Arrival Act, Remote Access, Additional Service, etc.</p>
<p>Data Transmission 439</p>	<p>Preparation Flow for Data Transmission, Installing Transmission Setup Files, FOMA PC Setup Software, Setting Transmission, W-TCP Setup, APN Setting, Dial-up Network, FirstPass PC Software, AT Command, etc.</p>
<p>Entering Characters 481</p>	<p>Character Entries, Common Phrases, Cutting/Copying/Pasting Characters, Kuten Code, Own Dictionary, Clear Learned, Download Dictionary</p>
<p>Appendix 501</p>	<p>Function List, Options and Related Equipment, Data Link Software, Troubleshooting, Error Messages, Warranty and Maintenance Services, Software Update, Scanning Function, Specifications, etc.</p>
<p>Index/Quick Manual 549</p>	<p>Index, Quick Manual</p>

Features of FOMA P700i

FOMA (Freedom Of Mobile multimedia Access) is the name of the DoCoMo service based on the W-CDMA format, authorized as one of the world's standards for third-generation mobile telecommunication systems (IMT-2000).

i-mode Function

Remarkable i-mode! >>> See page 186

i-mode is an online service that enables you to get useful information using the screen of an i-mode mobile phone from i-mode sites (programs) or web pages supporting i-mode. This service also enables you to send or receive messages with ease.

i-mode is only available on a subscription basis.

i-motion Movie >>> See page 328

You can download images or music from sites or web pages. You can set stored i-motion movie as "Movie Ring Tone" for a ring tone or ring image.

i-appli/i-appli DX >>> See page 308

You can set i-appli for the Stand-by display, or acquire information in real time using network services and then access data within the FOMA phone, thus making the joy of i-appli wider.

i-motion Mail >>> See page 233

You can attach moving image shot by the built-in camera or i-motion movie downloaded from sites or web pages to i-mode mail for sending.

i-shot >>> See page 232

You can take a shot of a still image and attach it to mail for sending.

Main Features of the P700i

Chara-den >>> See pages 79, 367

During video-phone calls, you can display a pre-installed or downloaded graphic character in place of your own image. You can add an expression or movements to the character by key operation.

Video-phone >>> See page 74

The video-phone call enables you to view the face of the other party in real time during calls.

Deco Mail >>> See page 232

You can change the color, size, or background color of mail text or can insert Deco mail pictures, or photos taken by the built-in camera in the text, so that you can compose and send enhanced messages. In addition, you can use the template to easily compose Deco mail.

Camera >>> See page 156

1,250,000 effective pixels and 1,230,000 recording pixels of camera (outside camera) enable you to take a shot of a high-quality still image of 1,280 x 960 dots. You can also shoot moving images with audio in Movie Mode.

UIM (FOMA Card) >>> See page 36

You can save data, such as the Phonebook entries and Short Message (SMS), on the "UIM" which holds your own information. Also you can operate multiple FOMA phones for multiple purposes by replacing the UIM.

Safety Settings >>> See page 139

You can make full use of the safety settings such as Lock/Security to protect your privacy using the Terminal Security Code and password, or to lock the lost FOMA phone from a distant location to prevent unauthorized use.

Useful Functions

Ir Exchange/Ir Remote-Controller >>> See pages 323, 386

You can send and receive data to and from the FOMA phone via Ir exchange. Ir exchange also enables you to use the FOMA phone as a remote controller for a TV that supports Ir exchange.

Multiaccess/Multitask >>> See pages 394, 397

The FOMA phone comes with the "Multi-access" function that enables you to simultaneously use the voice phone and i-mode (or data transmission by packet transmission). Short Message Service is available separately from "Multi-access". The FOMA phone also comes with the "Multi-task" function that enables you to use multiple menu functions simultaneously.

Launcher (Menu Icon) >>> See page 129

The FOMA phone can incorporate a launcher that matches to the color and design of each phone. You can change the pattern of the main menu icons or background images.

Melody >>> See page 110

You can select ring tones from among melodies and buzzer tones played by 64 harmonies of PCM sound source (8 fixed melodies, 3 buzzers, and 8 effect tones). Voice ring tones (effect tones) are also supported. (ADPCM compatible)

Bar Code Reader/Text Reader >>> See pages 176, 181

You can get and use the information of phone numbers, mail addresses, images, or melodies, by scanning bar codes or the QR codes. You can also scan alphanumeric of phone numbers or mail addresses on printed materials.

One-push open >>> See page 42

You can open the FOMA phone easily by pressing the button.

SD Related/miniSD Reader Writer >>> See page 385

You can use the FOMA phone as the miniSD reader/writer for personal computers.

Enlarged Clock Display >>> See page 27

You can switch to the enlarged clock display on the Private window by pressing the Mode/Home key, for more clear and better viewing.

Slim and Compact Body

Even with the two built-in cameras, the FOMA P700i has a compact body. Enjoy the feeling of the FOMA phone that fits your palm.

Private Menu >>> See page 412

You can store a total of 10 frequently used functions in Private Menu, and bring them up by easy key operation.

Network >>> See page 426

- Voice Mail Service (Charged)
You need to apply for this services.
- Call Waiting Service (Charged)
You need to apply for this services.
- Call Forwarding Service (Free)
You need to apply for this services.
- Dual Network Service (Charged)
You need to apply for this services.
- Short Message (SMS) (Free)
You do not need to apply for this services.

Making Full Use of FOMA P700i!

Video-phone

“Chara-den” that Conveys Your Feelings ▶▶ See pages 79, 367

“Chara-den” is the other self that is sent to the other party as a video-phone image in place of your own photo. If you set a Chara-den image as a substitutive image for a video-phone call, you can give expression such as “Delighted” or “Angry” by key operation. Also, you can synchronize the mouth of the Chara-den image with your voice.

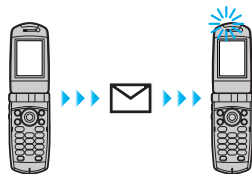


© BVIG

Mail

Kirari Mail ▶▶ See page 256

The Call/Charging indicator lights for incoming mail according to pictographs so that you can get acquainted with the sender's sentiment. The Call/Charging indicator also lights when created mail is previewed or outgoing/incoming mail is displayed.



“Photo-sending” that enables you to send still images while you are communicating ▶▶ See page 251

You can shoot a still image during a voice call and send it to the other party. You can send your friend a shot of beautiful landscape or lovely gesture of pets that you cannot tell in words without disconnecting the call.



Shooting a still image during a call



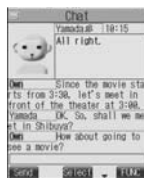
Sending it



Displaying it during a call

Chat Mail ▶▶ See page 293

You can use i-mode mail for exchanging chat mail as if you are communicating with multiple members. One of convenient features is that you can exchange messages on a single screen.



Camera

Inside Camera/Outside Camera ▶▶ See page 157

The two cameras (inside camera and outside camera) enable you to take shots of still images and moving images. Use the inside camera for taking a shot of your own photo and the outside camera for taking a shot of landscapes.

Making Full Use of Still Images ▶▶ See page 347

You can compound frames or characters with still images you shot. You can also edit the person's expression (Funny Transform) or paste cushy marks to an appropriate region of the face that is identified automatically.



Making Full Use of Moving Images ▶▶ See page 361

You can cut a still image out from moving images, edit the voice part (Record Sound) only, or edit the text information displayed during playback (Edit Ticker).

Pre-installed i-ϕpli

G Guide Program List Remote Controller ▶▶ See page 323

This is useful i-ϕpli that bundles TV program listings and a TV remote-control function and free of monthly charge.

Anywhere at any time, you can easily download TV program information you want to know. You can check program titles, program contents, start/end time of programs, and G code according to your local TV station.

The "おすすめメール (recommendation mail)" function enables you to immediately send information about program titles and their broadcast schedules to your friends once you have found program information you like. You can also remotely control your TV.



Images on the display are for reference. They differ from the actual ones. Local programs broadcasted by local channels will appear on your display.

"G Guide Program List Remote Controller" is free of monthly charge. You are charged for packet transmissions instead.

インフォスクリーン (Info-screen) ▶▶ See page 320

You can download news, weather forecast, and fortunes. The calendar appears on the Stand-by display.

You need to set the data and time beforehand.

"インフォスクリーン (Info-screen)" is free of monthly charge. You are charged for packet transmissions instead.






Safety Precautions Always follow the safety precautions.







Before using the FOMA phone, read these safety precautions carefully so that you can use it correctly. After reading the precautions, keep them in a safe place for later reference.

Be sure to observe these safety precautions because they are designed to protect you or those around you from causing injury and to avoid unnecessary damage to the property.

The symbols below indicate the levels of danger or damage that can be caused if the particular precautions are not observed.

	Danger	This symbol indicates that incorrect handling will almost certainly cause death or serious injury.
	Warning	This symbol indicates that incorrect handling poses a risk of causing death or serious injury.
	Caution	This symbol indicates that incorrect handling poses a risk of causing injury or damage to the product or property.

The following symbols show specific directions.

	Denotes things not to do. (Prohibition)	
Don't		
	Denotes not to disassemble.	 Denotes not to use where it could get wet. Avoid water
Do not disassemble		
	Denotes not to touch with wet hands.	
Avoid water		
	Denotes mandatory instructions (matters that must be complied with).	
Do		
	Denotes to pull the power plug out of the outlet.	
Pull the power plug out		

“Safety Precautions” are divided into the following six sections:

General precautions for FOMA phone, batteries, adapters/chargers, and UIM	p.9
Precautions for FOMA phone	p.10
Precautions for batteries	p.12
Precautions for adapters/chargers	p.13
Precautions for UIM	p.14
Notes on using near electronic medical equipment	p.15

General precautions for FOMA phone, batteries, adapters/chargers, and UIM



Danger



Do

Use only the batteries and adapters/chargers approved by DoCoMo for the FOMA phone.

If you use any type of battery, adapter or charger other than the specified one, the FOMA phone or other battery may leak, overheat, burst, catch fire, or give damage.

Battery Pack P06 FOMA AC Adapter 01 FOMA AC Adapter 01 for both overseas and domestic usage
FOMA DC Adapter 01 Desktop Holder P07 In-Car Holder P07

For other specified products, contact a DoCoMo counter.



Warning



Don't

Do not throw the FOMA phone or accessories, or subject them to severe shocks.

The battery may leak, overheat, burst, catch fire, or cause damage to the equipment.



Don't

Do not place the batteries, the FOMA phone, or adapters/chargers in microwave ovens or high-pressure containers.

The battery may leak, overheat, burst, or catch fire. The FOMA phone or the adapter/charger may overheat, smoke, or catch fire, or its circuit parts may burst.



Don't

Do not use near places such as gas stations where there is danger of fire or explosion.

If used in dusty places or where there are flammable gases such as propane or gasoline, explosions or fire may result.



Caution



Do

Keep out of the reach of babies and infants.

Accidental swallowing or injury may result.



Do

If children use the FOMA phone or accessories, a guardian should explain the safety precautions and correct operations. The guardian should also make sure that the instructions are followed during use.

Otherwise, injury may result.



Don't

Do not place the FOMA phone or accessories on a wobbly or unstable base.

The FOMA phone or accessories may fall, resulting in injury or malfunction.



Don't

Do not use the FOMA phone or accessories in places where it is exposed to direct sunlight, or in extremely high temperatures such as inside a car in the summer heat.

The battery may leak, overheat, burst, or catch fire, resulting in deformation and malfunction. Also, part of the case might be heated, causing bare skin burns.



Don't

Do not store in humid or dusty places, or in high temperature environments.

Malfunction may result.

Precautions for FOMA phone



Warning



Do

Turn off the FOMA phone when near high-precision electronic devices or devices using weak electronic signals.

The FOMA phone may possibly cause these devices to malfunction.

Electronic devices that may be affected:

Hearing aids, implanted cardiac pacemakers, implanted defibrillators, other medical electronic devices, fire alarms, automatic doors and other automatically controlled devices.

If you are using an implanted cardiac pacemaker, implanted defibrillator or any other electronic medical device, consult the manufacturer or retailer of the device for advice regarding possible effects from the radio waves.



Do

Turn off the FOMA phone in places where use is prohibited such as in airplanes and hospitals.

Otherwise, electronic devices and electronic medical appliances may be adversely affected. If the Auto Power ON function is installed, deactivate the setting, then turn the power off. For use inside medical facilities, make sure that you comply with their regulations. You may be punished for using the FOMA phone in airplanes, which is prohibited by law.



Don't

Do not operate the FOMA phone while driving a vehicle.

Your safety driving will be interfered and an accident may result. Park the car in a safe place before using the FOMA phone or activate Drive mode. In accordance with the revision of the Road Traffic Law, you will be penalized for using a mobile phone during drive from 1, November 2004.



Don't

If you have any implanted electronic medical equipment, do not place your FOMA phone in a chest pocket or inner pocket.

If the FOMA phone is positioned close to electronic medical equipment, it may cause that equipment to malfunction.



Do

For those with weak heart conditions, the vibrator and ring volume must be adjusted carefully.

Those functions may cause an effect on the heart.



Do

When talking with the FOMA phone set to Hands-free, be sure to keep the FOMA phone away from your ear.

Otherwise, your hearing could be impaired.



Don't

Do not point the infrared data port direct into the eyes during transmission.

The eyes may possibly be affected. Other infrared devices may operate erroneously if the infrared data port is pointed into them during transmission.



Do not disassemble

Do not disassemble or modify the FOMA phone.

Accidents such as fire, injury, or electric shock, or malfunction may result.



Don't

Do not shine the photo light close to eyes.

Doing so can damage eyesight. Also, an accident might occur if someone is startled, or his/her vision is impaired temporarily.



Don't

Do not use it or leave the battery near a fire, heater or other source of heat.

The FOMA phone may overheat, burst or catch fire.



Don't

Do not direct the photo light to a car driver, etc.

Drivers may be dazzled by the light and could cause traffic accidents.



Caution



Do

Itching, rash or eczema may be caused depending on your physical conditions or predisposition. If an abnormality occurs, stop using the FOMA phone immediately, and then seek medical attention.

Metals are used for the following parts:

Where it is used	Material
Command Navigation key	Nickel plated (copper ground)
Display case Hinge part	Magnesium alloy (baking finish)



Do

Electronic devices in some type of cars can be affected by use of the FOMA phone.

For safety's sake, do not use the FOMA phone inside such cars.



Don't

Do not place magnetic cards or similar objects near the FOMA phone or between phone parts.

Information on magnetic cards such as cash cards, credit cards, telephone cards and floppy disks may be deleted.



Do

If thunder starts to rumble while you are using the FOMA phone outdoors, turn the power off, and move to a safe place.

Otherwise, you could be struck by lightning or suffer an electric shock.



Don't

Do not expose the camera to a strong light or sun light for a long period of time.

The camera lens will condense the light and may cause a fire.



Don't

Do not swing the FOMA phone by its strap.

The FOMA phone may hit you or persons around you, and injury or malfunction may result.



Don't

Do not allow liquids or foreign materials such as metal pieces or flammable material to get into the UIM insertion slit or miniSD memory card slot of the FOMA phone.

Fire, electric shock or malfunction may occur.



Avoid water

Do not let the FOMA phone get wet.

If liquids such as water or pet urine get onto the FOMA phone, overheating, electric shock, malfunction or injury may result. Pay attention to the place of use and the way of handling.



Don't

Do not open the FOMA phone by pressing One-push Open button near people around you or your face.

The FOMA phone may hit you or persons around you, causing accidents and injuries.

Precautions for batteries

Check the description on the label of the battery pack for the type of battery.

Description	Type
Li-ion	Lithium-ion battery



Danger



Do

If the battery fluid gets into your eyes, do not rub them. Flush your eyes with clean water and get medical attention immediately.

Otherwise, the loss of eyesight may result.



Do not disassemble

Do not disassemble or modify the battery.

Do not solder the terminal of the battery.

The battery may leak, overheat, burst or catch fire.



Don't

Do not let any metal such as a wire contact the terminal. Also do not carry or store the battery together with a metal necklace.

The battery may leak, overheat, burst or catch fire.



Don't

Do not throw the battery into fire.

The battery may leak, overheat, burst or catch fire.



Don't

Do not use excessive force when connecting the battery to the FOMA phone. Also, check that the battery is the right way round when you insert it.

The battery may leak, overheat, burst or catch fire.



Don't

Do not pierce it with nails, hit it with a hammer, or step on it.

The battery may leak, overheat, burst or catch fire.



Avoid water

Do not let the battery get wet.

If liquids such as water or pet urine get onto the battery, overheating, electric shock, or malfunction could result. Pay attention to the place of use and way of handling.



Don't

Do not use or leave the battery near a fire, heater or other source of heat.

The battery may leak, overheat, burst or catch fire.



Warning



Don't

If the battery begins to emit an odor, overheat, discolor, deform, etc., while being used, charged, or stored, remove the battery from the FOMA phone and do not use it.

If such a battery is used, it may leak, overheat, burst or catch fire.



Don't

Do not leave the battery exposed to direct sunlight, or in extremely high temperatures such as inside a car in the summer heat.

The battery may leak or overheat, or its performance and longevity may deteriorate.



Do

If the battery fluid comes in contact with skin or clothes, immediately stop using, then wash affected areas thoroughly with clean water.

The battery fluid is harmful to skin.



Do

If charging is not completed at the end of the specified charging time, stop charging.

Otherwise, the battery may leak, overheat, burst or catch fire.



Do

Immediately stop using the battery if it leaks or emits an odor, and keep it away from fire.

The battery fluid, being flammable, may catch fire and cause an explosion.



Caution



Don't

An exhausted battery should not be disposed of with other waste.

The battery may catch fire or destroy the environment.

After insulating the battery terminals with tape, bring them to a DoCoMo counter or dispose of them in accordance with local waste disposal regulations.



Warning



Do

Use the adapter/charger at the specified VAC.

Otherwise, fire or malfunction may result. When using the FOMA phone overseas, use FOMA AC Adapter 01 for both overseas and domestic usage.

AC adapter: 100 VAC
 FOMA AC Adapter for both overseas and domestic usage: 100 to 240 VAC
 (Connect only to home AC outlet)
 DC adapter: 12/24 VDC
 (For negative (-) grounded vehicles only)



Pull the power plug out

If liquids get in the charger, unplug the power cord immediately from the outlet or cigarette lighter socket.

Liquid inside the charger may cause electric shock, smoke, or fire.



Do

Keep the power plugs dust-free.

Otherwise, fire may result.



Don't

Do not use a damaged power cord for the adapter/charger.

Electric shock, overheating or fire may result.



Don't

Do not use the AC adapter and desktop holder in steamy places such as a bathroom.

Electric shock may occur.



Pull the power plug out

When the adapter/charger is not to be used for a long period of time, unplug the power cord from the outlet.

Otherwise, electric shock, fire, or malfunction may result.



Do

If a fuse of the DC adapter or In-Car adapter has blown, replace it with a specified fuse.

Otherwise, catching fire or malfunction may result. For the specified fuse, see the user's manual.



Don't

The DC adapter is for use only in a negative (-) grounded vehicle. Never use it in a positive (+) grounded vehicle.

Fire may result.



Don't

Place the charger and desktop holder in a stable location during charging. Do not cover or wrap the charger and desktop holder in cloth or bedding.

The FOMA phone may become separated from the desktop holder, or overheat, leading to fire or malfunction.



Do not disassemble

Do not disassemble or modify the adapter/charger.

Electric shock, fire, or malfunction may result.



Do

When plugging the AC adapter into the power outlet, firmly plug it in, taking care not to contact with metal straps or the like.

Otherwise, electric shock, short-circuit or fire may result.



Avoid water

Do not touch the adapter/charger, power cord, or power outlet with wet hands.

Electric shock may result.



Avoid water

Do not let the adapter/charger get wet.

If liquids such as water or pet urine get in the charger, overheating, electric shock, or malfunction may result. Pay attention to the place of use and way of handling.



Don't

Never short-circuit the charging terminals when the adapter is plugged into the power outlet or cigarette lighter socket. Also, never touch the charging terminals with fingers or other bare skin.

Fire, malfunction, electric shock or injury may result.

Precautions for adapters/chargers (continued)



Caution



Do

Always hold the plug when pulling the adapter/charger out of the power outlet or cigarette lighter socket.

If you pull the plug out by the cord, the cord may be damaged, which could result in electric shock or fire.



Don't

Do not place heavy objects on the adapter/charger cord and power cord.

Electric shock or fire may result.



Don't

Do not charge the wet battery.

Overheating, fire, or burst may result.



Pull the power plug out

Before cleaning, pull the plug out of the power outlet or cigarette lighter socket.

Otherwise, electric shock may result.

Precautions for UIM



Warning



Don't

Do not place the UIM in microwave ovens or high-pressure containers.

Melting, overheating, generating smoke, erasure of data, or malfunction may occur.



Caution



Do

Use the UIM only with equipment approved by DoCoMo.

If used with a non-approved equipment, erasure of data or malfunction may occur. For information on approved equipment, contact a DoCoMo counter.



Don't

Do not store the UIM in places where it is exposed to direct sunlight, high humidity, or high temperatures.

Malfunction may result.



Do

Keep the UIM out of the reach of babies and infants.

Accidental swallowing or other injuries may occur.



Do

Be careful when removing the UIM (IC portion).

Your hand or finger may be injured.



Don't

Do not bend the UIM or place heavy objects on it.

Malfunction may result.



Don't

Do not touch the IC portion unnecessarily or short it out.

Erasure of data or malfunction may occur.



Don't

Do not toss the UIM into fire or heat it.

Melting, overheating, smoke generation, erasure of data, or malfunction may occur.



Don't

Do not drop the UIM or subject it to strong impacts.

Malfunction may result.



Don't

Do not damage the IC portion.

Malfunction may result.



Caution

**Do not let the UIM get wet.**

If liquids such as water or pet urine get onto the UIM, malfunction may occur.

Avoid water

**Do not store the UIM in dusty places.**

Malfunction may result.

Don't

**Do not use or leave the UIM near a fire, heater or other source of heat.**

Melting, overheating, smoke generation, erasure of data, or malfunction may occur.

Don't

**Do not disassemble or modify the UIM.**

Erasure of data or malfunction may occur.

Do not disassemble

Notes on using near electronic medical equipment

The description below meets “Guidelines on the Use of Radio-communication Equipment such as Cellular Telephones – Safeguards for Electronic Medical Equipment” by the Electromagnetic Compatibility Conference Japan.



Warning



Do

If you use an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted defibrillator, use the mobile phone 22 cm or more away from an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted defibrillators.

Operation of an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted defibrillator can be affected by radio waves.



Do

Turn off the phone in crowded areas such as inside trains during rush hour, as someone with an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted defibrillator may be near you.

Operation of an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted defibrillator can be affected by radio waves.



Do

Comply with the following in hospitals or health care facilities.

Do not carry the mobile phone into operating rooms, intensive care units (ICU) or coronary care units (CCU). Turn off the mobile phone in hospital wards.

If there is any electronic medical equipment near you, turn off the mobile phone even when in a location such as a lobby.

Comply with any regulations of hospital and health care facilities instructing you not to use or carry in a mobile phone.

If the Auto Power On function is installed, deactivate the setting, then turn the power off.



Do

Patients using electronic medical equipment other than implanted cardiac pacemakers or implanted defibrillators (outside medical establishments for treatment at home, etc.) should check the influence of radio waves upon the equipment by consulting its manufacturer.

Operation of electronic medical equipment can be affected by radio waves.

Notes on Handling

General notes

Do not let the equipment get wet.

The FOMA phone, battery and adapter/charger are not waterproofed. Do not use them in environments, which are high in humidity such as in bathrooms, and do not allow them to get wet from rain. Furthermore, if carrying them against your body, the internal parts may become corroded if exposed to body perspiration.

If the parts are found to have been damaged due to exposure to the liquids, any repairs will not be covered by warranty, or repairs may not be possible.

This may be repaired at a cost if repairs are possible.

Do not place the FOMA phone in places where it may be subjected to excessive pressure.

Do not place the FOMA phone in a bag along with many other articles or in a trouser pocket, because this can damage the LCD display and internal circuitry. Malfunctions caused by such damage is not covered by the warranty.

Use a dry soft cloth to clean the equipment.

The camera lens and screen of the FOMA phone sometimes have a special coating so that they are easier to see. If you rub them roughly with a dry cloth, it might be scratched. Use only a dry, soft cloth such as used for cleaning glasses.

If the lens or screen is left with water drop or stain adhered, smear may be generated.

Do not use alcohol, thinner, benzene or other solvents for cleaning, otherwise the printing may be removed or discoloration may result.

Occasionally clean the connecting terminals of the equipment using a dry cotton swab.

If the connector terminal becomes soiled, the connection might deteriorate so that the power goes off or the battery does not charge fully. Wipe the connector terminal with a dry cloth or cotton swab.

Do not place the FOMA phone near an air conditioner outlets.

Condensation may form due to rapid changes in humidity, and this may corrode internal parts.

Do carefully read each instruction manual attached to the battery or adapter/charger.

Notes on handling the FOMA phone

Avoid using in extremely high or low temperatures.

The FOMA phone should be used within a temperature range of 5°C to 40°C and a humidity range of 35% to 85%.

It is recommended that you make separate notes of the information stored in the FOMA phone and keep such notes in a safe place.

We take no responsibility for any loss of the stored data items.

The FOMA phone, if operated near ordinary phones, televisions or radios that are in use, may affect them. You should operate your FOMA phone as far away from such equipment as possible.

Do not sit with the FOMA phone in your trousers or skirts pocket. Do not place the FOMA phone under heavy objects in a bag.

Malfunction may result.

Make sure that nothing, such as a strap, gets caught between the parts of the FOMA phone when you close it.

Otherwise, malfunction or breakage may result.

The FOMA phone may become warm during use or charging but this is not an abnormality. Use the FOMA phone as it is.

Notes on handling batteries

Charge the battery in a place with an ambient temperature of 5°C to 35°C.

Make sure that the battery is charged when you use the FOMA phone for the first time or have not used it for a long period of time.

The usable time of the battery differs depending on the usage environment or its remaining life.

Store the batteries in a well ventilated place out of direct sunlight.

For long-term storage, remove the battery from the FOMA phone after discharging it completely.

Batteries have a limited life.

If the usable time of your FOMA phone is extremely short even when the battery is fully charged, replace the battery. Make sure that you only buy the specified battery.

An exhausted battery should not be disposed of with other waste.

After insulating the battery terminals with tape, bring them to a DoCoMo counter or dispose of them in accordance with local waste disposal regulations.

Notes on handling chargers and adapters

Charge the battery where:

The temperature is between 5°C and 35°C.

There is very little humidity, vibration, and dust.

There are no ordinary phones, television sets or radios nearby.

During charging, the adapter or charger may become warm. This is not an abnormality, so continue charging.

Do not use the DC Adapter for charging the battery when the car engine is not running.

The car battery could go flat.

When using the power outlet having the disengaging prevention mechanism, observe the instructions given in that instruction manual.

Notes on handling the UIM

Avoid using in extremely high or low temperatures.

Always keep the IC portion clean.

Never use more force than necessary when removing the IC portion.

Do not use unnecessary force when inserting it into the phone.

The UIM may become warm during use, but this is not a sign of a malfunction. Continue using it as it is.

The warranty does not cover damage caused by inserting the UIM into some other type of IC card reader/writer.

For the environmental protection, bring any unneeded UIMs to a DoCoMo counter.

It is recommended that you make separate notes of the information stored on the UIM and keep such notes in a safe place.

We take no responsibility for any loss of the stored data items.

Use a dry soft cloth to clean the equipment.

You may be imposed punishment according to the law and rule (such as the nuisance prevention ordinance) if you use the FOMA phone to give a remarkable nuisance and misdeed to the public.



Please respect the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones.

Intellectual Property Rights

Copyrights and Rights of Portrait

You have no right to copy, modify, or distribute the contents such as text, images, music, or software downloaded from web pages on the Internet, or images shot by the camera of this product without permission from the copyright holder except for when the copy or quote is for personal use that is allowed by the Copyright Law.


Note that it may be prohibited to shoot or record live performances or exhibitions even for personal use. Make sure that you refrain from taking portraits of other persons and distributing such portraits over the Internet without consent, as this violates portrait rights.

Trademarks

- “FOMA”, “mova”, “Freedom Of Mobile multimedia Access”, “KIRARI MAIL”, “mopera”, “WORLD CALL”, “FirstPass”, “Security Scan”, and the logos of “FOMA”, “mova”, “i-mode”, “WORLD CALL”, “FirstPass”, are trademarks or registered trademarks of NTT DoCoMo, Inc.
- “Multitask” is a trademark of the NEC Corporation.
- “使いかたナビ®” is a registered trademark of CANNAC, Inc.
- Maicovicon is a trademark for the Image Sensor of Matsushita Electric Co., Ltd.
- Adobe and Reader are trademarks or registered trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and other countries.
- Java and Java related trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the United States and other countries.
- miniSD™ is a trademark of SD Association.
- NetFront and **NetFront®** are trademarks or registered trademarks of ACCESS Co., Ltd. in Japan and other countries.
- IfFront is a trademark or registered trademark of ACCESS Co., Ltd. in Japan and other countries.
- LCフォント, LC FONT, エルシーフォント and LC logo mark are registered trademarks of SHARP Corporation.
- T9 Text Input® and the T9 logo are the registered trademarks of Tegic Communications.
T9 Text Input® is patented or pending patent worldwide.
T9 Text Input® is patented (Patent No. 3532780, patent No. 3492981) or pending patent in Japan.
- QuickTime is a trademark of Apple Computer, Inc. in the United States and other countries.
- Microsoft, MS, and Windows are registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and other countries.
- Macromedia, Flash, Flash Lite, Macromedia Flash and Macromedia Flash Lite are trademarks or registered trademarks of Macromedia, Inc. in the United States and other countries.
- “intent” is a registered trademark of Tao Group Limited.
- “QR code” is a registered trademark of DENSO WAVE Inc.
- “Gガイドモバイル”, G-GUIDE Mobile, and the G Guide Mobile logo are trademarks of Gemstar-TV Guide International, Inc. of the United States in Japan, and Gガイド, G-GUIDE, the G Guide logo, Gコード and G-Code are registered trademarks of Gemstar-TV Guide International, Inc. of the United States in Japan.
- McAfee and VirusScan are registered trademarks or trademarks of McAfee, Inc. and/or its affiliates in the US and/or other countries. All other registered and unregistered trademarks herein are the sole property of their respective owners.



© 2004 Networks Associates Technology, Inc. All Rights Reserved.

- This product is embedded with LC Font technology, which was developed by SHARP Corporation for clearly displaying easy-to-read characters on an LCD screen. Other fonts are used for displaying some screen pages including, but not limited to Calculator, Calendar, pictograph symbols, and marks.
- This product is installed with the Macromedia® Flash Lite™ technology developed by Macromedia, Inc.
Copyright © 1995-2004 Macromedia, Inc. All rights reserved.
- This product contains NetFront v3.0 for FOMA Internet browser software of ACCESS Co., Ltd.
NetFront v3.0 is a product of ACCESS Co., Ltd.
Copyright © 1996-2005 ACCESS Co., Ltd.
- This product contains the IrFront® technology of ACCESS Co., Ltd. as a OBEX protocol.
- IrFront® is a product of ACCESS Co., Ltd.
Copyright © 1996-2005 ACCESS Co., Ltd.
- This product contains technology of Reallusion Inc. for the Funny Transform function.

- Some part of the software in this product contains modules developed by Independent JPEG Group.
- This product is licensed under the MPEG-4 patent portfolio license for the personal and non-commercial use of a consumer to encode video in compliance with the MPEG-4 Visual Standard ("MPEG-4 Video") and/or decode MPEG-4 Video that was encoded by a consumer engaged in a personal and non-commercial activity and/or was obtained from a licensed video provider. No license is granted or implied for any other use.
Additional information may be obtained from MPEG LA, LLC.
- Licensed by QUALCOMM Incorporated under one or more of the following United States Patents and/or their counterparts in other nations:
4,901,307 5,490,165 5,056,109 5,504,773 5,101,501 5,506,865 5,109,390 5,511,073
5,228,054 5,535,239 5,267,261 5,544,196 5,267,262 5,568,483 5,337,338 5,600,754
5,414,796 5,657,420 5,416,797 5,659,569 5,710,784 5,778,338
- The FOMA phone comes with the software licensed from GNU General Public License (GPL), GNU Lesser General Public License (LGPL), and others.
See "readme.txt" inside the "GPL・LGPL等について (about GPL/LGPL and others)" folder on the accessory CD-ROM for details about that software.

Accessories and Main Options

<Accessories>

FOMA P700i Handset
(With Warranty and Rear Cover P04)

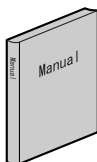


CD-ROM for FOMA P700i



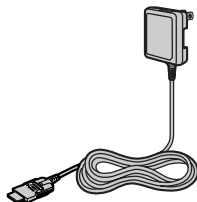
Instruction Manual

• Quick Manual included (See page 556)

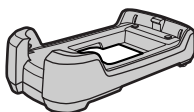


<Main Options>

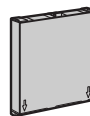
FOMA AC Adapter 01
(With Warranty and
Instruction Manual)



Desktop Holder P07
(With Instruction Manual)



Battery Pack P06
(With Instruction Manual)



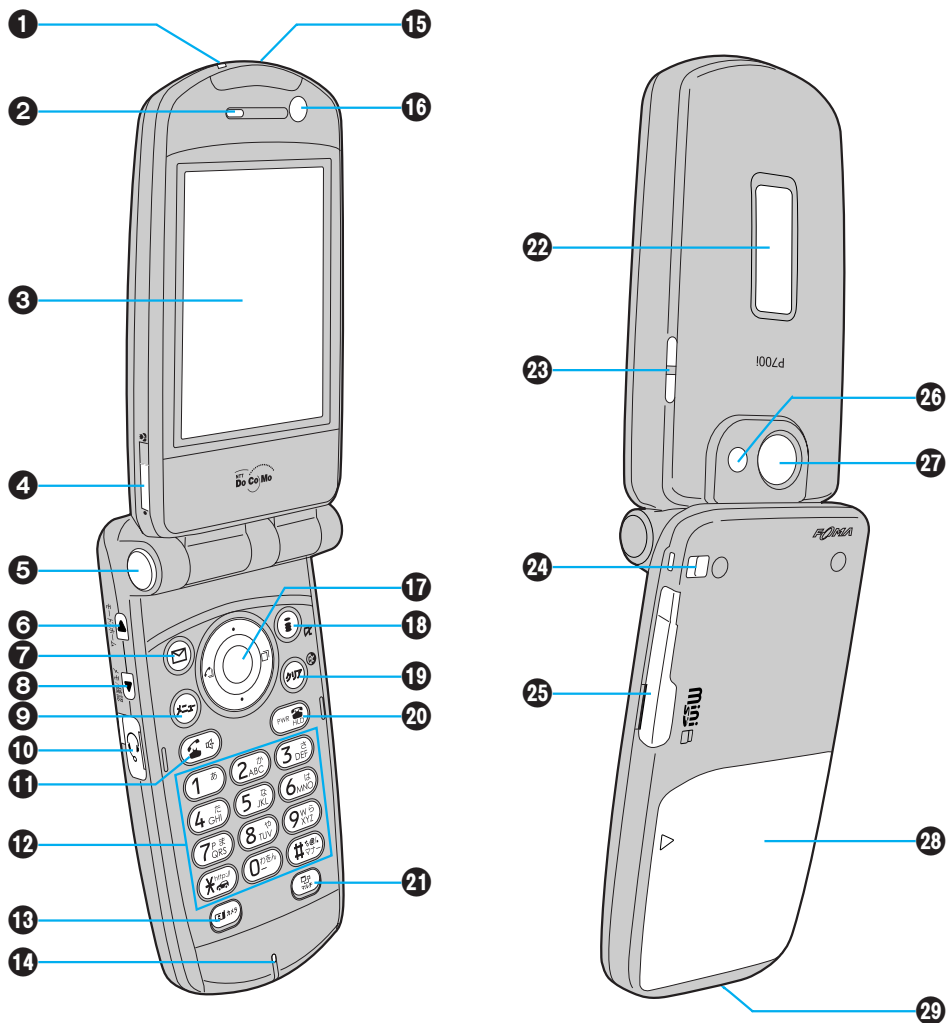
Other Options See page 519

Confirming before Use

Phone Parts and Functions	22
Display	24
Displaying Description of Icons	<Icon Descriptions> 26
Navigation Displays	26
Private Window	27
About Main Menu	28
Method for Selecting Menu	29
Displaying Shortcut Menu	34
When You do not Remember Key Operation	<Guide> 35
Using the UIM (FOMA Card)	36
Attach/Remove Batteries	39
Charging the FOMA Phone	40
Opening the FOMA Phone by Using a Button	<One-push Open> 42
Confirming Battery Level	<Battery Level> 42
Turning Power On/Off	<Power ON/OFF> 43
Switching to English	<Select Language> 43
Executing Initial Settings	<Initial Setting> 44
Setting Date and Time	<Set Time> 45
Notifying Other Party's Phone of Your Phone Number	<Notify Caller ID> 45
Confirming Own Number	<Own Number> 46

Phone Parts and Functions

Confirming before Use



The antenna is inside the FOMA phone.

Size (when closed)	H: Approx. 102 mm W: Approx. 49 mm D: Approx. 22 mm
Weight (with battery attached)	Approx. 102 g

1 Call/Charging indicator

Flickers for incoming calls/mail and during calls.

(See pages 130, 133)

Lights (flickers) when you take photos. Lights in red during charging.

2 Earpiece

For listening to the other party's voice.

3 Display (See page 24)**4 Close-up lever**

Switches the outside camera to the close-up mode.

(See page 170)

5 One-push open button (See page 42)**6 Mode/Home key** (モード / ホーム)

Press to switch the camera mode while the camera is activated. (See pages 160, 161, 166)

Press from the Stand-by display to bring up the Internet web page set for the home URL. (See page 203)

In addition, press to scroll by page while a site is displayed. (See page 193)

7 Mail key

Press from the Stand-by display to bring up the Mail menu. (See page 235)

Press and hold for at least one second to check new messages. (See page 258)

Press to operate the function shown at the lower left corner of the display. (See page 26)

8 Memo/Check key (メモ / 確認)

Press to check for missed calls and new mail, and to use record message. (See pages 71, 133)

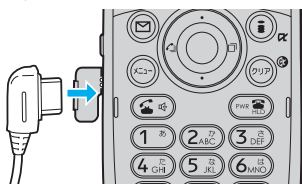
In addition, press to scroll by page while a site is displayed. (See page 193)

9 Menu key

Press to bring up the Main menu. (See page 28)

10 Earphone/Microphone terminal

For inserting the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone Set with Switch (option).

**11 Send/Answer key**

Press to make/receive calls. (See pages 48, 60)

When entering text, press to switch between uppercase/lowercase. (See page 493)

Press and hold for at least one second to start a new line. (See page 494)

12 Numeric keys

Press to enter phone numbers and text.

- Press and hold **[Manner]** for at least one second to activate Manner Mode. (See page 118)

- Press and hold **[Drive]** for at least one second to activate Drive Mode. (See page 67)

- Press and hold **[Light]** for at least one second to switch the display light on/off. (See page 128)

13 Video-phone/Camera key

Press to make/receive video-phone calls.

(See pages 75, 78)

Press and hold **[Camera]** for at least one second to activate the camera. (See pages 160, 161, 166)

14 Microphone

For speaking to the other party.

15 Infrared data port

Used for Ir exchange and Ir remote-controller.

(See pages 323, 386)

16 Inside camera

For taking photos of yourself. (See page 157)

For catching sight of yourself during a video-phone call.

17 Command Navigation key

For operating functions and menus. (See page 26)

18 i-mode key

Press from the Stand-by display to bring up the i-mode menu. (See page 193)

Press and hold for at least one second to bring up the i-applii Software List. (See page 312)

Also, press to operate the function shown at the bottom right of the display. (See page 26)

19 Clear key

Press to return to the previous operation.

Also, press to clear entered text or a phone number.

20 Power/End key

Press and hold for at least one second to turn the power on or two seconds to turn the power off. (See page 43)

Press briefly to end calls, hold answering, and end functions.

21 Multi key

Press to display the Multitask menu.

When multiple functions are running, press and hold for at least one second to switch functions. (See pages 397, 398)

22 Private window (See page 27)**23 Speaker**

Sounds for incoming calls. Also, you hear the other party's voice through this speaker when Hands-free is on. (See page 59)

24 Strap holder**25 miniSD memory card slot**

For inserting the miniSD memory card. (See page 377)

26 Photo light

Used for shooting in a dark place. (See page 170)

27 Outside camera

For taking photos of persons and/or landscapes.

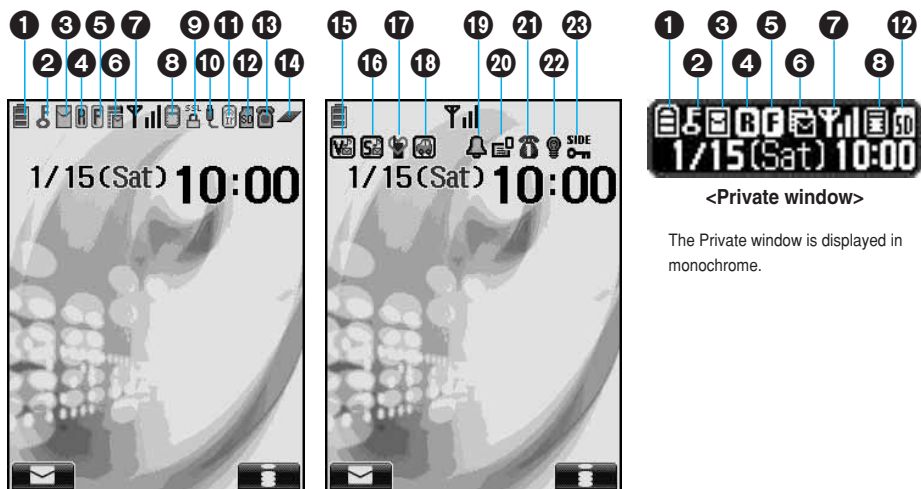
(See page 157)

For catching sight of persons and/or landscapes during a video-phone call.

28 Rear cover (See page 39)**29 Connector terminal**






For connecting AC Adapter (option), DC Adapter (option), or the FOMA USB Cable (option).


































Display



The Private window is displayed in monochrome.

- 1** :
The battery level (estimate) is displayed.
(See page 42)
- 2** : Displayed during All Lock. (See page 144)
- 3** : Displayed during PIM Lock. (See page 147)
- 4** : Displayed during Keypad Dial Lock. (See page 147)
- 5** : Displayed during Secret Mode or Secret Only Mode.
(See page 149)
- 6** : Displayed when both Keypad Dial Lock and PIM Lock are activated.
- 7** : Displayed when both Keypad Dial Lock and Secret Mode or Secret Only Mode are activated.
- 8** (pink) :
Unread i-mode mail or a Short Message (SMS) exists. (See pages 254, 303)
- 9** (gray) :
The area for i-mode mail and Short Messages (SMS) in the FOMA phone is full.
(See pages 255, 303)
- 10** : The area for Short Messages (SMS) in the UIM (FOMA card) is full.
- 11** : Both FOMA phone and UIM (FOMA card) are full.
- 12** : Unread mail exists, and the area for Short Messages (SMS) in the UIM (FOMA card) is full.
- 13** (yellow) :
Unread Message R (Request) exists.
(See page 216)
- 14** (gray) :
The area for Messages R (Request) in the FOMA phone is full. (See page 217)
- 15** (yellow) :
Unread Message F (Free) exists. (See page 216)
- 16** (gray) :
The area for Messages F (Free) in the FOMA phone is full. (See page 217)
- 17** (pink) :
i-mode mail remains at the i-mode Center.
(See page 258)
- 18** (gray) :
The box for i-mode mail at the i-mode Center is full.
(See page 231)
- 19** (yellow) :
Messages R (Request) remain at the i-mode Center.
(See page 217)
- 20** (gray) :
The box for Messages R (Request) at the i-mode Center is full. (See page 217)
- 21** (yellow) :
Messages F (Free) remain at the i-mode Center.
(See page 217)
- 22** (gray) :
The box for Messages F (Free) at the i-mode Center is full. (See page 217)
- 23** :
<Private window>

-  (gray) :
The box for Messages F (Free) at the i-mode Center is full. (See page 217)
-  : i-mode mail is held at the i-mode Center while Receive Option Setting is set to "ON".
(See page 258)
- 7  : Shows the Level of the received signal.
 -  (Weak)
 -  (Normal)

"外" is displayed when out of the FOMA phone service area or where signals do not reach.
-  : Displayed during Self Mode. (See page 146)
- 8  : Blinks while i-mode is activated. " " is displayed during data transmission while connecting to i-mode.
(See page 194)
-  : Displayed during packet transmission.
The icon differs depending on the transmission status. (See pages 455, 470)
- 9  : Displayed during SSL transmission. (See page 193)
- 10  : Displayed while the FOMA USB Cable (option) is connected in the Communication Mode.
(See page 443)
-  : Displayed while the FOMA USB Cable (option) is connected in the miniSD Mode. (See page 385)
- 11  : Displayed during Ir exchange. (See page 386)
-  : Displayed while the Ir remote-controller is working.
(See page 323)
- 12  : miniSD Memory Card is inserted. (See page 377)
-  : Inserted miniSD Memory Card cannot be used.
(See page 377)
-  : miniSD Memory Card is inserted, and the FOMA USB Cable (option) is connected in the miniSD Mode. (See page 385)
(Does not appear on the Private window.)
- 13  : Displayed during a voice call.
-  : Displayed during a video-phone call (64K).
-  : Displayed during a video-phone call (32K).
-  : Displayed during 64K data transmission.
- 14  : Displayed during Multitask.
While multiple functions are active, " " is displayed. (See page 397)
- 15  :
Displayed while Vibrator is set to "ON". (See page 113)
- 16  :
Displayed while Ring Volume is set to "Silent".
(See page 66)
- 17  : Displayed during Manner Mode. (See page 118)
-  : Displayed while Remote Observation is set to "ON".
(See page 88)
- 18  : Displayed during Drive Mode. (See page 67)
- 19  : Displayed while an alarm for "Alarm", "Schedule", or "ToDo" is set.
If an alarm is set for that day, " " is displayed.
(See page 401)
- 20  ~  :
Shows the number of record messages (0-5).
(See page 70)
- 21  ~  :
Shows the number of voice messages (1-9) held by the Voice Mail Center.
If ten or more messages are held, " " is displayed.
(See page 426)
- 22  : Displayed while Display Light is set to "OFF".
(See page 128)
- 23  : Displayed while Side Keys Guard is set to "ON".
(See page 148)

About the contents displayed:

Some characters and symbols in the display and Private window might be modified or abbreviated.

The explanations in this manual are mainly based on the settings at purchase so the display on your FOMA phone may not match the explanations if you have changed the settings since purchase.

The color liquid crystal display uses high-precision production technology. The slightest change in the environment may result in unlit or permanently lit pixels, but this is not a manufacturing defect.

The color display is shown as black and white in this manual, so the actual display looks slightly different.

<Icon Descriptions>

3 DEF 6 MINS

Displaying Description of Icons

The symbols at the top of the display (such as   ) are called icons. You can check the meanings of the icons on the display.

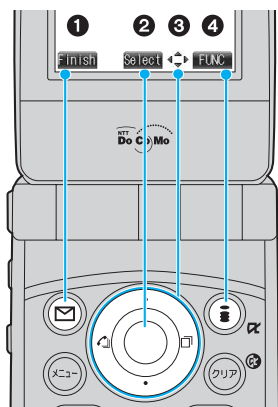
1   **Display**  **Icons**  **Use**  to select an icon

The description of the selected icon appears.













Navigation Displays

When you want to execute an operation on the display, press the corresponding key as below.



Operation display example and basic key assignment

1	Indicates the operation you can perform with the  key.	 Finish 
2	Indicates the operation you can perform with the  key.	 Select 
3	Indicates the direction in which you can scroll and select items.	
4	Indicates the operation you can perform with the  key.	 FUNC 

Operating Command Navigation key

Up

- Moves the cursor or highlighted display up. (Press and hold to scroll continuously.)
- Scrolls while a site or mail text is displayed.
- Press from the Stand-by display to bring up the display for selecting a Phonebook function (Phonebook menu).
- Raise the earpiece volume (press and hold for at least one second). (See page 65)
- Converts entered characters to katakana or kanji. (See page 491)

Left/Received Call Record

- Moves the cursor to the left.
- Scrolls back by page. (Press and hold to scroll continuously.)
- Press from the Stand-by display to bring up the Received Call Record List. (See page 63)
- Returns to the previous page while displaying a site.

Right/Redial

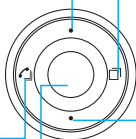
- Moves the cursor to the right.
- Scrolls forward by page. (Press and hold to scroll continuously.)
- Press from the Stand-by display to bring up the Redial List. (See page 53)
- Moves to the next page while displaying a site.

Down

- Moves the cursor or highlighted display down. (Press and hold to scroll continuously.)
- Scrolls while a site or mail text is displayed.
- Press from the Stand-by display to bring up the Phonebook Search display. (See page 99)
- Press and hold for at least one second to lower the earpiece volume. (See page 65)
- Converts entered characters to kanji or katakana. (See page 491)

OK key

- Fixes the operation.



Private Window

You can display various information such as a clock and icons on the Private window like the following examples.



Missed calls

When the FOMA phone is closed, "Missed call" appears on the Private window.

After you display a missed call record, "Missed call" disappears.

Press to display Missed Call Record.



When there are multiple missed calls, up to three missed call records are displayed each time you press .

If you have received 30 or more incoming calls after a missed call, the record for the missed call disappears.

Missed call records are not displayed while a function for Tool Group (see page 397) is activated.

New mail

When the FOMA phone is closed, "New mail" appears on the Private window.

If you display the date and time, sender and subject of the received mail, "New mail" disappears.

Press to display the date and time, sender, and subject of the received mail.

When you receive Short Message (SMS), "SMS" is displayed for subject.

When you receive multiple mail messages at a time, up to three mail messages are displayed each time you press .



For this function, you need to set "Mail" of "Private window" to "ON".

The received date and time, sender and subject of the mail in the box or folders with security are not displayed.

Switching to Enlarged Clock Display

While clock is displayed on the Private window, you can switch the size of clock by pressing .



Information

Press or with the FOMA phone closed, and the display light lights. Turn the display light on to confirm the time in a dark environment.

While "Display setting" of "Private window" is set to "Standard" (default), the Private window is cleared about 60 seconds after the display light goes off. Press or to bring up the Private window.

When you press with the FOMA phone closed, you can check if you have a missed call or new message by tone and light.



















(See page 133)

About Main Menu

Press  to bring up the Main menu so that you can execute, set, or check functions.

The Main menu consists of nine main menu icons indicating respective functions and it is divided into four groups (Mail, i-mode, Setting, and Tool). (See page 397)

The design of the Main menu icons on the display of the FOMA phone differs depending on the color of the body. The "Silver" body is assumed for the description in this manual.

Category	Body color	Body color	Description
	Silver · Blue	Pink	
Setting icon			Various kinds of settings about phone.
Tool icon			Use utilities as camera, alarm, etc.
Data box icon			Play and enjoy image/i-motion/melody/chara-den.
i-mode icon			Use i-mode service such as site access.
Mail icon			Read, compose and send messages.
i-appli icon			Play and enjoy software.
Service icon			Set/check network services.
Phonebook icon			Store/search phonebook and set utilities.
Own data icon			Set/check own data and records.

Method for Selecting Menu

Scroll Selection

If you select a main menu icon, the display for selecting sub-menu items is displayed. If you further select a sub-menu item, the display for selecting the lower sub-menu items is displayed. By repeating selecting, you can set and check the function.

Menu Number Selection

Depending on the function, you can display by pressing $\text{C} \rightarrow$ + the menu number.

The FOMA phone provides "Multitask", where you can use a function such as a voice call, which does not belong to any of the groups, and a function from each of the Mail group, the i-mode group, the Setting group and the Tool group (maximum three functions) simultaneously. (See page 397)


Scroll Selection

Scroll selection is explained below using the example of selecting the function "Quality alarm".

STEP

1

Select a main menu icon from the menu function

Select  from the Main menu.

Guidance for the selected icon



The icon displayed in a changed color is the Main menu icon currently selected.

Press $\text{C} \rightarrow$ to move to the icon below, $\text{C} \leftarrow$ to move to the icon above, $\text{C} \leftarrow$ to move to the icon on the left, and $\text{C} \rightarrow$ to move to the icon on the right.

Press and hold $\text{C} \rightarrow$ to scroll the icons continuously.

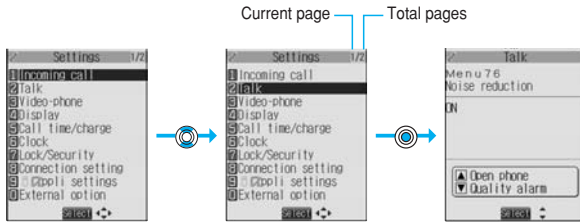
The guidance for the selected icon is displayed. (You can set not to display this guidance by "Menu display set".)

If you have not touched the key for 15 seconds, the Stand-by display returns.

STEP

2 Select the sub-menu item from the menu function

Select "Talk" from "Settings".

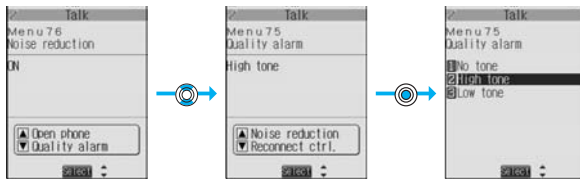


The highlighted item is the currently selected one. Press to move to the item below, and to move to the item above. Press and hold to scroll the items continuously. When the items are listed over multiple pages, the total number of pages and the current page number are shown at the upper right of the display. Press or to scroll by page.

STEP

3 Select the desired lower sub-menu item (function)

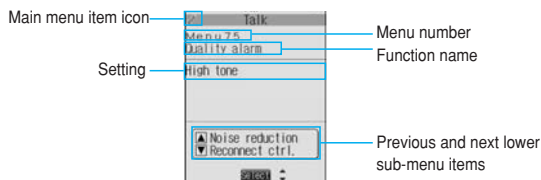
Select "Quality alarm" from "Talk".



Press to display the previous lower sub-menu item, and to display the next lower sub-menu item. Press and hold to scroll continuously.

To check the settings of functions from the Selection display for the lower sub-menu item

If you set "Menu display" of "Menu display set" to "Detail", you can check the settings of functions or menu numbers.



STEP

4 Set or check the function

Set or check the selected function.

Some menu items have even more detailed menus.

The example below shows how to set "Low tone" for "Quality alarm".



The highlighted item is the currently selected one.

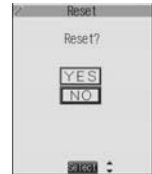
Press to move to the item below, and to move to the item above.

Press and hold to scroll the items continuously.

When the "YES/NO" or "ON/OFF" prompt appears

When the "YES/NO" prompt appears

1. Press to select "YES" or "NO".
2. Press .



For Reset setting

When the "ON/OFF" prompt appears

1. Press to select "ON" or "OFF".
2. Press .



For Keypad sound

When the display prompts you to enter your Terminal Security Code

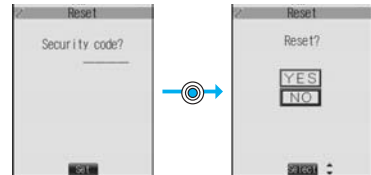
With some items, the prompt for entering your Terminal Security Code appears before the setting display comes up.

You need to enter your Terminal Security Code before you can proceed to check or set the item.

See page 140 for the Terminal Security Code.

1. Enter your Terminal Security Code and press .

When you enter your Terminal Security Code, this is indicated by "_"; the number you enter is not shown.



For Reset settings

Information

There are several methods of setting functions: Selecting from a list as shown in the example of operations, selecting "YES/NO" or "ON/OFF" (see this page) and entering a numeric value. Items that are not available for selection are grayed out.

Menu Number Selection

Menu number selection is explained below using the example of selecting the function “Quality alarm”.

STEP

1 Bring up the function using the menu number

From the Stand-by display, press $\text{AC} \rightarrow \text{7} \text{ (OK)} \rightarrow \text{5} \text{ (OK)}$.



Information

See “Function List” for details about menu numbers. (See page 502)

Function menu display

When “**FUNC**” appears at the lower right of the display, press F to bring up the Function menu.

The contents of the Function menu depend on the display from which you bring up the Function menu. Any items that cannot be selected are grayed out.

Selectable items such as “Save”, “Edit” or “Delete” appear on the display. When the items are listed over multiple pages, the total number of pages and the current page number are shown at the upper right of the display.

From the item at the top or bottom of the Function menu, press P to go to the previous page or the next page.

Press N or D to scroll by page.



To select items quickly <Direct selection>

You can also select them by simply pressing the numeric keys corresponding to the item numbers.

Item number



To finish or cancel the menu operation

To finish the menu operation

When you have set each function, the Selection display for the lower sub-menu item comes up (or the Stand-by display returns in some cases). When you have finished setting the function, press END . This ends the menu operation and the Stand-by display returns (except during Multitask).

To cancel the menu operation

Press ESC to cancel setting midway. The contents of the settings are abandoned and the Stand-by display or the display prior to starting the setting operation returns. In some cases, a prompt comes up to confirm whether you really want to abandon the settings.

You can press P to return to the previous operation.

Description Example for Operations

In this manual, the description for the command navigation key operation (selection of top, bottom, left, or right and press of  after a function item is selected) is simplified.

Description Example for Operation

Main menu item icon Sub-menu item Function name of lower sub-menu item



Step No.

Displayed item

Description Example for Function Menu

Function menu	Operations
Delete all	▶Enter the Terminal Security Code▶  ▶YES To cancel, select "NO" and press  .

Displayed item in the Function menu

Operating procedures after selecting a Function menu

Displaying Shortcut Menu

You can start the camera with the settings for the required purposes, and can start the Picture viewer and i-motion Player by easy operations.

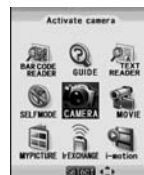
1 Press three times.

Shortcut menu is displayed.

You can display the guidance for the selected icon. (You can set not to display this guidance by "Menu display set".)

Press  twice to display the Private menu.

If you have not touched the key for at least 15 seconds, the Stand-by display returns.



<Shortcut menu>

2 Select an icon

Icons



CAMERA

You can start the camera in Photo Mode.



MOVIE

You can start the camera in Movie Mode.



BAR CODE READER

You can read in JAN codes, QR codes and view the read data.



TEXT READER

You can read in alphanumerics and view the read data.



MY PICTURE

You can see still images shot by the camera or downloaded from sites.



i-motion

You can view moving images recorded by the camera or i-motion movies downloaded from sites.



GUIDE

This is available in Japanese Mode only.

You can check the functions you want to guide or operating method you want to use.



Ir EXCHANGE

You can receive Phonebook entries or schedule events via Ir exchange.



SELF MODE





You can set Self Mode to block incoming calls while you are recording moving images.

<Guide>








When You do not Remember Key Operation

You can search for the functions you want to know and use, and then confirm the operating methods. You can execute some functions from “使いかたナビ (Guide)”. This function is available in Japanese Mode only.

1 使いかたナビ (Guide)

- 基本の操作 (Basic operations).....Displays the basic functions. Skip to step 4.
 - おすすめ機能 (Recommendable functions)Displays the recommendable functions. Skip to step 4.
 - 機能検索 (Function search).....Searches for and displays functions.
 - 検索履歴 (Search history)Displays up to 30 search histories. Skip to step 4.
- Select  from the Shortcut menu and press ; then you can also start up “使いかたナビ (Guide)”.
- Select a required item and press  ; then the detailed operating methods are displayed.




2 Select a searching method

- キーワード検索 (From your words)Enter a keyword and retrieve.
 - 索引検索 (From index).....Retrieves for functions in Japanese syllabic order. Press  or  to display the preceding or following row. Skip to step 4.
 - 機能一覧検索 (From Function List).....Retrieves from the function list. Skip to step 4.
- Select each item required and press  ; then the detailed operating methods are displayed.
- If you select “キーワード検索 (From your words)” and press  , select “キーワード検索のヘルプ (Help to keyword)” or “文字入力のしかた (How to input)” and press .

3 Enter a keyword



Up to 50 search results are displayed.
 You can enter up to 24 full-pitch or 48 half-pitch characters.
 See page 482 for how to enter characters.

4 Select a function

- この機能を使う (Operate function).....Executes the function. Operate each function.
 - 操作のしかた (How to operate)Displays the operating method.
 - 機能の説明 (Description).....Displays explanations for the function.
 - 関連機能 (Relevant function)Displays up to 10 relevant functions. Repeat step 4.
- Press  a few times to select some functions.
- Some items can not be available depending on the operation. If you select “基本の操作 (Basic operations)” in step 1, “関連機能 (Relevant function)” is not displayed.
- While you are selecting a function, you can also press   to display the explanation about the function.

Function Menu while Search History is Displayed

1 While the search history is displayed Do the following operation.

Function menu	Operations
1件削除 (Delete this)	▶ YES To cancel, select “NO” and press  .
全削除 (Delete all)	▶ YES To cancel, select “NO” and press  .

Information

When “Select language” is set to “English (英語)”, you cannot operate this function.

Using the UIM (FOMA Card)

The UIM is an IC card that holds your information such as phone numbers. It can also hold data such as the Phonebook entries and Short Messages (SMS).

By replacing the UIM, you can operate multiple FOMA phones for multiple purposes.

You cannot use the FOMA phone for voice and video-phone calls, i-mode, mail or packet transmission unless the UIM is inserted.

You can set two security codes, PIN1 code and PIN2 code, for the UIM. (See page 141)

Refer to the UIM manual for details about how to use it.

When inserting or removing the UIM, take care not to accidentally touch or scratch the IC.

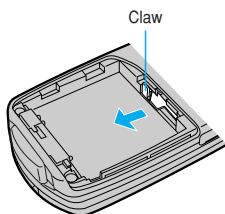
Insert/Remove UIM (FOMA Card)

You need to remove the battery before you insert the UIM. (See page 39)

Inserting

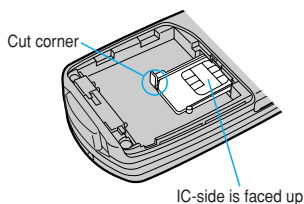
- 1** Pull the claw to pull the tray out.

Pull it out straight until the tray stops.



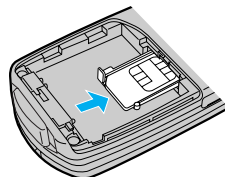
- 2** Place the UIM on the tray with its IC-side facing up.

Fit the cut corners of the UIM and tray in place.



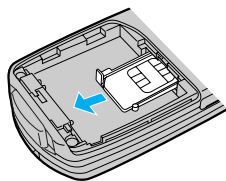
- 3** Push the tray inwards.

Push it until it clicks.



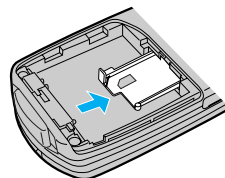
Removing

- 1** Follow step 1 of "Inserting" to pull out the tray and remove the UIM.



If the tray is disengaged

Fit and push it straight into the guide rail.



Information

Before inserting or removing the UIM, turn off the power and close the FOMA phone.

Make sure that the tray for the UIM is not drawn out when attaching the battery. If the tray is drawn out, the battery cannot be attached. Note that if the battery is forcibly attached, the UIM or tray may be damaged.

Take care not to force the UIM into place because this can break it.

Take care not to lose the UIM once you remove it.

About Password of UIM

You can set two passwords, PIN1 and PIN2, for a UIM. (See page 141)

Functions Restricted by UIM (FOMA Card)

The UIM has a restriction function to protect your data and files.

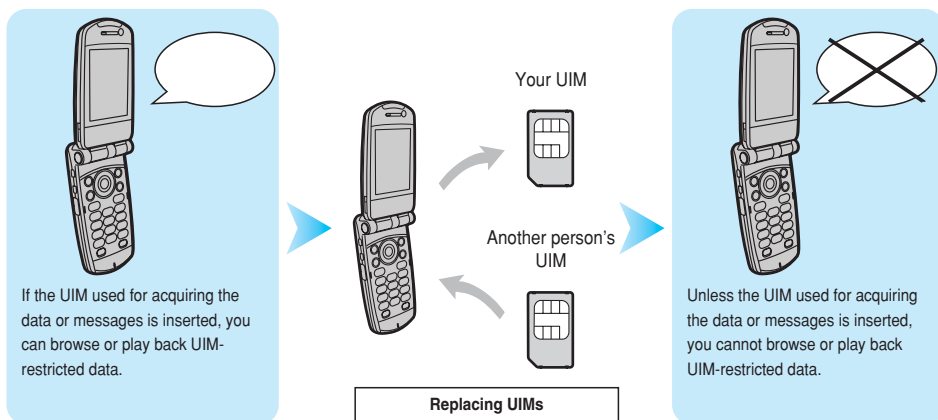
If you obtain data and files by the method below with the UIM inserted, restrictions are automatically set to them.


- When downloading images or melodies and so on, from sites or the Internet web pages
- When receiving i-mode mail with file attachments

Data and files set with the UIM restrictions can be read, played back, started up, edited, attached to mail, and transferred by Ir exchange function, only when the same UIM that acquired them is inserted.

If the UIM used to obtain data and files is not inserted, or if it is replaced with another UIM, the restrictions will protect the data from being read, played back, started up, edited, attached to mail, and transferred by Ir exchange function.

In the explanation hereafter, the UIM used to obtain data and files is referred to as “your UIM” and other UIMs as “another person’s UIM”.



When the UIM is not inserted, or when another person's UIM is inserted, the following types of data and files are displayed with the restrictions symbol, “”.

- Melodies, images, i-αppli, Chara-den images downloaded from sites or Internet web pages
- i-motion movies downloaded from sites or Internet web pages
- Downloaded dictionaries
- Screen memo containing melodies, images, i-motion movies, Chara-den images or downloaded dictionaries
- Files (melodies, images, Chara-den pictures, Chara-den movies) attached or pasted to i-mode mail in the Inbox
- Files (melodies, images, i-motion movies, Chara-den pictures, Chara-den movies) attached to i-mode mail in the Outbox, or Draft, except the data edited or taken with the FOMA phone
- Messages R/F with files (melodies or images) attached or pasted
- The image inserted into the Deco mail text

This function applies to the pre-installed i-αppli and Chara-den images if they are reinstalled (upgraded) from a site. The still images or moving images set with the UIM restrictions appear on the preview display as shown on the right.



Information

When the UIM restrictions are set for data and files, you cannot set those data and files for the functions such as "Display setting" and "Select ring tone" when another person's UIM is inserted instead.

If you have set the data and files with the UIM restrictions for the functions such as "Display setting" and "Select ring tone", these will work with their default settings if you remove your UIM or insert another person's UIM. If you replace that UIM with your UIM, then your settings will be enabled again.

<Example: Setting ring tone for "Melody A" set with UIM restrictions>

When you remove your UIM or replace it with another person's UIM, the setting displayed for "Select ring tone" will be "Melody A", but the actual ring tone will be the same as the default setting at the time of purchase. If you insert your UIM, "Melody A" will be played back for incoming calls again.

UIM restrictions are not set for data acquired using the Ir exchange or data transmission (OBEX) functions or still images/moving images edited or taken with the FOMA phone.

Even when another person's UIM is inserted, data and files set with the UIM restrictions can be moved or deleted.

You cannot start up i-apply by selecting highlighted text on the detailed i-mode mail display if the UIM restrictions are set.

Differences of UIM (FOMA Card)

If you are using the blue UIM with your FOMA phone, note that some specifications differ from those of the green UIM.

Functions	UIM (blue)	UIM (green)	Reference
Number of digits of the phone number that can be stored in the UIM Phonebook	20 max.	26 max.	See page 96
Operation of user certificate to use FirstPass	Cannot be used	Can be used	See page 223
WORLD WING	Cannot be used	Can be used	-
Using service dialing of "DoCoMo repair counter" and "General inquiries <DoCoMo Information Center>".	Cannot be used	Can be used	See page 435

WORLD WING

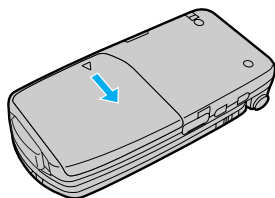
WORLD WING is a DoCoMo FOMA international roaming service that enables you to use the mobile phone number you are using in Japan for receiving or making calls overseas by inserting the UIM (green) into the mobile phone for international use (GSM format) supporting this service.

WORLD WING is available on a subscription basis. Contact "DoCoMo Information Center" on the back page of the manual for inquiries about subscription.

Attach/Remove Batteries

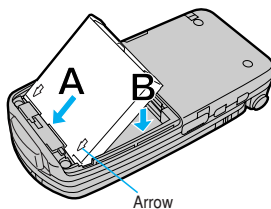
Attaching

1 While pressing the “▽” part, slide the rear cover (2 mm or more) to unlock in the direction of the arrow.

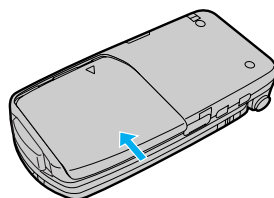


2 Insert the battery pack in the direction A with the arrow mark facing upwards and push it in the direction B.

Securely fit the claws of the battery pack into the grooves of the phone.

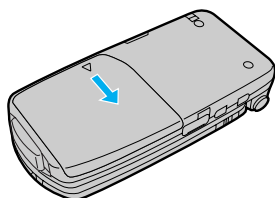


3 Slide the rear cover in the direction of the arrow and attach it in place.

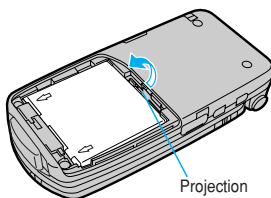


Removing

1 While pressing the “▽” part, slide the rear cover (2 mm or more) to unlock in the direction of the arrow.



2 Take hold of the projection of the battery pack to lift it up.



Information

Turn the power off before replacing the battery.

When attaching a battery, be sure to check that the UIM tray is not protruding. If the tray is protruding, you will not be able to attach the battery. If you try to force the battery into place you might break the UIM or tray.

If you try to force the battery into place, you could damage the charging terminals of the FOMA phone.

For details about the battery, see the manual for Battery Pack P06.

Charging the FOMA Phone

Use the FOMA phone's dedicated Battery Pack P06 to get the most out of your FOMA phone.

Battery life?

Batteries are consumables. The usage time of all chargeable batteries shortens slightly each time they are charged.

The battery's life is considered to be exhausted when the usage time of the battery after charging is about half the time it was at purchase. (The life of the battery is about one year. However, it might be shorter if used very frequently.)

For environmental protection, bring the exhausted battery to an NTT DoCoMo, dealer, or recycle shop.



Li-ion

Charging

For details, refer to the manuals for the FOMA AC Adapter 01 (option), FOMA AC Adapter 01 for both overseas and domestic usage (option), and FOMA DC Adapter 01 (option). For charging the battery via the AC or DC Adapter, the battery must be attached to the FOMA phone. During charging, you can still answer calls if the FOMA phone is turned on. This will consume the charged amount so that charging will take longer.

If you have a long time video-phone call during charging, the temperature inside the FOMA phone may rise and charging may be suspended. In such a case, wait for a while and try charging again. Remove and insert the connector slowly and carefully, without using unnecessary force.

Do not charge for long periods of time (several days) with the FOMA phone switched on.

Do not leave the FOMA phone power on for long periods of time while charging. Otherwise, when charging finishes, the FOMA phone will attempt to receive power from the battery so that when you actually use the FOMA phone, you will be able to do so for just a short amount of time before the battery alarm sounds. If this happens, charge the battery correctly. When charging the battery again, first remove the FOMA phone from the AC Adapter (or Desktop Holder) or DC Adapter and then set it again.

Estimated usage time for battery (The usage time for the battery varies with the charging time and the remaining life of the battery.)

Continuous standby time	Standstill	: Approx. 460 hours
	In motion	: Approx. 350 hours
Continuous talk time	Voice call	: Approx. 140 minutes
	Video-phone call	: Approx. 90 minutes

Continuous talk time is the estimated time that the FOMA phone can be used for calls when radio waves can be sent and received normally. Continuous standby time is the estimated time that radio waves can be received normally. The standby time could be only half of this estimate depending on the battery level, function settings, temperature and other ambient conditions, and the status of radio waves in the area (weak or no radio waves, for instance). When you use i-mode communications, the talk/transmission time and standby time will be shorter. Further, even if you do not make calls or use i-mode transmission, the talk/transmission time and standby time will be shorter if you compose i-mode mail or start up a downloaded i-appli or start up the i-appli Stand-by display.

The continuous standby time for standstill is the average number of hours you can use the FOMA phone in standstill status when it is closed and can receive radio waves normally.

The continuous standby time for in motion is the average number of hours you can use the FOMA phone in the combined status of "standstill" "moving" and "out of service area" when it is closed, in an area where it can receive radio waves normally.

The above talk times and standby times will be even shorter if data transmission, Multitask, i-appli software is used.

Estimated time for charging battery

AC Adapter	Approx. 130 minutes
DC Adapter	Approx. 130 minutes

The estimated charging time is for when the FOMA phone is off and the battery is being charged from empty. The charging time will be longer if you charge the battery with the power turned on.

Information

You may not be able to store still or moving images when the battery is completely flat or when the battery is removed.

Charge with AC Adapter and Desktop Holder

1 Connect the AC Adapter (option) to the Desktop Holder (option).

2 Insert the AC Adapter's plug into a power socket.

3 Set the FOMA phone onto the Desktop Holder.

Push it until you hear it click in.

Check that the Call/Charging indicator lights in red.

Attach the battery pack to the FOMA phone beforehand.

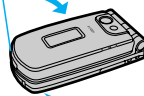
Be sure to set the FOMA phone firmly onto the Desktop Holder. Also, be careful that the connector cap or a commercial strap is not caught between the FOMA phone and Desktop Holder.

Charging can be done even when the FOMA phone is opened.

4 When charging completes, take the FOMA phone off the Desktop Holder.

Unplug the AC Adapter from the power socket when you are not going to use it for a long time.

The Call/Charging indicator
(lights in red)



Desktop Holder P07


Plug horizontally
with engraved
side facing down



100 VAC

FOMA AC Adapter 01

Indicator and display during charging and when charging is completed

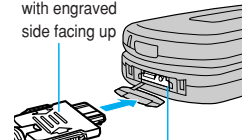
	Call/Charging indicator	"  " display
Charging	Lights in red	Blinks
Charging completed	Off	Lights

When the FOMA phone is turned off, " " does not appear.

If you start charging with the battery flat, the Call/Charging indicator might not light right soon; however, charging itself has started.

Charge with AC Adapter only

Plug horizontally
with engraved
side facing up



Open the connector cap

DC Adapter (option)

With the DC Adapter, you can use a cigarette lighter socket (12 V/24 V) to charge the FOMA phone with the battery pack attached.

Read the manual for the FOMA DC Adapter 01 for details.

Information

If the power is turned on, the "Charge sound" beeps at the volume set for "Phone" or "Ring volume" when charging starts and ends. (See page 116)

Make sure that you plug in or out the AC adapter connector horizontally.

The FOMA AC Adapter 01 uses 100 VAC only.

You cannot charge the battery pack by itself. The battery pack must be attached to the FOMA phone for charging.

If the fuse blows off when charging with the DC adapter, be sure to use a 2A fuse. The 2A fuse is consumables, and it is available at car shops in your neighborhood.

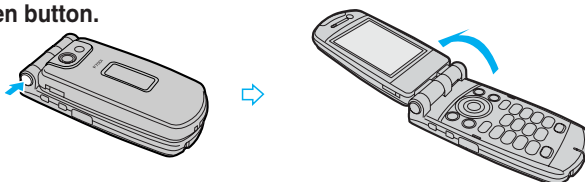
<One-push Open>

Opening the FOMA Phone by Using a Button

You can open the FOMA phone easily by pressing the button. You can also open it manually without using the button.

1 Press the One-push open button.

The FOMA phone opens up.



Information

When "Open phone" is set to "Answer", you can start talking just by opening the FOMA phone during ringing.

The FOMA phone might not open fully, depending on its direction.

Be careful not to drop the FOMA phone when it springs open.

You need to fold the FOMA phone manually. If it does not close, open it fully and then close it.

<Battery Level>

Confirming Battery Level

When the FOMA phone is turned on, an estimate of the battery level is indicated by the icon.

- Almost full (green)
- Getting low (green)
- Almost empty (red)

Charge the battery when it is almost empty.

Confirm by Display and Tone



You can check an estimate of the battery level by the display and sound.

1 Other settings > Battery level

The pictograph disappears in about three seconds.

The battery tone does not sound while "Manner mode", "Super silent", or "Original" is activated, or "Keypad sound" is set to "OFF".

<p>Almost full</p> <p>Full charge</p>	<p>Three beeps</p>	<p>Getting low</p> <p>Partial charge</p>	<p>Two beeps</p>	<p>Almost empty</p> <p>Low charge</p>	<p>One beep</p>
---------------------------------------	--------------------	--	------------------	---------------------------------------	-----------------

Charge the battery soon.

When the battery is running out

The display on the right appears and the empty battery alarm sounds for about 10 seconds. To stop this alarm, press any key other than and . About one minute later, the FOMA phone will be turned off.

During a call, you will also hear a beeping tone. About 20 seconds later your call will be cut and then one minute later the FOMA phone will be turned off.

The battery tone does not sound while "Manner mode" or "Super silent" is activated, or when "LVA tone" is set to "OFF" in "Original".



<Recharge Battery display>

<Power ON/OFF>

Turning Power On/Off

1 Press and hold for at least one second.

After the Wake-up display (see page 122) is displayed, the Stand-by display comes up.

If you have stored many Phonebook entries or mail items, it may take a while for the display to appear.

If the clock is set, the current date and time are shown.

When “圏外” is displayed, the FOMA phone is out of the service area or where the radio signal cannot reach. Move to a location where “圏外” disappears.

If you set “PIN1 code entry set” of “PIN setting” to “ON”, enter a four- to eight-digit PIN1 code after turning on the power. (See page 143)

If the UIM is not attached or there is something wrong with it, a warning message will come up.



<Stand-by display>



When UIM is not attached or damaged



When UIM is malfunctioning

To turn the power off

Press and hold for at least two seconds.

The exit display appears and the power goes off. Please wait a few seconds.

You cannot turn on the power immediately after turning off the power. Wait a few seconds.




When you have not operated FOMA phone for a certain period

If you have not operated the FOMA phone for a certain period while it has been turned on, the indication on the display and Private window go off and the Command Navigation key flickers at about five-second interval when the FOMA phone is opened. The display comes on again when you perform any operation.

You can set the display to remain on, for even when the FOMA phone has not been operated for a certain period, by setting “Power saver mode” of “Display setting” to “OFF”. (See page 123)

Information

If “Starting system Wait a minute” is displayed when you turn on the power, wait for a while and then proceed.

The radio signal becomes unstable when you move around during a call. Because of the nature of the digital technology, your call might be cut off suddenly. Try to keep  displayed when using the FOMA phone.

<Select Language>

Switching to English



Setting at purchase

Japanese

1 ディスプレイ (Display) バイリンガル (Select language)

Japanese (日本語)Switches to Japanese.

English (英語)Switches to English.

Information

You cannot switch while another function is working (while “” or “” is displayed at the upper right of the display).

When the UIM is inserted, the “バイリンガル (Select language)” setting is stored in the UIM.

If you set “バイリンガル (Select language)” to “English”, you can choose either “ON” or “OFF” for “Display” of “Main window clock”.


If you set “バイリンガル (Select language)” to “English”, you can choose either “ON” or “OFF” for “Info notice setting”.

<Initial Setting>

Executing Initial Settings


If the date and time, Terminal Security Code, and Keypad Sound are not set, the display for setting the default appears when the power is turned on.

1 Turn the power on ▶ YES

When "PIN1 code entry set" of "PIN setting" is set to "ON", enter the four-to eight-digit PIN1 code after turning the power on.
(See page 143)
To cancel, select "NO" and press .

Setting Date and Time

2 Enter year, month, date and time ▶


Use  to move the cursor and the numeric keys to enter numbers.
Enter the A.D. year.
Enter the time in the 24-hour format.
To enter one-digit numeral for the date and time, enter two digits beginning with "0" as in "01" to "09".
The set date and time will appear on the Stand-by and other displays.
See page 45 for setting time.

Setting Terminal Security Code

Set the Terminal Security Code required for setting functions.

3 Enter "0000" ▶

4 Enter the new Terminal Security Code (four to eight digits) ▶ ▶ YES

To cancel, select "NO" and press 
See page 140 for the Terminal Security Code.



Setting Keypad Sound

You can perform operations confirming whether keys are pressed securely by the sound.

5 Keypad sound

ON.....Makes the keypad sound.
OFF.....Does not make the keypad sound.
See page 116 for Keypad Sound.

Information

After you set any of the functions, only the unset functions are displayed.
You cannot set the initial settings during All Lock or Keypad Dial Lock.
After you execute "Initialize", the display for setting the initial settings is also displayed.
Even when a call comes in while setting the initial settings or some settings are canceled by pressing  or  midway, the completed settings are set valid.
You cannot set the initial settings when the power is turned on automatically by an alarm notification.
You can also set the initial settings from each menu function separately.

Setting Date and Time

1



Clock ▶ **Set time** ▶ **Enter year, month, date and time** ▶

Use to move the cursor and the numeric keys to enter numbers.

Enter the A.D. year.

Enter the time in the 24-hour format.

To enter one-digit numeral for the date and time, enter two digits beginning with "0" as in "01" to "09".

The set date and time will appear on the Stand-by and other displays.



Information

You can also set Clock during a call.

If you enter a wrong number (such as "13" for the month) and press , the entry is invalid. Enter the correct number.

You cannot use the following functions unless the clock is set.

Current time display during calls (see pages 48, 74), Calendar (see page 121), Alarm (see page 399), Schedule (see page 402), ToDo (see page 409), Software update (see page 533), and i-appli auto start (see page 324), Pattern data update of Scan function (see page 538)

The FOMA phone has an internal backup battery. The set time is stored in the internal backup battery so is kept even when you change the battery. However, the time could be reset if the battery is detached for two or more weeks. In this case, charge the FOMA phone and then set the clock again. Also, when using the FOMA phone for the first time after purchase, attach the battery to the FOMA phone and then charge it. This will also charge the internal backup battery.

This function supports clock settings from 00:00 January 1 2004 through to 23:59 December 31 2037.

<Notify Caller ID>

Notifying Other Party's Phone of Your Phone Number

You can set the FOMA phone to send your phone number to the called party's phone when dialing. Your phone number is valuable information, so take utmost care when notifying your phone number. This function works only when the called party's phone is the digital terminal such as the FOMA phone or mobile phone which has the function to display the caller ID.

The three setting methods for Notify Caller ID are available as follows:

Setting method	Reference
Setting your Caller ID per call	See below
Prefixing "186/184"	See page 46
Setting on the network beforehand	See page 433

Set Caller ID Notification when Making a Call

Each time you dial out, you can set whether to notify your phone number.

1

Enter the phone number, or bring up the detailed Phonebook display, detailed Redial display, detailed Dialed Call Record display, or detailed Received Call Record display.

2

▶ **Notify caller ID**

Don't notify/OFF.....Does not notify your phone number.

Notify caller/ON.....Notifies your phone number.

Cancel prefixActivates the setting for "Caller ID Notification" on page 433.

You can also select whether to notify the other party of your phone number, by entering "186 (or ✕31#)/184 (or #31#)" before the party's phone number.

To notify the Caller ID (Effective when "Activate" of "Caller ID notification" is set to "OFF")
 186 (✕31#) + +

Not to notify the Caller ID (Effective when "Activate" of "Caller ID notification" is set to "ON")
 184 (#31#) + +

Information

"186/184" is added to the beginning of a redial item/dialed call record and then stored.

Information

When you dial out and hear a message requesting your Caller ID, set the FOMA phone to notify your Caller ID and redial.

<Own Number>



Confirming Own Number

You can display your phone number (own number). The phone number stored in the UIM is displayed as own number.

1

Own number

If mail address 1 is stored, you can switch displays by pressing .

See page 413 for storing/displaying personal data.

You can send your own number data by touch-tone signals during a call by pressing (F.L.N.C.) from the display on the right and pressing .



< Own Number display >

Making Calls/Receiving Calls

Making Calls

Making a Call	48
International Calls	<WORLD CALL> 50
Making an International Call Easily	<International Dialing> 50
Redialing Phone Numbers You have Dialed	<Redial> 53
Sending Touch-tone Signals Quickly	<Pause Dial> 55
Storing Prefix Numbers	<Prefix Setting> 57
Making a Call with Specified Subaddress	<Subaddress Setting> 58
Selecting Alarm for Reconnecting	<Reconnect Control> 58
Reducing Surrounding Noise to Make Voice Clear	<Noise Reduction> 59
Switching to Hands-free	<Hands-free> 59
Using Hands-free Compatible Devices	<USB Hands-free> 59

Receiving Calls

Receiving a Call	60
Setting Response of Key Operation for Answering Incoming Calls	<Answer Setting> 61
Setting Response for Opening FOMA Phone during Ringing	<Open Phone> 62
Setting Response for Closing FOMA Phone during a Call	<Fold Setting> 62
Using Received Call Record	<Received Calls> 63
Adjusting Earpiece Volume	<Earpiece Volume> 65
Adjusting Ring Volume	<Ring Volume> 65

When You Cannot or Could not Answer the Call

Putting an Incoming Call on Hold	<On Hold> 66
Putting a Call on Hold during a Call	<Holding> 66
Setting Hold Tone	<Call Response Setting> 67
Using Driving Mode	<Drive Mode> 67
If You could not Answer an Incoming Call	68
Recording Messages when You cannot Answer the Call	<Record Message> 69
Recording Messages when You cannot Answer the Call while Ringing	<Quick Record Message> 71
Playing/Erasing Record Messages/Voice Memo	<Play/Erase Message> 71

Making a Call

1 Enter the other party's phone number, starting with the area code.

Even when you are dialing within the same area, you need to enter the area code before the phone number.

<Example>

Area code City code Phone number
 03 XXXX XXXX

To make calls to mobile phone

090 - XXXX - XXXX Other party's phone number (11 digits)
 080 - XXXX - XXXX

To make calls to PHS

070 - XXXX - XXXX Other party's phone number (11 digits)

To store an entered phone number in the Phonebook, press (Store). Go to step 2 on page 97.



2 You can start talking when the other party answers.

The FOMA phone differs from ordinary phones in making a transmission signal before the call signal. " " blinks at the upper right of the display during calling, and lights steadily once you are connected.

You can also dial out by entering the phone number and then pressing .

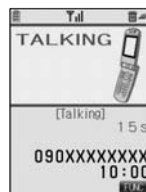
You will hear a message to the effect that your call cannot be connected when the destination mobile phone or PHS is not turned on or the radio waves do not reach.

If you hear a message requesting your Caller ID (see page 433), follow the procedure for "To notify the Caller ID" (see page 46) to enter "186" or "✕31#" and redial the number.

When the dialed party is on the phone, you will hear the busy signal. Press and wait a while before dialing again.

You can press the numeric keys to send touch-tone signals during a call.

If you close the FOMA phone during a call, the FOMA phone works according to "Fold setting". (See page 62) If date and time have already been set, the current time is displayed on the "Talking" display.



3 To end the call, press .

Information

You can make voice calls using "Multiaccess" even when using i-mode or exchanging mail.

You cannot make voice calls during 64K data transmission or video-phone calls.

If you have brought up a display other than the "Talking" display during a call, you can return to the "Talking" display by pressing several times. You can end the call by pressing from the "Talking" display.

Internal phones and other phones that do not support the entry of area codes cannot be used for dialing to the FOMA phones.

You can also dial out by pressing and then entering the party's phone number. If you make a mistake when entering the phone number, press and then enter the number again after the wrong number is cleared.

You cannot dial out by entering the phone number while "Keypad dial lock", "Restrict dialing" or "Self mode" is activated.

You can make calls using a Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone Set with Switch (option). (See page 421)

Display during dialing

The dialed party's name and icon will be displayed if you have stored the party's phone number and name in the Phonebook.

However, an image will not be displayed, even if you have stored one for that party.

The phone number instead of the name will be displayed if the party has been stored in the Phonebook in "Secret mode" or "Secret only mode", or if PIM Lock is activated.

If the same phone number is stored with multiple names in the Phonebook entries, the name that comes first in the search order (see page 102) is displayed.

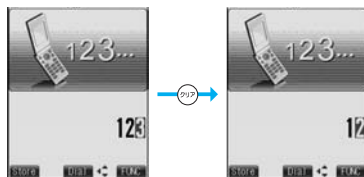
If you make a mistake while entering the phone number


To clear one digit at a time, press  briefly.

Each time you press it, the digit on the far right is cleared.



Use  to move the cursor to a digit you want to clear, and then press

 to clear it.



To clear all the digits, press and hold  for at least one second.

All the digits are cleared and the Stand-by display returns.

To clear all the digits on and to the right of the cursor, use  to move the cursor and then press and hold  for at least one second.

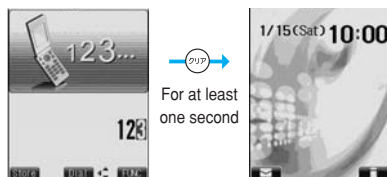


Photo-sending during a call

During a voice call, you can send the other party the still images you have taken on the spot or ones you have saved. (See page 251)

Function Menu while Entering Phone Number

1 While entering a phone number ►  (FUNC) ► Do the following operation.

Function menu	Operations
Notify caller ID	You can set whether to notify caller ID. (See page 45)
Prefix numbers	You can add prefix numbers. (See page 58)
International dial	You can make international calls. (See page 52)
Multi number	See page 436.
Add to phonebook	You can store data in the Phonebook. (See page 97)
Compose message	You can compose a message to send to the phone number set as a mail address. Go to step 3 on page 235.
Dialing speed	You can set the dialing speed of video-phone calls. (See page 76)
Select image	You can select an image for video-phone calls. (See page 86)

Information

<Compose message>

When the phone number and mail address are stored in the Phonebook together, you can compose a message to send to that mail address. When multiple mail addresses are stored, you can compose a message to send to the first mail address.


<WORLD CALL>

International Calls

WORLD CALL is the International Call service available from DoCoMo mobile phones.

When you have signed up for FOMA service, you have contracted to use "WORLD CALL" (except those who have applied not to use it).

How to make calls

009130 - 010 - Country code - Area code - Destination phone number → 

You can store the procedures above in the FOMA phone's Phonebook.

When the area code begins with "0", leave this out when dialing.

(However, include "0" for ordinary phones in Italy.)

You can call about 220 countries and regions.

The WORLD CALL charges are added to your monthly FOMA bill.

Application/monthly fee are free of charge.

Changes in procedures for international call

"My Line" service is not available for mobile communications, so cannot be used with WORLD CALL. However, in conjunction with the launch of "My Line" service, the dialing procedure for international calls from mobile phones has changed. Note that the old way of dialing (without "010" above) no longer works.

• If the other party is using a specific 3G mobile phone overseas, you can make an "International Video-phone Call" by dialing out in Video-phone call mode after following the dialing method described above.

See the DoCoMo web page for the information about connectable countries and telecommunications carriers.

Images sent from the other party may blur on your FOMA phone or you may not be able to connect, depending on the other party's phone used for the international video-phone.

Contact "DoCoMo Information Center" on the back page of this manual for inquiries about WORLD CALL.

When using international carriers other than DoCoMo, please contact them.


<International Dialing>

Making an International Call Easily

Auto Assist Setting

Setting at purchase
Auto

You can set whether to automatically replace "+" at the beginning of a phone number, or "+" of "X31#+", or "#31#+", with international access number set by "IDD Prefix setting".



When you are entering a phone number for dialing or storing it in the Phonebook, press and hold  for at least one second to enter "+".

1



▶ Other settings ▶ Int'l dial setting ▶ Auto assist setting

Auto.....Automatically adds the international access number.

When no country code is registered, the confirmation display appears asking whether to register the country code. To register, select "YES", press , and go to step 2 of "Storing/Editing Country Code" on page 51. To cancel, select "NO" and press .

OFF.....Does not automatically add international access number. The setting is completed.

2

Select a country code ▶ 

When adding international access number automatically

The confirmation display appears asking whether to make an international call. Select how to dial and press .

DialDials out with adding the international access number.

Dial with orig. No......Dials out without adding the international access number.

CancelDoes not dial.

Information

International access number is not added if you enter 81 (Country code of Japan) after emergency call 110/119/118 or "+".


IDD Prefix Setting

Setting at purchase
WORLD CALL (009130010)

You can store international access number to be added to the beginning of phone number for making an international call.

- 1**   **Other settings**  **Int'l dial setting**  **IDD Prefix setting**
  **(Edit)**



- 2** **Enter the name to store** 

You can enter up to 8 full-pitch or 16 half-pitch characters.

See page 482 for how to enter characters.

- 3** **Enter the international access number** 

You can enter up to 10 digits.


Storing/Editing Country Code

Setting at purchase
アメリカ (U.S.A.), +1


You can store up to three country codes.

- 1**   **Other settings**  **Int'l dial setting**  **Country Code setting**
 **<Not recorded>**  **(Edit)**

To edit, select the stored country code.


Select the stored item from the display on the right and press ; then the contents are displayed.



- 2** **Enter a country name** 

You can enter up to 8 full-pitch or 16 half-pitch characters.






See page 482 for how to enter characters.

- 3** **Enter a country code** 

You can enter up to 5 digits. But you cannot use #, *, and +.

Function Menu while Country Code Setting is Displayed

1 While a country code is displayed  (**FUNC**)  Do the following operation.

Function menu	Operations
Edit	Go to step 2 of "Storing/Editing Country Code" on page 51.
Delete this	<p> YES</p> <p>To cancel, select "NO" and press .</p>
Delete all	<p> Enter the Terminal Security Code  YES</p> <p>To cancel, select "NO" and press .</p> <p>See page 140 for the Terminal Security Code.</p>


Information

<Delete this><Delete all>

You cannot delete the country code set by "Auto assist setting".




International Dial

You can make a call by replacing "+" at the beginning of a phone number or "+" of "×31#+", or "#31#+", with the international access number.

When you are entering a phone number for dialing or storing it in the Phonebook, press and hold  for at least one second to enter "+".

1 Enter the phone number or bring up the data of the Phonebook, Redial, Dialed calls or Received calls.

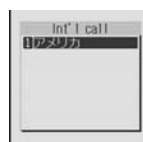
2  (**FUNC**)  **International dial**

Press  () or  to make an international call (video-phone call).

When the beginning of the phone number is other than "+", "×31#+", or "#31#+"

The display for selecting a country code appears in step 2.

If you select a country code, the international access number and the country code are added.



Information

When the phone number has "0" at the beginning, "0" is replaced by the international access number and the country code.

<Redial>

Redialing Phone Numbers You have Dialed

The FOMA phone can store the other party's phone number, date and time you have dialed in "Redial" and "Dialed calls". In "Redial", a total of 30 dialed phone numbers of voice phone calls and video-phone calls can be stored. If you dial the same phone number twice, the older one is deleted. In "Dialed calls", a total of 30 dialed phone numbers of voice phone calls and video-phone calls, and 30 pieces of 64K data transmission and packet transmission are stored. The same phone number you dialed before is also retained in "Dialed calls". See page 64 about icons for the Redial/Dialed Call Record.

To store the dialed date and time in the FOMA phone, set the date and time by "Set time" in advance.

When more than 30 calls are received, the older records are automatically deleted.

Use Redial

1 Stand-by display ▶

Redial cannot be displayed during a video-phone call.




The latest data is displayed on the top.



Press  () to display the Sent Address List.



2 Select a redial item ▶

When the dialed party is stored in the Phonebook, the phone number, name, and icon are displayed.




To dial the selected Redial phone number for voice call (or video-phone call), just press  () or .

To add the item to the Phonebook, press  (). Go to step 2 on page 97.



Information

During "PIM lock", only the phone number is displayed even when the name and icon for the dialed party are stored in the Phonebook. The name and icon stored in the Phonebook are displayed after "PIM lock" is released.

You can make a voice call (or video-phone call) to the most recently dialed number by pressing  () and then  from the Stand-by display.

If you activate "PIM lock", "Keypad dial lock", or "Restrict dialing", the redialed records up to that point are all deleted. All records after "PIM lock", "Keypad dial lock", or "Restrict dialing" is activated are retained.

Use Dialed Call Record

1 Dialed calls




The latest data is displayed on the top.

Press  () to display the Sent Address List.



2 Select a dialed call record ▶

When the dialed party is stored in the Phonebook, the phone number, name, and icon are displayed.

To dial the selected phone number for voice call (or video-phone call), just press  () or .

To add the record to the Phonebook, press  (). Go to step 2 on page 97.












Information

The Dialed Call Record of 64K data transmission is stored only when the FOMA USB Cable (option) is connected. During "PIM lock", only the phone number is displayed even when the name and icon for the dialed party are stored in the Phonebook. The name and icon stored in the Phonebook are displayed after "PIM lock" is released. If you activate "PIM lock", "Keypad dial lock", or "Restrict dialing", the dialed call records up to that point are all deleted. All records after "PIM lock", "Keypad dial lock", or "Restrict dialing" is activated are retained.

Function Menu while Redial/Dialed Call Record is Displayed

- 1** While Redial/Dialed Call Record is displayed   (**FUNC**)
- ▶ Do the following operation.

Function menu	Operations
Notify caller ID	You can set whether to notify caller ID. (See page 45)
Prefix numbers	You can add prefix numbers. (See page 58)
International dial	You can make international calls. (See page 52)
Multi number	See page 436.
Add to phonebook	You can store data in the Phonebook. (See page 97)
Add desktop icon	You can paste the icon of the phone number to the desktop. (See page 134)
Compose message	You can compose a mail message to send to the phone number set as the destination. Go to step 3 on page 235.
Compose SMS	You can compose a Short Message (SMS) to send to the phone number set as the destination. Go to step 3 on page 301.
Sent address	You can display the Sent Address List. (See page 281)
Delete this	▶ YES To cancel, select "NO" and press  .
Delete selected	▶ Put the check marks for redial items or dialed call records to be deleted   ▶ YES "☐" and "☑" switch each time you press  . You can check or uncheck all items by pressing   and selecting "Select all/Release all". To cancel, select "NO" and press  .
Delete all	Enter the Terminal Security Code  ▶ YES To cancel, select "NO" and press  . See page 140 for the Terminal Security Code.
Dialing speed	You can set the dialing speed of video-phone calls. (See page 76)
Select image	You can select an image for video-phone calls. (See page 86)

Information

<Compose message>

When the phone number and mail address are stored in a Phonebook entry together, you can compose a mail message to send to that mail address. When multiple mail addresses are stored, you can compose a message to send to the first mail address.

<Delete this><Delete selected><Delete all>

If you execute "Delete all", all records in both Redial and Dialed Call Record are deleted. Note that even if you execute "Delete this" or "Delete selected" of Redial, those are not deleted from Dialed Call Record and the records are retained. To delete the dialed call records, delete them from the Function menu while "Dialed calls" is displayed.

Even if you turn off the power, redial items and dialed call records are not deleted.

Sending Touch-tone Signals Quickly

Setting at purchase
Not stored

You can use Pause dial for operations such as sending messages to pagers , reserving tickets, and using services such as checking up your bank balance by the phone.

If you enter a pause (p) into the dial data, you can send it out with breaks.

Store Pause Dial

You can store only one pause dial.

- 1 > Other settings > Pause dial > (Edit)

When dial data is already stored, that dial data is displayed.



- 2 Enter the dial data >

Enter the pause (p) by pressing and holding for at least one second.

You can use only through , , to enter the dial data and the pause (p).

You can enter up to 128 digits.

You cannot enter a pause (p) at the beginning of dial data, or enter it consecutively.

Send Pause Dial

- 1 > Other settings > Pause dial >



- 2 Enter the phone number > or

A voice call is made. Once the line is connected, the dial data stored in Pause Dial is displayed up to the first pause (p).

When the other party is stored in the Phonebook, press to bring up the Phonebook Search display, select the phone number, and dial from there.

You can also press to bring up Received Call Record, or to bring up Redial, and search and select the phone number from there.

See page 99 for how to search a Phonebook entry.

- 3 Check that the line is connected > or

The dial data up to the first pause (p) is sent, and the dial data up to the next pause (p) is displayed.

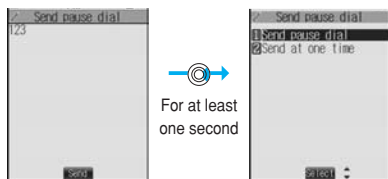
Dial data up to the pause (p) is sent each time you press or .

When you have finished sending the last number, the "Talking" display comes up.



To send dial data all at once

1. From the display in step 3 on page 55, press and hold for at least one second.
2. Select "Send at one time" and press .
Select "Send pause dial" and press ; then the dial data up to the next pause (p) will be sent.

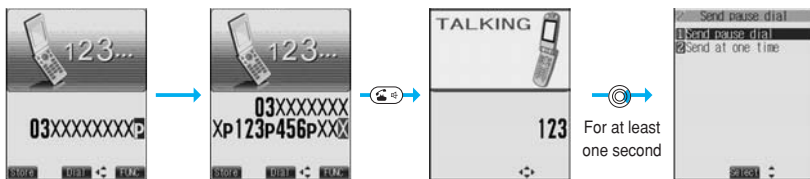


For at least one second

To enter "p" in ordinary phone number entry

You can also send the dial data by entering the phone number in the usual way, and pressing and holding for at least one second to enter the pause (p). You can enter up to 80 digits including the phone number.

1. From the Stand-by display, enter the destination phone number and then the pause (p).
2. Press to dial the number.
3. When the line is connected, press and hold for at least one second, select "Send pause dial" from the menu, and press : the dial data will be sent up to the next pause (p).



For at least one second

Function Menu of the Pause Dial Display

1 Pause Dial display () Do the following operation.

Function menu	Operations
Edit	Go to step 2 of "Store Pause Dial" on page 55.
Send pause dial	Go to step 2 of "Send Pause Dial" on page 55.
Delete	<p> YES</p> <p>To cancel, select "NO" and press .</p>

Information

During a call, you can also send dial data by displaying the Function menu of the Pause Dial display.
Some devices on the recipient side cannot receive signals.
You cannot send pause dial data with a video-phone call.

You can store prefix numbers such as international access numbers or “186/184” and add them to the beginning of the phone number for dialing. You can store up to seven prefix numbers.

Store/Edit Prefix

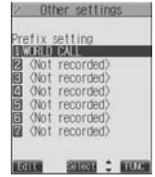
1



Other settings ▶ Prefix setting ▶ Select <Not recorded>

To edit, select a stored prefix.

Select the stored item from the display on the right and press ; then the contents are displayed.



2

Enter a name ▶

You can enter up to 8 full-pitch or 16 half-pitch characters.

See page 482 for how to enter characters.

3

Enter a prefix number ▶

You can enter up to 10 digits.

The keys for entry are limited to through .

Function Menu while Prefix Setting is Displayed

1

While “Prefix setting” is displayed ▶ (**FUNC**) ▶ Do the following operation.

Function menu	Operations
Edit	Go to step 2 on this page.
Delete this	▶ YES To cancel, select “NO” and press .
Delete all	▶ Enter the Terminal Security Code ▶ ▶ YES To cancel, select “NO” and press .

Set Prefix

You can add the prefix number to the top of phone number when you make a call.




1 Enter the phone number, or bring up the detailed Phonebook display, detailed Redial display, detailed Dialed Call Record display, or detailed Received Call Record display.

2  (**FUNC**) > Prefix numbers



When a phone number is entered

3 Select a prefix item > 

You can make a voice call (or video-phone call) by pressing  () or .



<Subaddress Setting>

Making a Call with Specified Subaddress

Setting at purchase
ON

The subaddress is the number required for receiving services such as Subaddress Notification Service of ISDN. If you set "Sub-address" to "ON", "*" included in the phone number is regarded as a separator and subsequent numbers are identified as a subaddress so that you can call a specific phone or connect to a data terminal.

You can use this function for selecting contents from "M-stage V LIVE".

1  >  > Other settings > Sub-address

ON.....Regards "*" and onward as a subaddress.


OFF.....Does not regard "*" and onward as a subaddress.

Information

Even if you set "Sub-address" to "ON", "*" at the top of phone numbers and "*" next to the prefix number or "186 (or *31#)"/"184 (or #31#)" are not regarded as subaddress mark-off symbols.

<Reconnect Control>

Selecting Alarm for Reconnecting

  
Setting at purchase
No tone

You can select an alarm that sounds until you are reconnected after disconnected owing to bad radio wave status.

1  >  > Talk > Reconnect control

No toneDoes not sound.

High toneHigh alarm sounds.

Low toneLow alarm sounds.

Information

The call fee is charged for the time until you are reconnected (up to about 10 seconds).

The reconnectable time differs depending on the usage status and radio wave status. An estimate is about 10 seconds.

While you are disconnected, no sound is transmitted to the other party.

<Noise Reduction>

7.0dB 6.0dB

Reducing Surrounding Noise to Make Voice Clear

Setting at purchase
ON

You can suppress surrounding noise to make your voice and other party's voice from the earpiece clear.

1 Talk Noise reduction

ON.....Validates Noise Reduction.

OFF.....Invalidates Noise Reduction.

Information

Noise Reduction is always effective during a video-phone call.


<Hands-free>

Switching to Hands-free

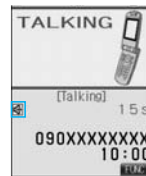
When you switch to Hands-free during a call, sound such as the other party's voice, which is normally heard through the earpiece, will be audible over the speaker.

1 During a call

When Hands-free is activated,  is displayed.

Press  again to switch Hands-free off.

You can switch to Hands-free even during Manner Mode. Manner Mode is reactivated when you switch Hands-free off or end the call. Also, you will still hear sound through the speaker when you activate Manner Mode during a Hands-free call.



During a voice call



During a video-phone call

Information

Keep the FOMA phone well away from your ear when Hands-free is on. Otherwise you could affect or damage your hearing.

When noise of your surroundings or of receiver's end is large, you might hardly hear the other party's voice. Refrain from Hands-free talk and do communications as usual.

Talk into the FOMA phone within a distance of about 50 cm.

<USB Hands-free>

Using Hands-free Compatible Devices

You can connect a Hands-free compatible device (such as car navigator) to the FOMA phone using the FOMA USB cable (option) to make or receive voice calls or video-phone calls from that device.

Refer to the respective instruction manuals for how to operate Hands-free compatible devices.

This function is optional and is coming to be available when Hands-free devices are released.

As of January 2005, Hands-free devices have not appeared in the market.

Information

Screen display or a ring tone for incoming calls is in accordance with the settings of the FOMA phone.

When the ring tone is set to sound from a Hands-free compatible device, the ring tone sounds from that device even when Manner Mode is activated or "Ring volume" of the FOMA phone is set to "Silent".

The receiving operation in Drive Mode works in accordance with the "Drive mode" setting.

The receiving operation while Record Message is activated works in accordance with the "Record message" setting.

If you make a video-phone call from a Hands-free device using the Phonebook, a dialing speed is defined in accordance with that device. The dialing speed is 64K when it is not defined.

When the ring tone is set to sound from the FOMA phone, the FOMA phone works in accordance with "Fold setting" if it is closed

during a call. When the ring tone is set to sound from a Hands-free device, communicating conditions do not vary even if you close the FOMA phone, regardless of "Fold setting".

Receiving a Call

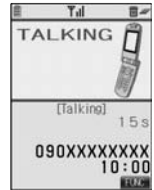
1 When you receive a call, the ring tone sounds and the Call/Charging indicator and Command Navigation key flicker.

You can use "Illumination" to set an illumination pattern for the Call/Charging indicator. To vibrate the phone for incoming calls, set "Phone" of "Vibrator" to other than "OFF". While "Manner mode" or "Super silent" is set, the ring tone does not sound. (See pages 118, 119) You can see the incoming call information on the Private window. "☎" is displayed at the upper right of the phone number for incoming international calls.



2 Press or to take the call.

You can set "Illumination in talk" so that the Call/Charging indicator flickers during a call. When "Answer setting" is set to "Any key answer", the call is placed on hold if you take the call by pressing with the FOMA phone closed. If you have set "Fold setting" to "No tone" or "End the call", the other party hears nothing, and if you have set "Fold setting" to "Tone on", the call hold tone is played back. You can start talking by opening the FOMA phone. "Holding" appears on the Private window. If you close the FOMA phone during a call, the FOMA phone works in accordance with "Fold setting". (See page 62)



One-push answer

When a voice call comes in with the FOMA phone closed, you can answer the call just by pressing the one-push open button and opening the FOMA phone.

You need to set "Phone" of "Open phone" to "Answer" in advance. (See page 62)
 You can also answer the call by opening the FOMA phone with your hand.

Any Key Answer

Voice calls can be taken by pressing through , , icon, icon, icon (top, bottom, left, or right of the Command Navigation key), and icon in addition to or .

When "Answer setting" is set to "Quick silent", you can stop only the ring tone by pressing a certain key.

3 Press to end the call after talking.

Information

During ringing, you can activate Manner Mode by pressing or icon; "Record message" will be activated so that the caller's message can be recorded. You can still take the call during recording by pressing or . (The message until you press or will be recorded. Also, Manner Mode will remain activated after the call ends.)

You might hear a ring tone (ring tone in call) during calls.

If you have subscribed to any of Voice Mail, Call Waiting, or Call Forwarding Services and set "Activate" for the subscribed service, you hear the ring tone of incoming call during a call, and can respond to the call by any of the following:

- Voice Mail ServiceTransfer the call to Voice Mail Service Center. (See page 428)
- Call Waiting ServicePut your current call on hold and take the incoming call. (See page 429)
- Call Forwarding ServiceTransfer the call to the registered transfer destination. (See page 431)

During Drive Mode, the ring tone does not sound and the Call/Charging indicator does not flicker for incoming calls. Incoming calls are recorded as missed calls in Received Call Record.

You cannot receive calls from the phone numbers set for "Call rejection" in "Restrictions". Also, you cannot receive calls from the phone numbers except those set for "Call acceptance".

By setting "Set mute seconds" of "Ringing time", you can specify the time (mute time) from when a call comes in from the phone number not stored in the Phonebook until ringing starts.

You can set "Reject unknown" not to accept calls from the phone numbers not stored in the Phonebook.

You can also use the photo-sending or "Check new message" function during a call. (See page 252)

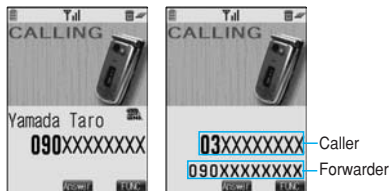
Display for incoming calls

When the Caller ID is provided

If the caller's name, phone number, and image are stored in the Phonebook, the name, phone number, and icon (or image) are displayed. For the forwarded calls, the phone numbers or names of the caller and the forwarder are displayed. (The forwarder's phone number might not be displayed in the case of some forwarders.)

The phone number but not the name will be displayed if the party has been stored in the Phonebook in "Secret mode" or "Secret only mode", or if PIM Lock is activated.

If the same phone number is stored with multiple names in the Phonebook, the name that comes first in the search order (see page 102) is displayed.



When the Caller ID is not provided

The reason for No Caller ID is displayed. (See page 152)

Function Menu while Voice Phone Call Rings

1 While a voice phone call is ringing ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Do the following operation.

Function menu	Operations
Call rejection	You can hang up the phone without answering the call. You cannot reject calls if you have set "Phone" of "Open phone" to "Answer" and the call is received with the FOMA phone closed.
Call forwarding	You can forward the call to the forwarding destination. (See page 431)
Voice mail	You can connect to Voice Mail Service Center. (See page 428)

<Answer Setting>

5 8

Setting Response of Key Operation for Answering Incoming Calls

Setting at purchase
Any key answer

You can set the FOMA phone to receive calls by pressing a key other than and (Any key answer) or to stop the ring tone (Quick silent).

1 **Settings** ▶ Incoming call ▶ Answer setting

Any key answer.....Press any of to , , , , , or to answer the voice phone call.

Quick silent.....When a voice phone call or video-phone call comes in, press any of the to , , , , and keys to stop the ring tone or vibrator. If you set "Open phone" to "Keep ringing", you can stop them by opening the FOMA phone. Even if you stop the ring tone to sound or vibrator to work, the other party hears a ringing tone.


Press or (including for video-phone call) to answer the call after stopping the ring tone or vibrator.

OFF.....You can answer the call only when you press or (including for video-phone call).

Information

If a video-phone call comes in, "Any key answer" is disabled.

While "Manner Mode" is activated, "Any key answer" works even if "Quick silent" has been set.

Even when "Any key answer" or "Quick silent" has been set, the display light switches ON/OFF if you press and hold  for at least one second; "Any key answer" or "Quick silent" does not work.

When "Side keys guard" is set to "OFF", "Any key answer" or "Quick silent" does not work by pressing  with the FOMA phone closed.

While the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone Set with Switch (option) is connected, you can press the switch to receive calls, regardless of "Answer setting". For video-phone calls, the substitutive image is sent to the other party.

If you have set "Open phone" to "Answer", you can answer calls by opening the FOMA phone regardless of "Answer setting".

<Open Phone>

Setting Response for Opening FOMA Phone during Ringing

Setting at purchase
Keep ringing

1 Incoming call ▶ Open phone

Phone.....Sets Open Phone for an incoming voice call.

Video-phone.....Sets Open Phone for an incoming video-phone call.

2 Keep ringing or Answer

Keep ringing.....Does not start talking even if the FOMA phone is opened.

Answer.....Starts talking when the FOMA phone is opened. For video-phone calls, the still image set for "Substitutive image" of "Select image" is sent to the other party.

Information

If you have set "Open phone" to "Answer", you can also start talking by pressing the one-push open button and opening the FOMA phone. (See page 42)

If a call comes in with set to "Answer" and the FOMA phone closed, On Hold (see page 66), Call Rejection (see pages 61, 79), Voice Mail Service (see page 428) and Call Forwarding Service (see page 431) during ringing are not available.

Even if you have set "Open phone" to "Answer", "Keep ringing" works for the call in mute state specified by "Ringing time". "Keep ringing" also works for the call during a call if you have signed up for Call Waiting Service.

<Fold Setting>


Setting Response for Closing FOMA Phone during a Call

Setting at purchase
End the call

1 Incoming call ▶ Fold setting

No tone.....The voice is muted (silenced). Hold tone is not played back. The setting is completed.

Tone on.....The hold tone set for "Holding tone" of "Call response setting" is played to the other party while the FOMA phone is closed.

End the call.....The call is finished. This is the same operation as pressing  during a call. The setting is completed.

2 Tone on

Speaker ON.....Hold tone is played from the speaker.

Speaker OFF.....Hold tone is not played from the speaker.

Information

This function is disabled when the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone Set with Switch (option) is connected. The line is not disconnected even if you close the FOMA phone during a voice call. If you close the FOMA phone during a video-phone call, the substitutive image is sent to the other party with the line connected.

If you close the FOMA phone during a video-phone call with "No tone" activated, a substitutive image is sent to the other party. When "Tone on" is set, the still image selected by "Holding" of "Select image" is sent.

Even if you have selected "End the call" and close the FOMA phone, the functions of i-mode group and Tool group in working Multitask do not end.

If you have selected "End the call" and close the FOMA phone to end a call during i-mode, the display in i-mode prior to the call returns.

Even if you have selected "Tone on", "No tone" works when you close the FOMA phone while "Multi calling" is displayed if you have signed up for Call Waiting Service.

<Received Calls>



Using Received Call Record

The FOMA phone can store the caller's phone numbers and the date and time you received calls in "Received calls". A total of 30 phone numbers of voice phone calls and video-phone calls, and a total of 30 pieces of 64K data transmission and packet transmission are stored respectively.

To store the received date and time in the FOMA phone, set the date and time by "Set time" in advance. When more than 30 calls are received, the older records are automatically deleted.

1



Received calls

All callsDisplays all the data including missed calls.
Missed calls.....Displays the data for missed calls only.

If unknown missed calls are found, the number of the unconfirmed calls is displayed.

The display on the right also comes up by pressing from the Stand-by display.

The latest data is displayed on the top.

Press (**Change**) to display the Received Address List.



<Received Call Record List>
When "All calls" is selected

2

Select a received call record

The Caller ID is displayed if it was provided; and if this caller has been stored in the Phonebook, the phone number, name, and icon are also displayed.

If there was an incoming packet transmission, the sender's APN is displayed.

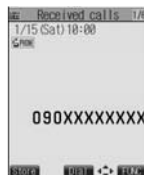
When the other party's phone number is not notified, the reason for no Caller ID is displayed.

When a missed call comes, the ringing time is displayed on the right of the received date and time.

To dial a selected phone number for voice call (or video-phone call), just press (**☎**) or .

(**☎**) or .

To add the record to the Phonebook, press (**Store**). Go to step 2 on page 97.



<Detailed Received Calls display>

Information

If you have set "Missed calls display" of "Ringing time" to "Not display", missed calls in mute state will not be displayed in Received Call Record.

While "PIM lock" is activated, only the phone number is displayed even if the name and icon are stored in the Phonebook.

Further, when "Restrict dialing" is activated, only the phone number is displayed, even when the name and icon are stored in the Phonebook, unless the Phonebook entry has been specified in "Restrict dialing". After releasing "PIM lock" and "Restrict dialing", the name and icon stored in the Phonebook are displayed.

You can make a voice call (or video-phone call) to the most recent phone number in Received Call Record by pressing (**☎**) and then from the Stand-by display.

You cannot save phone numbers of 64K data transmission and packet transmission from Received Call Record to the Phonebook, nor compose new mail messages or Short Messages (SMS) for them.

If you activate "PIM lock" or "Keypad dial lock", the received call records up to that point are all deleted. All records after "PIM lock" or "Keypad dial lock" is activated are retained.

When a call comes in from a party who uses a dial-in phone number, a different phone number might be displayed.

Icons for Redial, Dialed Call Record, and Received Call Record

	Indicates the record that you have received (or made) a voice call.
	Indicates the record that you have received (or made) a video-phone call.
	Indicates the record that you have received (or made) an international call.
	Indicates the record that you have received (or made) an international video-phone call.
	Indicates the record that you have missed a voice call.
	Indicates the record that you have missed a video-phone call.
	Indicates the record that you have missed an international call.
	Indicates the record that you have missed an international video-phone call.
	Indicates the record that you have received a remotely monitored call. When there has been a missed remotely monitored call, "MISS" appears.
	Indicates the record that you have message recorded in "Record message".
	Indicates the record that you have made a call for 64K data transmission.
	Indicates the record that you have received a call for 64K data transmission.
	Indicates the record that you have made a call for packet transmission.
	Indicates the record that you have received a call for packet transmission.
	Indicates the record that you have missed a call for 64K data transmission.
	Indicates the record that you have missed a call for packet transmission.
	Indicates the record that data is received by 64K data transmission or packet transmission when a 64K or packet transmission compliant external device such as personal computer is not connected.








Displayed in light purple for unchecked missed calls.

Function Menu while Received Call Record is Displayed

1 While Received Call Record is displayed ▶ (**FUNC**) ▶ Do the following operation.

Function menu	Operations
Notify caller ID	You can set whether to notify caller ID. (See page 45)
Prefix numbers	You can add prefix numbers. (See page 58)
International dial	You can make international calls. (See page 52)
Multi number	See page 436.
Ringing time	<p>You can display the ringing time for missed calls. Even if you have set "Missed calls display" of "Ringing time" to "Not display", you can check the missed calls in mute state and its ringing time.</p> <p>You cannot operate from the Function menu of the detailed Received Calls display or Missed Call Record.</p> <p>From the display on the right, press to bring up the detailed Received Calls display.</p>
Add to phonebook	You can store data in the Phonebook. (See page 97)
Add desktop icon	You can paste the phone number to the desktop. (See page 134)
Compose message	<p>You can compose a message to send to the phone number set as a mail address.</p> <p>Go to step 3 on page 235.</p> <p>When the phone number and mail address are stored in the Phonebook together, you can compose a message to send to that mail address. When multiple mail addresses are stored, you can compose a message to send to the first mail address.</p>
Compose SMS	<p>You can compose a Short Message (SMS) to send to the phone number set as a mail address.</p> <p>Go to step 3 on page 301.</p>



Function menu	Operations
Received address	You can display the Received Address List. (See page 283)
Delete this	▶ YES To cancel, select "NO" and press  .
Delete selected	▶ Put the check marks for received call records to be deleted ▶  (Finish) ▶ YES "☐" and "☑" switch each time you press  . You can check all items or uncheck all items by pressing  (FUNC) and selecting "Select all/Release all". To cancel, select "NO" and press  .
Delete all	▶ Enter the Terminal Security Code ▶  ▶ YES To cancel, select "NO" and press  . See page 140 for the Terminal Security Code.
Dialing speed	You can set the dialing speed of video-phone calls. (See page 76)
Select image	You can select an image for video-phone calls. (See page 86)

Information

<Delete this><Delete selected><Delete all>

Even if you turn off the FOMA phone, received call records are not deleted.




<Earpiece Volume>

Adjusting Earpiece Volume

Setting at purchase
Level 4

1 Stand-by display ▶  (for at least one second)


You cannot adjust the volume during ringing. Adjust it during a call or standby.





During a voice call, you can press and hold  for at least one second or press   to bring up the Volume Adjustment display.



During a video-phone call, you can also press  or   briefly to bring up the Volume Adjustment display.



<Volume Adjustment display>

2 Use  **to adjust the earpiece volume.**

Adjust the earpiece volume to Level 1 (minimum) through 6 (maximum). To raise the volume, press  or ; to lower it, press  or .

Within two seconds after you bring up the Volume Adjustment display, press  or   to adjust the volume.

<Ring Volume>

Adjusting Ring Volume

Setting at purchase
Level 4

You can adjust the ring volume for incoming calls and mail.

1   **▶ Incoming call ▶ Ring volume**

Phone.....For adjusting the ring volume for incoming voice calls.

Video-phone.....For adjusting the ring volume for incoming video-phone calls.

Mail.....For adjusting the ring volume for incoming i-mode mail, or Short Messages (SMS).

Chat mail.....For adjusting the ring volume for incoming chat mail.

MessageR.....For adjusting the ring volume for incoming Messages R (Request).

MessageF.....For adjusting the ring volume for incoming Messages F (Free).

2 Use to adjust the volume

Step.....The ring tone is silent for about three seconds, and then the volume steps up every three seconds, from Level 1 through Level 6.


Levels 1 to 6Level 1 is the weakest volume and Level 6 the loudest.

SilentThe ring tone does not sound.

Following icons are displayed while the ring volume is set to "Silent"

 : The ring volume for voice calls or video-phone calls is "Silent".

 : The ring volume for mail, chat mail or Messages R/F is "Silent".

 : The ring volume for voice calls, video-phone calls, mail, chat mail, and Messages R/F is "Silent".



Information

You cannot adjust the ring volume during ringing.

<On Hold>

Putting an Incoming Call on Hold

1 During ringing


The FOMA phone makes three rapid beeps for confirmation and the incoming call is put on hold.



















The confirmation tone does not sound when "Phone" of "Ring volume" is "Silent" or while Manner Mode is activated.




The caller hears the hold tone set for "On hold tone" of "Call response setting". For video-phone calls, the still image selected in "On hold" of "Select image" is displayed.



2 Press to release hold and take the call.


If a voice call is on hold, you can also press  to release hold.

If "Answer setting" is set to "Any key answer", you can release hold by pressing , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,  or .

If a video-phone is on hold, the image through your camera is sent to the other party by pressing  to release hold. If you press  or  to release hold, the substitutive image is sent.

Information

The caller is charged for the call even during answer-hold.

If you press  during answer-hold, the call will be disconnected.

If the caller on hold hangs up, the call will be disconnected.

If you have set "Open phone" to "Answer", you cannot use Answer Hold for an incoming call while the FOMA phone is closed.

<Holding>


Putting a Call on Hold during a Call

1 During a call

The other party hears the call-hold tone set for "Holding tone" of "Call response setting". For video-phone calls, the still image set for "Holding" of "Select image" is displayed.

You can put the call on hold by closing the FOMA phone during the call if you have set "Fold setting" to "Tone on".

2 Press or to release hold and take the call.

If a video-phone is on hold, the image through your camera is sent to the other party by pressing  to release hold.

If you press  or , to release hold, the substitutive image is sent.

If you have set "Fold setting" to "Tone on" and put the call on hold by closing, open the FOMA phone or connect the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone Set with Switch (option) to take the call.

If you connect the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone Set with Switch to take the video-phone call, the substitutive image is sent to the caller.

Information

The caller is charged for the call even while the call is on hold.

If the caller on hold hangs up, the call will be disconnected.

If a new call comes in while the current call is placed on hold, the call on hold during call is released.

"Fold setting" is set to "End the call" at the time of purchase. Therefore, you can end calls by closing the FOMA phone.

If "Illumination in talk" is not set to "OFF", the illumination flickers even during call-hold or No Tone mode.

<Call Response Setting>**Setting Hold Tone**

You can set an announcement played to the other end during on hold.

	Setting at purchase
On hold tone	Tone 1
Holding tone	JESU JOY OF MEN'S DESIRING

1

Talk > Call response setting > On hold tone/Holding tone

- Tone 1**The announcement "I cannot answer the call. Hold the line, or redial after a while" is played back in Japanese. You can set Tone 1 for "On hold tone" only.
- Tone 2**The announcement "I cannot answer the call. Redial after a while" is played back in Japanese. You can set Tone 2 for "On hold tone" only.
- JESU JOY OF MEN'S**The melody plays. You can set Melody for "Holding tone" only.
- Voice announce 1**A voice recorded by "Voice announce" is played to the caller. If it is not recorded, "Voice announce 1" is not displayed.
- Voice announce 2**A voice recorded by "Voice announce" is played to the caller. If it is not recorded, "Voice announce 2" is not displayed.

Information

Press (Play) to hear the announcement or melody from the beginning while setting a hold tone. Press to end the demonstration playback.

Whole part of long titles may not be displayed due to restriction of the display size.

<Drive Mode>**Using Driving Mode**

	Setting at purchase
	Release

Drive Mode (the guidance function during driving) is an automatic answering service for safety driving. During Drive Mode, callers will hear a message that you are driving a vehicle, and then they will be disconnected.

1

Stand-by display (for at least one second)

Drive Mode is activated and is displayed.

To deactivate Drive Mode, perform the same operation.

Information

If you dial emergency call phone numbers "110", "119", "118" during Drive Mode, Drive Mode is released.

Note that "Record message" is disabled even when it is set to "ON" because the Drive Mode message has priority.

You can activate/deactivate Drive Mode only from the Stand-by display. You can activate/deactivate Drive Mode even when "圏外" is displayed.

You can make calls as usual even during Drive Mode.

When Drive Mode and Manner Mode are activated simultaneously, Drive Mode has priority.

If a "User unset" voice call comes in while "Caller ID request" is set to "Activate", Drive Mode will be deactivated and the announcement requesting Caller ID will be played.

During Drive Mode

- Even when a call comes in or data transmission arrives, the ring tone does not sound. The "Missed call" icon appears on the display and the call is stored in "Received calls". The caller will hear a message that you are driving a vehicle, and then be disconnected. However, when the power is off or "圏外" is displayed, the out-of-service-area message will be played instead.
- The ring tone does not sound and the Call/Charging indicator does not flicker even when mail or a message comes in. In addition, the activated vibrator does not work.
- The ring tone for 64K data transmission, alarm tone, and charging confirmation tone do not sound, and a melody while i-opp! is running does not play.

When "Voice Mail Service" is activated during Drive Mode

The FOMA phone does not ring for incoming calls, but calls are connected to Voice Mail Service Center. The "Missed call" icon appears on the display and the call is stored in "Received calls".

The caller will hear a message that you are driving and the call will be connected to Voice Mail Service Center; then, the call will be connected to the Center automatically.

However, if the ringing time for "Voice Mail Service" is set to 0 seconds, the power is off, or the FOMA phone is out of the service area, the Voice Mail message will be played instead. Note that in this case the call will not be indicated by the "Missed call" icon and will not be kept in "Received calls".

When "Call Forwarding Service" is activated during Drive Mode

The call is forwarded to the specified forwarding phone number without connecting to your FOMA phone. The "Missed call" icon appears on the display and the call is stored in "Received Calls".

The caller hears an announcement to the effect that the call is forwarded because you are driving, and the call is forwarded automatically.

However, if the ringing time for "Call Forwarding Service" is set to 0 seconds, the power is off, or the FOMA phone is out of the service area, the Call Forwarding message will be played instead. Note that in this case the call will not be indicated by "Missed call" icon and will not be kept in "Received Calls".

Relationship between incoming calls during Drive Mode and respective services



Service	Responses to Incoming Voice Calls	Responses to Incoming Video-phone Calls
Voice Mail Service	Plays to the caller the message that you are driving, and then takes the caller's message.	Displays the message "Driving mode" on the caller's phone and the call is not connected.
Call Forwarding Service	Plays to the caller the message that you are driving, and then forwards the call.	Forwards the call to the forwarding destination.
Nuisance Call Blocking Service	Plays to the caller the Reject Call message if the call is from a phone number stored as a nuisance number.	Displays the message "Failed to connect" on the caller's phone and the call is not connected.
Caller ID Display Request Service	Plays to the caller the Caller ID Request message when the Caller ID is not provided. Plays to the caller the message you are driving and ends the call when the Caller ID is provided.	Displays the message "Failed to connect" on the caller's phone and the call is not connected when the Caller ID is not provided. Displays the message "Driving mode" on the caller's phone and the call is not connected when the Caller ID is provided.

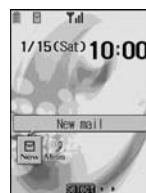
If You could not Answer an Incoming Call

When you have not been able to answer calls (Missed calls) or you have new mail, or when a message for record message or Voice Mail Service is recorded, the "Notification icon" appears on the Stand-by display. You can skip to that function by selecting the icon. See page 136 for details about icons.



Stand-by display

Press  or  to return to the former display.





2 Use to select an icon

When you select an icon, its explanation comes up.




Information

You cannot make calls in the step for displaying the confirmation display from "Notification icon". Similarly, if you have set "Operation preferred" for "Alarm setting", the alarm does not work in this step.

Press  or  to return to the Stand-by display and then perform the operation.

Even when the "New mail" icon is not displayed, the i-mode Center may hold new mail that has not been received by the FOMA phone. Also, even when the "Voice mail" icon is not displayed, the Voice Mail Center may hold a message.

"Notification icon" is deleted when each function is executed. Press and hold  for at least one second to delete all the "Notification icons". The "Missed call" icon will not be displayed if a missed call stops calling in mute state and "Missed calls display" of "Ringing time" is set to "Not display".

<Record Message>



Recording Messages when You cannot Answer the Call

When Record Message is activated, you can play an answer message and can record caller's message even if you have not signed up for Voice Mail Service.

You can record a total of five messages of voice calls and video-phone calls. Each message can be recorded for up to 20 seconds.

Activate Record Message

1 Record message

ON.....Activates Record Message.
OFF.....Deactivates Record Message. The setting is completed.




Record Message does not work when five Record Message items have already been recorded. Delete unnecessary messages.

Setting at purchase

Record message	OFF
Answer message	Japanese 1 (when "Record message" is set to "ON")
Ringing time	8 seconds (when "Record message" is set to "ON")


2 Select an answer message

- Japanese 1The message "I cannot take your call now. Please leave your name and message after the beep in 20 seconds. Even for a video-phone call, you can leave a voice message only." is played back in Japanese.
- Japanese 2A more familiar message "I cannot take your call now. Please leave your message after the beep. Even for a video-phone call, you can leave a voice message only. Sorry." is played back in Japanese.
- EnglishThe message "I can't take your call now. Please leave the message. When you call by video phone, you can leave a voice message." is played back.
- Voice announce 1A message and sound recorded for "Voice announce" is played back. This item does not appear if it has not been recorded.
- Voice announce 2A message and sound recorded for "Voice announce" is played back. This item does not appear if it has not been recorded.

Press   to play back the answer message. You can stop it by pressing .



3 Enter the ringing time (seconds).

Enter from "000" to "120" in three digits.

Not to change the ringing time, just press  without entering a time.

You cannot set the same ringing (response) time for Remote Observation, Automatic Answer and Record Message. Set different times for each.


Icons while Record Message is activated

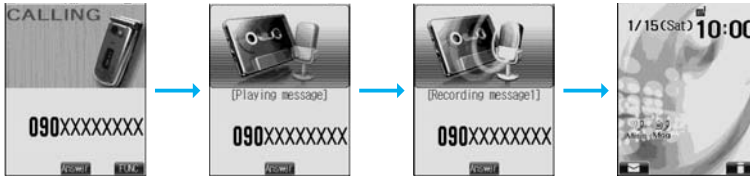
 -  : Indicates the number of recorded messages.

Incoming calls when Record Message is set to "ON"

After the ringing time elapses, the caller hears the answer message. For a video-phone call, the still image set for "Preparing" or "Select image" is displayed on the other party's display.




Then recording starts. For a video-phone call, the still image set for "Record message" of "Select image" is displayed on the other party's display.

When recording ends, the "Missed call" icon and "Record message" icon appear on the Desktop. Select the "Recorded message" icon and press ; then the display for "Play/Erase msg." appears.



To take a call while the answer message is played or a message is being recorded.

Press  or .

For video-phone calls, press  to send the image through your camera, and  or  to send the substitutive image.

Information

Record Message does not work when "国外" is displayed.

When Drive Mode and Record Message are simultaneously activated, the former has priority and the latter does not work.

The priority order for answer message is: "Setting by phone number" "Setting by group" "Setting by Record Message"

If "Voice announce 1" or "Voice announce 2" selected as an answer message is deleted, the answer message will be set to "Japanese 1".

When "Voice Mail Service" or "Call Forwarding Service" is set at the same time as Record Message, the priority depends on the ringing time set for "Voice Mail Service" or "Call Forwarding Service". To give Record Message priority, set its ringing time to be shorter than that set for "Voice Mail Service" or "Call Forwarding Service".

Even when you do this, Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service will work, if there are already five Record Message items. When the mute time set for "Set mute seconds" of "Ringing time" is longer than the ringing time for Record Message, the Record Message function starts without ringing. To have the ringing action before Record Message starts, set the longer time for Record Message than the mute times.

If there are already five Record Message items, subsequent callers cannot leave messages and will not hear the answer message. Delete the recorded messages so that new messages can be left. (See page 71)

You cannot receive a call from a third party while a record message is being recorded. The third party will hear the busy tone.

You can record messages during Manner Mode even when Record Message is not set to "ON". To do so, set Manner Mode to "Original", and "Record message" to "ON" there.

Only the voice is recorded for Record Message even when a video-phone call comes in.

Important

The saved contents may be lost owing to a malfunction, repair, or other mishandling of the FOMA phone. We at DoCoMo cannot take any responsibility for the loss of data, so you are advised to take a note of data stored in the FOMA phone and store them separately.

Set Answer Message by Phone Number

You can set an answer message for each phone number stored in the FOMA phone's Phonebook.

1

Detailed Phonebook display (FUNC) Utilities Answer message

Follow step 2 of "Activate Record Message" on page 69.

"Answer message" is indicated by " ".

See page 99 for how to search the Phonebook entries.

To release an answer message for a phone number, perform the same operation.

Information

You cannot set this function for Phonebook entries stored in "Secret mode", "Secret only mode", or in the UIM.

Note that the setting for "Answer message" of "Utilities" is valid only when the Caller ID is provided. It is advisable to activate "Caller ID request" in advance.

Note that this function is released when you change the set phone number.

To change the set answer message, release the current setting and proceed.

Use "Utilities" to check which phone number in the Phonebook is set, or to release the setting.

Set Answer Message by Group



You can set an answer message for each group of the Phonebook in the FOMA phone. If you have set the answer message by phone number, that setting has priority.

1 **Group setting** **Select a group** **(FUNC)** **Utilities**
Answer message

Follow step 2 of "Activate Record Message" on page 69.

"Answer message" is indicated by " ".

To release an answer message for a group, perform the same operation.

Information

You cannot set an answer message for "Group 00" and groups stored in the UIM.

Note that the setting for "Answer message" of "Utilities" is valid only when the Caller ID is provided. It is advisable to activate "Caller ID request" in advance.

To change the set answer message, release the current setting and proceed.

If you store the same phone number in multiple groups, the answer message set for the group of the phone number which is accessed initially in the search order of column search has priority.

You can set this function for either the group in which secret and ordinary Phonebook entries are stored together or the group in which only secret entries are stored; however this function is disabled if you receive a call from the secret entry.

Use "Utilities" to check which group is set, or to release the setting.

<Quick Record Message>

Recording Messages when You cannot Answer the Call while Ringing

You can activate Record Message for incoming calls even when it is not activated.

1 **During ringing** or
Manner Mode is also activated.

The caller will hear the answer message and then can leave you a record message.

Record Message does not work when five record messages items have already been recorded.

When "Side keys guard" is set to "ON", you cannot activate Record Message by pressing with the FOMA phone closed.

<Play/Erase Message>

Playing/Erasing Record Messages/Voice Memo

1 **Play/Erase msg.**

Recorded items are indicated by "PHONE" (for voice calls) or "PHONE" (for video-phone calls). If a voice memo is recorded, " " is attached.





2 Select a record message or voice memo

A beep sounds and playback starts.

When playback ends, a double-beep sounds and the message "Playing" is cleared from the display.

When the Caller ID is provided, the caller's phone number, date and time of the call, and Record Message No. are displayed during play back. If the caller is stored in the Phonebook, his/her name is also displayed.


The date and time of recording are displayed only when "Set time" is set.

If the caller's phone number appears on the display while playing back Record Message, you can make a voice call (video-phone call) to that phone number by pressing  ().

To use for playback

From the Stand-by display, press  to play back the most recent message.

To skip to next message






Each time you press  during playback, messages are played back in the following order; the next new message ... the oldest record message voice memo.

To cancel playback midway

Press ,  or .

Function Menu of Playing/Erasing Record Message

1 Play/Erase msg. () Do the following operation.

Function menu	Operations
Play	You can play back a message.
Delete this	<p>▶ YES</p> <p>To cancel, select "NO" and press .</p> <p>You can erase a message also by pressing  () during playing.</p>
Delete rec. msg.	<p>You can erase all record messages.</p> <p>▶ YES</p> <p>To cancel, select "NO" and press .</p>
Delete all	<p>You can erase all record messages and a voice memo.</p> <p>▶ YES</p> <p>To cancel, select "NO" and press .</p>

Information

While "Received calls" of "Record display set" is set to "OFF", you cannot play/erase record messages. Record messages and a voice memo cannot be erased during a call.

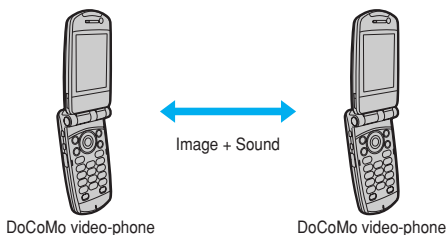
Making/Receiving Video-phone Calls

About Video-phone	74
Making a Video-phone Call	75
Receiving a Video-phone Call	78
Using Chara-den	79
Useful Functions for Video-phone Calls	81
Setting an Image for Video-phone Calls	83
Setting Image Quality for Video-phone Calls	<Moving Image Quality> 85
Turning Camera On/Off Automatically when Making a Video-phone Call	<Camera Image Sending> 85
Changing Image Displays for Video-phone Calls	<Select Image> 85
Redialing as a Voice Call when a Video-phone Call cannot be Connected	<Voice Call Auto Switch> 87
Setting Remote Observation	<Remote Observation> 87
Setting Display for Video-phone Calls	<Video-phone Display Setting> 90

About Video-phone

When you and the other party are both using DoCoMo video-phones, you can see each other during a call.

You can use the video-phone function between the phones supporting the DoCoMo video-phones.



DoCoMo video-phones conform to 3G-324M, which is the international standard for 3GPP. You cannot connect the video-phone to phones that are using a different format.

3GPP (Third Generation Partnership Project):

This is the regional standards organization for developing common technical specifications for third-generation mobile telecommunication systems (IMT-2000).

3G-324M:

This is the international standard for the third generation of mobile video-phones.

Dialing speed of video-phone calls

64K: Transmits at 64 kbps of dialing speed.

32K: Transmits at 32 kbps of dialing speed.

Display during video-phone calls

---Image through other party's camera Image through your camera Call duration
 ---Present time Status

- | | |
|---|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> : 64K transmitting : 32K transmitting : Voice sending/receiving (gray): Voice sending/receiving failed ¹ : Image sending/receiving (gray): Image sending/receiving failed ² : Photo image sending : Substitutive image sending : Chara-den talking | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> : Hands-free ON : Night Mode : Chara-den Whole Action mode : Chara-den Parts Action mode : Send DTMF Mode |
|---|--|



¹ When voice sending fails, your voice cannot be heard by the other party.

When voice receiving fails, you cannot hear the other party's voice.

² When image sending fails, the image through your camera cannot be viewed by the other party.

When image receiving fails, you cannot view the image through other party's camera.

When voice or image sending/receiving fails, it does not recover automatically. You need to make the video-phone call again.

Information

You can also set to talk over the video-phone sending the image set for "Substitutive image". (See page 82)

Note that you will still be charged for the digital transmission, not the voice calls.

You cannot make a video-phone call during a voice call or while exchanging data using packet transmission.

Making a Video-phone Call

1 Enter the other party's phone number.

If you press or to dial, the voice phone call is made even when an image to send to the other party is selected by "Select image" or even when "Dialing speed" is set to "64K" or "32K". Press (Store) to store the entered phone number in the Phonebook. Go to step 2 on page 97. You are advised to dial at 64K to have a video-phone call between FOMA phones.



2 Talk when the other party comes online

"" or "" will blink at the upper right of the display during video-phone dialing and light steadily during the call.

You can switch to Hands-free during a call by pressing .

(See page 59)

You can press numeric keys to send touch-tone signals during a call.

However, switch to the DTMF transmission mode if during a Chara-den call. (See page 84)

If you close the FOMA phone during a call, the FOMA phone works in accordance with the setting of "Fold setting". (See page 62)

When the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone Set with Switch (option) is connected, you can hear the caller's voice from the earphone. (See page 421)

During a video-phone call, you can press to send the substitutive image to the other party.

To resume sending the image through your camera, press again.

You can use "Camera image sending" to select whether to send the image through your camera to the other party.

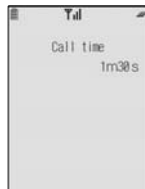
Press during a call to put the call on hold. (See page 66)



The digital communication charges start from this display.



3 Press to end the call after talking.



When a video-phone call cannot be connected

When a video-phone call cannot be connected, the reason is displayed. (The displayed reason might not be the same as the actual reason depending on the dialed party's phone and contract for network services.)

Messages	Reasons
Check the number and retry	You have dialed a wrong phone number.
Busy	The line is busy or during packet transmission.
Out of service area or power off	The dialed party's phone is out of the service area or turned off.
Driving mode	The dialed party's phone is in Drive Mode.
Select on for Call ID Notification	The Caller ID is not notified. (when dialing V live or visual nets)
Your call is being forwarded	When forwarding.
Failed to connect	Re-dial with "Notify Caller ID" set to "ON". • The message might be displayed in cases other than the above.

Auto-redialing

If the video-phone call is not connected, dialing at 32K or the voice call is automatically made.

	Voice call auto SW "ON"	Voice call auto SW "OFF"
Could not connect by dialing at 64K.	Dials again at 32K.	Dials again at 32K.
Could not connect by dialing at 32K.	Dials again by the voice call.	Does not dial again.

The video-phone call by 32K speed is provided to connect with PHSs and similar devices that cannot connect at 64K depending on the network conditions. When you dial a 64K video-phone call to a phone that can only connect at 32K, the dialing speed will be switched automatically to 32K.

The same digital transmission charge applies to the 32K video-phone connection and 64K digital connection.

Video-phone calls cannot be connected to phones if they do not support the video-phone function, are out of the service area, or are switched off. If you have set "Voice call auto Switch" to "ON" and attempt to dial a phone that does not have the video-phone function, the video-phone call will be cut off and the number will be redialed as a voice call. Note that this setting might not work if you call an ISDN synchronous 64K or PIAFS access point or an ISDN video-phone that does not support 3G-324M (as of January 2005), or if you dial the wrong number. Nevertheless, you could be charged for the call.

Once the video-phone call has started communications, redialing as the voice call will not be made.

Information

Note that when you make a video-phone call while sending a substitutive image, you will be charged for the digital transmission. You can make video-phone calls to any DoCoMo video-phone, no matter the type.

If you dial 110, 119 or 118 using the video-phone function, the number will automatically dial out as a voice call.

You cannot receive mail and Messages R/F during video-phone calls. Incoming mail and Messages R/F will be held at the i-mode Center. You can retrieve them using "Check new message", when you end the video-phone call. However, you can receive the Short Message (SMS) during a video-phone call.

During Hands-free use, be sure to keep the FOMA phone away from your ears. Otherwise, you could affect or damage your hearing.

If the battery runs low during a video-phone call, the message "Recharge battery" appears and the substitutive image is sent to the other party. However, if you set Chara-den for a substitutive image, the "Pre-installed" substitutive image is displayed. If you charge the battery during a video-phone call, the image set for "Substitutive image" of "Select image" is displayed.

You cannot dial video-phone calls by entering the phone number when "Keypad dial lock", "Restrict dialing" or "Self mode" is activated.

The International Video-phone call is available using the DoCoMo International Call Service "WORLD CALL". (See page 50)

Function Menu while entering Phone Number

1 While entering a phone number   Do the following operation.

Function menu	Operations
Notify caller ID	You can select whether to notify caller ID. (See page 45)
Prefix numbers	You can add prefix numbers. (See page 58)
International dial	You can make international calls. (See page 52)
Multi number	See page 436.
Add to phonebook	You can store data in the Phonebook. (See page 97)
Compose message	You can compose a message to send to the phone number set as a mail address. Go to step 3 on page 235.
Dialing speed	You can set the dialing speed per call for a video-phone call. 64K For dialing video-phone calls at 64K. 32K For dialing video-phone calls at 32K.
Select image	You can select an image for video-phone calls. (See page 86)

Information**<Compose message>**

When the phone number and mail address are stored in the Phonebook together, you can compose a message to send to that mail address. When multiple mail addresses are stored, you can compose a message to send to the first mail address.

<Dialing speed>

The priority order for Dialing Speed is: "Setting by call" "Setting by phone number" "Setting by group".

The dialing speed is set for just the one call (dial-out). Redial and Dialed Call Record do not store the speed.

This setting will be canceled if you make a voice call after setting the dialing speed.

Set Dialing Speed by Phone Number

You can set dialing speed for each phone number stored in the FOMA phone's Phonebook.

1 Detailed Phonebook display (FUNC) Utilities Dialing speed

64KFor dialing video-phone calls at 64K.

32KFor dialing video-phone calls at 32K.

"Dialing speed" is indicated by " ".

See page 99 for how to search the Phonebook.

To release the dialing speed for a phone number, perform the same operation.

Information

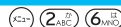
You cannot set the dialing speed for the Phonebook entries stored in "Secret mode" or "Secret only mode", or in the UIM.

Note that this setting will be released if you change the phone number in the Phonebook entry.

To change the set dialing speed, release the current setting and then proceed.

Use "Utilities" to check which phone number in the Phonebook is set, or to release the setting.

Set Dialing Speed by Group



You can set dialing speed for each group of the Phonebook in the FOMA phone.

If you set the dialing speed by phone number, that setting has priority.

1 Group setting Select a group (FUNC) Utilities Dialing speed

64KFor dialing video-phone calls at 64K.

32KFor dialing video-phone calls at 32K.

"Dialing speed" is indicated by " ".

To release the dialing speed for a group, perform the same operation.

Information

You cannot set the dialing speed for "Group 00" and the groups in the UIM.

To change the set dialing speed, release the current setting and then proceed.

If the same phone number is stored in multiple groups, the dialing speed set for the group of the phone number which is accessed initially in the search order of column search has priority.

You can set this function for either the group in which secret and ordinary Phonebook entries are stored together or the group in which only secret entries are stored.

Use "Utilities" to check which group is set, or to release the setting.

Receiving a Video-phone Call

When you answer a video-phone call, your image and the caller's image are displayed. You can answer video-phone calls without sending the image through your camera to the caller's display (Substitutive image answering).

1 When you receive a video-phone call, "Incoming V.phone" is displayed, the ring tone sounds and the Call/Charging indicator and Command Navigation key flicker.


You can use "Illumination" to set an illumination pattern for the Call/Charging indicator.

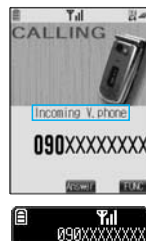
To vibrate the phone for incoming calls, set "Video-phone" of "Vibrator" to other than "OFF".

While "Manner mode" or "Super silent" is set, the ring tone does not sound. (See pages 118, 119)

You can see the incoming call information on the Private window.



"☎" is displayed at the upper right of the phone number for an incoming international video-phone call.

Press  during ringing to put the call on hold. (See page 66)



2 Press to answer the video-phone call.

You can send the image through your camera to the other party.

Press  or  to take a video-phone call, and the substitutive image is sent to the other party.

When "Answer setting" is set to "Quick silent", you can stop only the ring tone by pressing a certain key.

"Any key answer" is disabled.

If you take the video-phone call by pressing the switch of Flat-plug

Earphone/Microphone Set with Switch (option) or by using Auto answer, the substitutive image is sent to the other party. (See page 422)

You can switch to Hands-free during a call by pressing . (See page 59)

Press  during a call and you can switch between your photo image and substitutive image for sending to the other party.

If you close the FOMA phone during a call, the FOMA phone works in accordance with the setting of "Fold setting".

(See page 62)



One-push answer

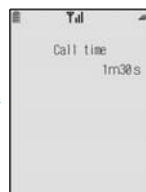
When a video-phone call comes in with the FOMA phone closed, you can answer the video-phone call just by pressing the one-push open button and opening the FOMA phone.

The still image set for "Substitutive image" of "Select image" is sent to the other party.

You need to set "Video-phone" of "Open phone" to "Answer" in advance.

You can also answer the call by opening the FOMA phone with your hands.

3 Press to end the call after talking.



Function Menu while Video-phone Call Rings

1 While a video-phone call is ringing ► (i) (FUNC) ► Do the following operation.

Function menu	Operations
Call rejection	You can hang up the phone without answering the call. You cannot reject calls if you have set "Video-phone" of "Open phone" to "Answer" and the call is received with the FOMA phone closed.
Call forwarding	You can forward the call to the forwarding destination. (See page 431)

Information

The substitutive image is displayed if the caller's image is not received during the call because of the caller's settings.

Video-phone calls cannot be connected to Voice Mail Service Center, even when Voice Mail has been activated; instead receiving motion of a video-phone call continues.

Even if Call Forwarding Service is set to "Activate", the call is not forwarded unless the forwarding destination is a phone compatible with the video-phone conforming to 3G-324M (see page 74). Confirm the phone you are forwarding the call to and then activate the service. An announcement to the effect that the call is forwarded is not played to the caller. (When the caller uses the FOMA P700i, the message to the effect that the call is forwarded is displayed.)

If a video-phone call comes in from the phone number set to be rejected by "Nuisance Call Blocking Service", the call is rejected and the announcement for rejecting the call is not played back.

You cannot receive mail and Messages R/F during video-phone calls. Incoming mail and Messages R/F will be held at the i-mode center. You can retrieve them using "Check new message", when you end the video-phone call. However, you can receive the Short Messages (SMS) during a video-phone call.

During Hands-free use, be sure to keep the FOMA phone away from your ears. Otherwise, you could affect or damage your hearing.

If the battery runs low during a video-phone call, the message "Recharge battery" appears and the substitutive image is sent to the other party. However, if you set Chara-den for a substitutive image, the "Pre-installed" substitutive image is displayed. If you charge the battery during a video-phone call, the image set for "Substitutive image" of "Select image" is displayed.

During Drive Mode, the ring tone does not sound and the Call/Charging indicator does not flicker for incoming video-phone calls.

Incoming calls are recorded as missed calls in the Received Call Record.

Note that when you make a video-phone call sending a substitutive image, you will be charged for the digital transmission.

Using Chara-den

You can send a Chara-den image instead of the image through your camera. See page 367 for the Chara-den image.

Set by Call

You can select a Chara-den image to set for making a video-phone call.

1 Chara-den display/Chara-den List ► (i) (FUNC) ► Video-phone dial

Go to step 1 on page 75.

See page 368 for the Chara-den operations.

Information

The priority order for sending substitutive images to the other party is; "Setting by call" "Setting by phone number" "Setting by group" "Chara-den image stored in Phonebook" "Select image".

The setting applies just for the one call (dial-out). The settings for "Camera image sending" and "Select image" do not change.

Further, the setting is not stored in Redial/Dialled Call Record.

The setting will be canceled if you make a voice call after operating for "Video-phone dial".

Set by Phone Number

You can set a Chara-den image for each phone number stored of the Phonebook in the FOMA phone as a substitutive image for a video-phone call.

- 1 Detailed Phonebook display  (FUNC) > Utilities > Chara-den setting
> Select a Chara-den 

"Chara-den setting" is indicated by " ".

See page 99 for how to search the Phonebook.

To release Chara-den setting for a phone number, perform the same operation.

Information

You cannot set this function for Phonebook entries stored as "Secret mode", "Secret only mode", or in the UIM.

Note that this function is released when you change the set phone number.

To change the set Chara-den, release the current setting and proceed.

Use "Utilities" to check which phone number in the Phonebook is set, or to release the setting.

Set by Group

You can set a Chara-den image for each group of the Phonebook in the FOMA phone as a substitutive image for a video-phone call. If you have set a Chara-den image by phone number, that setting has priority.

- 1   > Group setting > Select a group  (FUNC) > Utilities
> Chara-den setting > Select a Chara-den 

"Chara-den setting" is indicated by " ".

To release Chara-den setting for a group, perform the same operation.

Information

You cannot set for "Group 00" and groups in the UIM.

To change the set Chara-den image, release the current setting and proceed.

If you store the same phone number in multiple groups, the Chara-den image set for the group of the phone number which is accessed initially in the search order of column search has priority.

You can set this function for either the group in which secret and ordinary Phonebook entries are stored together or the group in which only secret entries are stored.

Use "Utilities" to check which group is set, or to release the setting.

Substitutive Image

Setting at purchase
ブンブン (Dimo)

You can set a Chara-den image for "Substitutive image" of "Select image".

- 1 Chara-den display/Chara-den List/Chara-den Recording display  (FUNC)
> Substitute image

Information

While PIM Lock is activated, a "Pre-installed" substitutive image is sent.

If you have deleted a Chara-den image set as a substitutive image, "ブンブン (Dimo)" is sent. If "ブンブン (Dimo)" is deleted, "Pre-installed" substitutive image is sent.

Switch Chara-den

You can switch a Chara-den image during a Chara-den call.

- 1 During a Chara-den call  (FUNC) > Chara-den setup > Switch chara-den
> Select the Chara-den image to be displayed 

Action List

You can display the list for actions that you can operate.

1 During a Chara-den call ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Chara-den setup ▶ Action list

You can also display Action List by pressing (X-act).

Select an action and press (OK) to execute the action.

You can check the details of action by pressing (Detail).

Change Action

Setting at purchase
Whole Action Mode

You can switch the action between the Whole Action mode and the Parts Action mode.

Whole Action mode makes an animation character “laugh” or “weep” expressing his or her sentiment by whole aspect.

Parts Action mode makes the animation character “raise right hand” or do other actions expressing his or her sentiment by part aspect.

1 During a Chara-den call ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Chara-den setup ▶ Change action

The Parts Action mode is switched to the Whole Action mode, and the Whole Action mode is switched to the Parts Action mode.

You can switch modes also by pressing (M).

Switch Substitutive Image

You can switch a substitutive image to send to the other party to a still image of “Original” of “Select image”.

1 During a Chara-den call ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Chara-den setup ▶ SW subst’ve image

Information

While PIM Lock is activated, a “Pre-installed” substitutive image is sent.

Useful Functions for Video-phone Calls

Switch Cameras

At video-phone camera start-up
Inside camera

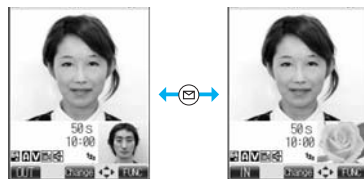
You can switch the photo image to be sent to the other party from through the inside camera to through the outside camera.

1 During a video-phone call ▶ (M) (OUT)

Press (M) (IN) again to return to the previous camera.

You can switch cameras also by pressing (FUNC), selecting “Outside camera” or “Inside camera” from the Function menu, and pressing (OK).

This setting here is only effective for the current video-phone call.



Information

When switching the cameras, a still image appears but it is not sent to the other party.

Close-up


You can take a close-up shot during a video-phone call. (See page 170)


Send Substitutive Images


You can switch the image to be sent to the other party, from the image through your camera to the still image or Chara-den image set as the substitutive image.

1 During a video-phone call ▶

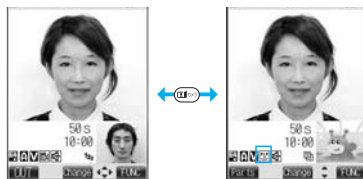
The camera switches off and the substitutive image is sent to the other party.

"" is displayed while the still substitutive image is being sent.

However, "" appears if you have set a Chara-den image for a substitutive image (in Chara-den call).

Press  again to switch from the substitutive image to the image through your camera.

If you have set "Chara-den" for the substitutive image, the Chara-den image will be sent to the other party. During Chara-den call, you can operate the keys to add action to the Chara-den image. You can also synchronize your voice with the mouth of the Chara-den image. (See page 369)



© BVIG

About substitutive image to be sent

You can set the substitutive image by following the four functions described below:

- Chara-den image set by "Utilities" (set by phone number)
- Chara-den image set by "Utilities" (set by group)
- Chara-den image stored in the Phonebook
- A still image or Chara-den image set for "Substitutive image" of "Select image"

In addition, you can set a Chara-den image by every call. (See page 79)

The priority order of the substitutive image to be sent to the other party is; "Setting by call" "Setting by phone number" "Setting by group" "Chara-den image stored in Phonebook" "Select image".


Information

Note that "Setting by phone number", "Setting by group", and "Chara-den image stored in Phonebook" are disabled when a video-phone call comes in without notifying the Caller ID.


While PIM Lock is activated, a "Pre-installed" substitutive image is sent.

If you have deleted a Chara-den image set as a substitutive image, "ブンブン (Dimo)" is sent. If "ブンブン (Dimo)" is deleted, "Pre-installed" substitutive image is sent.

To answer a video-phone call sending a substitutive image

Press  or  to answer a video-phone call during ringing.

The substitutive image is sent to the other party.

To switch the substitutive image to the image through your camera, press  .


Information

Note that when you make a video-phone call sending a substitutive image, you will be charged for the digital transmission.

Switch Image Display Positions

You can switch the display locations of your image and the other party's image.

1 During a video-phone call ▶

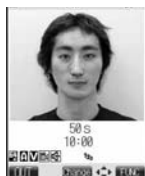
Press  to switch displays as follows.



The image through other party's camera appears on the main display.



The image through your camera appears on the main display.



The image through your camera only appears.







The image through other party's camera only appears.

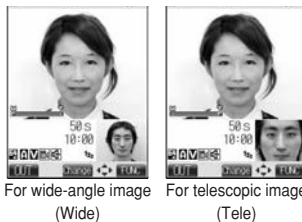


You can adjust zoom magnification for the photo image to be sent to the other party. During a video-phone call, the maximum magnification is 2.0 times for the inside camera and 2.1 times for the outside camera.

1 During a video-phone call ▶ Use to adjust the zoom magnification

The zoom magnification changes each time you press  (telescopic image) or  (wide-angle image).

To change the magnification continuously, press and hold  (telescopic image) or  (wide-angle image).



Information

The original zoom setting returns when the video-phone call ends.

Even if you switch cameras during a video-phone call (see page 81), the magnification for the inside camera and outside camera is retained.

Even if you switch the image being sent to the other party to a substitutive image, and then switch back to the image through your camera, the zoom magnification is retained.

Setting an Image for Video-phone Calls

Function Menu while on Video-phone Call

1 While on a video-phone call ▶ () ▶ Do the following operation.

Function menu	Operations
V-phone settings (Visual preference)	You can set the qualities of images from the other party and from your side. ▶ Visual preference Normal.....For normal image quality and motion quality. (At video-phone camera start-up) Prefer img qual .....For better image quality. Prefer motion spd....For better motion quality.
V-phone settings (Brightness)	You can adjust the brightness of the photo image to be sent to the other party. ▶ Brightness +2 .....Appreciably brighter. +1 .....Somewhat brighter. 0 .....Normal. (Setting at purchase) -1 .....Somewhat darker. -2 .....Appreciably darker.
V-phone settings (White balance)	You can adjust the colors of the photo image to be sent to the other party, to make the colors look more natural. ▶ White balance Fine weather .....For outdoors in fine weather. Cloudy weather .....For outdoors in overcast conditions or in the shade. Automatic.....Adjusts the white balance automatically. (Setting at purchase) Light bulb .....For artificial lighting.

Function menu	Operations
V-phone settings (Color mode set)	You can switch the color tone of the photo image to be sent to the other party. ▶ Color mode set Normal .....Sets a normal tone. (At video-phone camera start-up) Reverse .....Switches to a negative tone. Sepia .....Switches to a sepia tone. Monochrome .....Switches to a black-and-white tone.
V-phone settings (Night mode)	You can lengthen the camera's exposure time to make the photo image to be sent clear in a dark place. ▶ Night mode ON .....Sets Night Mode. OFF .....Releases Night Mode. (At video-phone camera start-up)
Chara-den setup	You can select the setting for Chara-den calls. You can set only during a Chara-den call. Switch chara-den .....Switches the Chara-den image. (See page 80) Action list .....Displays the action list for the Chara-den image. (See page 81) Change action .....Switches the action mode. (See page 81) SW subst' ve image .....Switches a substitutive image to send to the other party to a still image set for "Original" of "Select image".(See page 81) The setting here is effective only for the current video-phone call.
Display light	You can set the lighting duration of the display. Constant light .....For keeping the display lit. (Setting at purchase) 15 seconds light .....For turning the light off when no operation has been done for about 15 seconds.
Photo light	You can set Photo Light to light for when sending the image through the outside camera to the other party. ON .....Lights the Photo Light. OFF .....Does not light the Photo Light. (At video-phone camera start-up)
Call time disp.	You can select whether to display the call duration during a video-phone call. (See page 416)
Screen size	You can select how to display the image on the main display. (See page 90)
Outside camera/ Inside camera	You can switch the cameras. (See page 81)
Send DTMF tone/ DTMF tone OFF	During a Chara-den call, you can switch to the DTMF transmission mode that enables you to enter the data from the numeric keys and to send DTMF (touch-tone signals). You can set it only during a Chara-den call. "Send DTMF tone" is displayed when the mode is not the DTMF transmission mode and "DTMF tone OFF" is displayed in the DTMF transmission mode. You can operate this only during a Chara-den call.
Own number	You can display your phone number (own number). During PIM Lock, you cannot operate.



© BVIG

Information

<V-phone settings (Visual preference)>

"Prefer motion spd" is effective only for moving images. When there is little motion, the quality becomes better if you set to "Prefer img qual".

If the radio wave condition weakens during a video-phone call, the image may appear like a mosaic.

<Photo light>

Photo Light does not light when you are sending the image through the inside camera or substitutive image.

<Send DTMF tone><DTMF tone OFF>

Even in the DTMF transmission mode, you can switch to Manner Mode by pressing and holding (☎) for at least one second.

In the DTMF transmission mode, you cannot operate a Chara-den image in the Whole Action and Parts Action mode.

The DTMF tone may not be received depending on the device of a receiving end.

<Moving Image Quality>

Setting Image Quality for Video-phone Calls

Setting at purchase
Normal

You can set the qualities of caller's image and your own image on the display.

1 **Video-phone ▶ Moving image quality**

- NormalFor normal image quality and motion quality.
- Prefer img qual.....For better image quality.
- Prefer motion spdFor better motion quality.

Information

During a video-phone call, you can also set the image quality by pressing (FUNCTION) to bring up the the Function menu. (See page B3) In that case, the setting will be effective only during that video-phone call. "Prefer motion spd" is effective only for moving images. When there is little motion, the quality becomes better if you set to "Prefer img qual". If the radio wave condition weakens during a video-phone call, the image may appear like a mosaic.

<Camera Image Sending>

Turning Camera On/Off Automatically when Making a Video-phone Call

Setting at purchase
ON

1 **Video-phone ▶ Camera image sending**

- ON.....Sends the image through your camera to the other party.
- OFF.....Sends the substitutive image automatically to the other party, instead of sending the image through your camera.

<Select Image>

Changing Image Displays for Video-phone Calls

You can set the image to be sent to the other party instead of the image through your camera.

Setting at purchase

- On holdPre-installed
- HoldingPre-installed
- Substitutive image.....Chara-den
- Record message.....Pre-installed
- PreparingPre-installed
- Voice memoPre-installed

1 **Video-phone ▶ Select image**

- On holdSets the still image to send when you put the other party on hold during ringing of a video-phone call.
- HoldingSets the still image to send when you put the other party on hold during a video-phone call.
- Substitutive image.....Sets the substitutive image (still image or Chara-den image) to send when the camera is off during a video-phone call.
- Record messageSets the still image to send while recording a video-phone record message from callers.
- PreparingSets the still image to send while playing back an answer message for a video-phone record message.
- Voice memo.....Sets the still image to send while recording a video-phone voice memo.

2 **Select an image**

- Pre-installed.....For sending a pre-installed still image to the other party.
- Original.....For sending an appropriate message with a still image stored using "Set as display".
- Chara-denFor sending the stored Chara-den image to the other party. (See page 80) (Displayed only when "Substitutive image" has been selected in step 1.)

You can play back the still image or Chara-den image for confirmation by pressing (PLAY).



<Image Selection display>

Information

The stored still image is not deleted even when you switch the image from "Original" to "Pre-installed" or "Chara-den".

The still images set for "Substitutive image", "Holding", "On hold", "Record message" and "Voice memo" are displayed both on your FOMA phone and the other party's handset. However, a hold tone for "On hold", and the answer message for Record Message are only sent to the other party's handset.








You cannot delete the "Original" still image. To change the "Original" image, use "Set as display" to overwrite it. Even if you delete the pasted still image, it is displayed on (sent to) the destination phone.

While PIM Lock is activated, a "Pre-installed" substitutive image is sent.

If you have deleted a Chara-den image set as a substitutive image, "ブンブン (Dimo)" is sent. If "ブンブン (Dimo)" is deleted, "Pre-installed" substitutive image is sent.

Function Menu of the Image Selection Display

1 Image Selection display (FUNC) Do the following operation.

Function menu	Operation
Change setting	<p>You can change the still image set for "Original" or Chara-den image.</p> <p>If you have selected "Original"</p> <p> Select a folder  Select a still image </p> <p>See page 334 for the still image folder and list.</p> <p>Press  (Play) to play back the demonstration and check the still image.</p> <p>If you have selected "Chara-den"</p> <p> Select a Chara-den image </p> <p>You can play back a Chara-den image for confirmation by pressing  (Play).</p>

Information

<Change setting>

You cannot operate while selecting "Pre-installed".

See page 342 for settable still images.

Set by Call

You can set the image to be sent to the other party for making a video-phone call.

1 Enter the phone number, or bring up the detailed Phonebook display, detailed Redial display, detailed Dialed Call Record display or detailed Received Call Record display.

2 (FUNC) Select image

Me.....Sends the image through your camera to the other party. The setting is completed.

Chara-den.....Sends the stored Chara-den image to the other party. (See page 80)

Terminate.....Cancels the setting by every call. The setting is completed.

During PIM Lock, you cannot select "Chara-den".

3 Select a Chara-den image

Information

The priority order for sending images to the other party is; "Setting by call" "Camera image sending".

The setting applies just for the one call (dial-out). The settings for "Camera image sending" and "Select image" do not change.

Further, the setting is not stored in Redial/Dialed Call Record.

You cannot select "Chara-den" while you are receiving i-mode mail attached with the JPEG image in excess of 10,000 bytes.

The setting will be canceled if you make a voice call after setting "Select image".

<Voice Call Auto Switch>

Redialing as a Voice Call when a Video-phone Call cannot be Connected

Setting at purchase
OFF

If a video-phone call cannot be connected, it will be automatically redialed as a voice call.

1  **Video-phone** **▶** **Voice call auto switch**

ON.....Switches automatically to a voice call when a video-phone call is not connected.

OFF.....Displays the information that you have failed to connect the video-phone call, and returns to the Stand-by display.

Information

The charges for calls once switched to voice calls are billed at the rates for the voice calls, not the digital transmission. Once the dialed video-phone is connected, the dialing operation for a voice call cannot be done.

"Voice call auto switch" cannot be done when the dialed video-phone is a non-existent number, busy, out of the service area, off, set to be rejected because of no ID, or in Drive Mode.

When "Voice call auto switch" has been operated, only the last dial-out is stored in the Dialed Call Record.

<Remote Observation>

Setting Remote Observation

Using your FOMA phone as a monitoring camera, you can monitor from a remotely located video-phone which conforms to 3G-324M.

While "Remote observation" is set to "ON", the FOMA phone automatically starts remote observation when receiving a video-phone call from a phone number stored as "Other ID" of "Remote observation". (The FOMA phone needs to be opened.)

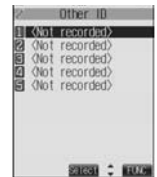
Store/Change Other ID

Setting at purchase
Not recorded

You need to previously store the phone numbers from which the installed FOMA phone takes calls. You can store up to five phone numbers. You cannot set "Remote observation" to "ON" when no "Other ID" is stored.

1  **Video-phone** **▶** **Remote observation**
▶ **Enter the Terminal Security Code** **▶**  **Other ID**

See page 140 for the Terminal Security Code.



<Other ID List>

2 **<Not recorded>** **▶** **Enter the phone number** **▶** 

To change, select the stored phone number.

You can enter up to 26 digits by using numeric, #, *, or +. If the entered phone number does not match the incoming Caller ID, remote observation will not be activated.

Function Menu of the Other ID List

1 Other ID List (**FUNC**) Do the following operation.

Function menu	Operations
Look-up address	You can enter a phone number from the Phonebook, Dialed Call Record, or Received Call Record. (See page 236)
Delete this	▶ YES To cancel, select "NO" and press .
Delete all	▶ YES To cancel, select "NO" and press .

Information

<Delete this><Delete all>

If you delete all Other IDs, "Remote observation" is set to "OFF".

Ringing Time

Setting at purchase
5 seconds (When set to "ON")

You can set the time until remote observation starts after receiving a video-phone call.

1 ▶ **Video-phone** ▶ **Remote observation** ▶ **Enter the Terminal Security Code**
 ▶ **Ringing time**

See page 140 for the Terminal Security Code.

2 Enter a ringing time (seconds).

Enter from "003" to "120" in three digits.

Not to change a ringing time, just press without entering a time.

You cannot set the same ringing (response) time for Remote Observation, Automatic Answer and Record Message. Set different time for each.

Set Remote Observation

Setting at purchase
OFF

You can set whether to activate remote observation for when receiving video-phone calls from phone numbers stored as "Other ID".

1 ▶ **Video-phone** ▶ **Remote observation** ▶ **Enter the Terminal Security Code**
 ▶ **Set**

ON.....Automatically answers video-phone calls from phone numbers stored as "Other ID" to start remote observation after the set ringing time. (You cannot select "ON" when "Other ID" is not stored.)

OFF.....Performs usual answering operation even if video-phone calls come in from phone numbers stored as "Other ID".

is displayed while "Remote observation" is "ON".

You cannot set "ON" in Manner Mode. The message telling that the remote observation in Manner Mode is disabled appears.

See page 140 for the Terminal Security Code.




1 A video-phone call comes in from a stored phone number.


The ring tone for remote observation sounds. (You cannot change the ring tone for remote observation.)

The ring tone sounds at the volume set for "Video-phone" of "Ring volume", but at "Level 2" if you have set "Step", "Level 1" or below.

The illumination color for incoming remote observation calls is "Gradation", and its illumination pattern is "Standard", regardless of the Illumination setting.

When a remote observation call comes in, "Open phone" is disabled.

Even when remote observation is set, you can press  to take the video-phone call before automatic answering and send the image through your camera to the other phone. Also, if you press  or , the video-phone call will start by sending the substitutive image to the other party.

If you press  when a remote observation call comes in, the call will be cut and remote observation will not be done.

To make a remote observation call, notify your Caller ID and make a video-phone call.

If the caller does not notify his/her Caller ID, remote observation will not be done and the call will be treated as an ordinary incoming video-phone call.



2 The call is taken automatically after the ringing time set for "Remote observation", and remote observation begins.

The camera setting switches to "ON" regardless of the setting for "Camera image sending", and the image through the camera and voice will be sent. (You cannot switch to a substitutive image.)

The caller's photo image appears on the display and the his/her voice is heard from the speaker.

You cannot set voice-only remote observation.

During remote observation, you cannot operate other than pressing  to end remote observation.



3 End remote observation.

Remote observation ends when either the dialing side or receiving side presses .

Information

Remote observation can be done using video-phones in conformity to 3G-324M.

You cannot be remote-observed during Manner Mode and Drive Mode. However, you can be remote-observed during All Lock.

When Remote Observation is "ON" and a video-phone call comes in from "Other ID", remote observation starts after the set ringing time, even when "Ringing time", "Automatic answer", or "Record message" is set and regardless of their ringing times.

When Remote Observation is "ON" and a video-phone call comes in from "Other ID", the call will be registered as remote observation in the Received Call Record. If remote observation is not done, the call will be registered as a missed video-phone call in the Received Call Record.

If the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone Set with Switch (option) is connected when a remote observation call comes in, the ring tone will sound from both the earphone and the speaker, even when "Earphone" is set to "Earphone". Also, if you press the switch before answering automatically, the video-phone starts and the substitutive image is sent to the other party.

Open the FOMA phone for receiving remote observation. If the FOMA phone is closed when a remote observation call comes in, calls will be rejected and remote observation will not start.

Closing the FOMA phone during remote observation activates the operation set for "Fold setting". However, "Fold setting" is disabled when the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone Set with Switch (option) is connected, so the substitutive image is sent to the other party when the FOMA phone is closed.

You cannot switch cameras during remote observation.

When "Call acceptance" has been set for other phone numbers, and not for the phone number stored as "Other ID" of "Remote observation", calls from that phone number will be rejected and remote observation will not start.

When "Call rejection" has been set for the phone number stored as "Other ID" of "Remote observation", calls from that phone number will be rejected and remote observation will not start.

When "Reject unknown" is set to "Reject", and the phone number stored as "Other ID" of "Remote observation" is not stored in the Phonebook, the calls from that phone number will be rejected, and remote observation will not start.

You cannot put incoming remote observation calls on hold.

During remote observation, the message "REMOTE MONITORING" is displayed in the Private window.

If you set both Call Forwarding Service and remote observation, and give priority to remote observation, set its ringing time to be shorter than that set for Call Forwarding Service.

To use Call Forwarding Service for remote observation, store the phone number of dialing side as "Other ID" and set a 3G-324M video-phone as the forwarding destination.

You may be imposed punishment according to the law and rule (Nuisance preventing rule) if you use the FOMA phone to give a remarkable nuisance and misdeed to the public.



Please respect the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones.

<Video-phone Display Setting>

Setting Display for Video-phone Calls

Main Display

Setting at purchase
Other image

You can set a screen display on the main display for a video-phone call.

1

> Video-phone > Disp. setting V-phone > Main display

- Other image.....Displays the caller's image on the main display and your own image on the sub display.
- Camera image.....Displays your own image on the main display and the caller's image on the sub display.
- Only other image.....Displays the caller's image only.
- Only camera image.....Displays your own image only.

Display Screen Size

Setting at purchase
Fit in display

You can select how to display an image on the main display for a video-phone call.

1

> Video-phone > Disp. setting V-phone > Display screen size

- Fit in display.....Displays the image in size fit to the screen size (232 x 192 dots).
- Normal.....Displays the image in original size (equivalent).

Press (FUNCTION) to select "Screen size" during a video-phone call.

Phonebook

Phonebooks Available for FOMA Phone	92
Storing Phonebook Entries in FOMA Phone.....<Add to Phonebook>	93
Storing Phonebook Entries in UIM.....<Add to Phonebook (UIM)>	96
Storing Displayed Phone Number/Mail Address in Phonebook Entries	97
Changing Group Names.....<Group Setting>	98
Dialing from Phonebooks.....<Search Phonebook>	99
Editing Phonebook Entries	<Edit Phonebook> 102
Deleting Phonebook Entries	<Delete Data> 103
Checking Number of Phonebook Entries	<No. of Phonebook> 104
Making Full Use of Phonebooks.....	104
Checking/Releasing Phonebook Utility Functions.....<Utilities>	106
Making a Call with a Few Touches	<Two-Touch Dial> 107

Phonebooks Available for FOMA Phone

You can use two types of Phonebook, namely the Phonebook in the FOMA phone itself, and the Phonebook in the UIM. If you categorize the use of these Phonebooks, you will be able to manage your data efficiently.

Item		Phonebook of FOMA phone	Phonebook of UIM
Number that can be stored		700 entries max. in the Phonebook	50 entries max. in the Phonebook
Contents	Name (Reading)	Only one name per Phonebook entry	Only one name per Phonebook entry
	Phone number	Up to 4 phone numbers per Phonebook entry (up to 700 phone numbers in the whole Phonebook)	One phone number per Phonebook entry (up to 50 phone numbers in the whole Phonebook)
	Mail address	Up to 3 addresses per Phonebook entry (up to 700 addresses in the whole Phonebook)	One address per Phonebook entry (up to 50 addresses in the whole Phonebook)
	Icon setting	Only one icon can be set for each phone number and each address	Cannot be set
	Postal address (zip code)	Only one address per Phonebook entry	Cannot be stored
	Birthday	Only one birthday per Phonebook entry	Cannot be stored
	Memo	Only one memo per Phonebook entry	Cannot be stored
	Still image	Up to 100 images. Only one per Phonebook entry	Cannot be stored
	Chara-den	Up to 100 Chara-den images. Only one per Phonebook entry	Cannot be stored
	Group No.	20 groups from 00 to 19	11 groups from 00 to 10
Memory No.	From 000 to 699	None	
Search phonebook		Seven ways: By reading, name, phone number, address (mail), memory No., group, and column	Six ways: By reading, name, phone number, address (mail), group, and column
Two-touch dial		Available (when stored in memory No. 000 to 009)	Not available
Utilities	Ring tone	Can be set per stored phone number or group	Cannot be set
	Vibrator		
	Illumination		
	Picture		
	Answer message	Can be set per stored phone number, mail address, or group	
	Mail ring tone		
	Mail vibrator		
	Mail illumination		
Dialing speed	Can be set per stored phone number or group		
Chara-den setting			
Restrictions	Restrict dialing	Can be set per stored phone number	Cannot be set
	Call rejection		
	Call acceptance		
	Call forwarding		
	Voice mail		
Secret code setting		Can be set per stored phone number or mail address	Cannot be set
Storage in Secret Mode or Secret Only Mode		Can be stored	Cannot be stored

You can set your UIM into another FOMA phone and use the UIM Phonebook entry.

The number of entries you can store in the Phonebook may decrease depending on the stored contents.

Storing Phonebook Entries in FOMA Phone

You can store Phonebook entries in the FOMA phone.













1 Add to phonebook Phone




















The display for entering the name appears. Go to step 2 and enter the name.

From the Phonebook List, you can also bring up the selection display for a storage location by pressing  (New).

2 Do the following operation.



Item	Operations
 (Name)	You can enter the name of the person or company in kanji, hiragana, katakana, letters of the alphabet, or numerals. When you finish entering the name, enter the reading in succession. ▶ Enter the name  You can enter up to 16 full-pitch characters. You can also enter pictographs. See page 482 for how to enter characters.
 (Reading)	You can enter the reading in half-pitch katakana, letters of the alphabet, or numerals. ▶ Enter the reading  You can enter up to 32 half-pitch characters. See page 482 for how to enter characters. If the displayed reading is acceptable, you do not need to edit it. However, depending on the characters entered for names or entering method, you need to enter/edit the reading.
 (Group)	20 groups from "Group 00" through "Group 19" are available. It is handy if you store the group names in advance. (See page 98) ▶ Select a group  When the storage is completed with no group selected, the Phonebook entry is automatically stored in "Group 00".
 (Phone number)	You can store up to four phone numbers per Phonebook entry. However, up to 700 phone numbers can be stored in the whole Phonebook. You can set an icon for each phone number to categorize mobile phone numbers, office phone numbers, and so on. ▶ Enter the phone number  Enter from the area codes for phone numbers. You can enter up to 26 digits. Press and hold  for at least one second to insert a pause (p) into the phone number you store. However, you cannot insert the pause (p) to the beginning of phone number or insert it consecutively. The pause (p) inserted to the end of phone number is not stored. If you insert "*" in the middle of a phone number, you cannot make a call. However, the phone number is retained in Redial or Dialed Call Record. You can also store phone numbers with "#" of information service or others. ▶ Select an icon  Another  <Not stored> will appear in the Add-to-Phonebook display. To store another phone number, select  <Not stored>.

Item	Operations
 (Mail address)	<p>You can store up to 3 mail addresses per Phonebook entry. However, up to 700 mail addresses can be stored in the whole Phonebook.</p> <p>You can set an icon for each mail address to categorize mobile phone addresses, office addresses, and so on.</p> <p>▶ Enter the mail address ▶ </p> <p>The mail address can consist of up to 50 half-pitch alphabets, numerals or symbol characters. See page 482 for how to enter characters.</p> <p>Store the mail address correctly including the domain (part after @). When the mail address is "phone number@docomo.ne.jp", store the phone number only.</p> <p>You can also set the Secret Code. (See page 106)</p> <p>▶ Select an icon ▶ </p> <p>Another " <Not stored>" will appear in the Add-to-Phonebook display. To store another mail address, select " <Not stored>".</p>
 (Postal address)	<p>▶ Enter the ZIP code ▶  ▶ Enter the postal address ▶ </p> <p>You can enter up to 7 digits for the zip code and up to 50 full-pitch or 100 half-pitch characters for the postal address.</p> <p>See page 482 for how to enter characters.</p> <p>You cannot enter "〒" or "-" (hyphen) in the zip code.</p> <p>You can also enter pictographs in the postal address.</p>
 (Birthday)	<p>▶ Enter the birthday ▶ </p> <p>You can enter the birthday from January, 1, 1800 through December, 31, 2099.</p>
 (Memorandums)	<p>▶ Enter the memorandums ▶ </p> <p>You can enter up to 100 full-pitch or 200 half-pitch characters for the memo.</p> <p>See page 482 for how to enter characters.</p> <p>You can also enter pictographs.</p>
 (Image)	<p>The stored still image is displayed when a call comes in from the other party whose phone number is stored in the Phonebook.</p> <p>You can store up to 100 images out of 700 Phonebook entries.</p> <p>Select image .....Stores a still image.</p> <p>Release this .....Releases the stored still image. The setting for the still image is completed.</p> <p>▶ Select a folder ▶  ▶ Select a still image ▶ </p> <p>See page 334 for the still image folder and list.</p>
 (Chara-den)	<p>The stored Chara-den image is displayed as a substitutive image for video-phone calls with the other party stored in the Phonebook.</p> <p>You can store up to 100 Chara-den images out of 700 Phonebook entries.</p> <p>Select Chara-den ...Stores a Chara-den image.</p> <p>Cancel Chara-den...Releases the stored Chara-den image. The setting for Chara-den image is completed.</p> <p>▶ Select a Chara-den image ▶ </p>
 (Memory No.)	<p>▶ Enter a memory number ▶ </p> <p>Enter a three-digit number of 000 through 699.</p> <p>The lowest empty memory number 010 through 699 is entered as a memory number.</p> <p>If 010 through 699 are occupied, the lowest empty memory number from 000 through 009 is entered.</p>

3 Press (Finish).

If you have not entered any name, "Finish" is not displayed and you cannot store the entry.

Information

If you enter Russian or Greek letters, certain symbols, pictographs, or full-pitch characters that are not in the Kuten Code List, for a name, you cannot display them in the Reading Edit display.


If you enter “㇀ (reduced size)” or “㇁ (reduced size)” for a name, “㇂ (half-pitch, regular size)” is displayed in the reading field.

The file size of a still image that you can store is VGA (640 x 480) or less and an image of up to 100 Kbytes in JPEG format or GIF format.

If you store a still image larger than 128 x 96 dots, it is displayed shrunk on the detailed Phonebook display.

If you store a still image larger than 176 x 144 dots, it is displayed shrunk on the Call Receiving display.



If you store a Chara-den image larger than 128 x 96 dots, it is displayed shrunk on the detailed Phonebook display.

If 700 phone numbers are already stored, “ <Not stored>” will not be displayed.

If 700 mail addresses are already stored, “ <Not stored>” will not be displayed.

When you cannot add Phonebook data

If the location (Memory No.) you have selected already contains data, the confirmation display appears asking whether to overwrite the data.

Select “YES” and press  to replace the existing data with the newly entered data. Select “NO” and press  to keep the original data in that location (Memory No.) and return to the Add/Edit display. Select a different memory number.




In ordinary mode other than “Secret mode” or “Secret only mode”, you cannot overwrite the data stored in “Secret mode” or “Secret only mode”. Enter another memory number.

You cannot store Phonebook entries during “Keypad dial lock”, “Restrict dialing” or “PIM lock” are set.

When Phonebook editing is interrupted

When the battery goes flat

When the battery alarm sounds while you are editing a Phonebook entry, the message “Recharge battery” (see page 42) appears. The data you are editing will be saved automatically, so you can charge the battery and continue editing, or you can change to a charged battery and then resume editing as follows:

1.   Add to phonebook 

If you select the storage location for the interrupted Phonebook entry, the confirmation display appears asking whether to resume editing.

2. Re-edit.

To add a new Phonebook entry, select “New” and press . The data you are editing is also retained. If you try to resume editing the interrupted entry after you finish storing a new one, the confirmation display appears again.


3. Resume editing the interrupted entry.

Only the most recently interrupted entry is retained.

If you resume editing the data but then cancel editing without storing it, that data will be abandoned. Once you recall the data, be sure to store it.

If you receive a call or mail

If you receive a call or mail while editing a Phonebook entry, you can respond it leaving the edited data as it is, thanks to the Multitask function.

To return to the Phonebook Edit display, press and hold  for at least one second. You can also return to the Phonebook Edit display by ending the call or mail function.

Important

The stored contents may be lost due to a malfunction, repair, or other mishandling of the FOMA phone. You are well advised to take notes of the contents stored in the FOMA phone, or save them to the miniSD memory card (see page 376). If you have a personal computer, you can also save them to the personal computer by using the FOMA USB Cable (option) and the Data Link Software (see page 519).

Note that we at DoCoMo shop counters might not be able to copy data from your existing FOMA phone to the new one, depending on the specifications.

Be advised that we cannot be held responsible for the loss of data stored in your FOMA phone.

Storing Phonebook Entries in UIM

You can store Phonebook entries in the UIM.

1 Add to phonebook UIM












The display for entering the name appears. Go to step 2 and enter the name.

From the Phonebook List, you can also bring up the selection display for a storage location by pressing  (New).

See page 36 for the UIM.

2 Do the following operation.



Item	Operations
 (Name)	<p>You can enter the name of the person or company in kanji, hiragana, katakana, letters of the alphabet, or numerals.</p> <p>When you are finished entering the name, enter reading in succession.</p> <p> Enter the name</p> <p>You can enter up to 10 full-pitch characters or 21 half-pitch alphanumeric characters. (Half-pitch katakana characters cannot be entered.) See page 482 for how to enter characters.</p>
 (Reading)	<p>You can enter the reading in full-pitch katakana, half-pitch alphanumeric characters.</p> <p> Enter the reading</p> <p>You can enter up to 12 full-pitch characters or 25 half-pitch alphanumeric characters. (Half-pitch katakana characters cannot be entered.) See page 482 for how to enter characters.</p> <p>If the displayed reading is acceptable, you do not need to edit it. However, depending on the characters entered for names or entering method, you need to enter/edit the reading.</p>
 (Group)	<p>Eleven groups from "Group 00" through "Group 10" are available.</p> <p>It is handy if you store the group names in advance. (See page 98)</p> <p> Select a group</p> <p>When the storage is completed with no group selected, the Phonebook entry is automatically stored in "Group 00".</p>
 (Phone number)	<p>You can store one phone number per Phonebook entry.</p> <p> Enter the phone number</p> <p>Enter from the area codes for phone numbers.</p> <p>You can enter up to 20 digits for blue UIMs and up to 26 for green UIMs.</p> <p>Press and hold  for at least one second to insert a pause (p) into the phone number you store.</p> <p>However, you cannot insert the pause (p) to the beginning of phone number or insert it consecutively. The pause (p) inserted to the end of phone number is not stored.</p> <p>If you insert "*" in the middle of a phone number, you cannot make a call. However, the phone number is retained in Redial or Dialed Call Record.</p> <p>You can also store phone numbers with "#" of information service or others.</p>
 (Mail address)	<p>You can store one mail address per Phonebook entry.</p> <p> Enter the mail address</p> <p>The mail address can consist of up to 50 half-pitch alphabets, numerals or symbol characters. See page 482 for how to enter characters.</p> <p>Store the mail address correctly including the domain (part after @). When the mail address is "phone number@docomo.ne.jp", store the phone number only.</p>

3 Press (Finish).

If you have not entered any name, "Finish" is not displayed and you cannot store the entry.

Information

If you enter, for a name, Russian or Greek letters, certain symbols, or full-pitch characters that are not in the Kuten Code List, you cannot display them in the Reading Edit display.



If you enter "㇀ (reduced size)" or "㇁ (reduced size)" for a name, "㇂ (regular size)" is displayed in the reading field.

Storing Displayed Phone Number/Mail Address in Phonebook Entries

You can store the displayed or selected phone number, mail address, and still image in the Phonebook.


Operations	Storable items
While a phone number is entered	Phone number
While Redial, Dialed Call Record, or Received Call Record is displayed	Phone number
While Sent Address or Received Address is displayed	Phone number/Mail address
While a site or screen memo is displayed	Phone number/Mail address
While the text of Message (R/F) or mail is displayed	Phone number/Mail address
While the data read by Bar Code Reader or Text Reader is displayed	Phone number/Mail address
In pause state or just after playing back an i-motion movie which includes underscored phone number or mail address with a ticker	Phone number/Mail address
While the Still Image List is displayed/While the still image is played back	Still image



1 Bring up/Select an item to be stored (FUNC) Add to phonebook

To store the sender's end (and other recipients of simultaneous mail) of incoming mail or destination address of outgoing mail in the Phonebook, select "Store address". When there are multiple sender's ends (and other recipients of simultaneous mail), the display for selecting the sender's end (and other recipients of simultaneous mail) or destination address appears. Press  to select the mail address or phone number you want to store and press .

To store the read results of the text reader in the Phonebook, select "Store phone No." or "Store mail add."

To store a still image in the Phonebook, select "Add picture to PB".

When "Add to phonebook" is displayed on the Result display of read code by Bar Code Reader, select "Add to phonebook" and press ; then other information in the read code than the phone number or mail address is entered into each field.

If the confirmation display appears asking whether to store the image, select "YES" and press . To cancel, select "NO" and press .

2 Phone or UIM

PhoneStores data in the FOMA phone's Phonebook.

UIMStores data in the UIM's Phonebook.

3 New or Add

NewStores data newly in the Phonebook. Go to step 2 on pages 93, 96.

AddAdds data to the existing Phonebook entry. When storing data in the UIM, "Overwrite" is displayed.

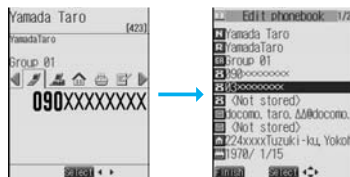
4 Select a search method Search the Phonebook entry

See page 99 for how to search the Phonebook.

5 Select a Phonebook entry to be stored

The phone number and mail address are entered automatically.

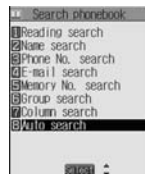
Go to step 2 on page 93, 96.



Auto Search

“Auto search” appears in the Phonebook Search display in step 4, when the highlighted information (such as a phone number or mail address) on the i-mode site page has the information of the name, reading, phone number or mail address.

Select “Auto search” and press ; then you can search for Phonebook entries containing the same name and reading.



Information

The Phonebook entry does not store the information of Caller ID Notification included in Redial/Dialled Call Record. To set Caller ID Notification, add 186 (or ¥-31#) or 184 (or #31#) to the phone number and store it. Characters in excess of the number of characters storable in the Phonebook are deleted. In addition, characters that cannot be stored may be replaced to spaces or deleted, and then stored.

You can sometimes store highlighted information other than a phone number or address into the Phonebook.

You may not be able to store the information into the Phonebook from some sites.

<Group Setting>

2 6

Changing Group Names

You can make the Phonebook very convenient by organizing the entries into social groups such as “Office” and “Friends”, and hobby groups such as “Baseball” and “Pottery”.

1 Group setting ▶ Select a group

The groups in the UIM are indicated by “”.

You cannot change the group name for “Group 00”.



<Group Setting display>


2 Enter the group name

You can enter up to 10 full-pitch or 21 half-pitch characters. However, you can store only up to 10 characters (irrespective of full-pitch or half-pitch) as UIM group name when the entered group name contains both full-pitch and half-pitch characters.

See page 482 for how to enter characters.

Function Menu of the Group Setting Display

1 Group Setting display (FUNC) Do the following operation.

Function menu	Operations
Edit group name	Go to step 2 on page 98.
Utilities	<p>You can specify following functions by group.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Ring tone (see page 112) • Vibrator (see page 114) • Illumination (see page 131) • Picture (see page 124) • Answer message (see page 71) • Mail ring tone (see page 112) • Mail vibrator (see page 114) • Mail illumination (see page 131) • Dialing speed (see page 77) • Chara-den setting (see page 80)
Reset group name	<p>You can reset group names.</p> <p>▶ YES</p> <p>To cancel, select "NO" and press .</p>

Information

If you have not changed group names or have deleted (reset) them, "Group 01" through "Group 19" will be displayed for the FOMA phone (Phone) Phonebook, and "Group 01" through "Group 10" for the UIM Phonebook. The "Utilities" settings for groups are not released even when group names are reset.

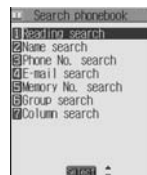
<Search Phonebook>







Dialing from Phonebooks
















































You can retrieve stored Phonebook entries by seven search methods.

1 Search phonebook Do the following operation.


You can also press  from the Stand-by display to bring up the Phonebook Search display.



Item	Operations
Reading search	<p>You can search for the entry by the reading.</p> <p>▶ Enter a part of reading  </p> <p>See page 482 for how to enter characters.</p> <p>Enter from the first character of the reading. You do not need to enter the full reading.</p> <p>If you do not enter a reading but press , the entire Phonebook is searched, and the list of all Phonebook entries is displayed.</p>
Name search	<p>You can search for the entry by the name.</p> <p>▶ Enter a part of name  </p> <p>See page 482 for how to enter characters.</p> <p>Enter from the first character of the name. You do not need to enter the full name.</p> <p>If you do not enter a name but press , the entire Phonebook is searched, and the list of all Phonebook entries is displayed.</p>

Item	Operations		
Phone No. search	<p>You can search for the entry by the phone number.</p> <p>▶ Enter a part of the phone number ▶ </p> <p>You do not need to enter the full phone number. You can search for the entry from the middle of phone number.</p> <p>If you do not enter a phone number but press , the entire Phonebook is searched, and the list of all Phonebook entries is displayed.</p> <p>You can display the Phonebook List also by entering a part of the phone number from the Stand-by display or the "Talking" display, and pressing .</p>		
E-mail search	<p>You can search for the entry by the mail address.</p> <p>▶ Enter a part of the mail address ▶ </p> <p>See page 482 for how to enter characters.</p> <p>You do not need to enter the full mail address. You can search for the entry from the middle of mail address.</p> <p>If you do not enter an address but press , the entire Phonebook is searched, and the list of all Phonebook entries is displayed.</p>		
Memory No. search	<p>You can search for the entry by the memory number assigned when it was stored in the Phonebook. (For the UIM Phonebook, you cannot use Memory No. search because the UIM Phonebook does not have memory number.)</p> <p>▶ Enter the memory number</p> <p>Enter from "000" through "699" in three digits.</p> <p>If you do not enter a memory number but press , the entire Phonebook is searched, and the list of all Phonebook entries is displayed.</p> <p>From the Stand-by display, you can press  () and then press  to display the Memory No. Dial display. From there you can make a phone (video-phone) call by entering the memory number of the phone number.</p>		
Group search	<p>You can call up all Phonebook entries stored in the specified group.</p> <p>▶ Select a group ▶ </p> <p>If you press  (FUNCTION) on the Group List, the Function menu for "Group setting" is displayed.</p>		
Column search	<p>You can call up the Phonebook entry by every column of the reading.</p> <p>▶ Press the key corresponding to the column to be searched</p> <table style="width: 100%; border: none;"> <tr> <td style="width: 50%; vertical-align: top;"> <p> ア</p> <p> カ</p> <p> サ</p> <p> タ</p> <p> ナ</p> <p> Others (alphanumerics, symbols)</p> <p> Brings up entire Phonebook in order of Japanese syllabary</p> </td> <td style="width: 50%; vertical-align: top;"> <p> ハ</p> <p> マ</p> <p> ヤ</p> <p> ラ</p> <p> ワ、ヲ、ン</p> </td> </tr> </table>	<p> ア</p> <p> カ</p> <p> サ</p> <p> タ</p> <p> ナ</p> <p> Others (alphanumerics, symbols)</p> <p> Brings up entire Phonebook in order of Japanese syllabary</p>	<p> ハ</p> <p> マ</p> <p> ヤ</p> <p> ラ</p> <p> ワ、ヲ、ン</p>
<p> ア</p> <p> カ</p> <p> サ</p> <p> タ</p> <p> ナ</p> <p> Others (alphanumerics, symbols)</p> <p> Brings up entire Phonebook in order of Japanese syllabary</p>	<p> ハ</p> <p> マ</p> <p> ヤ</p> <p> ラ</p> <p> ワ、ヲ、ン</p>		

2 Select an entry


When an entry contains multiple phone numbers or execute "E-mail search", use  from the detailed display to select a phone number.

Instead of , you can press  to dial out. Also, you can dial a video-phone call by pressing .

Information

In the Phonebook Search display, the search method selected in the last operation has already been selected.

The searched data is listed from the Phonebook of both the FOMA phone (Phone) and UIM.

"" appears on the UIM Phonebook List.

Entries stored in "Secret mode" or "Secret only mode" can only be displayed in those modes.

To check details of the Phonebook entries

- Bring up the entry that you want to check.
See page 99 for how to search the Phonebook.
- Press to display each Phonebook item.

Name: Yamada Taro (423) Memory No.
 Reading: Yamada Taro 64 k 32 k; Dialing speed
 Group: Group 01
 Phone number: 090XXXXXXXX
 Utilities settings:
 Ring tone, Mail ring tone
 Vibrator, Mail vibrator
 Illumination, Mail illumination
 Image, Chara-den setting
 Answer message

<Detailed Phonebook display>
Phone number



Mail address



Postal address



Birthday



Memorandums



Still image



Chara-den image

© BVIG

Information

When an entry contains multiple phone numbers or addresses, press to display the details of particular items.
 If you press while the mail address is displayed, you can compose an i-mode mail message with that mail address entered into the address field. Go to step 3 on page 235.
 If you press while a Chara-den image is displayed, you can use the Chara-den Player to play back the Chara-den image.
 The icons for Dialing Speed and Utilities are displayed only when the corresponding Utilities function is active.
 For the Phonebook stored in the UIM, "UIM" is displayed instead of the memory number.



Detailed UIM
Phonebook display

Deleting Phonebook Entries

Deleting Each Item In a Phonebook Entry

1 Detailed Phonebook display ▶ (F) (FUNC) ▶ Delete data

- Phone number.....Deletes the displayed phone number.
- Erase mail add.Deletes the displayed mail address.
- Erase addressDeletes the postal address.
- Erase birthday.....Deletes the birthday.
- Erase memorandums ..Deletes the memorandum.
- Delete image.....Deletes the still image.
- Delete chara-den.....Deletes the Chara-den image.

See page 99 for how to search the Phonebook.

From the detailed display, press (C) to bring up the item to be deleted.

2 YES

To cancel, select "NO" and press (C).

Delete This

1 Phonebook List/Detailed Phonebook display ▶ (F) (FUNC) ▶ Delete data ▶ Delete this or This phonebook ▶ YES

See page 99 for how to search the Phonebook.

To cancel, select "NO" and press (C).

Delete Selected

1 Phonebook List ▶ (F) (FUNC) ▶ Delete data ▶ Delete selected ▶ Put the check marks for the Phonebook entries to be deleted ▶ (Finish) ▶ YES

"☐" and "☑" switch each time you press (C). You can check or uncheck all items by pressing (F) (FUNC) and selecting "Select all/Release all".

Do the same operation as that of "Delete all" when you have selected all Phonebook entries including secret ones.

See page 99 for how to search the Phonebook.

To cancel, select "NO" and press (C).

Delete All

You can delete all Phonebook entries including secret entries.

1 Phonebook List ▶ (F) (FUNC) ▶ Delete data ▶ Delete all ▶ Enter the Terminal Security Code ▶ (C) ▶ YES ▶ YES

See page 99 for how to search the Phonebook.

To cancel, select "NO" and press (C).

See page 140 for the Terminal Security Code.

Information

You cannot delete Phonebook entries while "Keypad dial lock", "Restrict dialing" or "PIM lock" is activated.

If you delete a phone number or mail address stored in a Phonebook entry that contains multiple phone numbers or mail addresses, the phone numbers or mail addresses after the deleted entries are moved up and stored.

Checking Number of Phonebook Entries

1



No. of phonebook

Phone

- Phonebook.....Displays the number of Phonebook entries stored in the FOMA phone (Phone).
- SecretDisplays the number of Phonebook entries stored as secret data during Secret Mode or Secret Only Mode.
- PictureDisplays the number of Phonebook entries in which still images are stored.
- Chara-denDisplays the number of Phonebook entries in which Chara-den images are stored.
- Rest : Displays the number of phone numbers that can still be stored.
 : Displays the number of mail addresses that can still be stored.

UIM

- Phonebook.....Displays the number of Phonebook entries stored in the UIM.

After checking, press .

Making Full Use of Phonebooks

Function Menu of the Phonebook List

1

Phonebook List (FUNC) Do the following operation.



<Phonebook List>

Function menu	Operations
Sort	<p>You can change the display order.</p> <p>Reading order.....Sorts Phonebook entries in order of the reading. (Setting at purchase)</p> <p>Name order .....Sorts Phonebook entries in order of the name.</p> <p>Memory No. order .....Sorts Phonebook entries in order of the memory number.</p> <p>You can sort Phonebook entries in reverse order by selecting "Ascending" or "Descending" and pressing .</p>
Export this	You can export a single data item to the miniSD memory card. (See page 382)
Send Ir data	You can send a single data item using infrared rays. (See page 388)
Send all Ir data	You can send all data items using infrared rays. (See page 389)
Delete data	You can delete Phonebook entries. (See page 103)

Function Menu of the Detailed Phonebook Display

1 Detailed Phonebook display > ⓘ (**FUNC**) > Do the following operation.



<Detailed Phonebook display>

Function menu	Operations
Notify caller ID	You can set whether to notify caller ID. (See page 45)
Prefix numbers	You can add prefix numbers. (See page 58)
International dial	You can make international calls. (See page 52)
Multi number	See page 436.
Dialing speed	You can set the dialing speed of video-phone calls. (See page 76)
Utilities	You can specify following functions by phone number or mail address. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Ring tone (See page 111) • Vibrator (See page 114) • Illumination (See page 131) • Picture (See page 124) • Answer message (See page 70) • Mail ring tone (See page 111) • Mail vibrator (See page 114) • Mail illumination (See page 131) • Dialing speed (See page 77) • Chara-den setting (See page 80)
Restrictions	You can set the Restriction functions. (See page 150)
Edit data	Go to step 2 on page 102.
Delete data	You can delete Phonebook entries. (See page 103)
Add desktop icon	You can paste the icon of the phone number from the Phone Number Entry display, and from the Mail Address display, you can paste the icon of the address-entered mail to the desktop. (See page 134)
Compose message	You can compose i-mode mail. The mail address is entered into the address field. Go to step 3 on page 235.
Compose SMS	You can compose Short Message (SMS). The phone number is entered into the address field. Go to step 3 on page 301.
Send Ir data	You can send a single data item using infrared rays. (See page 388)
Send all Ir data	You can send all data items using infrared rays. (See page 389)
Automatic disp.	You can set the phone number for Automatic Display. (See page 127)
Export this	You can export a single data item to the miniSD memory card. (See page 382)
Copy name	You can copy names. Copied text is memorized in the FOMA phone.
Copy phone number/ Copy mail add./ Copy address/ Copy birthday/ Copy memorandums	You can copy each item. From the detailed display, press ⓘ to bring up the item to be copied. The items in the Function menu differ depending on the items in the displayed Phonebook entry.

Function menu	Operations
Secret code	<p>You need to add the recipient's secret code when sending i-mode mail to anyone who has registered a secret code. Once you set the secret code for the mail address in the Phonebook entry, it will be added automatically whenever you send mail to that address.</p> <p>▶ Enter the Terminal Security Code ▶ Set code</p> <p>From the detailed display, press to bring up the phone number or mail address to be set with a secret code.</p> <p>See page 140 for the Terminal Security Code.</p> <p>To check the secret code, select "Check code" and press . After checking, press .</p> <p>To release the secret code, select "Release code" and press .</p> <p>▶ Enter a four-digit secret code ▶ YES</p> <p>In the Function menu, "Secret code" is indicated by " ", after it is set.</p> <p>Enter a four-digit number for secret code. You cannot set "0000".</p> <p>To cancel, select "NO" and press .</p>
Release secret	You can switch a Phonebook entry stored with secret to an ordinary entry.
Copy to UIM/ Copy from UIM	You can copy data to the UIM or to the FOMA phone (Phone). (See page 420)
Select image	You can select an image for a video-phone call. (See page 86)

Information

<Secret code>

You can set secret codes for the Phonebook entries stored in the FOMA phone (Phone) only. You cannot set secret codes for the UIM Phonebook.

The secret code is added only when the recipient's mail address is in the form of "phone number" or "phone number@docomo.ne.jp". It cannot be added to any other form of mail address.

If you have stored the mail address as "phone number + secret code@docomo.ne.jp", you cannot send or reply messages to the mail address. After stored the mail address as "phone number@docomo.ne.jp", add the secret code.

<Utilities>



Checking/Releasing Phonebook Utility Functions

Setting at purchase
All released

You can check or release "Utilities" set for phone numbers and mail addresses, and "Group Utilities" set for groups in the Phonebook.

1



▶ **Utilities**

- Ring toneSee pages 111, 112
- VibratorSee page 114
- IlluminationSee page 131
- PictureSee page 124
- Answer messageSee pages 70, 71
- Mail ring toneSee pages 111, 112
- Mail vibratorSee page 114
- Mail illuminationSee page 131
- Dialing speedSee page 77
- Chara-den settingSee page 80

The set item is indicated by " ".



<Utilities display>

2 Select an item to be checked

Depending on the selected item, you can display the Phonebook List by repeating the operation in step 2.

While you are selecting a vibrator pattern, the FOMA phone vibrates for confirmation. During a call, it does not vibrate for confirmation.

The Call/Charging indicator lights in the selected color while you are selecting an Illumination color.


See page 371 for the melody folder and list.



See page 334 for the still image folder and list.



See page 354 for i-motion folder and list.

3 Select a Phonebook entry

The phone number or mail address set with Utilities is displayed.



" CR" is placed to the top of group name.

To release "Utilities" each for phone number, mail address, group, select the phone number, mail address, or group you want to release from following the same steps above and press . You can release Utilities by selecting "YES" and pressing .

 from the confirmation display asking whether to release. To cancel, select "NO" and press .

Function Menu of the Utilities Display

1 Utilities display () Do the following operation.


Function menu	Operations
Check settings	Go to step 2 on this page.
Release	<p> YES</p> <p>To cancel, select "NO" and press .</p> <p><Example></p> <p>If you execute Release from the display in step 1 on page 106, all the Phonebook entries and groups set with "Illumination" are released.</p> <p>If you execute Release in step 2 on this page, all the Phonebook entries and groups set for each item are released.</p>

Information




You cannot set, check or release the utilities while "Restrict dialing" is activated.

<Two-Touch Dial>

Making a Call with a Few Touches

When the entry is stored in memory number "000" through "009" in the FOMA phone's Phonebook, you can dial the phone number just by pressing the lowest one digit of memory number and .

1 Numeric key (to)

You can press  instead of  to dial out. Press  to dial a video-phone call.

Information

When the Phonebook entry contains multiple phone numbers, the first phone number will be dialed.

In Secret Mode or Secret Only Mode, you can use two-touch dialing to call phone numbers stored as secret in memory numbers 000 through 009.

If you have set "Restrict dialing" but have not specified the first phone number stored in memory number 000 through 009 for "Restrict dialing", you cannot use two-touch dial for dialing.

In this case, release "Restrict dialing" you have set, or specify the first phone number stored in the memory number 000 through 009 for "Restrict dialing".

The UIM Phonebook does not have memory numbers so cannot be used for two-touch dialing.



Tone/Display/Light Setting

Tone Setting

Changing Ring Tone of FOMA Phone	<Select Ring Tone>	110
Informing You of an Incoming Call by Vibration.....	<Vibrator>	113
Using Recorded Sound as Ring Tone	<Voice Announce>	115
Setting Keypad Sound	<Keypad Sound>	116
Setting Charging-start/end Tones	<Charge Sound>	116
Sounding Alarm when a Line is Likely to be Disconnected.....	<Quality Alarm>	116
Setting Ringing Time for Mail and Messages R/F	<Mail/Message Ring Time>	117
Sounding Ring Tone from Earphone Only	<Earphone>	117
Silencing Tones	<Manner Mode>	118
Selecting Manner Mode Type	<Manner Mode Set>	119

Display/Light Setting

Changing Displays	<Display Setting>	121
Displaying an Image Stored in the Phonebook during Ringing	<Display Phonebook Image>	124
Setting Contents for Private Window.....	<Private Window>	125
Displaying a Phone Number just by Opening FOMA Phone.....	<Automatic Display>	127
Setting Lights for Display and Keypad	<Display Light>	127
Setting Combination of Color Pattern for Display	<Color Pattern>	128
Setting Menu Display.....	<Menu Display Set>	129
Selecting Flickering of Call/Charging Indicator during Ringing	<Illumination>	130
Setting Flickering of Call/Charging Indicator during a Call	<Illumination in Talk>	133
Checking Missed Calls and New Mail by Tone and Call/Charging Indicator	<Information Notice Setting>	133
Using Icons on Desktop.....	<Desktop>	134
Changing Font Settings		137
Switching Clock Display	<Main Window Clock>	138

Changing Ring Tone of FOMA Phone

You can set ring tones by type of receiving, or set them by phone number, mail address or group in the Phonebook.

If you select an i-motion movie, the i-motion image and sound are played back for incoming calls/messages. (Movie Ring Tone)

Setting at purchase	
Phone	.....Pattern 1
Video-phone	.....Pattern 1
Mail	.....Pattern 2
Chat mail	.....Pattern 2
MessageR	.....Pattern 3
MessageF	.....Pattern 3

Ring Tone List (pre-installed)

Display	Title	Composers and others
Pattern 1	-	-
Pattern 2	-	-
Pattern 3	-	-
INNOCENT WORLD	INNOCENT WORLD	Composer: SAKURAI KAZUTOSHI
JUPITER	JUPITER	Composer: HOLST GUSTAV
SUMMERTIME	SUMMERTIME	Composer: GERSHWIN GEORGE
TWELVE VARIATIONS	TWELVE VARIATIONS ON AH VOUS DIRAI JE MAMAN	Composer: MOZART WOLFGANG AMADEUS
AIDA MARCH	AIDA MARCH	Composer: VERDI GIUSEPPE
CLUB MIX	CLUB MIX	ORIGINAL
O SOLE MIO	O SOLE MIO	Lyric writer: CAPURRO GIOVANNI Composers: CAPUA EDOARDO, DI CAPUA EDUARDO
IL MATTINO	IL MATTINO	Composer: GRIEG EDVARD HAGERUP
school bell	-	-
old type phone	-	-
cuckoo clock	-	-
ring tone	-	-
an ambulance	-	-
water	-	-
mail 1	-	-
mail 2	-	-
ハッピー・エンド・レターズ	HAPPY END LETTERS	Lyric writer・Composer・Arrange: HAYAKAWA DAICHI
Stay by my side	Stay by my side	Lyric writer: KURAKI MAI Composer: OHNO AIKA

i-motion movie (the video picture for "ハッピー・エンド・レターズ" has no motion.)

(Note) Uppercases of Roman alphabet are used for title, lyric writer, and composer.

The name of lyric writer and composer are described conforming the JASRAC.

Whole part of long titles may not be displayed due to restriction of the display size.



License No. V-045304

Select Ring Tone

1



Incoming call ▶ Select ring tone

Phone.....Sets a ring tone or an i-motion movie for incoming voice calls.

Video-phone.....Sets a ring tone or an i-motion movie for incoming video-phone calls.

Mail.....Sets a ring tone or an i-motion movie for incoming i-mode mail or Short Messages (SMS).

Chat mail.....Sets a ring tone or an i-motion movie for incoming chat mail. See page 298 for the ring tone during chat mail.

MessageR.....Sets a ring tone or an i-motion movie for incoming Messages R (Request).

MessageF.....Sets a ring tone or an i-motion movie for incoming Messages F (Free).

2 Select a ring tone

If you select "Select calling disp.", go to step 3 on page 123.


If you select "Select receiving disp.", go to step 2 on page 121.

3 Select a type of ring tone

MelodySelects a melody.

 **motion**Selects a moving image or i-motion movie.

Voice announceSelects a recorded sound in "Voice announce".

Selects "Voice announce 1" or "Voice announce 2", and press . The setting is completed.

OFFThe ring tone does not sound. The setting is completed.

4 Select a folder Select a ring tone or an i-motion movie

See page 371 for the melody folder and list.

See page 354 for the i-motion folder and list.

Information

The priority order of ring tones is; "Setting by phone number or mail address" "Setting by group" "Select ring tone".

The ring tone or images set at purchase might be played back or displayed for incoming calls or messages, depending on the combination of this function and "Display setting".


When you set an i-motion movie containing images and sound for a ring tone (Movie Ring Tone), the movie ring tone is played back taking priority over "Display setting". However, if you set an i-motion movie containing only voice (i-motion movie without image, such as a singer's voice) for the ring tone, the image set by "Display setting" is displayed.

You cannot set i-motion movies containing only moving images for ring tones.

For the incoming call from the phone number that does not notify the Caller ID, you can use "Call setting w/o ID" to set the ring tone.

You cannot set some i-motion movies for the ring tone.

When different types of mail — i-mode mail, Short Message (SMS), chat mail, or Messages R/F — are received at the same time, the priority order of ring tone is; "Chat mail" "i-mode mail/Short message (SMS)" "MessageR (Request)" "MessageF (Free)".

If you receive the same type of mail simultaneously, the ring tone corresponding to the mail you have received in the last works. Press  (**Play**) in step 2 and you can check the ring tone or images actually played back or displayed.

For the melody downloaded from a site or attached to mail, or the melody prohibited to attach to mail or output from the FOMA phone, a playing part may be specified in advance. When the play-part-specified-melody is set for the ring tone, the specified part only plays.

Set by Phone Number or Mail Address

You can set a ring tone for each phone number or mail address stored in the FOMA phone's Phonebook.

1 Detailed Phonebook display (**FUNC**) Utilities

Ring toneSets a ring tone or i-motion movie for a voice call and video-phone call from the specified phone number.

Mail ring toneSets a ring tone or i-motion movie for i-mode mail from the specified mail address and Short Message (SMS) from the specified phone number.

Go to step 3 on this page.

The set item is indicated by " ".

See page 99 for how to search the Phonebook.

From the detailed display, press  to bring up the phone number or mail address for which you set Utilities.

To release the ring tone for phone number or mail address, perform the same operation.

Information

You cannot set the ring tone for the Phonebook entries stored in "Secret mode" or "Secret only mode" and in the UIM Phonebook.

Note that the "Ring tone" setting of "Utilities" is valid only when the Caller ID is provided. It is advisable to activate "Caller ID request" in advance.

Note that this function is released if you change the set phone number or mail address.

To change the set ring tone, release the current setting and proceed.

If you receive the i-mode mail with the address "phone number@docomo.ne.jp", the mail ring tone set for the phone number of the Phonebook will play.

Use "Utilities" to check which phone number or mail address in the Phonebook is set, or to release the setting.

You can set a ring tone for each group of the FOMA phone's Phonebook.

If you have set the ring tone by phone number or mail address, that setting has priority.

1

Group setting **Select a group** **(FUNC)** **Utilities**

Ring toneSets a ring tone or an i-motion movie for incoming voice calls and video-phone calls.

Mail ring toneSets a ring tone or an i-motion movie for incoming i-mode mail or Short Message (SMS).

Go to step 3 on page 111.

The set item is indicated by " ".

To release the ring tone for group, perform the same operation.

Information

You cannot set the ring tone for "Group 00" or for groups in the UIM.

Note that the "Ring tone" setting of "Utilities" is valid only when the Caller ID is provided. It is advisable to activate "Caller ID request" in advance.

To change the set ring tone, release the current setting and proceed.

If you store the same phone number or mail address in multiple groups, the ring tone set for the group of the phone number or mail address which is accessed initially in the search order of column search has priority.

You can set this function for either the group in which secret and ordinary Phonebook entries are stored together or the group in which only secret entries are stored; however this function is disabled if you receive a call or mail from the secret entry. In that case, the ring tone sounds according to the setting of "Select ring tone".

Use "Utilities" to check which group is set, or to release the setting.

Informing You of an Incoming Call by Vibration

Setting at purchase
OFF

You can set the vibrator to notify incoming calls and mail.

1 Incoming call Vibrator

- Phone.....Sets a vibrator for incoming voice calls.
- Video-phone.....Sets a vibrator for incoming video-phone calls.
- Mail.....Sets a vibrator for incoming i-mode mail or Short Messages (SMS).
- Chat mail.....Sets a vibrator for incoming chat mail.
- MessageR.....Sets a vibrator for incoming Messages R (Request).
- MessageF.....Sets a vibrator for incoming Messages F (Free).




2 Select a vibrator pattern

- Pattern 1.....Alternates between vibration ON (about 0.5 seconds) and OFF (about 0.5 seconds).
- Pattern 2.....Alternates between vibration ON (about 1 second) and OFF (about 1 second).
- Pattern 3.....Alternates between vibration ON (about 3 seconds) and OFF (about 1 second).
- Melody linkage.....Vibrates in time with the ring tone.
- OFF.....Does not vibrate.

While you are selecting a pattern, the FOMA phone vibrates by the selected pattern for confirmation.

However, it does not vibrate if you select "Melody linkage".

The following icons are displayed while the vibrator is set.

- : Vibration for incoming voice calls or video-phone calls
- : Vibration for incoming mail, chat mail or Messages R/F
- : Vibration for incoming voice calls, video-phone calls, mail, chat mail, or Messages R/F

Information

The priority order of vibrator is; "Setting by phone number or mail address" "Setting by group" "Vibrator".

When different types of mail — i-mode mail, Short Message (SMS), chat mail, or Messages R/F — are received at the same time, the priority order of vibrator is; "Chat mail" "i-mode mail/Short message (SMS)" "MessageR (Request)" "MessageF (Free)".

If you receive the same type of mail simultaneously, the vibrator corresponding to the mail you have received in the last works.

While "Ring volume" is set to anything other than "Silent" and the vibrator is set, incoming calls and mail are indicated by the ring tone and vibration. While "Ring volume" is set to "Silent", incoming calls and mail are indicated by vibration only.

The vibrator vibrates at a regular strength, regardless of the ring volume.

Even when "Melody linkage" is set, the FOMA phone vibrates with "Pattern 2" if an i-motion movie is set for the ring tone.

Even when "Melody linkage" is set, the FOMA phone vibrates with "Pattern 2" if no vibration pattern is set for the ring tone.

Be careful not to leave the FOMA phone on a desk or similar places with the vibrator activated; when a call comes in, the FOMA phone can move and fall by vibration.

It is advisable to deactivate the vibrator during charging.

Set by Phone Number or Mail Address

You can set a vibrator for each phone number or mail address stored in the FOMA phone's Phonebook.

1 Detailed Phonebook display ▶ ⓘ (FUNC) ▶ Utilities

VibratorSpecifies a vibrator pattern for a voice call and video-phone call from the specified phone number.

Mail vibratorSpecifies a vibrator pattern for i-mode mail from the specified mail address and Short Message (SMS) from the specified phone number.

Go to step 2 on page 113.

The selected item is indicated by " ".

See page 99 for how to search the Phonebook.

From the detailed display, press ⓘ to bring up the phone number or mail address for which you set Utilities.

To release the vibrator for the phone number or mail address, perform the same operation.

Information

You cannot set the vibrator for the Phonebook entries stored in "Secret mode" or "Secret only mode" or in the UIM Phonebook.

Note that "Vibrator" of "Utilities" is valid only when the Caller ID is provided. It is advisable to activate "Caller ID request" in advance.

Note that this function is released if you change the set phone number or mail address.

To change the set vibrator, release the current setting and proceed.

If you receive the i-mode mail with the address "phone number@docomo.ne.jp", the mail vibrator set for the phone number of the Phonebook will work.

Use "Utilities" to check which phone number or mail address in the Phonebook is set, or to release the setting.

Set by Group



You can set a vibrator for each group of the FOMA phone's Phonebook.

When the vibrator is set by phone number or mail address, that setting has priority.

1 ⓘ ▶ Group setting ▶ Select a group ▶ ⓘ (FUNC) ▶ Utilities

VibratorSets a vibrator for incoming voice calls and video-phone calls.

Mail vibratorSets a vibrator for incoming i-mode mail or Short Message (SMS).

Go to step 2 on page 113.

The selected item is indicated by " ".

To release the vibrator for group, perform the same operation.

Information

You cannot set the vibrator for "Group 00" or for groups in the UIM.

Note that "Vibrator" of "Utilities" is valid only when the Caller ID is provided. It is advisable to activate "Caller ID request" in advance.

To change the set vibrator, release the current setting and proceed.

If you store the same phone number or mail address in multiple groups, the vibrator set for the group of the phone number or mail address which is accessed initially in the search order of column search has priority.

You can set this function for either the group in which secret and ordinary Phonebook entries are stored together or the group in which only secret entries are stored; however this function is disabled if you receive a call or mail from the secret entry.

Use "Utilities" to check which group is set, or to release the setting.

Using Recorded Sound as Ring Tone

You can set the sound you recorded with the FOMA phone for a ring tone, On hold tone/Holding tone, alarm for "Alarm", "Schedule" and "ToDo", and an answer message for Record Message.

You can record up to two items for about 15 seconds for each.

Record

1

▶ Voice announce ▶ Voice announce 1 or Voice announce 2 ▶ Record

If nothing is recorded, "Play" and "Erase" are not displayed.
If there is recorded data, the confirmation display appears asking whether to overwrite the data.
Select "YES" and press to overwrite.
To cancel, select "NO" and press .



Recording starts.

To suspend recording midway, press or .
The tone beeps about five seconds before the recording time (about 15 seconds) ends.
When recording ends, the tone beeps twice, and the former display returns.



Information

When a call comes in, when an alarm for "Alarm", "Schedule", or "ToDo" sounds, or when you switch displays using Multitask during recording, the recording is suspended. (The contents recorded to that point are saved.)
Press to stop the recording and the Stand-by display returns. (The contents recorded to that point are saved.)

Play

1

▶ Voice announce ▶ Voice announce 1 or Voice announce 2 ▶ Play

To suspend playback midway, press , , or .
When playback ends, the former display returns.



Erase

1

▶ Voice announce ▶ Voice announce 1 or Voice announce 2 ▶ Erase ▶ YES

To cancel, select "NO" and press .

Information

You cannot operate while another function is working (while or is displayed at the upper right of the display).

<Keypad Sound>

3 DEF 0 DEF

Setting Keypad Sound

Setting at purchase
ON
1 Other settings ▶ Keypad sound

- ON.....Makes the keypad sound. Sounds at Level 2.
OFF.....Does not make the keypad sound.

Information

If you set this function to "OFF", the following tones do not sound:

- Respective warning tones
- Battery level tone (see page 42)

The keypad does not sound even if you press or .

The keypad does not sound in the following cases:

- During ringing
- During a Chara-den call
- During playing answer-hold tone
- During playing an answer message for Record Message
- During playing a voice memo
- During playing a voice announce
- During editing a moving image or an i-motion movie
- During answer-hold
- During playing a record message
- During playing a moving image or an i-motion movie
- During Manner Mode (while "Keypad Sound" of "Original" is set to "OFF")

<Charge Sound>

Setting Charging-start/end Tones

Setting at purchase
ON
1 Other settings ▶ Charge sound

- ON.....Sounds the charge sound. The beep sounds twice when charging starts/ends.
OFF.....Does not sound the charge sound.

Information

The charge sound sounds at the volume set for "Phone" of "Ring volume".

Even while "Charge sound" is set to "ON", the charge sound does not sound in the following cases:

- During Manner Mode
- During Drive Mode
- During displaying other than the Stand-by display

<Quality Alarm>

Sounding Alarm when a Line is Likely to be Disconnected

 7 DEF 5 DEF
 Setting at purchase
High tone

When a call is liable to be disconnected midway because of bad radio waves conditions, an alarm sounds to inform you right before possible disconnection.

1 Talk ▶ Quality alarm

- No tone.....Does not sound.
High tone ..High alarm sounds.
Low tone ...Low alarm sounds.

Information

You might be disconnected without hearing an alarm if radio waves conditions deteriorates suddenly.
Quality Alarm sounds only from the earpiece during a video-phone call.

Setting Ringing Time for Mail and Messages R/F

You can set the duration of the ring tone which sounds for incoming i-mode mail, Short Messages (SMS), Chat mail and Messages R/F.

Setting at purchase
Mail/Msg.ring time.....ON
Ringing time.....5 seconds

1 Incoming call ▶ Mail/Msg. ring time

- Mail.....Sets a ringing time for incoming i-mode mail or Short Messages (SMS).
- Chat mail.....Sets a ringing time for incoming chat mail.
- MessageR.....Sets a ringing time for incoming Messages R (Request).
- MessageF.....Sets a ringing time for incoming Messages F (Free).

2 Ringing

- ON.....Sets the ringing time.
- OFF.....Ring tone, Vibrator, Call/Charging indicator, and Display Light do not work.
The setting is completed.

3 Enter the ringing time (seconds).

Enter a two-digit number from "01" through "30".

Information

When "OFF" is set, "5" appears on the Stand-by display.

Sounding Ring Tone from Earphone Only

Setting at purchase
Earphone+Speaker

You can set where you make the ring tone sound from for when you connect the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone Set with Switch (option). The alarm notification, and playback tone from the melody player will sound from where you set as well as the ring tone.

1 External option ▶ Earphone

- Earphone+Speaker.....A tone sounds from both the earphone and speaker.
- Earphone.....A tone sounds only from the earphone.

Information

Even when you select "Earphone", the ring tone sounds from both the earphone and speaker about 20 seconds after ringing starts. However, the ring tone sounds from the earphone only even after about 20 seconds elapses if you make it sound in other means than receiving a voice call/video-phone call/packet, or alarm notification.

Even when you select "Earphone", the tone sounds from the speaker when you do not connect the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone Set with Switch or when you start shooting still or moving images.

Do not wind the cord of the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone Set with Switch around the FOMA phone.

The FOMA phone may pick up noise if you take the cord of the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone Set with Switch close to the FOMA phone during a call.

When you do not want the FOMA phone to make any sound, you can just press one key to switch off the ring tone, keypad sound and any other sound from the speaker.

You can use "Manner mode set" to select Manner Mode functions from three types: "Manner mode", "Super silent", or "Original".

While "Manner mode" or "Super silent" is activated, or while "Mic sensitiv." is set to "Up" in "Original", you can talk softly on the phone but your voice can still be heard clearly at the other party.

1 During standby/during a call (for at least one second)

Manner mode selected in "Manner mode set" is set.

Information


The recording tone sounds even in Manner Mode when you shoot still images or moving images.


In Manner Mode, if you attempt to play melodies, the confirmation display appears asking whether to play back the melody.

Further, if you attempt to play an i-motion movie with sound, the confirmation display appears asking whether to play back the sound.

The melody will be played back at the volume set for "Phone" of "Ring volume". If the setting is "Silent" or "Step", the volume will be Level 2. The i-motion movie will be played back at the volume set for the i-motion player.

Display during Manner Mode

During Manner Mode,  is displayed. The settings you selected for "Manner mode set" are also displayed.

 : Indicates that "Vibrator" will function to announce events.

 /  /  : Indicate that "Ring volume" has been set to "Silent".

To release Manner Mode

Press and hold  for at least one second.

During a call or ringing, two beeps sound and the message that is released appears.

To activate Manner Mode during ringing


During ringing, press  or .

Manner Mode will be activated and at the same time "Record message" will work, so that the caller can leave a message.

Even when "Record message" has not been set to "ON", the Record Message function works.

To take the call, press  ().

When five record messages have already been recorded, Record Message will not function; the Manner Mode function set for "Manner mode set" will start.

When the call finishes, Manner Mode will still be activated. To release it, press and hold  for at least one second.

When Manner Mode is activated during talking or ringing

If you activate Manner Mode during a call or ringing, the message that is set appears.

Selecting Manner Mode Type

You can select one of three types of operations for Manner Mode.

Operations during Manner Mode

	Manner Mode	Super Silent	Original
Record message	Set value of Record message		Set value of Original
Vibrator ¹	ON		Set value of Original
Phone volume	Silent		Set value of Original
Mail volume	Silent		Set value of Original
Alarm volume	Silent		Set value of Original
VM tone	ON	OFF	Set value of Original
Keypad sound	OFF		Set value of Original
Mic. sensitivity	Up		Set value of Original
Low voltage alarm tone (Battery alarm)	OFF		Set value of Original (Phone volume ²)
Confirmation tone for selecting ring tone	Silent		Set value of Original (Phone volume/Mail volume)
Answer hold tone	Silent		Set value of Original (Phone volume ³)
Call hold tone	Silent		Set value of Original (Phone volume ⁴)
Confirmation tone for recording voice announce	ON	OFF	Set value of Original (VM tone)
Battery level tone	Silent		Silent
Confirmation tone for checking missed calls and new mail	Silent		Set value of Original (Phone volume ³)
Warning tones	Silent		Set value of Original (Keypad sound)
Schedule alarm	Silent		Set value of Original (Phone volume)
Start tones for shooting still and moving images	Level 4		Level 4

1 Vibrator works instead of (or with) the following tones:

Ring tone and alarm for "Alarm", "Schedule", and "ToDo"

- The vibrator pattern will be the same as the setting described on page 113. However, if the setting described on page 113 is "OFF", "Pattern 2" will be activated.

Tones for checking missed calls and new mail

- Vibrates for about one second when you have missed calls or new messages.
- Vibrates for about 0.2 seconds when you have no missed calls and new messages.

2 The tone sounds at Level 1 for "Silent".

3 When Phone Volume is set to "Step", the tone sounds at Level 2.

4 The tone sounds at Level 1 for settings other than "Silent".

Manner Mode/Super Silent

You can set standard "Manner mode" to inform you of incoming calls or mail by the vibrator, or "Super silent" to erase all sounds including confirmation tones from the earpiece.

1



Incoming call ▶ Manner mode set ▶ Manner mode or Super silent

Original

You can use "Original" to customize operations in Manner Mode.

Setting at purchase

Record msg.	OFF
Vibrator	ON
Phone vol.	Silent
Mail vol.	Silent
Alarm vol.	Silent
VM tone	ON
Keypad sound	OFF
Mic sensitiv.	Up
LVA tone	OFF

1









Incoming call ▶ Manner mode set ▶ Original



2

Do the following operation.

Item	Operations
Record msg.	<p>ON Activates Record Message. If you have set "Record message" to "OFF" on page 69, the ringing time is fixed to about 10 seconds and cannot be changed.</p> <p>OFF Deactivates Record Message. See page 69 for Record Message.</p>
Vibrator	<p>ON Vibrates to announce incoming calls and mail.</p> <p>OFF Does not vibrate. See page 113 for the vibrator.</p>
Phone vol.	<p>This setting is for adjusting the ring volume for incoming voice and video-phone calls.</p> <p>▶ Use  to adjust the volume ▶ </p> <p>See page 65 for the ring volume.</p>
Mail vol.	<p>This setting is for adjusting the ring volume for i-mode mail, Short Messages (SMS), and Messages R/F.</p> <p>▶ Use  to adjust the volume ▶ </p> <p>See page 65 for the ring volume.</p>
Alarm vol.	<p>▶ Use  to adjust the volume ▶ </p> <p>See page 399 for Alarm.</p>
VM tone	<p>ON Sounds the confirmation tone when a record message is played back and a voice memo is recorded or played back.</p> <p>OFF Does not sound the confirmation tone when a record message is played back and a voice memo is recorded or played back.</p>
Keypad sound	<p>ON Sounds the keypad sound.</p> <p>OFF Does not sound the keypad sound. See page 116 for the keypad sound.</p>
Mic sensitiv.	<p>Normal Sets the microphone sensitivity in talk to normal.</p> <p>Up Sets the microphone sensitivity in talk to high.</p>
LVA tone	<p>ON Sounds the low voltage alarm (battery alarm).</p> <p>OFF Does not sound the low voltage alarm (battery alarm). See page 42 for the low voltage alarm (battery alarm).</p>

3 Press  (Finish).

Changing Displays

Set Stand-by Display

Setting at purchase
Air

You can set an image for the Stand-by display.

1 Display ▶ Display setting ▶ Stand-by display

- OFF Does not display an image. The setting is completed.
 - Calendar Displays the calendar. To display an image on the background, select "Background" and press . If you select "No background" and press , the setting is completed.
 - My picture Selects an image or animation.
 - motion Selects a moving image or i-motion movie.
 - appli display Selects an i-appli. Selects an i-appli and press . The setting is completed.
- "Calendar" is not displayed if the date and time are not set.
- When the confirmation display appears asking whether to change after selecting i-appli, select "YES" and press . When the confirmation display appears asking whether to permit communications, select "YES" or "NO" and press .

2 Select a folder ▶ ▶ Select an image ▶

When the image is larger than the Stand-by display, the overall image is displayed with the dimensions shrunk and proportional ratio retained. The image smaller than the Stand-by display is displayed in equivalent dimensions.

See page 334 for the still image folder and list.

See page 354 for the i-motion folder and list.

When Calendar is set

The calendar for the current month appears on the Stand-by display. You can confirm the calendar for the previous or next month or set schedule events (see page 402) with ease.

National holidays conform to "Law on national holidays" (Law no.178, 1948) and the partially revised law enforced in that year. Spring Equinox Day and Autumn Equinox Day are announced on the official gazette of February 1 in the previous year, therefore, they may differ from the days on the calendar. (As of January 2005)



Confirming the calendar for previous and next month

- From the Stand-by display, press and then to display the calendar for the previous month, or press to display the calendar for the next month.
 - When a desktop icon is pasted on the Stand-by display, pressing selects the desktop icon previously used or the calendar. Use to select the calendar and again press ; then press to display the calendar for the previous or next month. Setting schedule events in succession
- Press again to set "Schedule" for the displayed month.

When an animation or "Original animation" is set

An animation appears on the display when you open the FOMA phone, and the first frame is displayed as the Stand-by display.

When a Flash movie is set

It is played back when you open the FOMA phone, and the frame you stop the played back by some operation is displayed as the Stand-by display.

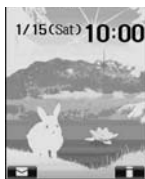
When an i-motion movie is set

It is played back when you open the FOMA phone, and the first frame is displayed as the Stand-by display. (See page 358)

Type of pre-installed images



<Air>



<Spring>



<Sunset>



<Night view>

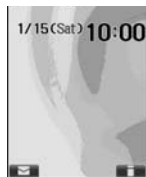


<Flower>

Flash movie



<Breezy>



<Spatial>



<Wake up>

Information

You cannot set an i-motion movie containing no movie image for the Stand-by display. You cannot set some images, either. While "Automatic display" is set, the Automatic Display setting has priority; the image is not displayed when you open the FOMA phone. The sound of the Flash movie cannot be played back.

Set the Wake-up Display

Setting at purchase
Wake up

You can set an image or message to display for when the power turns on.

1



Display > Display setting > Wake-up display

- OFF.....Does not display images.
- Message.....Enter a message and press . You can enter up to 50 full-pitch or 100 half-pitch characters. See page 482 for how to enter characters.
- My picture.....Go to step 2 on page 121.
You cannot set i-motion movie.



Set Displays for Dialing/Calling and Others

Setting at purchase
Hairline silver

You can set an image for the Dialing/Calling display, Mail Sending/Mail Receiving display, and Checking display.

1



Display > Display setting

- Dialing.....Sets an image for when you make a voice call. Go to step 2 on page 121.
- Calling.....Sets an image for when you receive a voice call.
- VP Dialing.....Sets an image for when you make a video-phone call. Go to step 2 on page 121.
- VP Calling.....Sets an image for when you receive a video-phone call.
- Mail sending.....Sets an image for when you send mail. Go to step 2 on page 121.
- Mail receiving.....Sets an image for when you receive mail or Messages R/F.
- Check new message.....Sets an image for when you "Check messages" or "Check new message". Go to step 2 on page 121.

2 Select calling disp. or Select receiving disp.

If you select "Select receiving disp.", go to step 2 on page 121.

If you select "Select ring tone", go to step 3 on page 111.

3 Select a type of the image

My picture.....Selects a still image or animation.

 **motion**.....Selects a moving image or i-motion movie.

Go to step 2 on page 121.

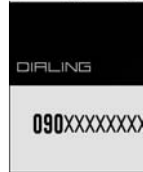
Type of pre-installed images (Dialing)



<Hairline silver>



<Flower pink>




<Gloss blue>

Information

The priority order of the display for call receiving is; "Setting by phone number" "Setting by group" "Disp. PH-book image" "Display setting".

When you set an i-motion movie containing movie images and sound for a ring tone (Movie Ring Tone), the movie ring tone plays back taking priority over this function. However, if you set an i-motion movie containing only voice (i-motion movie without image, such as a singer's voice) for the ring tone, the image set by this function is displayed.

The ring tone or images at the time of purchase might be displayed or played back for incoming calls or messages, depending on the combination of this function and "Select ring tone".

Press  (**Play**) in step 2 and you can check the ring tone or images actually displayed or played back.

You cannot set an i-motion movie containing no movie image for this function. In addition, you cannot set some images.

The sound of Flash movie cannot be played back.

You cannot set the Flash movies for "Check new message".

You can set the i-motion movies only for "Calling" or "VP Calling".

Set Power Saver Mode

Setting at purchase
ON

You can set Power Saver Mode to reduce the battery consumption by clearing the display.

1



▶ **Display** ▶ **Display setting** ▶ **Power saver mode**

ON.....If no operation is done for a certain period of time with the Stand-by display displayed, the display goes off and the Command Navigation key flickers at about five-seconds interval when the FOMA phone is open.

OFF.....Does not switch to Power Saver Mode.

Information

The setting here also applies to "Power saver mode" of "Display light". Also, use "Light time (minutes)" of "Display light" to specify a standby time until Power Saver Mode is set to "ON". (See page 127)

The FOMA phone does not switch to Power Saver Mode during calls, data transmission or charging.

A display appears in the following cases:

- When any key is pressed
- When a call comes in
- When mail or Message (R/F) arrives
- When Alarm tone (for Alarm, Schedule, ToDo, or battery expiration) sounds
- When i-appli launches automatically
- When the FOMA phone is opened or closed

<Display Phonebook Image>

Displaying an Image Stored in the Phonebook during Ringing

Setting at purchase
ON

If the Caller ID notified by the caller matches the phone number stored in the Phonebook, the image stored in the Phonebook is displayed.

1 Incoming call ▶ Disp. phonebook image

ON.....Displays the image stored in the Phonebook for incoming calls.

OFF.....Does not display the image stored in the Phonebook for incoming calls.

Information

The priority order of the display for call receiving is; "Setting by phone number" "Setting by group" "Disp. phonebook image" "Display setting".

You cannot display images stored in the Phonebook in "Secret mode" or "Secret only mode" even if those modes are activated during ringing.

Set by Phone Number

You can set an image for incoming calls from each phone number stored in the FOMA phone.

1 Detailed Phonebook display (FUNC) ▶ Utilities ▶ Picture

Go to step 3 on page 123.

"Picture" is indicated by " ".

See page 99 for how to search the Phonebook.

To release the calling image for a phone number, perform the same operation.

Information

You cannot set the calling image for the Phonebook entries stored in "Secret mode" or "Secret only mode" or in the UIM Phonebook. Note that the "Picture" setting of "Utilities" is valid only when the Caller ID is provided. It is advisable to activate "Caller ID request" in advance.

Note that the setting is released if you change the specified phone number.

To change the set calling image, release the current setting and proceed.

Use "Utilities" to check which phone number in the Phonebook is set, or to release the setting.

Set by Group



You can set an image for incoming calls from each group of the FOMA phone's Phonebook.

If you have set the calling image by phone number, that setting has priority.

1 Group setting ▶ Select a group (FUNC) ▶ Utilities ▶ Picture

Go to step 3 on page 123.

"Picture" is indicated by " ".

To release the calling image for group, perform the same operation.

Information

You cannot set the calling image for "Group 00" or for the groups in the UIM.

Note that the "Picture" setting of "Utilities" is valid only when the Caller ID is provided. It is advisable to activate "Caller ID request" in advance.

To change the set calling image, release the current setting and proceed.

If you store the same phone number in multiple groups, the calling image set for the group of the phone number which is initially accessed in the search order of column search has priority.

You can set this function for the group in which secret and ordinary Phonebook entries are stored together or the group in which only secret entries are stored; however this function will not work for incoming calls or mail from the secret entry.

Use "Utilities" to check which group is set, or to release the setting.

Setting Contents for Private Window

You can set the contrast, the display during standby, or display during ringing, etc., for the Private window.

Setting at purchase	
Display setting	Standard
Contrast	Level 5
Orientation	Pattern 1
Clock	Pattern 1
Called	ON
Mail	OFF
Animation	ON+ OFF

1



▶ Display ▶ Private window ▶ Display setting

StandardDisplays information on the Private window. (Sixty seconds after the back light goes off, the Private window is cleared. Battery consumption is then saved.)

All time ONDisplays information on the Private window all the time.

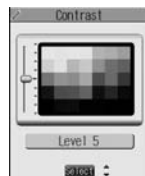
OFF.....Does not display information on the Private window. The setting is completed.



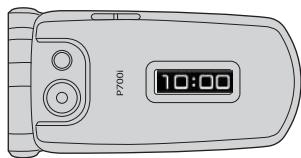
2

Do the following operation.

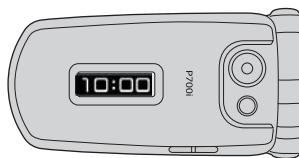
Item	Operations
Contrast	<p>You can adjust the contrast from Level 1 to Level 9.</p> <p>▶ Use to adjust the contrast ▶ </p> <p>You can check the contrast on the Private window.</p>
Orientation	<p>Pattern 1 .....The Private window is displayed in pattern 1.</p> <p>Pattern 2 .....The Private window is displayed in pattern 2.</p> <p>You can check each pattern on the Private window.</p>
Private window setting (Clock)	<p>▶ Clock</p> <p>Pattern 1 .....The enlarged Clock is displayed in pattern 1.</p> <p>Pattern 2 .....The enlarged Clock is displayed in pattern 2.</p> <p>Pattern 3 .....The enlarged Clock is displayed in pattern 3.</p> <p>See page 27 for how to display the enlarged Clock.</p> <p>You can check each pattern on the Private window.</p>
Private window setting (Display information ▶ Called)	<p>▶ Display information ▶ Called</p> <p>ON .....Displays the caller's phone number while ringing. (See page 27)</p> <p>OFF .....Does not display the caller's phone number while ringing.</p>
Private window setting (Display information ▶ Mail)	<p>▶ Display information ▶ Mail</p> <p>ON .....Displays the date and time when the mail is received, sender, and title. (See page 27)</p> <p>OFF .....Does not display the date and time when the mail is received, sender, and title.</p>
Private window setting (Display information ▶ Animation)	<p>▶ Display information ▶ Animation</p> <p>ON + ON .....Displays the animation with lighting the display during transmission.</p> <p>ON + OFF .....Displays the animation without lighting the display during transmission.</p> <p>OFF .....Neither displays the animation nor lights the display during transmission.</p>



Types of "Orientation"



<Pattern 1>



< Pattern 2>

Types of "Clock"



<Pattern 1>



<Pattern 2>



<Pattern 3>

Information

If you set "Private window" to "OFF", the display light does not light.

Even if "Private window" is set to "OFF", the Software Update message is displayed on the Private window.

Even if "Mail" is set to "ON", the date and time, sender, and title of received mail messages in folders or boxes with security are not displayed.

You cannot set while another function is working (while " / " or " / " is displayed at the upper right of the display).

<Automatic Display>

Displaying a Phone Number just by Opening FOMA Phone

You can display the specified phone number in the Phonebook just by opening the FOMA phone which was closed during displaying the Stand-by display. You can make a voice call or video-phone call to that phone number by pressing ().

Set Automatic Display

Setting at purchase
OFF

1 Display Automatic display

ON.....Displays the specified phone number when you open the FOMA phone.
OFF.....Does not automatically display.

Information

"Automatic display" is not available when you close and open the FOMA phone while operating each function or entering characters, or during calls, PIM Lock, All Lock, or in Secret Only Mode.

Press , , or to return to the Stand-by display from the Automatic display. Press to display the Mail menu. Press to display the i-mode menu.

Specify/Change Phone Number to be Displayed Automatically

1 Detailed Phonebook display () Automatic disp.

When you specify the Automatic display setting, " " is indicated to "Automatic disp." in the Function menu of the Phonebook. See page 99 for how to search the Phonebook.

To release the phone number specified for Automatic Display, perform the same operation.

If you have already specified a different phone number for Automatic Display, the display for confirming the change appears.

Select "YES" and press to change the specification.

To cancel, select "NO" and press .

Information

You can specify just a single phone number for Automatic Display. You cannot specify the phone number stored in the UIM Phonebook.

To use "Restrict dialing" and "Automatic display" at the same time, set "Restrict dialing" for the phone number specified for "Automatic disp.". You cannot auto-display the phone number for which "Restrict dialing" is not set.

You cannot specify the phone number stored in "Secret mode" or "Secret only mode".

<Display Light>

Setting Lights for Display and Keypad

Ordinary Usage

Setting at purchase

LightingON
Power saver modeON
Light time5 minutes

1 Display Display light Lighting

ON.....Lights in ordinary time.

The Private window lights for incoming calls when the FOMA phone is closed.

OFF.....Does not light in ordinary time.

2 Power saver mode

ON.....Sets Power Saver Mode.

OFF.....Does not set Power Saver Mode. The setting is completed.

The setting here also applies to "Power saver mode" of "Display setting". (See page 123)

3 Enter a light time (minutes).

Enter from "02" through "20" in two digits.

If you do not change standby time until switching to Power Saver Mode, press without entering the light time.

Charging

Setting at purchase
Standard

1 Display ▶ Display light ▶ Charging

StandardLights during charging in the same setting as it lights in ordinary time.
All time ONLights during charging constantly.

Area

Setting at purchase
LCD+Keys

1 Display ▶ Display light ▶ Area

LCD+KeysLights both the liquid crystal display (display and Private window) and keypad.
LCDLights the liquid crystal display (display and Private window) only.

Brightness


Setting at purchase
Level 2

1 Display ▶ Display light ▶ Brightness

Level 3Bright
Level 2Standard
Level 1Dark

The setting here is valid only for the display light.

To switch the display light ON/OFF by pressing one key

ON/OFF switches each time you press and hold  for at least one second.

The settings for "Charging", "Area", and "Brightness" are not changed.

If you set "Lighting" to "OFF", "  " appears on the Stand-by display.

Information

If you set "Lighting" to "ON", the display light stays lit while ringing. The display lights for about 15 seconds when you turn the power on, touch keys, or open/close the FOMA phone. The display constantly lights while the camera is activated or a moving image/i-motion movie is played back. If you select "OFF", the display does not light. However, the display light stays lit while shooting moving images, regardless of the "Lighting" setting.

See page 84 for Display Light during a video-phone call.

If the power is supplied from external power sources such as an AC Adapter (option), the setting during charging applies, regardless of the ON/OFF setting of the display light for ordinary time.

When you display the text of i-mode mail or Messages R/F, the lighting time varies according to the length of the text.

<Color Pattern>

 8 TUV 6 IS I-MODE

Setting Combination of Color Pattern for Display

Setting at purchase
Pattern 1

You can set the display color pattern of characters and backgrounds, and so on.

1 Display ▶ Color pattern ▶ Select a color pattern ▶

You can select the display from "Pattern 1", "Pattern 2", "Pattern 3", "Pattern 4", and "Pattern 5".

While a coloring pattern is selected, the selected color appears on the display for confirmation.

Information

You cannot set while another function is working (while "  " or "  " is displayed at the upper right of the display).

You cannot change the color for icons and images displayed in multiple colors, the DoCoMo pictographs, and the Internet web pages (sites) supporting i-mode.

Setting Menu Display

Guidance Display

Setting at purchase
ON

You can set the guidance for the Main menu and Shortcut menu.

1 [Settings] > Display > Menu display set > Guidance

- ON.....Displays the guidance for icons.
- OFF.....Does not display the guidance for icon.



ON



OFF

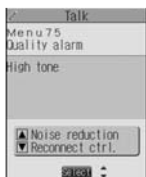
Menu Display

Setting at purchase
Detail

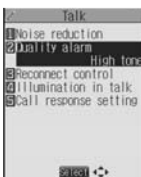
You can set the display for the lower sub-menu items (functions) of "SETTINGS".

1 [Settings] > Display > Menu display set > Menu display

- Detail.....Displays the lower sub-menu items in details.
- List.....Displays the lower sub-menu items in a list.



Detail



List

Information

"Private menu" is always displayed in "List", regardless of this setting.

Menu Icon

Setting at purchase
Pattern1

You can change icons and background images displayed for the main menus.

1 [Settings] > Display > Menu display set > Menu icon

- Pattern1.....Sets to Pattern 1. The setting is completed.
- Pattern2.....Sets to Pattern 2. The setting is completed.
- Customize.....Select an image for each menu icon and for background respectively.



Pattern1

(for silver colored body)



Pattern2

2 Select a menu icon or Background image to be changed ▶

▶ Select a folder ▶ Select an image ▶

Repeat step 2 and set an image for menu icon or background.

While selecting a menu icon or background image, press (Play) to confirm the currently set image.

While confirming the background image, press (Frame) to set a frame color indicating the group.

Select a color and press (Change) to switch between 16 Color and 256 Color.

See page 334 for the still image folder and list.



Information

The image file you can customize is in JPEG format or GIF format of VGA (640 x 480) or less size and of up to 100 Kbytes. However, you cannot set the animation GIF for the background.

You cannot set Customize during PIM Lock. Further, the image of Pattern 1 is displayed if PIM Lock is activated while Customize is set.

If you delete the image set by Customize, the image of Pattern 1 is displayed.

When you set Pattern 2 or Customize, the image for the main menu does not switch even if you switch "Select language".

Function Menu of the Icon/Background Selection Display

1 Icon/Background Selection display ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Do the following operation.

Function menu	Operations
Reset	Resets the image to the same image of "Pattern1" (setting at purchase). ▶ YES To cancel, select "NO" and press .
All reset	Resets all the menu icons and background to the same images of "Pattern1" (setting at purchase). ▶ YES To cancel, select "NO" and press .

<Illumination>

8 9

Selecting Flickering of Call/Charging Indicator during Ringing

You can set a flickering color of the Call/Charging indicator by type of receiving, or set it by phone number, mail address, or group in the Phonebook.

Setting at purchase

Phone.....Color 5
Video-phone.....Color 5
Mail.....Color 1
Chat mail.....Color 3
MessageR.....Color 1
MessageF.....Color 1

Set Color

1 ▶ Incoming call ▶ Illumination ▶ Set color

Phone.....Sets an illumination for voice calls.

Video-phone.....Sets an illumination for video-phone calls.

Mail.....Sets an illumination for incoming i-mode mail or Short Messages (SMS).

Chat mail.....Sets an illumination for incoming chat mail.

MessageR.....Sets an illumination for incoming Messages R (Request).

MessageF.....Sets an illumination for incoming Messages F (Free).

2 Select a color

Color 1 to Color 12.....Flickers in respective colors.

Gradation.....Flickers in Color 1 through Color 12 sequentially.

While you are selecting a color, the Call/Charging indicator lights in the selected color for confirmation.

Information

The priority order of illumination is; "Setting by phone number or mail address" "Setting by group" "Set color".

When different types of mail — i-mode mail, Short Message (SMS), chat mail, or Messages R/F — are received at the same time, the priority order of illumination is; "Chat mail" "i-mode mail/Short message (SMS)" "MessageR (Request)" "MessageF (Free)".

If you receive the same type of mail simultaneously, the illumination corresponding to the mail you have received in the last flickers.

You cannot select the flickering color for the Command Navigation key.

Set by Phone Number or Mail Address

You can set an illumination for each phone number or mail address stored in the FOMA phone's Phonebook.

1 Detailed Phonebook display (FUNC) Utilities

Illumination.....Sets an illumination for a voice call and video-phone call from the specified phone number.

Mail illumination.....Sets an illumination for i-mode mail from the specified mail address and Short Message (SMS) from the specified phone number.

Go to step 2 on this page.

The set item is indicated by " ".

See page 99 for how to search the Phonebook.

From the detailed display, press  to bring up the phone number or mail address for which you set Utilities.

To release the illumination for the phone number or mail address, perform the same operation.

Information

You cannot set illumination for the Phonebook entries stored in "Secret mode" or "Secret only mode" or in the UIM Phonebook. Note that "Illumination" of "Utilities" is valid only when the Caller ID is provided. It is advisable to activate "Caller ID request" in advance.

Note that this function is released if you change the specified phone number or mail address.

To change the set illumination, release the current setting and proceed.

If you receive the i-mode mail with the address "phone number@docomo.ne.jp", the mail illumination set for the phone number of the Phonebook will work.

Use "Utilities" to check which phone number or mail address in the Phonebook is set, or to release the setting.

Set by Group



You can set an illumination for each group of the FOMA phone's Phonebook.

When an illumination is set by phone number or mail address, that setting has priority.

1 Group setting (FUNC) Utilities

Illumination.....Sets an illumination for incoming voice calls and video-phone calls.

Mail illumination.....Sets an illumination for incoming i-mode mail or Short Messages (SMS).

Go to step 2 on this page.

The set item is indicated by " ".

To release the illumination for group, perform the same operation.

Information

You cannot set the illumination for "Group 00" or for groups in the UIM.

Note that "Illumination" of "Utilities" is valid only when the Caller ID is provided. It is advisable to activate "Caller ID request" in advance.

To change the set illumination, release the current setting and proceed.

If you store the same phone number or mail address in multiple groups, the illumination set for the group of the phone number or mail address which is accessed initially in the search order of column search has priority.

You can set this function for either the group in which secret and ordinary Phonebook entries are stored together or the group in which only secret entries are stored; however this function is disabled if you receive a call or mail from the secret entry.

Use "Utilities" to check which group is set, or to release the setting.

Set Patterns

Setting at purchase
Standard

You can set an illumination pattern for illumination and the Command Navigation key.

1 Incoming call ▶ Illumination ▶ Set pattern

StandardFlickering repeats "ON for about 0.5 seconds" and "OFF for about 0.5 seconds".
Melody linkageFlickers in accordance with a melody.

Information

If you have selected "Pattern 1" through "Pattern 3" for "Select ring tone", the illumination flickers in "Melody linkage" even if you select "Standard".

Even if you select "Melody linkage", the illumination flickers in "Standard" when an illumination pattern that links to melody is not stored in the ring tone.

If you have set an i-motion movie for the ring tone in "Select ring tone", the illumination flickers in "Standard".

Edit Color Name

1 Incoming call ▶ Illumination ▶ Adjust color ▶ Edit color name ▶ Select a color ▶

You cannot select "Gradation".

2 Enter a name ▶



You can enter up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters.
See page 482 for how to enter characters.

Adjust Color Tone

1 Incoming call ▶ Illumination ▶ Adjust color ▶ Adjust color tone ▶ Select a color ▶

You cannot select "Gradation".

2 Use to adjust the color ▶

Use  to select the color and  to change the color tone.



<Illumination in Talk>

Setting Flickering of Call/Charging Indicator during a Call

Setting at purchase
OFF

1



Talk ▶ Illumination in talk

OFF.....Does not flicker.

Color 1 to 7Flickers in a single color.

Gradation 1 to 3Flickers in gradation pattern.

While you are selecting a color, the Call/Charging indicator flickers in the selected color for confirmation.

Information

While recording "Record message", playing back an answer message or during answer-hold, the Call/Charging indicator flickers in the same pattern as for during a call.

<Information Notice Setting>

Checking Missed Calls and New Mail by Tone and Call/Charging Indicator

Setting at purchase
ON

When the FOMA phone is closed, you can press to check for missed calls, new mail, new chat mail, Record Message, and Voice Mail.

1



Incoming call ▶ Info notice setting

ONNotifies you whether there are missed calls, new mail, or new chat mail by the electronic sound and flickering of the Call/Charging indicator.

OFF.....Turns the information notice OFF.

When "Select language" is set to "日本語 (Japanese)", "ボイス (voice)" appears. This notifies you of new chat mail, new mail, missed calls, record message, and voice mail in this order in Japanese announcement and by the flickering of the Call/Charging indicator.

If you press while the FOMA phone is closed

When you have a missed call, new mail, or new chat mail

(When the "Missed call" icon, "New mail" icon, or "New chat mail" icon is displayed on the Stand-by display.)

If "Info notice setting" is set to "ON", a double-beep sounds and the Call/Charging indicator lights for about five seconds.

If "Info notice setting" is set to "ボイス (voice)" in Japanese display, a double-beep sounds and a voice message announces that you have mail, a missed call, and so on, and the Call/Charging indicator lights for about five seconds.

If you press again before the voice message announcement is finished, you can stop that announcement.

When you have no missed calls, new mail, or new chat mail

If "Info notice setting" is set to "ON", a triple-beep sounds and the Call/Charging indicator flickers for about five seconds.

If "Info notice setting" is set to "ボイス (voice)" in Japanese display, a triple-beep sounds and the Call/Charging indicator flickers for about five seconds. No voice will be played.


Information

To use this function, you need to set "Side keys guard" to "OFF".

You cannot check whether you have new mail at the i-mode Center by this function.

When you have a missed call, the Call/Charging indicator lights in the color set for "Phone" of "Illumination". When you have new mail, the Call/Charging indicator lights in the color set for "Mail" of "Illumination". When you have new chat mail, the Call/Charging indicator lights in the color set for "Chat mail" of "Illumination". When you have a missed call, new mail, and new chat mail, the Call/Charging indicator lights alternately in the corresponding colors. And when you have no missed calls, no new mail, and no chat mail, the Call/Charging indicator lights in "Color 12".

If you open the FOMA phone during the voice message announcement, the announcement stops.

You cannot use this checking function with the FOMA phone open. If you press  with the FOMA phone open, Record Message and Voice Memo will play back (see page 72).

You cannot check during "All lock" or "PIM lock".

Confirmation tone sounds at the volume set for "Phone" of "Ring volume".

The missed call, new mail, and new chat mail are informed by both the Call/Charging indicator and the vibrator unless "Phone" of "Vibrator" has been set to "OFF".

During Manner Mode, the beep does not sound and the vibrator works instead. However, the beep sounds when "Phone vol." of "Original" is not set to "Silent", and the vibrator does not work when "Vibrator" is set to "OFF".

The vibrator announces the information as follows:

- When you have a missed call, new mail, or new chat mail message Vibrates for about one second.
- When you have no missed calls, new mail, or new chat mail message Vibrates for about 0.2 seconds.

<Desktop>

Using Icons on Desktop

Setting at purchase
None

If you could not answer a call (missed call) or when you have new mail, icons notify you of the call or mail on the Stand-by display. (Notification icons)

You can paste such as the phone numbers or mail addresses as icons you frequently use. (Desktop icon)

Pasting Icons to Desktop

You can paste up to 15 phone numbers or mail addresses to the desktop as "Desktop icon".

Display/Operation	Items you can paste
While Redial, Dialed Call Record/Received Call Record is displayed	Phone number
While Phonebook (detailed display) is displayed	Phone number/Mail address
While a site is displayed/Bookmark List/URL Entry History	URL
Detailed Sent/Received Mail display, Sent/Received Address List, Detailed Sent/Received Address display	Sender/Sending destination
Software List	i-appli
While a still image is displayed/Still Image List	Picture
While a moving image is in pause/At the end of moving image replay/ Moving Image List	i-motion
Chara-den List/Chara-den display	Chara-den
Melody List	Melody
While Camera menu is displayed	Camera menu
Bar Code Reader Selection display	Bar code reader
Text Reader Selection display	Text reader
Receive Ir Data Selection display	Receive Ir data
While ToDo is displayed	ToDo
Private Menu List	Private menu

1 The display for the item to be pasted ▶ (i) (FUNC) ▶ Add desktop icon

If there are multiple senders (or other recipients of simultaneous mail) or destination addresses of mail, use (i) to select the mail address or phone number to be pasted and then press (i).

2 YES

To cancel, select "NO" and press (i).

Information

URL may not be able to be pasted to the desktop depending on the site.

You can store the title for URL of up to 16 full-pitch characters or 32 half-pitch characters. When the number of characters for the title exceeds that much, the characters in excess are deleted. If no title is found, the URL excluding "http://" or "https://" is displayed.

You cannot paste the following to the desktop: URLs in excess of 256 half-pitch characters, phone numbers or mail addresses in the mail text, i-motion movies with playback restrictions, the files inside the miniSD memory card, data scanned by the bar code reader, characters scanned by the text reader, and the contents of ToDo.

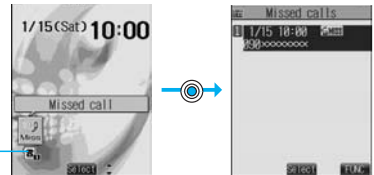
Proceeding to Respective Functions from Icons on Desktop

1 Stand-by display ▶ (i)

The icon you selected last time has been selected in advance.

2 Use (i) to select an icon ▶ (i)

Up to five "Desktop icons" are displayed.
If there are six or more icons, "◀" and "▶" are displayed.












When a missed call icon is selected

Information

























"Notification icon" is deleted when each function is executed. Press and hold (i) for at least one second to delete all the "Notification icons".

Even if you delete "Notification icon", "Desktop icon" is not deleted.

Notification icons

Icon	Description	Operation when selected
 Miss	When you could not answer a voice call	The Missed Call Record appears. (See page 63)
 Msg	When a record message was recorded	The display for playing/erasing the record message appears. (See page 71)
 New	When new i-mode mail or Short Message (SMS) arrived	The Inbox List appears. (See page 266)
 New	When new chat mail arrived	Chat mail activates. (See page 295)
 Notrun	When i-appli did not start automatically	The i-appli Auto Start Info display appears. (See page 324)
 Error	When a security error occurred in the i-appli Stand-by display	The security error record appears. (See page 313)
 Miss	When an alarm did not sound	The details of the alarm that did not sound appears. (See page 402)
 VM	When a message was recorded at Voice Mail Service Center	The display for Voice Mail appears. (See page 426)
 Update	When Software Update was executed	After entering the Terminal Security Code, the Update Completion display or the reason for not completing appears. (See page 533)

Desktop icons

Icon	Description	Operation when selected
 ~ 	When a phone number is pasted	The Dialing display appears with the phone number entered. (See pages 48, 75)
 ~ 	When the URL of site is pasted	The site of that URL is displayed. (See page 193)
 ~ 	When sender or destination address of i-mode mail is pasted	The display for composing i-mode mail appears with the mail address entered. (See page 235)
 ~ 	When sender or destination address of Short Message (SMS) is pasted	The display for composing Short Message (SMS) appears with the mail address entered. (See page 301)
 ~ 	When i-appli is pasted	i-appli starts. (See page 312)
 ~ 	When the picture is pasted	Displayed by the Picture viewer. (see page 332)
 ~ 	When an i-motion movie is pasted	Played back by the i-motion player. (See page 353)
 ~ 	When a Chara-den image is pasted	Played back by the Chara-den player. (See page 367)
 ~ 	When a melody is pasted	Played back by the Melody player. (See page 371)
	When the camera menu is pasted	Camera menu appears. (See page 160, 161, 166)
	When the Bar Code Reader function is pasted	The Bar Code Reader display appears. (See page 176)
	When the Text Reader function is pasted	The Text Reader display appears. (See page 181)
	When the Ir exchange function is pasted	The Receive Ir Data display appears. (See pages 388, 390)
	When the ToDo function is pasted	The ToDo display appears. (See page 410)
	When a Private menu is pasted	The Private Menu display appears. (See page 412)

When the original data is deleted or overwritten, the desktop icon is disabled.

Check Details of Desktop Icon

6.MINS 3.DIFF

1 [Left Arrow] [Right Arrow] [Settings] ▶ Display ▶ Desktop icon

The list of Desktop icons pasted to the desktop is displayed.
When there is no "Desktop icon", nothing is displayed.



<Desktop Icon List>

2 Select the icon whose details to be displayed ▶ [Enter]

You can press [Enter] to scroll the display for checking a long URL.
After checking, press [Pop].

Function Menu of the Desktop Icon List

1 Desktop Icon List ▶ [Info] ([FUNC]) ▶ Do the following operation.

You can bring up the Function menus also by pressing [Info] ([FUNC]) while you are selecting a desktop icon from the Stand-by display.

Function menu	Operations
Edit title	▶ Enter the title ▶ [Enter] You can enter up to 16 full-pitch or 32 half-pitch characters. However, the number of characters for the title displayed when you select the icon is up to 11 full-pitch or 22 half-pitch characters from the beginning of the title. See page 482 for how to enter characters.
Delete this	▶ YES To cancel, select "NO" and press [Enter].
Delete all	▶ YES To cancel, select "NO" and press [Enter].

Information

<Delete this> <Delete all>

Even if you delete "Desktop icon", "Notification icon" is not deleted.

6.MINS 6.MINS

Changing Font Settings

Type

Setting at purchase
Font 1

You can change the font.

1 [Left Arrow] [Right Arrow] [Settings] ▶ Display ▶ Font ▶ Type

Font 1Switches to Gothic type font.
Font 2Switches to Pop type (round type) font.



Thickness

Setting at purchase
Medium

1 [Left Arrow] [Right Arrow] [Settings] ▶ Display ▶ Font ▶ Thickness

ThinSets font thin.
MediumSets font medium.
BoldSets font bold.

Information

The characters you can switch to Font 2 are: English letters (full pitch and half pitch), numerals (full pitch and half pitch), hiragana, katakana (full pitch and half pitch), Greek letters, Russian letters, Descriptive symbols, and Science symbols. Other characters including kanji are displayed in Font 1. You cannot switch the characters used for entering phone numbers and for Clock display. You cannot change while another function is working (while “” or “” is displayed at the upper right of the display).

<Main Window Clock>

Switching Clock Display

You can switch the indication of the clock on the Stand-by display between Japanese and English, or switch it not to be displayed. You can change the size of the clock.

The setting here does not apply to the clock in the Private window.

Display

Setting at purchase

ON

1

  **Clock** ▶ **Main window clock** ▶ **Display**

ONDisplays the day of the week in English (Sun to Sat).

OFF.....The clock is not displayed.

When “Select language” is set to “日本語 (Japanese)”, you can select “日本語 (Japanese)” or “英語 (English)”.

日本語 (Japanese)Displays the day of the week in Japanese (日 to 土).

英語 (English)Displays the day of the week in English (Sun to Sat).

Size

Setting at purchase

Big

1

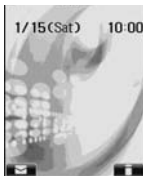
  **Clock** ▶ **Main window clock** ▶ **Size**

BigDisplays the clock in a large size.

SmallDisplays the clock in a small size.



Big



Small

Safety Settings

Passwords

Passwords	140
Changing Terminal Security Code	<Change Security Code> 141
Setting PIN Code	<PIN Setting> 142
Releasing PIN Lock	143

Restricting Operations or Functions

Locking your Phone to Prevent Use by Others	<All Lock> 144
Setting All Lock by Remote Control	<Remote All Lock> 145
Using Self Mode	<Self Mode> 146
Locking Functions Regarding Personal Information	<PIM Lock> 147
Locking Keypad Dial	<Keypad Dial Lock> 147
Preventing Side Key Operation Errors	<Side Keys Guard> 148

Restricting Outgoing/Incoming Calls or Messages

Setting not to Display Redial/Received Call Record	<Record Display Set> 148
Protecting Phonebook and Schedule Entries from Prying Eyes	<Secret Mode><Secret Only Mode> 149
Setting not to Display Mail in the Outbox/Inbox without Permission	<Mail Security> 150
Setting Restrictions on Phonebook Entries	<Restrictions> 150
Setting Response to Incoming Calls without Caller ID	<Call Setting w/o ID> 152
Muting Ringing just after Receiving	<Ringing Time> 153
Rejecting Calls from Parties whose Phone Numbers are not Stored in Phonebooks	<Reject Unknown> 153

Other “Safety Settings”

Other “Safety Settings”	154
-------------------------------	-----

Passwords

For some functions of the FOMA phone, you need to enter your password. In addition to the Terminal Security Code for operating respective mobile phone functions, the Network Security Code to use network services, and i-mode password are available. These passwords help you utilize your FOMA phone.

Terminal Security Code

The Terminal Security Code has been set to "0000" at purchase but you can change it as you desire.


Note that if you do not remember the Terminal Security Code, you need to bring the FOMA phone, UIM, and an identification card such as the driver's license to a DoCoMo shop counter.

Make sure that you (the subscriber) bring the FOMA phone by yourself to a DoCoMo shop counter.

Otherwise, the Terminal Security Code might not be resumed.

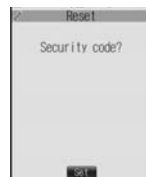
You need to enter the Terminal Security Code when using the following functions:

- Deleting all redial items
- Deleting all dialed call records
- Deleting all received call records
- Deleting all prefix settings
- Deleting country code setting
- Remote observation
- Setting a secret code (Phonebook)
- Deleting all Phonebook entries
- Restrictions
- Reject unknown
- Call setting w/o ID
- Reset call duration
- Changing the Terminal Security Code
- PIN setting
- All lock
- Remote all lock
- Secret mode
- Secret only mode
- PIM lock
- Keypad dial lock
- Record display set
- Editing/resetting/displaying all data/
deleting mail address1 of own number
- Reset settings
- Initialize
- UIM operation
- Clear learned
- Quote own number
- Deleting all common phrases
- Deleting all own dictionaries
- Deleting all DL dictionaries
- Deleting all URL histories
- Deleting all bookmarks/all bookmarks in folder, deleting folder
- Deleting all screen memos
- Reset (i-mode settings)
- Host selection
- Certificate host
- Deleting all i-appli software
- Deleting all Messages R/F
- Deleting all SMS reports
- Resetting SMS center selection
- Security
- Mail security
- Deleting Outbox/Inbox folder
- Deleting all sent/received/draft messages
- Deleting all messages in Outbox/Inbox folder
- Deleting all items in Sent Address
- Deleting all items in Received Address
- Deleting all mail members
- Deleting all chat groups
- Deleting all templates
- Reset (Mail settings)
- Deleting all bar code reader data
- Deleting all text reader data
- Deleting all still images, deleting all still images in a folder, deleting a folder
- Deleting all moving images in a folder, deleting a folder
- Deleting all Chara-den images
- Deleting all melodies in a folder, deleting a folder
- Exchanging all Ir data
- Transferring all data items
- miniSD memory card's add, Import & add all, Overwrite, Import & overwrite all, Export
- Formatting miniSD memory card/ deleting all data in miniSD memory card
- Deleting all Schedule events
- Deleting all ToDo items
- Deleting all free memos
- Software update

When the display for entering the Terminal Security Code appears, enter your four- to eight-digit code and press .

"_" is displayed instead of the entered numbers.

If you have entered wrong numbers or nothing for about 15 seconds, a warning tone sounds and a warning message is displayed; then the display prior to the entering the Terminal Security Code returns. Check the correct numbers and retry entering numbers.



Network Security Code

The Network Security Code is a four-digit number that is determined at the time of contract, which is used for using network services or for procedures on the DoCoMo e-site.

If you do not remember the Network Security Code, consult "DoCoMo Information Center" described on the back page of this manual. We at DoCoMo shop counters check documents such as driver's license to see if you are really yourself and then go to the procedure for resuming your Network Security Code. If you have "User ID" and "Password", you can also use a personal computer to take proceedings from the e-site.

See the back page of this manual for "DoCoMo e-site".

PIN1 Code/PIN2 Code

You can set the two security codes, namely the PIN1 code and PIN2 code for the UIM.

The default for these security codes is "0000", but you can change these codes as you desire.

The PIN1 code is a four- to eight-digit code for checking the user each time the UIM is inserted into the FOMA phone or each time the FOMA phone is turned on, so that you can prevent the third party from using your UIM. By entering the PIN1 code, you can make or take calls, or use functions in the FOMA phone.

The PIN2 code is the four- to eight-digit code for using the user certificate or applying to the issue of it and resetting All Calls Charge.

You need to enter the PIN1 code and PIN2 code when using the following functions:

PIN1 code

- Checking user when the power turns on
- PIN1 code entry set
- Change PIN1 code

PIN2 code

- Reset call charge
- Operating user certificate
- Connecting to FirstPass sites
- Change PIN2 code

If you purchase a new FOMA phone and use the existing UIM with the new FOMA phone, use the PIN1 code and PIN2 code you have set previously. If you have not changed the PIN1 code and PIN2 code, those are "0000".

i-mode Password

You need to enter four-digit "i-mode password" for registering or deleting My Menu, applying for or canceling Message Services or i-mode pay service.

The default for i-mode password is "0000", but you can change it as you desire.

(Some Information Providers may provide you with their specific password.)

Note that if you do not remember the i-mode password, you need to bring an identification card such as a driver's license to a DoCoMo shop counter.

Information

To prevent mischief, change the Terminal Security Code/PIN1 code or PIN2 code/i-mode password after the contract. Also, keep a separate record of them just in case you forget them.

Do not use the easy-to-decipher figures such as lower four digits of the phone number to prevent it from being known by others.

<Change Security Code>



Changing Terminal Security Code

Change the default for the Terminal Security Code required for operating functions to your own four- to eight-digit code so that you can make full use of the FOMA phone. Also, keep a separate record of your security code just in case you forget it.

1



Lock/Security ▶ Change security code

2

Enter the current Terminal Security Code ▶



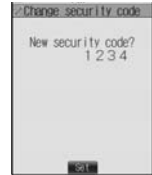
If you enter the code for the first time, enter "0000".



3 Enter the new Terminal Security Code (four to eight digits)

▶ YES

To cancel, select "NO" and press .



Information

This setting changes the Terminal Security Code required for operating functions.

<PIN Setting>

Setting PIN Code

Set PIN1 Code Entry

You can set the FOMA phone not to work unless you enter the PIN1 code when turning on the power.

1 ▶ Lock/Security ▶ PIN setting ▶ Enter the Terminal Security Code ▶ **PIN1 code entry set**

ON.....Sets the PIN1 code entry setting.

OFF.....Releases the PIN1 code entry setting.

See page 140 for the Terminal Security Code.

2 Enter the PIN1 code

If you enter the Terminal Security Code for the first time, enter "0000".

The entered PIN1 code is displayed as "_".

If you enter the wrong PIN1 code three times in succession, further entry will be locked.

("Rest" appears on the display to notify you of possible entering frequency.)

Enter the correct PIN1 code; "Rest" will return to three times.

See page 143 for how to release the PIN lock.



Change PIN1 Code/Change PIN2 Code

You need to have set "PIN1 code entry set" to "ON" to change the PIN1 code.

1 ▶ Lock/Security ▶ PIN setting ▶ Enter the Terminal Security Code ▶ **Change PIN1 code or Change PIN2 code**

See page 140 for the Terminal Security Code.

2 Enter the current PIN1 code or PIN2 code

If you enter the Terminal Security Code for the first time, enter "0000".

If you select "Change PIN1 code" in step 1, enter PIN1 code and if you select "Change PIN2 code", enter PIN2 code.

The entered PIN1 code or PIN2 code is displayed as "_".

If you enter the wrong PIN1 code or PIN2 code three times in succession, further entry will be locked. For Change PIN1 code

("Rest" appears on the display to notify you of possible entering frequency.)

Enter the correct PIN1 code or PIN2 code; "Rest" will return to three times.

See page 143 for how to release the PIN lock setting.



3 Enter a new PIN1 code or PIN2 code (four to eight digits)



4 Enter the new PIN1 code or PIN2 code again ▶



Information

At the time you sign up for the FOMA phone, the PIN code entry setting is set to "OFF".

The PIN1 code, PIN2 code, and the PIN1 code setting are stored in the UIM. If you use the UIM in another FOMA phone, use the PIN1 code and PIN2 code stored in that UIM. When the PIN1 code and PIN2 code have not been changed, "0000" will return.

Entering PIN1 Code

If you set "PIN1 code entry set" of "PIN setting" to "ON", enter a four- to eight-digit PIN1 code after turning on the power.

1 Turn the power on ▶ Enter the PIN1 code ▶

If you enter a correct PIN1 code, the Stand-by display appears.

If you enter the Terminal Security Code for the first time, enter "0000".

The entered PIN1 code is displayed as " _".

If you enter the wrong PIN1 code three times in succession, further entry will be locked. ("Rest" appears on the display to notify you of possible entering frequency.)

Enter the correct PIN1 code; "Rest" will return to three times.

See this page for how to release the PIN lock.

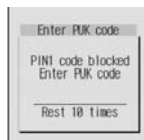
Releasing PIN Lock

If you enter a wrong PIN1 code/PIN2 code three times in succession on the display requiring its entry, the PIN1 code/PIN2 code are locked and cannot be used. In this case, release the PIN1 code/PIN2 code and enter a new PIN1 code/PIN2 code.

1 Enter the PUK (PIN unblock code) (eight digits) ▶

Check the application form for subscription to the FOMA phone service (copy for customer) passed over to you for the PIN unblock code.

The entered unblock code is displayed as " _".



2 Enter a new PIN1 code/PIN2 code (four to eight digits) ▶

The entered PIN1 code/PIN2 code is displayed as " _".



3 Enter the new PIN1 code/PIN2 code again ▶



Operating PIN1 code, PIN2 code, and PUK (PIN unlock code)

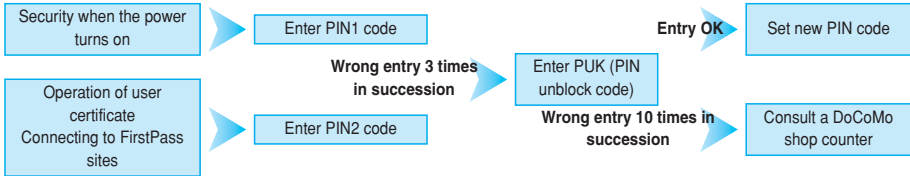
"PIN1 code" and "PIN2 code" in the UIM are set to "0000" at the time of contract but you can change them. If you enter a wrong PIN1 code/PIN2 code 3 times in succession, they are automatically locked. Note that you keep a separate record of the set codes just in case you forget them.

"PIN unlock code" is the number for releasing the "PIN1 code" and "PIN2 code" lock setting.

Enter "PIN unlock code" to release the lock setting.

If you enter a wrong "PIN unlock code" 10 times in succession, it is automatically locked. Note that you keep a separate record of the "PIN unlock code" just in case you forget it.

Note that if you do not remember the PIN unlock code or when the UIM is completely locked, you need to bring that the FOMA phone, UIM and an identification card such as a driver's license to a DoCoMo shop counter.



<All Lock>

Locking your Phone to Prevent Use by Others

Setting at purchase
Released

If you set All Lock, you can do no operations other than turning the power ON/OFF.

1 **Lock/Security** **All lock** **Enter the Terminal Security Code**

" " and "All lock" appear and All Lock is set.

See page 140 for the Terminal Security Code.

To release All Lock, enter the Terminal Security Code and press from the Stand-by display.

Information

You cannot make calls during All Lock. However, you can dial emergency phone numbers 110, 119, and 118. Select "YES" from the display asking whether you dial and press . To cancel, press "NO" and .

You cannot take calls during All Lock. However, "Remote observation" is enabled.

All Lock will not be released even if you turn the power off.

If you fail to release All Lock five times in succession, the power to the FOMA phone turns off. However, you can turn the power on again.

You cannot set while another function is working (while "" or "" is displayed at the upper right of the display).

You can receive mail or Messages R/F during All Lock; however the Receiving or Reception Result display for incoming mail and Messages R/F does not appear. The icons such as "", "", or "" appear after All Lock is released.

Even if a call comes in during All Lock, the call is not received and the caller hears a busy tone. After releasing All Lock, the "Missed call" icon appears.

During All Lock, an alarm for "Alarm", "Schedule", and "ToDo" does not sound at the specified time. After releasing All Lock, the "Missed alarm" icon appears on the Stand-by display in the same way as when the alarm does not sound. (See page 402)

However, for "Alarm", if you turn off the power during All Lock, the power does not turn on when the specified time arrives and the "Missed alarm" icon does not appear.

During All Lock, i-Appli does not auto-launch even when the time specified by "Auto start time" arrives. After releasing All Lock, the "Not run soft" icon appears.

If you have pasted an icon to the desktop, the icon disappears by setting All Lock. When All Lock is released, the icon reappears.

If you set All Lock while "", "", and "" are displayed, these icons will not be displayed. When All Lock is released, the icons reappear.

Setting All Lock by Remote Control

You can set All Lock by making the specified number of calls from the stored phone numbers within the monitor time, if you, for instance, have lost the FOMA phone. You can store up to three acceptable phone numbers including a pay phone.

Setting at purchase

Remote all lock	OFF
Accept phone No.	Not recorded
Monitoring	3 minutes (when "Remote all lock" is set to "ON".)
Received calls	5 times (when "Remote all lock" is set to "ON".)

1 Lock/Security > Remote all lock > Enter the Terminal Security Code

ON.....Sets to activate All Lock by Remote control.
OFF.....Sets not to activate All Lock by Remote control. The setting is completed.
See page 140 for the Terminal Security Code.

2 Accept phone No. > <Not recorded> > Enter the phone number >

To change the phone number, select the stored acceptable phone number. You can enter up to 26 digits.
To store or change "Pay phone", press (FUNC) and set from the Function menu. You cannot change "Pay phone" by pressing .
If you change the stored acceptable phone number, the confirmation display appears asking whether to overwrite the number. To overwrite, select "YES" and press .
To cancel, select "NO" and press .



<Accept Phone No. List>

3 Monitoring > Enter the monitoring time (minutes)

Enter from "01" through "10" in two digits.
If you do not change the set monitoring time, just press without entering the monitoring time.

4 Received calls > Enter for "Recv. calls" (number of times)

Enter from "03" through "10" in two digits.
If you do not change the set number of receiving calls, press without entry.

5 Press (Finish).

Information

You cannot set while another function is working (while " / " or " / " is displayed at the upper right of the display).

Function Menu of the Accept Phone No. List

1 Accept Phone No. List > (FUNC) > Do the following operation.

Function menu	Operations
Look-up address	You can bring up the phone number from the Phonebook, Dialed Call Record or Received Call Record for entry. (See page 236)
Pay phone	You can store a pay phone as the acceptable phone number.
Delete this	▶ YES To cancel, select "NO" and press .
Delete all	▶ YES To cancel, select "NO" and press .

Information

<Delete this><Delete all>

When you delete all acceptable phone numbers, "Remote all lock" turns "OFF" and Remote All Lock is deactivated.

Setting All Lock by remote control

You can set All Lock for the FOMA phone by calling it from the phone number or pay phone stored as "Accept phone No.". Set "Remote all lock" to "ON" in advance.

1. Call the FOMA phone from the acceptable phone number, check the ringing tone, and disconnect the phone. (A busy tone sounds if All Lock has been already activated.)

Repeat this operation and make missed calls the number of times specified by "Received calls" within the time set by "Monitoring".

2. Check an answer message and disconnect the phone.

The message to the effect that All Lock is activated plays and you are disconnected.

Information

Make sure that you notify your phone number when dialing to activate Remote All Lock.

If calls come in from multiple phone numbers set as acceptable phone numbers, the first call only is counted as the number of received calls.

Even when the phone number or pay phone stored as "Accept phone No." is set for "Call rejection", the calls from those phone numbers are counted as the number of calls of Remote All Lock.

Even if you reject a call from the acceptable phone number manually or forward the call to Voice Mail Center or to the forwarding destination, the call is counted as the number of calls of Remote All Lock. However, when Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service is set to "Activate" and the ringing time is set to 0 seconds, the call is not counted as the number of times of Remote All Lock.

When the FOMA phone is turned off or answers a call from an acceptable phone number, the number of calls is reset.

You can activate Remote All Lock even during Manner Mode or Drive Mode.

You cannot activate Remote All Lock during Self Mode.

To release All Lock set by remote control, perform the same way as you release All Lock. You cannot release All Lock by remote control.

<Self Mode>

Using Self Mode

Setting at purchase
Released

You can disable all communications and transmission functions.

If a call comes in during Self Mode, an announcement to the effect that you are out of reach of radio wave or the power is turned off is played back to the caller. If you are using DoCoMo Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service, you can use these services in the same way as when you turn off the FOMA phone.

1



Lock/Security ▶ Self mode

You can go to step 2 also by selecting  in the Shortcut menu and pressing .

2



YES ▶ OK

"Self" appears and Self Mode is set.

To cancel, select "NO" and press .

To release Self Mode, perform the same operation.

Information

You can dial emergency phone numbers 110, 119 and 118 even during Self Mode. From the confirmation display asking whether to dial, select "YES" and press . To cancel, select "NO" and press .

If you dial emergency phone numbers 110, 119 and 118 during Self Mode, Self Mode is released.

You cannot receive mail or Messages R/F during Self Mode.

Even if a call comes in during Self Mode, the "Missed call" icon does not appear after releasing Self Mode.

You cannot set while another function is working (while "" or "" is displayed at the upper right of the display).

<PIM Lock>

Locking Functions Regarding Personal Information

Setting at purchase
Released

To prevent other people from reading or tampering with your personal information, you can set the following functions not to be used.

- Record message
- Voice memo
- Mail
- Moving image
- Select image
- Ir data exchange
- Phonebook
- Free memo
- Mail member
- Melody
- Remote observation
- Auto display
- UIM operation
- Chat group
- Chara-den
- Reject unknown
- Alarm
- Software update
- Camera
- miniSD memory
- Desktop icon
- Schedule
- i-mode
- Bar code reader
- card
- Reset
- ToDo
- Bookmark
- Text reader
- Data transfer
- Initialize
- Own number
- i-appli
- Still image
- Voice announce
- Play/Erase Msg.

You can display the still images or melodies pre-installed at the time of purchase.

“PIM” is short for “Personal Information Manager”.

1



▶ Lock/Security ▶ PIM lock ▶ Enter the Terminal Security Code ▶



“P” appears and PIM Lock is set.

See page 140 for the Terminal Security Code.

To release PIM Lock, perform the same operation.

Information

If you set PIM Lock, the data items in Redial, Dialed Call Record, Received Call Record, Sent Address, and Received Address up to that point are all deleted. Dialing/Receiving records after you set PIM Lock all remain.

You cannot set/release while another function is working (while “/” or “/” is displayed at the upper right of the display).

You can receive mail or Messages R/F during PIM Lock; however the Receiving or Reception Result display for incoming mail and Messages R/F does not appear. The icons such as “”, “”, or “” appear after PIM Lock is released.

You cannot delete the icons from the desktop during PIM Lock. During PIM Lock, the “Notification icon” and “Desktop icon” such as “New mail”, “Missed alarm”, “Phone number”, “URL” and “Mail address” do not appear. When you release PIM Lock, the icons reappear.

During PIM Lock, an alarm for “Alarm”, “Schedule” or “ToDo” does not sound at the specified time. After releasing PIM Lock, the “Missed alarm” icon appears on the Stand-by display in the same way as when the alarm does not sound.

(See page 402) However, for “Alarm”, if you turn the power off during PIM Lock, the power is not turned on even when the specified time arrives and the “Missed alarm” icon does not appear.

During PIM Lock, you cannot check “Missed call” or “New mail” by pressing with the FOMA phone closed.

During PIM Lock, the “Pre-installed” substitute image is sent to the other party if you send the substitute image during a video-phone call.

If you set All Lock during PIM Lock, “P” is cleared and “E” appears instead.

If you set PIM Lock and All Lock simultaneously, release All Lock first and then PIM Lock when releasing.

Even if you release All Lock, PIM Lock is not released.

<Keypad Dial Lock>

Locking Keypad Dial

Setting at purchase
Released

You can lock dialing from the keypad. When using the FOMA phone for business purposes, private use of the FOMA phone can be prevented.

Unavailable operations:

- Dialing from the numeric keys
- Dialing from Received Call Record
- Storing and editing the Phonebook entries

Available operations:

- Dialing from the Phonebook
- Dialing from Redial, Dialed Call Record

1



▶ Lock/Security ▶ Keypad dial lock ▶ Enter the Terminal Security Code ▶



“D” is displayed and Keypad Dial Lock is set.

See page 140 for the Terminal Security Code.

To release Keypad Dial Lock, perform the same operation.

Information

If you set Keypad Dial Lock, the data items in Redial, Dialed Call Record, Received Call Record, Sent Address, and Received Address up to that point are all deleted. Dialing/Receiving record data items after you set Keypad Dial Lock all remain. You can dial emergency phone numbers 110, 119 and 118 even during Keypad Dial Lock.

You cannot set/release while another function is working (while " " or " " is displayed at the upper right of the display). If you set Keypad Dial Lock, you can send mail only when the address is called up from the Phonebook or from Sent Address. Even when the phone number entered using the keypad matches the one stored in the Phonebook, you cannot make the call. If you simultaneously set "Keypad dial lock" and "PIM lock" together, " " appears. If you simultaneously set "Keypad dial lock" and "Secret mode" or "Secret only mode", " " appears.

<Side Keys Guard>

Preventing Side Key Operation Errors

Setting at purchase
OFF

You can disable the side keys (▲, ▼) for when the FOMA phone is closed. You can prevent operation errors in a bag.

1



Other settings ▶ Side keys guard

OFF.....Sets the side keys (▲, ▼) function valid when the FOMA phone is closed.

ON.....Sets the side keys (▲, ▼) function invalid when the FOMA phone is closed.

If you set "Side keys guard" to "ON", "SIDE " appears.

To switch the side keys between valid/invalid with ease

Press (←→), and press and hold (X) for at least one second.

Each time you press and hold (X) for at least one second with the Main Menu displayed, "OFF" and "ON" switch.

Information

When external devices such as the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone Set with Switch (option) are connected, the function of the side keys will be valid regardless of this setting.

<Record Display Set>

Setting not to Display Redial/Received Call Record

Setting at purchase
Received calls.....ON
Redial/Dialed calls.....ON

1



Other settings ▶ Record display set

▶ Enter the Terminal Security Code ▶

Received calls.....Sets for Received Call Record and Received Address.

Redial/Dialed calls.....Sets for Redial, Dialed Call Record and Sent Address.

See page 140 for the Terminal Security Code.

2

From the displayed item

ON.....Displays record.

OFF.....Does not display record.

Information

While "Received calls" of "Record display set" is set to "OFF", the record is not displayed even if you select the "Missed call" icon on the desktop.

While "Received calls" of "Record display set" is set to "OFF", you cannot play/erase record messages.

If you store the Phonebook entries or schedule events in Secret Mode or Secret Only Mode, the data is stored in secret and cannot be accessed in ordinary mode. You can access all data in Secret Mode, and can access only secret data in Secret Only Mode.

Activate Secret Mode

4 0

1

Lock/Security ▶ **Secret mode** ▶ **Enter the Terminal Security Code** ▶

" " appears and Secret Mode is activated.

If you call up a Phonebook entry or schedule event, " " stays lit for non-secret data and " " flickers for secret data.

See page 140 for the Terminal Security Code.

To deactivate Secret Mode, perform the same operation or press .

Activate Secret Only Mode

4 1

1

Lock/Security ▶ **Secret only mode** ▶ **Enter the Terminal Security Code** ▶

" " flickers, the number of stored secret data is displayed, and then Secret Only Mode is activated.

See page 140 for the Terminal Security Code.

To deactivate Secret Only Mode, perform the same operation or press .

To change secret data to an ordinary Phonebook entry or schedule event

In Secret Mode or Secret Only Mode, select "Release secret" from the Function menu of a Phonebook entry or schedule event which you want to release and press .

Information

In Secret Mode or Secret Only Mode, you can store entries in the Phonebook in the FOMA phone only; you cannot store entries in the UIM.

During Secret Mode or Secret Only Mode, Phonebook entries and schedule events are stored as secret. Storing/Deleting secret Phonebook entries and schedule events are the same as for ordinary Phonebook entries and schedule events. You cannot access, edit, or delete Phonebook entries and schedule events stored as secret unless you activate Secret Mode or Secret Only Mode.

If you edit/store Phonebook entries or schedule events during Secret Mode, the edited entries/events are stored as secret. (If you edit and store a phone number or mail address in a Phonebook entry in Secret Mode, all other phone numbers and mail addresses stored in the same memory number will be secret data.)

If you store Phonebook entries to "000" through "009" as secret, you cannot make calls using "Two-touch dial" unless you activate Secret Mode or Secret Only Mode.

If you call up a secret entry to make a call or send mail, the record is not memorized in "Redial", "Dialled calls" or "Send address". When the other party stored as secret calls you notifying the Caller ID, the notified phone number is displayed in "Received calls"; however the stored name is not displayed.

You cannot set "Utilities", "Restrictions", or "Automatic display" for secret entries.

If you simultaneously activate All Lock and Secret Mode or Secret Only Mode, deactivating All Lock deactivates Secret Mode or Secret Only Mode.

If you make a call during Secret Mode or Secret Only Mode, or press or and return to the Stand-by display without dialing, Secret Mode or Secret Only Mode is deactivated.

You cannot set while another function is working (while " " or " " is displayed at the upper right of the display).

When a call comes in while you are editing a Phonebook entry/schedule event or displaying the search result of the Phonebook in Secret Mode or Secret Only Mode, those modes are deactivated and Phonebook/Schedule display returns. If you continue the operation, then the display for entering the Terminal Security Code appears. Enter the Terminal Security Code and press ; then Secret Mode or Secret Only Mode is reactivated and you can proceed.


<Mail Security>

Setting not to Display Mail in the Outbox/Inbox without Permission


Setting at purchase
All unchecked

You can set the Security function for the Inbox, Outbox and Draft box of the Mail menu.
You need to enter the Terminal Security Code to display the contents of security-activated boxes.

1   **Mail settings**  **Mail security**  **Enter the Terminal Security Code**    **Put check marks for the boxes to be set**  

"" and "" switch each time you press .
See page 140 for the Terminal Security Code.

Information




When security is set, "" appears in front of the set box in the Mail menu.
If you set security for the Outbox and the Inbox, mail addresses are not stored in Sent Address and Received Address.
You can also set security for each folder inside the Inbox or Outbox (see pages 272, 278).

<Restrictions>

Setting Restrictions on Phonebook Entries

Setting at purchase
All released

Restrict Dialing

You can disable dialing to phone numbers other than specified ones. When you use the FOMA phone for business use, this function is useful for preventing the private usage. Bring up the specified Phonebook entry and press  () or  to make a call (video-phone).

You can specify up to 20 phone numbers.

Call Rejection

You can reject calls from specified phone numbers. You can set only the calls you do not want to receive to be rejected. The caller hears a busy tone. You can specify up to 20 phone numbers.

This function is valid only when the other party notifies his/her phone number. It is advisable to activate "Caller ID request" and "Call setting w/o ID" simultaneously.

Call Acceptation

You can receive calls only from specified phone numbers. You can set only the calls you want to accept to be connected. You can specify up to 20 phone numbers.

This function is valid only when the other party notifies his/her phone number. It is advisable to activate "Caller ID request" simultaneously.

Restrict Dialing/Call Rejection/Call Acceptation

1 **Detailed Phonebook display**   **Restrictions**
Enter the Terminal Security Code 

Restrict dialing.....You can dial the specified phone numbers only.

Call rejectionYou can reject calls from the specified phone numbers.

Call acceptanceYou can accept calls from the specified phone numbers only.


Call forwarding.....See page 432.




Voice mailSee page 429.

The set item is indicated by " ".

See page 99 for how to search the Phonebook.

See page 140 for the Terminal Security Code.

When a Phonebook entry contains multiple phone numbers, press  in the detailed display to bring up the phone number to be set.

To set Restrict Dialing for multiple phone numbers, first set "Restrict dialing" and press  to return to the detailed Phonebook display; then press  to display the phone number to be set for Restrict Dialing. If you press  to return to the Stand-by display, additional settings cannot be done. To do additional settings, release Restrict Dialing for a phone number and activate Restrict Dialing again, including the released phone number.

To release Restrictions, perform the same operation.

Information

You cannot set while another function is working (while “” or “” is displayed at the upper right of the display).

You cannot set Restrictions for the Phonebook entries stored in “Secret mode” and “Secret only mode” and in the UIM Phonebook.

If you activate “PIM lock” while “Restrict dialing” is set, you cannot dial at all.

If you activate “PIM lock” while “Call rejection” or “Call acceptance” is set, you can accept all incoming calls.

Note that the setting is released if you change or delete the phone number set for “Call rejection” or “Call acceptance”.

“Restrict dialing” disables the following functions: Retrieving non-specified phone numbers, storing/editing Phonebook entries including specified phone numbers, copying data to the UIM, and dialing from the keys and the Received Call Record including the specified phone numbers.

If you set “Restrict dialing”, the data items in Redial, Dialed Call Record and Sent Address up to that point are all deleted. Dialling data after you set Restrict dialing remains.

If you want to use “Restrict dialing” and “Automatic disp.” at the same time, set “Restrict dialing” for the phone number specified for “Automatic disp.”. You cannot auto-display the phone number which is not specified for “Restrict dialing”.

You can dial emergency phone numbers 110/119/118 even if you set “Restrict dialing”.

You can make calls even if you set “Call rejection” or “Call acceptance”.

When a call comes in from the phone number set with “Call rejection”, or from other than the phone number set with “Call acceptance”, the call is stored into “Received calls” as a “Missed call” and the notification icon of “Missed call” appears on the Stand-by display. Also, the caller hears a busy tone even if you have set “Voice Mail Service” or “Call Forwarding Service” to “Activate”. However, if you set the ringing time for “Voice Mail Service” or “Call Forwarding Service” to 0 seconds, or when the FOMA phone is out of the service area, or when the power is turned off, the busy tone will not be played, activating “Voice Mail Service” or “Call Forwarding Service”. Note that in this case the record is not stored in “Received calls”, and the notification icon of “Missed call” does not appear on the Stand-by display.

You can receive Short Message (SMS) or i-mode mail regardless of the setting of “Call rejection” or “Call acceptance”.

You cannot simultaneously activate “Call rejection” and “Call acceptance” for the same phone number stored in the Phonebook.

Checking/Releasing Restrictions on Phonebook Entries



1

→ → **Restrictions** → **Enter the Terminal Security Code** →

- Restrict dialingSee page 150
- Call rejectionSee page 150
- Call acceptanceSee page 150
- Call forwarding.....See page 432
- Voice mailSee page 429

The set item is indicated by “”.

See page 140 for the Terminal Security Code.



<Restrictions display>

2


Select a Phonebook entry →

The phone number set with Restrictions is displayed.

To release “Restrictions” per phone number, select the phone number you want to release by following the same steps above and press . You can release Restrictions by selecting “YES” and press from the confirmation display asking whether to release. To cancel, select “NO” and press .

Function Menu of the Restrictions Display

1 Restrictions display ▶ (i) (FUNC) ▶ Do the following operation.

Function menu	Operations
Check settings	Go to step 2 on page 151.
Release	<p>▶ YES</p> <p>To cancel, select "NO" and press .</p> <p><Example></p> <p>If you release the settings from the display in step 1 on page 151, all the Phonebook entries set with "Restrict dialing" are released.</p>

Information

You cannot check or release while another function is working (while " / " or " / " is displayed at the upper right of the display).

<Call Setting w/o ID>

 1 

Setting Response to Incoming Calls without Caller ID

You can select whether to receive (accept) or not to receive (reject) the call depending on the reason for No Caller ID. There are three reasons; "Not supported", "Payphone", and "User unset".

Setting at purchase

Not supported.....Accept : Same as ring tone
 PayphoneAccept : Same as ring tone
 User unset.....Accept : Same as ring tone

1 ▶ Lock/Security ▶ Call setting w/o ID ▶ Enter the Terminal Security Code

Not supportedCalls from the other party who cannot notify his/her phone number such as the calls from overseas or from ordinary phones via call forwarding services.
 (However, the Caller ID might be notified depending on the telephone companies the calls go through.)

Payphone.....Calls from payphones, etc.

User unsetWhen the caller has set the Caller ID not to notify.

See page 140 for the Terminal Security Code.

2 Accept or Reject

If you select "Accept", follow the operation from step 3 on page 111 to select a ring tone or i-motion movie. If you select "Same as ring tone", the ring tone will be the one selected in "Phone" of "Select ring tone". If you do not change the ring tone according to "Call setting w/o ID", select "Same as ring tone".

If you select "Reject", the ring tone does not sound even if a call comes in, and the "Missed call" icon is displayed. (The caller hears a busy tone.)

Information

Even if you set "Voice mail" or "Call forwarding" to "Activate", you will not be connected to the caller set to be rejected because of No Caller ID.

However, if you are out of the service area or set the ringing time for Voice Mail Service and Call Forwarding Service to 0 seconds, those services are enabled.

You can receive Short Message (SMS) or i-mode mail regardless of this setting.

Muting Ringing just after Receiving

Set Mute Seconds

Setting at purchase
0 seconds

You can specify the mute time before ringing starts, for when a call comes in from the party whose phone number is not stored in the Phonebook. This function is effective as a countermeasure for blocking nuisance calls such as one ring phone scam (one-giri).

- 1 **▶ Incoming call ▶ Ringing time ▶ Set mute seconds**
▶ Enter a mute time (seconds)

Enter from "00" through "99" in two digits.

If you enter "00", the ringing operation starts as soon as a call comes in.

Not to change the specified mute time, do not enter the mute time; just press .

Missed Calls Display

Setting at purchase
Display

You can select whether to display the call disconnected in the specified time for "Set mute seconds" as a received call record.

- 1 **▶ Incoming call ▶ Ringing time ▶ Missed calls display**
DisplayDisplays a received call record, regardless of the ringing time.

Not displayDoes not display a received call record when the ringing time is within the specified mute seconds.

Information

With the ringing operations, the ring tone sounds, vibrator vibrates, and Call/Charging indicator lights or flickers.

When a call comes in from the party whose phone number is stored in the Phonebook, the FOMA phone starts ringing as soon as the call comes in even if "186/184" is added to the phone number. However, during PIM Lock, or for the call from the party whose phone number is stored as secret, ringing starts according to the setting of this function.

If the mute time is longer than the ringing time for Record Message, the ringing operations do not start, activating Record Message instead. To activate Record Message after starting the ringing operations, set the longer ringing time for Record Message than the mute time. The same applies to the ringing time for Voice Mail Service, Call Forwarding Service, and Automatic Answer.

<Reject Unknown>

Rejecting Calls from Parties whose Phone Numbers are not Stored in Phonebooks

Setting at purchase
Accept

You can reject calls from anyone whose phone number is not stored in the Phonebook.

This function is valid only when the other party notifies his/her phone number. It is advisable to activate "Caller ID request" and "Call setting w/o ID" simultaneously.

- 1 **▶ Lock/Security ▶ Reject unknown ▶ Enter the Terminal Security Code**

AcceptAccepts calls from the phone numbers not stored in the Phonebook.

RejectRejects calls from the phone numbers not stored in the Phonebook.

See page 140 for the Terminal Security Code.

Information

During PIM Lock or if a call comes in from the party whose phone number is stored as secret, the call is not rejected, regardless of this setting.

If you simultaneously activate "Reject unknown" and "Call acceptance" of "Restrictions", the latter has priority.

When a call comes in from anyone whose phone number is not stored in the Phonebook while you set this function to "Reject", it is stored as "Missed calls" in "Received calls", and the Notification icon of "Missed call" appears on the Stand-by display. Also, the caller hears a busy tone even if you have set Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service to "Activate". However, if you set the ringing time for Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service to 0 seconds, or when the FOMA phone is out of the service area, or when the power is turned off, the busy tone will not be played, activating Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service. Note that in this case the record is not stored in "Received calls", and the Notification icon of "Missed call" does not appear on the Stand-by display.

You can receive Short Message (SMS) or i-mode mail regardless of this setting.

Other “Safety Settings”

Other than introduced in this Chapter, the following functions/services for the Safety Settings are available:

If you want	Functions/Service name	Reference page
To prevent nuisance calls or mischievous sales calls from incoming	Nuisance call barring	P.432
To prevent the incoming call that does not notify the Caller ID	Caller ID display request	P.433
To ensure safe and reliable data transmission by using electronic certificate services Limited to FirstPass sites	FirstPass	P.223
To update the software in the FOMA phone when necessary	Software update	P.533
To protect the FOMA phone from data liable to cause trouble	Scanning function	P.537
To select and receive only necessary mail	Receive option	P.257
To check/store safety information using i-mode when a disaster occurs	i-mode Disaster Message Board Service	See “FOMA i-mode User’s Manual”
To change the mail address	Change Mail Address	
To confirm the mail address when you forget it	Confirm Mail Address	
To receive mail from only the specified companies	Receive Mail from Selected Domains	
To accept or reject mail from the specified sender only	Receive Selected Mail Reject Selected Mail	
To accept or reject mail between i-mode mobile phones only	Receive only i-mode mail Reject only i-mode mail	
To reject the 200th and succeeding i-mode messages sent from the same i-mode mobile phone on the same day	Reject Mass i-mode Mail Senders	
To reject receiving advertising mail that is sent unilaterally	Reject Unsolicited Ad Mail	
To reject receiving Short Message (SMS)	Set/Confirm SMS Rejection Settings	
To check the settings for the mail function	Confirm Settings	
To restrict the file size of incoming mail	Limit Mail Size	
To let the mail function stop temporarily	Suspend Mail	

Information

Be careful not to dial the phone number stored in Received Call Record, if you do not know that number. Especially, if you call back notifying your phone number, an unwanted trouble may occur.

If you set the functions to prevent nuisance calls at the same time, the priority order is; “Nuisance call barring” “Call rejection” “Reject unknown/Call setting w/o ID” “Ringing time”.

Camera

Before Using Cameras	156
Shooting Still Images	160
.....<Still Image Shot>	
Shooting Moving Images	166
.....<Moving Image Shot>	
Changing Settings for Shooting Images	169
Setting Image Size and Image Quality	171
Using Bar Code Reader	176
.....<Bar Code Reader>	
Using Text Reader.....	181
.....<Text Reader>	

Before Using Cameras

Notes for when Shooting Images

- Check the lens for any stain before shooting. If the lens is stained, clean the lens with a soft cloth. If the lens is stained with fingerprints or something oily, you will not be able to focus on a subject, or the stains are reflected on still or moving images shot.
- Make sure that you do not let fingers, hairs, or the strap overlap the lens when taking a shot.
- Make sure that you hold the FOMA phone securely with your hands so that it does not move when taking a shot. Otherwise, the image may be blurred, especially in a dark place.
- Do not leave the FOMA phone with the lens pointing direct to the sunlight. Pixels may be discolored or burns may result.
- If you take a shot under a fluorescent lamp, mercury lamp, or sodium lamp flickering at high speeds, “flicker symptom”, horizontal stripes flow from top to bottom of the display, may result. The color tone for the image may vary depending on a shooting timing.
- If you take a shot of a subject containing an area of an extremely high brightness such as the reflection of sun light, the bright area might be black-spotted but this is not a malfunction.
- The image shot by the cameras might differ from actual subject in color tone and brightness.
- When the battery level is low, you may not be able to save still or moving shot images.
- You need to obtain a miniSD memory card separately to use the functions related to the miniSD memory card. The miniSD memory card is available at mass retailers for home electric appliances, etc. (See page 376)

Important

The saved contents may be lost due to a malfunction, repair, or other mishandling of the FOMA phone. We cannot be held responsible for loss of the saved contents. For just in case, you are well advised to save the contents saved in the FOMA phone to the miniSD memory card (see page 376). If you have a personal computer, you can also save them to the personal computer by using the FOMA USB Cable (option) and the Data Link Software (see page 519).

Copyrights and Rights of Portrait

You have no right to copy, modify, or distribute the contents such as text, image, music, or software downloaded from web pages on the Internet, or images shot by the camera without permission from the copyright holder except for when the copy or quote is for personal use that is allowed by the Copyright Law.

Note that it may be prohibited to shoot or record live performances or exhibitions even for personal use. Make sure that you refrain from taking portraits of other persons and distributing such portraits over the Internet without consent, as this violates portrait rights.

You may be imposed punishment according to the law and rule (such as the nuisance prevention ordinance) if you use the FOMA phone to give a remarkable nuisance and misdeed to the public.

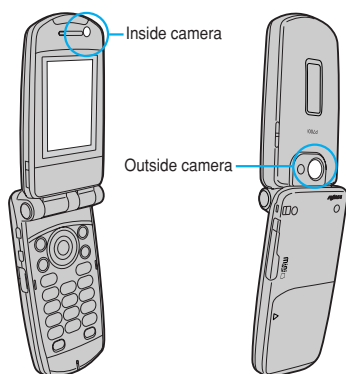


Please respect the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones.

Using Camera

You can use the cameras to take still or moving images.

You can switch between the inside camera and outside camera. See page 171 for how to switch the cameras.



Keys used for shooting

	Photo light (when the outside camera is used)
	Shutter/Save
	Tele
	Wide
	Function menu callout
	Camera mode switch
	Color mode set
	White balance
	Brightness
	Photo mode
	Auto timer
	Format setting (in Photo Mode/Continuous Mode)
	Switching camera
	Camera exit/Return

Information

While the camera is activated, the Call/Charging indicator flickers. You cannot turn off flickering.

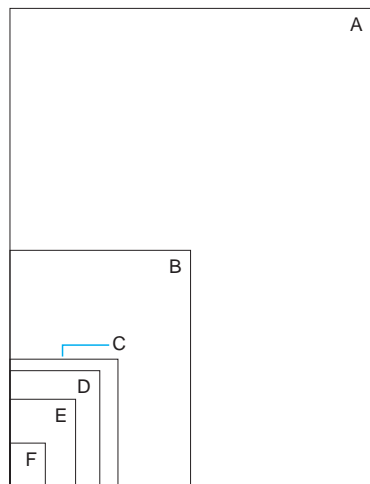
You cannot activate both the inside camera and outside camera at the same time.

You cannot activate the camera during PIM Lock.

The image appears horizontally flipped (mirrored) when you take a shot with the inside camera; however the image is correctly displayed when replaying.

You can neither silence the shutter sound nor set a downloaded melody for the shutter sound.

Shooting Size



A : SXGA size (1280 × 960 dots)

B : VGA size (640 × 480 dots)

C : CIF size (352 × 288 dots)

D : Stand-by size (240 × 320 dots)

QVGA size (320 × 240 dots)

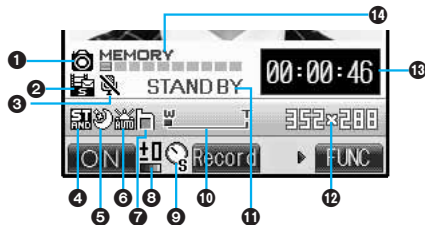
E : QCIF size (176 × 144 dots)

F : Sub-QCIF size (128 × 96 dots)

The frames for the sizes of the images shown on the left are displayed in relative ratio. Directions and the sizes actually displayed on the FOMA are different.

Finder Display

On the Finder display, the settings are indicated by bars and icons.



Icon	Icon/bar name	Indication Status			Page
		Photo mode	Continuous mode	Movie mode	
1	Photo mode		x	x	P.160
	Movie mode	x	x		P.166
	Continuous mode	x		x	P.161
2	Mail restrict'n(S)	x	x		P.172
	Mail restrict'n(L)	x	x		
	Long time	x	x		
3	Video only	x	x		P.173
	Voice only	x	x		
4	Normal	x	x		P.172
	Fine mode	x	x		
	Long dur. mode	x	x		
	Prefer motion	x	x		
	Normal	x	x		
	Fine	x	x		
	Super fine	x	x		
5	Night mode		x		P.172
6	Auto				P.172
	Fine				
	Cloudy				
	Light bulb				
7	Phone				P.173
	miniSD				
8	Brightness				P.172
	Number of frames for continuous shooting	x		x	
9	Auto timer				P.175
10	Zoom bar				P.169
11	STAND BY	x	x		P.166
	REC	x	x		
12	SXGA		x	x	P.171, 172
	VGA		x	x	
	CIF			x	
	Stand-by			x	
	QCIF				
	Sub-QCIF				
13	Recordable time	x	x		—
14	Memory capacity bar				—

① Icons vary depending on the storage location. (FOMA phone: "SD HD" / miniSD memory card: "MS" / "MS").

② The size of still images that can be shot with the inside camera are CIF, Stand-by, QCIF, and Sub-QCIF. For moving images, QCIF and Sub-QCIF are available. QVGA is also available when "Store in" is set to "miniSD".

③ In Photo Mode and Continuous Mode, a used memory space of still images is displayed; in Movie Mode, that of moving images is displayed; when "Store in" is set to "miniSD", that of miniSD memory card is displayed. When the rest memory is not enough, the color of the memory capacity bar changes to red.

Specifications for Still Image Shot

File format	JPEG Baseline format
Pixels	Photo: SXGA (1280 x 960), VGA (640 x 480), CIF (352 x 288), Stand-by (240 x 320), QCIF (176 x 144), Sub-QCIF (128 x 96) Continuous shot: CIF (352 x 288), Stand-by (240 x 320), QCIF (176 x 144), Sub-QCIF (128 x 96)
Extension	jpg
Title	Automatically set according to the date and time the image was saved and the number of shot frames (when the 1st frame was shot at 10:00, 15th, January 2005) "2005/ 1/15 10:00" When "Set time" is not set "image001" (Store in: Phone) "P1000001" (Store in: miniSD)
File name	Automatically set according to the date and time the image was saved and the number of shot frames (when the 1st frame was shot at 10:00, 15th, January 2005) "20050115100000" (Store in: Phone) "P1000001" (Store in: miniSD) When "Set time" is not set "image001" (Store in: Phone) "P1000001" (Store in: miniSD)
Maximum file size	700 Kbytes
Mail attachment/Distribution	Distribution to external devices enabled by attaching to mail or by saving to miniSD memory card.
Memory capacity	1.4 Mbytes (Phone) See page 162 for the miniSD memory card.
Player	Picture Viewer

Specifications for Moving Image Shot

File format	MP4 (FOMA phone), ASF (miniSD memory card)
Coding system	Video: MPEG4 ¹ Voice: AMR (FOMA phone), G.726 (miniSD memory card)
Pixels	QVGA (320 x 240), QCIF (176 x 144), Sub-QCIF (128 x 96)
Extension	asf, 3gp ²
Title	Automatically set depending on the date and time the image was recorded (when shot at 10:00, 15th January 2005) "2005/ 1/15 10:00" When "Set time" is not set "---/--/-- --:--"
File name	Automatically set depending on the date and time the image was recorded (when shot at 10:00, 15th January 2005) "200501151000" (Store in: Phone) "MOL001" (Store in: miniSD) When "Set time" is not set "movie" (Store in: Phone) "MOL001" (Store in: miniSD)
Maximum file size	490 Kbytes (Store in: Phone) Can be limited to the size which can attach to i-motion mail for taking a shot (see page 172).
Mail attachment/Distribution	Distribution to external devices enabled by attaching to mail or by saving to miniSD memory card.
Memory capacity	2.4 Mbytes (Phone) See page 167 for the miniSD memory card.
Player	i-motion player

¹ MPEG4 is short for Moving Picture Experts Group Phase4 which is a high efficiency coding (data compression) system for use with mobile communications or the Internet.

² See page 386 for file generation of asf and 3gp.

About Software for Playing Moving Images

To play back moving images (MP4) on a personal computer, you need to install "QuickTime 6.3" and "3GPP Component" or "QuickTime 6.4" or later. You can download "QuickTime" from the web page of Apple Computer, Inc. free of charge.

Shooting Still Images




You can take a still image by using a camera. The taken still images are saved to a folder within the "My picture" folder in the FOMA phone or to the miniSD memory card.


See "Store in" and "Select storage" for selecting the storage location.

Taking a Still Image

1 Camera

Camera menu is displayed.

Press and hold  for at least one second from the Stand-by display to start up the camera in the mode you previously activated. If you start up the camera in Movie Mode, press  and select "Photo mode", then press . You can also select "Photo mode" from "CHG camera-mode" in the Function menu. Go to step 3.

You can start up the camera in Photo Mode also by selecting  from the Shortcut menu and pressing . Go to step 3.



<Camera menu>

2 Photo mode

 is displayed.



<Finder display>

3 Press .

A still image is taken.

The image appears horizontally flipped (mirrored) when you take a shot with the inside camera; however the image is correctly displayed when replaying.

When "Auto save set" is set to "ON", the Post View display does not appear; the still image is automatically saved. Go to step 6.

4 YES

The still image you took is saved.

When "Store in" is set to "miniSD", the still image is saved to the folder selected by "Select storage".

Go to step 6.

Press  and the confirmation display appears asking whether to cancel the shot still image.

Select "YES" or "NO" and press .

Press  () to attach the shot still image to i-mode mail with ease. (See page 163)



<Post View display>

5 Select the folder to which you want to save data

See page 334 for the still image folder.

6 Press or to end the camera.

See page 332 for how to display saved still image.

Information


The image quality may be coarse depending on "Format setting" or "Display size".

Continuous Shooting

You can use the camera to automatically or manually take a continuous shot of a still image. The image sizes that you can set are CIF (352 x 288), Stand-by (240 x 320), QCIF (176 x 144), and Sub-QCIF (128 x 96). See "Interval/Number" for how to set the number of shot or the shooting interval for auto-continuous shooting.

1 Camera

Camera menu is displayed.

Press and hold  for at least one second from the Stand-by display to start up the camera in the mode you previously activated. However, the camera starts up in Photo Mode if you previously operated the camera in Continuous Mode. Go to step 3.

You can start up the camera also by selecting  or  from the Shortcut menu and pressing . Go to step 3.




<Camera menu>

2 Photo mode or Movie mode

 or  is displayed.

3 Continuous mode Auto or Manual

You can switch to "Continuous mode" also by selecting "Continuous mode" from "CHG camera-mode" in the Function menu and pressing .

Press "Manual" to display the number of frames for continuous shooting.



<Finder display>

4 Press .


Continuous shooting starts.



If you select "Manual" in step 3, press  the number of times of shooting frames. Not to shoot all frames, press .

The image appears horizontally flipped (mirrored) when you take a shot with the inside camera; however the image is correctly displayed when playing back.

When "Auto save set" is set to "ON", the images are automatically saved. Go to step 8.

5 Select a still image

Press  from the detailed display to bring up the previous or following still image.

Press  from the Post View display and the confirmation display appears asking whether to cancel the shot still image. Select "YES" or "NO" and press .



<Post View display>



<Detailed display>

6 YES

The selected still image is saved.

When "Store in" is set to "miniSD", the still image is saved to the folder selected by "Select storage". To save a still image in succession, repeat steps 5 and 6. To end the camera, go to step 8.

7 Select the folder to which you want to save data

Repeat steps 5 through 7 to save a shot still image.

See page 334 for the folder of still image.

8 Press or to end the camera.

See page 332 for how to display the saved still image.

Post View display

"Post View display" enables you to check still or moving images you shot before they are saved.

Estimate of the number of savable still images

The number of files you can save differs depending on shooting environments.

The number of files that can be saved to the FOMA phone and miniSD memory card has limit.

The number of files that can be saved to the FOMA phone

Image size	SXGA (1280 × 960)	VGA (640 × 480)	CIF (352 × 288)	Stand-by (240 × 320)	QCIF (176 × 144)	Sub-QCIF (128 × 96)
Number of files	Approx. 2	Approx. 14	Approx. 23	Approx. 31	Approx. 56	Approx. 93

The above number of files that can be saved is an estimate.

The number of files that can be saved to the miniSD memory card

Image size	SXGA (1280 × 960)	VGA (640 × 480)	CIF (352 × 288)	Stand-by (240 × 320)	QCIF (176 × 144)	Sub-QCIF (128 × 96)
Capacity:32 Mbytes	Approx. 60	Approx. 269	Approx. 470	Approx. 626	Approx. 937	Approx. 1858
Capacity:16 Mbytes	Approx. 29	Approx. 128	Approx. 224	Approx. 298	Approx. 446	Approx. 886

The above number of files that can be saved is an estimate. This number differs depending on the miniSD memory card manufacturers.


Information

Do not remove the miniSD memory card while saving files to it. The FOMA phone or miniSD memory card could malfunction.

The shutter tone sounds when shooting regardless of the settings such as Manner Mode. The sound level is fixed at Level 6, which cannot be changed.

Even when a message comes in while shooting, the shooting mode continues. Though unread message icon is displayed, mail reception display is not displayed.

If a call comes in during continuous shooting, the shooting stops. The Post View display of still images shot up to that point appears after the call ends.

If you press  or close the FOMA phone during continuous shooting, the shooting stops and the Post View display comes up.

When the battery level is low, you may not be able to save still images.

If you turn off the power while saving a file, an incomplete file may be saved.

If the battery pack is pulled off while a file is being saved to the FOMA phone or to the miniSD memory card, the data becomes undefined.

If you do turning off the power, checking the miniSD for disc, formatting miniSD, or removing the miniSD memory card, the storage location is set for the latest folder created with the FOMA phone. When the setting for storage location is changed, set it again by using "Select storage".

If you create or edit a folder by using personal computer, the folder of storage location might be changed. When the setting is changed, set it again by using "Select storage".

When shooting, hold the FOMA phone securely not to move so that blur in images are avoided.

While you are shooting in Photo Mode or Manual Continuous Mode, the Call/Charging indicator flickers in red. In Auto Continuous Mode, it lights in red. During access to miniSD memory card, it flickers in green.

Function Menu of the Camera Menu

1

Camera menu  ()  Do the following operation.



<Camera menu>

Function menu	Operations
Add desktop icon	You can paste the camera icon to the desktop. (See page 134)

Function Menu of the Post View Display in Photo Mode/Detailed Display in Continuous Mode


1 Post View display in Photo Mode/Detailed display in Continuous Mode ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Do the following operation.



<Post View display>



<Detailed display>



Function menu	Operations
Save	You can save the still image you took. (See page 160)
Mirror save	You can save the still image you took without frame as the mirrored image (horizontally reversed). (See page 160)
Compose message	You can save the still image you shot and attach to i-mode mail. ▶ Select a folder ▶ (OK) Go to step 2 on page 235. See page 334 for the folder of still image.
Effector	You can edit the still image you shot. This is available only in Photo Mode. ▶ YES ▶ Select a folder ▶ (OK) To edit the still image without saving, select "NO" and press (OK). See page 164 for the Function menu on the Effector display. See page 334 for the folder of still image.
	 <p><Effector display></p>
Set as display	You can paste to the Stand-by display. This is available only in Photo Mode. ▶ YES ▶ Select a folder ▶ (OK) Go to step 1 on page 342. Even when "Store in" is set to "miniSD", the still image is saved in the FOMA phone. To cancel, select "NO" and press (OK). See page 334 for the folder of still image.
Change frame	You can replace the frame added to the shot still image by new one. ▶ Select a frame ▶ (OK) Press (OK) to bring up the previous or following frame. To select another frame, press (Cancel) (Cancel). You can select a frame again also by pressing (FUNC) and selecting "Cancel". ▶ (OK) You can set the frame also by pressing (FUNC) and selecting "Set". You cannot release the frame. See page 508 for frames stored at the time of purchase.
Normal display/ Mirror display	You can switch between a correct image and a mirrored image (horizontally reversed).
Display size	You can set the display size of the still image. (See page 173)
File restriction	You can set file restrictions. (See page 174)
Cancel	You do not save the still image and moving images you shot. ▶ YES Not to cancel saving, select "NO" and press (OK).

Information

<Compose message>

If you send a JPEG image in excess of 10,000 bytes to the i-mode mobile phone, the image is converted to "the size fit to the i-mode mobile phone" at the i-shot Center.

If the image size is larger than QVGA (320 x 240 dots), the confirmation display appears asking whether to attach the still image as it is or shrink it to QVGA (320 x 240 dots) and then attach it.

Select "Attach" and press  to attach the still image as it is to the i-mode mail. If the file size is larger than 500 Kbytes, it is converted to 500 Kbytes or less. If you select "QVGA scale down" and press , the still image is shrunk to QVGA (320 x 240 dots) and its file size is converted to 500 Kbytes or less.

However, you cannot convert some still images to QVGA (320 x 240 dots).

QVGA (320 x 240 dots) is the most suited file size to send to the i-mode mobile phone.

<Effector>

Select "Effector" to display a correct image.

<Cancel>

























You cannot use this function from the detailed display for continuous shooting.

Function Menu of the Effector Display

1 Effector display () Do the following operation.



<Effector display>

Function menu	Operations
Frame	<p>  </p> <p>From the display on the right, press  () and select "Set"; then you can also define the frame.</p> <p>From the display on the right, press  to bring up the previous or following frame.</p> <p>To cancel, press  () from the display on the right. You can cancel also by pressing  () and selecting "Cancel".</p> <p>To save the still image you applied Effector, press . You can save also by pressing  () and selecting "Save". See page 160 for Saving. See page 508 for frames stored at the time of purchase.</p>
Retouch	<p>You can set the texture and color tone.</p> <p>Sharp .....Stresses the outline.</p> <p>Blur .....Softens the outline.</p> <p>Sepia .....Makes the color tone sepia.</p> <p>Emboss .....Makes the image rugged.</p> <p>Negative .....Reverses the color tone.</p> <p>Horizontal flip .....Flips the image horizontally.</p> <p></p> <p>You can define Retouch also by pressing  () from the display on the right and selecting "Set".</p> <p>Press  from the display on the right to display the previous or following Retouch.</p> <p>To cancel, press  () from the display on the right. You can cancel also by pressing  () and selecting "Cancel".</p> <p>To save the still image you edited, press . You can save also by pressing  () and selecting "Save". See page 160 for Save.</p>
Compose message	You can compose i-mode mail message. (See page 163)
Save	You can save the edited still image. (See page 160)



Information

<Frame>

You cannot compound the frame with the dimensions other than those of the still image you are editing.

Frame compounding is available to the following dimensions of a still image:

CIF (352 x 288), Stand-by (240 x 320), QCIF (176 x 144), and Sub-QCIF (128 x 96)


Even when the size of the frame is the same as that of the image, you cannot select the frame when its horizontal length and vertical length differ.

<Retouch>

The sizes of an image you can apply Retouch is as follows:














CIF (352 x 288), Stand-by (240 x 320), QCIF (176 x 144), Sub-QCIF (128 x 96)

Function Menu of the Post View Display in Continuous Mode

- 1** Post View display in Continuous Mode  (FUNC)
- ▶ Do the following operation.



<Post View display>

Function menu	Operations
Store selection	<p>You can save multiple still images selected from the Post View display.</p> <p>▶ Save To save as a mirrored image (horizontally reversed), select "Mirror save" and press .</p> <p>▶ YES ▶ Select a folder  To cancel, select "NO" and press . See page 334 for the folder of still image.</p>
Store all	<p>▶ Save To save as a mirrored image (horizontally reversed), select "Mirror save" and press .</p> <p>▶ YES ▶ Select a folder  To cancel, select "NO" and press . See page 334 for the folder of still image.</p>
Store all & anime	<p>You can save all the still images to store as an original animation.</p> <p>▶ Save To save as a mirrored image (horizontally reversed), select "Mirror save" and press .</p> <p>▶ YES ▶ Select a folder  ▶ <New> To cancel, select "NO" and press . See page 334 for the folder of still image.</p>
Select this	<p>You can select a single still image. You can also select a single still image from the Post View display and press  to select that image.</p>
Select all	<p>You can select all the still images.</p> <p>▶ YES To cancel, select "NO" and press .</p>
Release this	<p>You can cancel the selection. You can also select the selected single still image from the Post View display and press  to release.</p>
Release all	<p>You can cancel all the selections.</p> <p>▶ YES To cancel, select "NO" and press .</p>
Mirror display/Normal display	<p>You can switch between a correct image and a mirrored image (horizontally reversed).</p>
File restriction	<p>You can set the file restrictions on the multiple still images selected from the Post View display.</p> <p>File unrestricted .....Does not set the restrictions on files. File restricted.....The secondary distribution is disabled. See page 174 for the file restriction.</p>

Function menu	Operations
Restriction all	You can set the file restrictions on the all still images displayed on the Post View display. File unrestricted -----Does not set the restrictions on files. File restricted-----The secondary distribution is disabled. See page 174 for the file restriction.
Cancel	You do not save the shot still image. (See page 163)

Information

<Store all & anime>

When "Store in" is set to "miniSD", this function is not available.

If you have shot a single still image only or already saved one or more still images of the shot images, this function is not available.

<Moving Image Shot>

Shooting Moving Images

You can take moving images by using the camera. The shot moving images are saved to a folder within the "motion" folder in the FOMA phone or to the miniSD memory card. See "Store in" and "Select storage" for selecting the storage location.

1

Camera

Camera menu is displayed.

Press and hold for at least one second from the Stand-by display to start up the camera in the mode you previously activated. If the camera is activated in Photo Mode, press and select "Movie mode", then press . You can also select "Movie mode" from "CHG camera-mode" in the Function menu. Go to step 3.

You can start up the camera in Movie Mode also by selecting from the Shortcut menu and pressing . Go to step 3.



<Camera menu>

2

Movie mode

"" is displayed.



<Finder display>

3

Press .

Recording starts.

When you take with the inside camera, the horizontally flipped (mirrored) image is displayed, but it is displayed normally when played back.

4

Press .

Recording ends.

You can also press to stop recording.

When "Auto save set" is set to "ON", or "Store in" is set to "miniSD", the Post View display does not appear; the moving image is automatically saved. When "Store in" is set to "miniSD", the moving image are saved to the folder set by "Select storage".

Go to step 8.

5

YES

The moving image you took is saved.

If you press , the confirmation display appears asking whether to cancel the shot moving image.

Select "YES" or "NO" and press .

Press to play back the shot moving image (see page 353).



<Post View display>

6 Enter the title

You can enter up to 9 full-pitch characters or 18 half-pitch characters.
See page 482 for how to enter the characters.

7 Select the folder to which you want to save data

See page 354 for the folder of moving image.

8 Press or to end the camera.

See page 353 for playing back the saved moving images.

Post View display

"Post View display" enables you to check still or moving images you shot before they are saved.

Estimate of recording time

The recording time differs depending on shooting environments. Take reference to the recordable time and memory capacity which appears on the Finder display.

Recordable time to FOMA phone

Movie type set		Normal		Video		Voice	
Storage setting	File size setting	Mail restriction (S)	Mail restriction (L)	Mail restriction (S)	Mail restriction (L)	Mail restriction (S)	Mail restriction (L)
		(seconds)	(seconds)	(seconds)	(seconds)	(seconds)	(seconds)
	Fine mode	Approx. 20	Approx. 34	Approx. 23	Approx. 39	Approx. 177	Approx. 300
	Long duration mode	Approx. 71	Approx. 119	Approx. 90	Approx. 153	Approx. 177	Approx. 300
	Prefer motion	Approx. 11	Approx. 18	Approx. 12	Approx. 20	Approx. 177	Approx. 300
	Normal	Approx. 47	Approx. 79	Approx. 54	Approx. 92	Approx. 177	Approx. 300

The above recordable time is an estimate.

Recordable time to miniSD memory card

Movie type set		Normal (minutes)	Video (minutes)
Capacity	Storage setting		
32 Mbytes	Super fine	Approx. 6	Approx. 7
	Fine	Approx. 9	Approx. 9
	Normal	Approx. 16	Approx. 19
16 Mbytes	Super fine	Approx. 3	Approx. 3
	Fine	Approx. 4	Approx. 4
	Normal	Approx. 8	Approx. 9

The above recordable time is an estimate. In addition, the recording time varies depending on the miniSD memory card manufacturer. The time described in the above table is maximum recording time of respective miniSD memory cards.

Information

Do not remove the miniSD memory card while saving files to it. The FOMA phone or miniSD memory card could malfunction.

The shutter tone set by "Shutter sound" sounds when shooting starts and ends regardless of the settings such as Manner Mode. The sound level is fixed at Level 4 which cannot be changed.

If you do key operations while recording, the operation sound may be picked up.

When the battery level runs short during recording, the recording automatically ends and the battery alarm will sound. If "Store in" has been set to "miniSD", the moving image is saved. If "Store in" has been set to "Phone", charge the battery or replace it with a new one; then you can save the moving images.

If a call comes in during recording, the recording ends automatically. If "Store in" has been set to "miniSD", the moving image is saved. If "Store in" has been set to "Phone", the Post View display appears after the call ends.

If you turn off the power while saving a file, an incomplete file may be saved.

If the battery pack is pulled off while a file is being saved to the FOMA phone or to the miniSD memory card, the data becomes undefined.

If you do turning off the power, checking the miniSD for disc, formatting miniSD, or removing the miniSD memory card, the storage location is set for the latest folder created with the FOMA phone. When the setting for storage location is changed, set it again by using "Select storage".

If you create or edit a folder by using a personal computer, the folder of storage location might be changed. When the setting is changed, set it again by using "Select storage".

When File Size Setting had been set to "Long time" and the camera is ended, File Size Setting switches to "Mail restrict'n (S)" if you restart up the camera. The "Store in" setting has been set to "miniSD".

The Call/Charging indicator flickers while recording. It flickers in red when "Store in" is set to "Phone", in green when set to "miniSD". You cannot shoot the moving image during a call.

Function Menu of the Post View Display in Movie Mode



1 Post View display in Movie Mode ▶ (FUNC)

▶ Do the following operation.

Function menu	Operations
Play	You can play back the recorded moving image. (See page 353)
Save	You can save the recorded moving image. (See page 166)
Compose message	<p>You can save the moving image you record and attach to i-mode mail.</p> <p>▶Enter the title▶ (FUNC)</p> <p>You can enter up to 9 full-pitch characters or 18 half-pitch characters. See page 482 for how to enter characters.</p> <p>▶Select a folder▶ (FUNC)</p> <p>Go to step 2 on page 235. See page 354 for the folder of moving image.</p>
Set as stand-by	<p>You can save the recorded moving image and set for the Stand-by display.</p> <p>▶YES</p> <p>To cancel, select "NO" and press (FUNC).</p> <p>▶Enter the title▶ (FUNC)</p> <p>You can enter up to 9 full-pitch characters or 18 half-pitch characters. See page 482 for how to enter the characters.</p> <p>▶Select a folder▶ (FUNC)</p> <p>See page 354 for the folder of moving image.</p>
Display size	You can set the display size of the moving image. (See page 173)
File restriction	You can set the file restrictions. (See page 174)
Cancel	You do not save the recorded moving image. (See page 163)

Information

<Set as stand-by>

If you delete the moving image file set for the Stand-by display, the Stand-by display is also cleared.
Some moving images might not be displayed correctly.
See page 358 for playback of the moving image file set for the Stand-by display.

Changing Settings for Shooting Images

You can set the camera for shooting.

Use Zoom

You can display the image through the camera in "Wide" or "Tele".

The maximum magnification for each size is as follows:

Outside camera

Camera mode	Size	The maximum magnifications
Photo	VGA (640 x 480)	Approx. 1.9 times
	CIF (352 x 288)	Approx. 3.3 times
	Stand-by (240 x 320)	Approx. 2.9 times
	QCIF (176 x 144)	Approx. 6.6 times
	Sub-QCIF (128 x 96)	Approx. 10 times
Continuous	QCIF (176 x 144)	Approx. 2.1 times
	Sub-QCIF (128 x 96)	Approx. 3.2 times
Movie	QVGA (320 x 240) ¹	Approx. 1.2 times
	QCIF (176 x 144) ²	Approx. 2.1 times
	Sub-QCIF (128 x 96) ³	Approx. 3.2 times

Inside camera

Camera mode	Size	The maximum magnifications
Photo/ Continuous	QCIF (176 x 144)	Approx. 2.0 times
	Sub-QCIF (128 x 96)	Approx. 2.7 times
Movie	QCIF (176 x 144) ²	Approx. 2.0 times
	Sub-QCIF (128 x 96) ³	Approx. 2.7 times

You cannot zoom in or out the image for CIF/Stand-by in Photo Mode/Continuous Mode or QVGA in Movie Mode.

You cannot zoom in or out the image for SXGA in Photo Mode.
Zooming is not available in CIF and Stand-by size in Continuous Mode.

- 1: When "Storage setting" is set to "Super fine".
- 2: When "Storage setting" is set to "Normal (Phone)", "Fine mode", "Prefer motion", "Normal (miniSD)", or "Fine".
- 3: When "Storage setting" is set to "Long dur. mode".

1 Finder display to adjust the magnification

Each time you press  (wide) or  (tele), zooming varies.
If you keep pressing  (wide) or  (tele), zooming varies consecutively.



In the case of
"Wide (W)"




In the case of
"Tele (T)"

Information

The image quality may slightly change when you select "Wide" or "Tele".

"Tele" is released in the following cases:

- When you press  to end the camera
- When size is changed
- When camera mode is switched
- See page 172 for "Storage setting".

Close-up

You can shoot a subject from a distance of about seven cm away.

Move the close-up lever to “🌸”.

You can set the close-up mode for the outside camera only.

After close-up shooting, move the close-up lever in the direction

“●”.

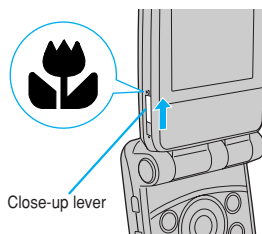


Photo Light

At camera start-up
OFF

You can light the photo light as a spare light for when you use the outside camera to take shots in a dark place.

In Photo Mode, the photo light flashes strong at the instant the shutter is pressed.

1 Finder display ▶ (📷) (ON)

Press (📷) (OFF) to turn the photo light off. Also, the photo light goes off when you do not operate for about 30 seconds or when the Post View display appears.

The photo light does not go off while you are taking a shot using the Auto-timer or shooting in Auto Continuous Mode and Movie Mode.

Information

You cannot use the photo light when Movie Type Set is set to “Voice”.

Setting Image Size and Image Quality

Function Menu of the Finder Display

1 Finder display ▶ ⓘ ([FUNC]) ▶ Do the following operation.


The settings for camera shooting or for saving files are not reset even if you end the camera.



When you start up the camera again, the previous settings before ending camera will return.



<Finder display>

Function menu	Operations
Inside camera/ Outside camera	You can switch between the inside camera and outside camera. You can switch between the inside camera and outside camera also by pressing ([Fn]) from the Finder display. The outside camera has been set at the time of purchase.
CHG camera-mode	Movie mode .....Switches to Movie Mode. Photo mode .....Switches to Photo Mode. Continuous mode.....Switches to Continuous Mode. Text reader.....Text Reader Selection display appears. Bar code reader.....Bar Code Reader Selection display appears. You can select "CHG camera-mode" also by pressing ([Fn]) from the Finder display. If you select "Continuous mode", select either "Auto" or "Manual" and press ([OK]).
Format setting	You can set the image size to be shot and saved in Photo Mode and Continuous Mode. You can set it only in Photo Mode and Continuous Mode. SXGA (1280 x 960) .....1280 x 960 dots VGA (640 x 480) .....640 x 480 dots CIF (352 x 288) .....352 x 288 dots (Setting at purchase) Stand-by (240 x 320) 240 x 320 dots QCIF (176 x 144).....176 x 144 dots Sub-QCIF (128 x 96).....128 x 96 dots You can set the image size also by pressing ([Fn]) from the Finder display. While you are using the inside camera or taking photos in Continuous Mode, you can select only "CIF (352 x 288)", "Stand-by (240 x 320)", "QCIF (176 x 144)" and "Sub-QCIF (128 x 96)". While you are shooting a photo for Photo-sending function during a voice call, you can select only "QCIF (176 x 144)" and "Sub-QCIF (128 x 96)". "QCIF (176 x 144)" is set at the time of purchase.
Interval/Number (Shot interval)	You can set the shooting interval for auto-continuous shooting. ▶ Shot interval 0.5 second .....Shoots at an interval of about 0.5 second. 1.0 second .....Shoots at an interval of about 1.0 second. (Setting at purchase) 2.0 seconds.....Shoots at an interval of about 2.0 seconds.
Interval/Number (Shot number)	You can set the number of frames for continuous shooting. ▶ Shot number ▶ Enter the number of photos. When "Format setting" is set to "Stand-by (240 x 320)", enter two-digit numerals from "05" through "10". When "Format setting" is set to "QCIF (176 x 144)" or to "Sub-QCIF (128 x 96)", enter two-digit numerals such as "05" through "20". When "Format setting" is set to "CIF (352 x 288)", "Shot number" is set to four frames and the setting cannot be changed. When "Format setting" is set to other than "CIF (352 x 288)", "Shot number" is set to five frames.

Function menu	Operations
File size setting	You can set the storage capacity for recording the moving image. You can set it only in Movie Mode. Mail restrict'n (S).....You can save up to 290 Kbytes. (Setting at purchase) Mail restrict'n (L).....You can save up to 490 Kbytes. Long time You can shoot for a long time. The moving image is saved to the miniSD memory card.
Storage setting	You can set the image quality for saving the moving image. You can set it only in Movie Mode. When "Store in" is set to "Phone", you can select "Normal", "Fine mode", "Long dur. mode", or "Prefer motion", and when "Store in" is set to "miniSD", you can select "Normal", "Fine", or "Super fine". Normal.....Records in standard quality. The image size will be QCIF (176 x 144). (Setting at purchase) Fine mode Records in high quality. The image size will be QCIF (176 x 144). Long dur. mode Low quality: Recordable shooting time will be longer. The image size will be Sub-QCIF (128 x 96). Prefer motion The best quality: Recordable shooting time will be shorter. The image size will be QCIF (176 x 144). Normal.....Records in standard quality. The image size will be QCIF (176 x 144). Fine.....Records in high quality. The image size will be QCIF (176 x 144). Super fine.....Records in the best quality. The image size will be QVGA (320 x 240).
Image quality (Brightness)	▶ Brightness  - 2.....Dark - 1.....Slightly dark ± 0.....Standard (At camera start-up) + 1.....Slightly bright + 2.....Bright You can adjust brightness also by pressing (3 DEF) from the Finder display.
Image quality (White balance)	You can adjust the coloring of the image on the Finder display to create a natural color tone. ▶ White balance Auto.....Adjusts white balance automatically. (Setting at purchase) Fine.....When shooting outdoors when fine. Cloudy.....When shooting in cloudy weather or in the shade. Light bulb.....When shooting under lighting. You can set white balance also by pressing (2 AR) from the Finder display.
Image quality (Color mode set)	▶ Color mode set Normal.....Shoots in normal color tone. (At camera start-up) Sepia.....Shoots in sepia tone. Monochrome.....Shoots in monochrome. You can change color tones also by pressing (1 R) from the Finder display.
Image quality (Photo mode)	You can set Night Mode to shoot in a dark place by lengthening the exposure time. You can set Night Mode only in Photo Mode or Movie Mode. ▶ Photo mode Normal.....Does not set to Night Mode. (At camera start-up) Night mode.....Sets to Night Mode. You can set Night Mode also by pressing (4 CH) from the Finder display.
Image quality (Image tuning)	You can suppress blur on the display when shooting with the outside camera. ▶ Image tuning Auto.....Sets to automatic tuning. (Setting at purchase) Mode 1 (50Hz).....When shooting within the area where the power supply frequency is 50Hz. Mode 2 (60Hz).....When shooting within the area where the power supply frequency is 60Hz.
Auto save set	You can set whether to automatically save the image to the folder set by "Store in". ON.....Automatically saves the image to the "Camera" folder of the FOMA phone (when "Store in" is "Phone") or to the folder inside the miniSD memory card (when "Store in" is "miniSD") set by "Select storage". OFF.....Brings up the Post View display, and does not save automatically. (Setting at purchase)

Function menu	Operations
Store in	You can set the storage location for the still or moving images you shot. Phone Saves the still or moving image to the FOMA phone. (Setting at purchase) miniSD Saves the still or moving image to the miniSD memory card.
Shutter sound	You can set a shutter sound. You can set a shutter sound each for Photo Mode or Continuous Mode and for Movie Mode. Sound 1 Sets to Sound 1. (Setting at purchase) Sound 2 Sets to Sound 2. Sound 3 Sets to Sound 3. While you are selecting, the shutter tone sounds for confirmation.
Auto timer	You can set the Auto Timer. (See page 175)
Movie type set	You can set whether to record the video or voice for recording moving images. You can set only in Movie Mode. Normal Records the video and voice. (At camera start-up) Video Records the video only. Voice Records the voice only.
Select frame	You can add a frame to the still image for display. You can add the frame only in Photo Mode and "Format setting" is set to "CIF (352 x 288)", "Stand-by (240 x 320)", "QCIF (176 x 144)", or "Sub-QCIF (128 x 96)". ▶ Select a frame  Select "OFF" to release the frame. "OFF" is selected when starting the camera. See page 508 for frames stored at the time of purchase.
File restriction	You can set file restrictions. (See page 174)
Display size	You can set the size of a moving image or still image. Actual size Displays the image in the original (equivalent) size. (Setting at purchase) Fit in display Displays the image to fit to the screen size.
Memory info	You can check a memory capacity and used space (estimate) for still images and moving images in the FOMA Phone/miniSD memory card. After checking, press  .

Information

<Inside camera/Outside camera>

When Format setting is set to "SXGA (1280 x 960)", or "VGA (640 x 480)", you cannot switch to the inside camera. You cannot start up the inside camera and outside camera at same time.

<Interval/Number (Shot interval)>

When Format setting is set to "CIF (352 x 288)", you cannot select "0.5 second".

If you set Format setting to "CIF (352 x 288)" when the shooting interval is set to "0.5 second", the shooting interval switches to "1.0 second".

<Interval/Number (Shot number)>

If you set Format Setting to "CIF (352 x 288)", "Shot number" switches to four frames. If you switch Format Setting from "CIF (352 x 288)" to another size, "Shot number" switches to five frames. If you set Format Setting to "CIF (352 x 288)" when "Shot number" is set to five frames or more, "Shot number" switches to four frames. If you set Format Setting to "Stand-by (240 x 320)" when "Shot number" is set to 11 frames or more, "Shot number" switches to 10 frames.

<Auto save set>

When "Select storage" has not been set or once set folder has been deleted, the image is saved to the latest folder.

If you do turning off the power, checking the miniSD, formatting miniSD, or removing the miniSD memory card, the storage location is set for the latest folder created with the FOMA phone. When the setting for storage location is changed, set it again by using "Select storage".

If you create or edit a folder by using a personal computer, the folder of storage location might be changed. When the setting is changed, set it again by using "Select storage".

When File Size Setting in Movie Mode is set to "Long time" or when "Store in" is set to "miniSD", you cannot change Auto Save Set.

Information

<Image quality (Photo mode)>

If you switch the shooting mode to Continuous Mode while "Photo mode" is set to "Night mode" in Photo Mode or Movie Mode, "Photo mode" is switched to "Normal".

Note that the image may be blur especially in Night Mode because the exposure takes a longer time.

<Image quality (Image tuning)>

If you select "Auto", it may take a while to automatically adjust the image quality. In this case, switch to Mode 1 or Mode 2 according to the power frequency provided in the shooting location.

<Store in>

See "Select storage" for how to set a storage location inside the miniSD memory card.

You cannot set "Store in" to "Phone" when File Size Setting of the moving image is set to "Long time". If you change File Size Setting of the moving image to "Long time" when "Store in" is set to "Phone", "Store in" switches to "miniSD".

<Shutter sound>

During Manner Mode, the shutter tone for confirmation does not sound.

<Movie type set>

If "Store in" has been set to "miniSD" in Movie Mode, you cannot set Movie Type Set to "Voice". If "Store in" is changed to "miniSD" or File Size Setting is changed to "Long time" while Movie Type Set is "Voice", Movie Type Set will be changed to "Normal".

<Select frame>

If you take a shot of still image with frame using the inside camera and save it, the frame is also horizontally reversed when the still image is automatically reversed as a correct image.

You cannot save the still image shot with a frame added as the mirrored image.

You cannot select the frame to add to the still image when its vertical and horizontal sizes differ from those of the still image.

If you end the camera, the frame turns "OFF".

<Display size>

When Format setting is set to "SXGA (1280 x 960)", "VGA (640 x 480)", "CIF (352 x 288)", or "Stand-by (240 x 320)", the setting is always "Fit in display".

When Storage Setting is set to "Super fine", the setting is always "Fit in display".

The setting on the Finder display is reflected on the Post View display; however the setting on the Post View display is not reflected on the Finder display.

File Restriction

Setting at purchase

File unrestricted

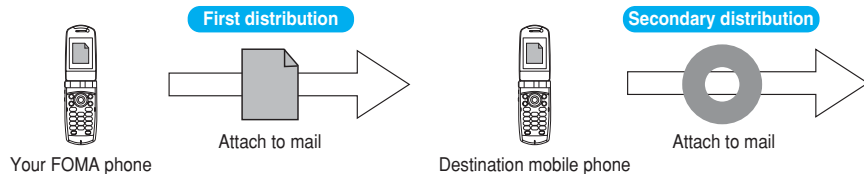
You can set the file restriction for when you save the shooting still or moving image. The operation of attaching to i-mode mail is disabled at the receiving end who has received the image as the first distribution.

1 Finder display/Post View display in Photo Mode, Movie Mode or Photo sending/Detailed display in Continuous Mode ▶ (FUNC) ▶ File restriction

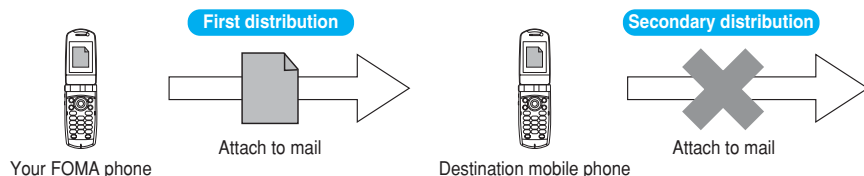
File unrestrictedDoes not set the file restriction.

File restrictedDisables the secondary distribution.

For "File unrestricted"



For "File restricted"



Information

Even if you set the file restriction to "File restricted", the still or moving image files you have sent via Ir exchange function or exported to the miniSD memory card can be delivered from the destination to external devices.

After saving, you can use "File restriction" (see page 337) to change the settings.

When File Size Setting is set to "Long time" or "Store in" is set to "miniSD" in Movie Mode, you cannot set "File restriction".

Auto Timer

At camera start-up

Auto timerOFF

Delay time10 seconds (When set to "ON")

1 Finder display (FUNC) Auto timer


ON.....Validates the Auto timer setting.

OFF.....Invalidates the Auto timer setting. The setting is completed.


You can set the Auto timer also by pressing  from the Finder display.



2 Enter Delay time (seconds).

Enter two digits from "01" through "15".

If you do not change the set Delay time, just press  without entering.


When Auto Timer is set to "ON"

When set to "ON", "

appears on the Finder display. If you press , a confirmation tone sounds and "

blinks. The Call/Charging indicator flickers every about one second until about five seconds before shooting. About five seconds before shooting, the Call/Charging indicator flickers by every about 0.5 seconds, and the confirmation tone sounds by every second. Shooting will take place after the specified functioning time has elapsed.

To cancel shooting, press  (QUIT) or  while the Call/Charging indicator is flickering.

If you press  before the specified functioning time has elapsed, Auto Timer goes "OFF", immediately starting shooting.

Information

You cannot use Auto Timer in Manual Continuous Mode.

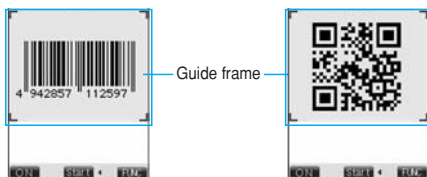
Auto Timer will be set to "OFF" when shooting ends.

Using Bar Code Reader

You can use the outside camera to scan the JAN codes and QR codes. From the scanned text information, you can launch Phone To, Mail To, Web To, and i-αppli To. You can also store bookmarks or Phonebook data, display text and copy/paste characters. You can scan the data of image or melody file and play or save it, either.

When scanning with the bar code reader:

- Slide the close-up lever to "☘" and start scanning.
- Scan codes with the camera about seven cm away from them. However, slowly bring the camera close to small codes so that those are shot large within the frame.
- Scan so that the camera is in parallel with the codes.
- Scan so that the codes are inside the guide frame.
- After scanning, slide the close-up lever back to "●".
- See page 170 for the close-up mode.



JAN Code



JAN Code is a bar code that denotes numerals with the vertical bars of a different width. You can scan 8-digit (JAN8) and 13-digit (JAN13) JAN codes.

"4942857112597" is displayed when the FOMA phone is used for reading the bar code on the left.

QR Code



QR Code is one of the 2-dimensional codes that denotes data in the vertical and horizontal directions. Alphanumeric, kanji, katakana, and pictographs are displayed as characters. Some QR codes have image or melody information.

"株式会社NTTドコモ" is displayed when the FOMA phone is used for reading the QR code on the left.

Scanning a Code

At Bar Code Reader start-up
 Photo lightOFF
 ZoomWide

You can store up to 5 scanned codes.

You can scan up to 16 divided QR codes.

1 Bar code reader ▶ Scan code

Select from the Shortcut menu and press ; then the display on the right is also brought up.

Select "Bar code reader" of "CHG camera-mode" from the Function menu while the Finder display is displayed and press ; then the display on the right is also brought up.

When five codes have already been stored, the confirmation display appears asking whether to overwrite the oldest code. To overwrite, select "YES" and press . To cancel, select "NO" and press .

<Bar Code Reader Selection display>



2 Switch to the close-up mode and fit the code to be scanned to the guide frame and display the code.

If you can select "Bar code reader" from the Function menu in the Character Entry (Edit) display, select "Bar code reader" and press ; then the display on the right is also brought up.

Press () to set the photo light to "ON" or "OFF".



Press to zoom standard and press to zoom wide.

<Reading Code display>










3 Press .

The code is read. (The shutter tone does not sound.)

To cancel scanning, press  or .

When scanning is completed, the scanning completion tone sounds and the Call/Charging indicator lights. The sound level is fixed and cannot be changed. However, the beep does not sound in Manner Mode or while "Phone" of "Ring volume" is set to "Silent" or "Step".



The "" icon is displayed for melody files and the "" or "" icon is displayed for incompatible or damaged files.

While you are entering (editing) characters, the Result display of read code does not appear; the text data confirmation display of the scanned code appears. When the code containing no text data has been scanned, the code is not correctly displayed. To enter the scanned code, press . To discard it, press  () or . The characters that cannot be displayed are replaced by half-pitch spaces.



If scanning is not completed in a certain period, the scanning is suspended and the Reading code display returns.

When the read code is part of divided QR codes, press  to bring up the Reading code display for scanning next code.

Repeat the operations in step 3. The scanning completion tone sounds and the Call/Charging indicator lights when the second code or after is scanned.

If scanning is suspended when scanning part of divided QR codes, the confirmation display appears asking whether to cancel the scanned data. To cancel, select "YES" and press . To continue scanning, select "NO" and press .

4 () ▶ Save result

To cancel the scanned data, press , select "YES" and press .



<Result display of read code>

5 YES ▶ OK

The scanned data is stored.

To cancel storing, select "NO" and press .

Information

While "PIM lock" is set, you cannot start up Bar Code Reader.

You cannot read bar codes or 2-dimensional codes other than JAN Code or QR Code.

Scanning may take a time. Hold the FOMA phone securely with the hands during reading so that you can scan bar codes correctly.

You may not be able to scan codes correctly depending on scratch, dirt, damage, the quality of printed material, light reflection, or QR Code version.

You cannot read some bar codes depending on the type or size.

Function Menu of the Bar Code Reader Selection Display

1 Bar Code Reader Selection display ▶ ()

▶ Do the following operation.



<Bar Code Reader Selection display>

Function menu	Operations
Add desktop icon	You can paste the icon of Bar Code Reader to the desktop. (See page 134)

Function Menu of the Reading Code Display

1 Reading Code display ▶ (i) (FUNC) ▶ Do the following operation.



<Reading Code display>

Function menu	Operations
Brightness	<p>▶ (i)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - 2.....Dark - 1.....Slightly dark ± 0.....Standard (At Bar Code Reader start-up) + 1.....Slightly bright + 2.....Bright
























Function Menu of the Result Display of Read Code

1 Result display of read code ▶ (i) (FUNC) ▶ Do the following operation.



<Result display of read code>

Function menu	Operations
Save result	You can store the scanned data. (See page 177)
Display list	You can bring up the Bar Code Reader List when the FOMA phone has a single stored code or more. When the scanned result has not been stored, the confirmation display appears asking whether to cancel the scanned data. To cancel, select "YES" and press (i). Not to cancel, select "NO" and press (i).
Internet	<p>You can connect to the URL you are selecting.</p> <p>▶ YES ▶ OK</p> <p>You can connect to the URL also by selecting the URL from the result display of scanned code and pressing (i).</p> <p>To cancel, select "NO" and press (i).</p> <p>To cancel while downloading a page, press (i) (URL) or (i).</p>
Compose message	<p>You can compose i-mode mail to send to the mail address you are selecting.</p> <p>Go to step 3 on page 235.</p> <p>You can compose i-mode mail also by selecting the mail address from the result display of scanned code and pressing (i).</p> <p>When "メール作成 (Compose message)" is displayed, select "メール作成 (Compose message)" and press (i); then the data from the result display of scanned code is entered into the address, subject, and text field of a new message.</p>

Function menu	Operations
Dialing	<p>You can make a call to the phone number you are selecting.</p> <p>Voice phone .....Dials a voice call.</p> <p>32K V-phone .....Dials the 32K video-phone call.</p> <p>64K V-phone .....Dials the 64K video-phone call.</p> <p>Select image .....Selects an image to send to the other party during video-phone calls from among "Me", "Pre-installed", "Original", and "Chara-den".</p> <p>You can make a call by selecting the phone number from the result display of scanned code and pressing .</p> <p>▶ Dial</p> <p>To make an international call, select "International dial" and press . (See page 52)</p> <p>To cancel, select "Cancel" and press .</p> <p>To set Caller ID, select "Notify caller ID" and press . Select from among "OFF", "ON", and "Cancel prefix". If you select "Dial" and press , the setting by "Activate (Caller ID notification)" works.</p> <p>To suspend dialing, press .</p>
Add to phonebook	<p>You can store the data in the Phonebook. (See page 97)</p>
Add bookmark	<p>You can bookmark the URL you are selecting.</p> <p>▶ YES▶OK▶ Select the folder to which you add the data ▶ </p> <p>Select "Add bookmark" from the Result display of read code and press ; then the name and URL of the site is bookmarked.</p> <p>To cancel, select "NO" and press .</p> <p>You can select only the "Bookmark" folder at purchase.</p>
Save image	<p>You can save the image from the scanned data to the "My picture" folder you have selected.</p> <p>▶ Select the folder to which you want to save the data ▶ </p> <p>See page 212 when images are stored to the maximum.</p> <p>See page 334 for the folder of still image.</p> <p>▶ To "Set as display", select "YES" ▶ </p> <p>Go to step 1 on page 342.</p>
Save melody	<p>You can save the melody from the scanned data to the "Melody" folder you have selected and you can set it as a ring tone.</p> <p>▶ YES▶ Select the folder to which you want to save the data ▶ </p> <p>Select "</p> " and press  to play back the melody. <p>To cancel, select "NO" and press .</p> <p>See page 212 when melodies are stored to the maximum.</p> <p>See page 371 for the melody folder.</p> <p>Go to step 3 on page 209.</p>
Start  appli	<p>You can start-up i-appli from the scanned data.</p> <p>▶ YES</p> <p>You can also select "Start  appli" from the result display of scanned code and press  to start-up i-appli.</p> <p>To cancel, select "NO" and press .</p>
Copy	<p>▶ Select a start point for copying ▶  ▶ Select an end point for copying ▶ </p> <p>You can copy codes of up to 5,000 full-pitch or 10,000 half-pitch characters.</p> <p>See page 498 for pasting copied characters.</p>

Information

<Internet>

URL can be displayed in up to 512 half-pitch characters by Bar Code Reader and up to 256 half-pitch characters by Text Reader.
You cannot connect to the Internet while "Self mode" is activated.

<Compose message>

If the scanned data for the destination mail address contains nonenterable characters, you cannot enter them as the mail address.
If the scanned data for the text contains nonenterable characters, those characters may become spaces.

<Dialing>

The characters you can make a call from are numerics and symbols (# * + -). When the phone number contains other than those characters, the call is dialed with the recognized characters only.

The video-phone image set by this function is effective for this dialing only.

You cannot make emergency calls by scanning "110", "119" or "118".

You cannot make a call during "Restrict dialing", "Keypad dial lock", or "Self mode".

<Add bookmark>

You can display up to 512 half-pitch characters for a URL and can store up to 256 characters from the beginning.

<Save image>

The file name and title for the saved image are "imageXXX" (XXX are numbers).

You cannot scan the bar code of the image in excess of 1632 x 1224 dots.

<Save melody>



The file name for the saved melody is "melodyXXX" (XXX are numbers).

For the melody with no title, the file name is displayed as the title.

When playing back the melody, it is played back at the sound volume set for "Phone" of "Ring volume".

You cannot play the melody back during calls.

<Start appli>

If you have removed a check mark from "Bar code"  appli To" of "Set  appli To", you cannot start i-appli by using the scanned data.

If the specified software does not exist, you cannot start i-appli.

Display List

1

  **Bar code reader**  **Saved data**

The titles for stored data are displayed from the latest one.

When no data is stored, the display on the right does not appear.

Select the title and press ; then the Result display of read code comes up.



<Bar Code Reader List>

Information

The titles for the scanned data are as follows:

(Example) When the date and time are set and the scanned data is saved on 10:00, 15, January 2005:

Title name: 20050115_1000_0000 ¹

1 If you store multiple data items for the same date and time, the lower four-digit numbers increase up to "9999" in stored order.

If data is saved when no date and time are set:

Title name: 00000000_0000_0000 ²

2 The lower four-digit numbers increase up to "9999" in order and when data is stored up to "9999", "0000" returns.





Function Menu of the Bar Code Reader List

1

Bar Code Reader List   **(FUNC)**  **Do the following operation.**



<Bar Code Reader List>

Function menu	Operations
Edit title	▶ Enter the title ▶  You can enter up to 9 full-pitch or 18 half-pitch characters. See page 482 for how to enter characters.
Result	You can bring up the Result display of read code for stored data.
Delete this	▶ YES To cancel, select "NO" and press  .
Delete all	▶ Enter the Terminal Security Code ▶  ▶ YES To cancel, select "NO" and press  See page 140 for the Terminal Security Code.

<Text Reader>

Using Text Reader

You can scan printed phone numbers, mail addresses or alphanumeric such as URLs using the outside camera, and store them as text information. Use the text information to make calls, compose i-mode mail, or connect to the Internet.

When scanning with the text reader

- Slide the close-up lever to "👁" and start scanning.
- Scan characters with the camera about seven cm away from them.
The scanning rate is lowered if you scan text off the position about seven cm.
- Scan so that the camera is in parallel with the characters.
- Scan so that the characters will be in the reading range.
- After scanning, slide the close-up lever back to "●".
- See page 170 for the close-up mode.



Camera






Reading Text

At Text Reader start-up
Photo lightOFF

You can store eight scanned data items of up to 256 half-pitch characters per item. The number of characters you can scan at a time is up to 50 half-pitch characters. Split a lengthy text for reading.

1

 ▶  **Text reader** ▶ **Scan text**



- Select  from the Shortcut menu and press ; then the display on the right is also brought up.
- Select "Text reader" of "CHG camera-mode" from the Function menu while the Finder display is displayed and press ; then the display on the right is also brought up.
- When eight codes have already been stored, the confirmation display appears asking whether to overwrite the oldest code. To overwrite, select "YES" and press .
- To cancel, select "NO" and press .



<Text Reader Selection display>

2

Switch to the close-up mode and fit the characters to be scanned to the reading range and display them.

Press  () to set the photo light to "ON" or "OFF".



<Reading Text display>

3 Press .

The characters within the reading range are scanned. (The shutter tone does not sound.)

To cancel reading, press .

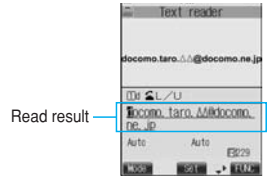
When reading ends, the reading completion tone sounds and the Call/Charging indicator lights. The sound level is fixed and cannot be changed. However, the beep does not sound in Manner Mode or while "Phone" of "Ring volume" is set to "Silent" or "Step".

4 Confirm the read result.

The scanned characters are underlined. Confirm the scanned characters for mistakes.

Press  to restart scanning.

To store the characters without correcting, go to step 6.




<Confirmation display of read text>

When correcting characters on the confirmation display of read text



Select the characters for conversion candidates and correct them.

When the read result is displayed, a conversion candidate for each character is displayed up to four kinds.

1. Press  to select a character you want to correct.
2. Press the number for the conversion candidate character.


Enter directly and correct.

Enter directly if you want to correct the character to other than the conversion candidate.

1. Press  to select a character you want to correct.
2. Press  (Mode) to set "English entry mode" or "Numeric entry mode" and enter a correct character.

See page 482 for how to enter characters.

Information


When characters you want to correct are English letters, you can press  to switch between uppercase and lowercase.

You cannot enter characters such as ".ne.jp" or ".co.jp" by pressing .

5 Press .

The scanned texts are set.



To link characters, repeat steps 2 through 5.

To discard the read result, press .



6 (FUNC) > Store

The scanned texts are stored.

Press  () to create i-mode mail to send to the scanned characters set as a destination mail address. (See page 184)



<Result display of read text>

Information

While "PIM lock" is set, you cannot start up Text Reader.

Hold the FOMA phone securely with the hands during scanning so that you can scan characters correctly.

Characters you can scan are English letters (uppercase and lowercase), numerals, and symbols (#, &, (,), -, ., /, :, @, [,], _, ~, ?, =, %, and +). You cannot scan kanji and hiragana. You might not be able to scan those correctly depending on the surroundings such as lighting.

You cannot scan handwritten characters.

You might not be able to scan the following:

Characters received by a FAX/copied characters/designed characters/characters having no certain space between characters/characters difficult to identify from the background

When you end Text Reader, both Recognition Mode and NEGA/POSI Mode return to "Auto setting".

Display List

1

▶ Text reader ▶ Saved data

Up to 22 half-pitch characters are displayed for each stored data.

When no data is stored, the display on the right does not appear.

Select the data and press ; then the Result display of read text comes up.

If you press on the Result display of read text, the confirmation display appears asking whether to overwrite data and start up Text Reader. Select "YES" and press to go to step 2 on page 181. To cancel to store, select "NO" and press .

Select an item and press (); then you can create i-mode mail to send to the characters in the item set as a mail address. (See page 184)



<Text Reader List>

Function Menu of the Text Reader Selection Display

1

Text Reader Selection display ▶ ()

▶ Do the following operation.



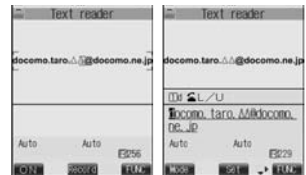
<Text Reader Selection display>

Function menu	Operations
Add desktop icon	You can paste the icon of Text Reader to the desktop. (See page 134)

Function Menu of the Reading Text Display/ Confirmation Display of Read Text

1

Reading text display/Confirmation display of read text ▶ () ▶ Do the following operation.



<Reading text display>

<Confirmation display of read text>

Function menu	Operations
Store	You can store the read result. (See page 182)
Edit	You can edit and store the scanned characters. ▶ Edit the text ▶ You can enter alphanumeric and half-pitch symbols. See page 482 for how to enter characters.
Recognition mode	You can set scanning mode according to the type of characters you want to scan. Auto setting Reads the type of characters automatically. (At Text Reader start-up) URL "http://" or "https://" is automatically added to the beginning of scanned characters and stored. Mail/SIP address Select when you scan a mail address. Phone number Select when you scan a phone number. Number Select when you scan numerals. Free character Select when you scan characters that are not especially specified.
NEGA/POSI mode	You can set this mode to fit to the printing conditions of the characters you want to scan. Auto setting ...Automatically reads printing conditions. (At Text Reader start-up) Positive fix Select when deep color characters are printed over faint color ground. Negative fix Select when faint color characters are printed over deep color ground.

Information

<Recognition mode>

When you select a "URL" and scan it, the conditions for adding "http://" or "https://" to the scanned characters are as follows:

- If the scanned characters do not contain "://", "http://" is added to the beginning of the characters. However, when the beginning of the characters is "/" or "://", it is replaced with "http://".
- When the scanned characters contain "://", the characters before "://" are replaced with "http://". However, when "s://" or "S://" is before "://", the characters before "://" are replaced with "https://".

Function Menu of the Result Display of Read Text/ Text Reader List

1 Result display of read text/Text Reader List

▶ (i) (FUNC) ▶ Do the following operation.



<Result display of read text>

<Text Reader List>

Function menu	Operations
Edit	▶ Edit the text ▶ (i) You can enter alphanumeric and half-pitch symbols. See page 482 for how to enter characters.
Internet	You can connect to the scanned URL. (See page 178)
Compose message	You can compose i-mode mail to send to the scanned mail address as a destination address. Go to step 3 on page 235.
Dialing	You can dial the phone number you have scanned. (See page 179)
Store mail add.	You can store the mail address you have scanned in the Phonebook. (See page 97)
Store phone No.	You can store the phone number you have scanned in the Phonebook. (See page 97)
Add bookmark	You can bookmark the URL you have scanned. (See page 179)
Search phonebook	You can retrieve Phonebook entries using the scanned characters. ▶ Select a search method ▶ (i) ▶ (i) The Phonebook List that corresponds to the characters is displayed.
Display detail/ Display list	You can switch between the result display of read text and Text Reader List.
Delete this	▶ YES To cancel, select "NO" and press (i).
Delete all	▶ Enter the Terminal Security Code ▶ (i) ▶ YES To cancel, select "NO" and press (i). See page 140 for the Terminal Security Code.

i-mode

What is i-mode?	186
Displaying Sites	
Accessing Sites.....< Menu>	193
Entering/Selecting Information on Sites.....	194
Displaying Most Recently Accessed Site.....<Last URL>	199
Using My Menu.....<My Menu>	199
Changing i-mode Password	<Change i-mode Password> 200
Accessing Internet Web Pages.....<Enter URL>	200
Displaying Web Pages from URL History.....<URL History>	201
Displaying Site Set as Home URL	<Display Home> 202
Bookmarking Web Pages or Sites for Quick Access	<Bookmark> 203
Saving Site Contents	<Screen Memo> 206
Downloading Images or Melodies from Sites	
Saving Images.....<Save Image>	208
Downloading Melodies from Sites	<i-melody> 209
Downloading Templates from Sites.....<Download Template>	210
Downloading Dictionaries from Sites	<Download Dictionary> 211
Downloading Chara-den Images.....<Download Chara-den Images>	211
Convenient Functions of i-mode	
Operations from Highlighted Information	212
Setting Functions of i-mode	
Setting Detailed Functions	<i-mode Settings> 214
Setting Connection Timeout	<Set Connection Timeout> 215
Changing a Host from i-mode (ISP Connection Communication) .....<Host Selection>	215
Using Message Services	
Receiving Messages R/F Automatically	<Message R/F Receiving> 216
Reading Received Messages R/F	<Display Message R/F> 218
Using Certificates	
Operating SSL Certificates.....<SSL Certificate Operation>	222
Setting FirstPass.....<User Certificate Operation>	223
Changing a CA Center.....<Certificate Host>	226

What is i-mode?

i-mode is the service that makes use of the display of the FOMA phone supporting i-mode (i-mode phone) to enable you to use online services such as site (program) access, Internet access, and i-mode mail.

Site (Program) Access

By selecting Menu List from i-mode menu, you can use various types of online services offered by IPs (Information Providers), such as weather forecast and news. You can also download games and the displays for Stand-by display to enjoy them.

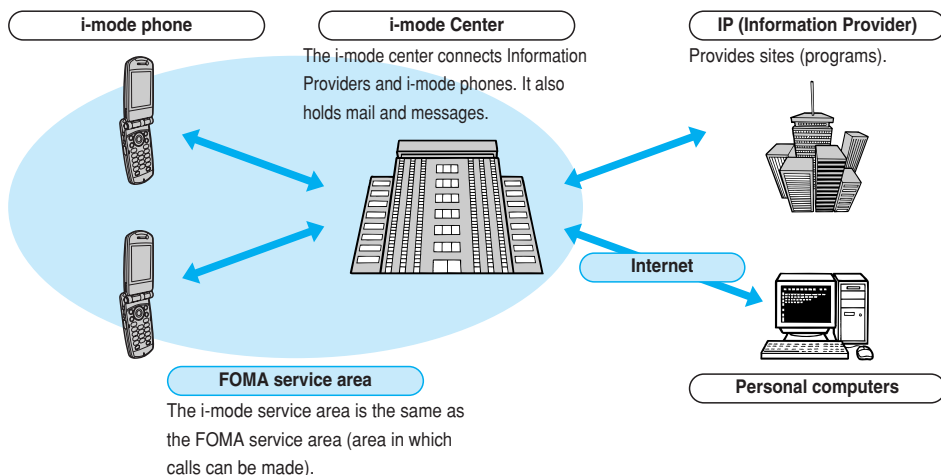
Internet Access

You can connect to various types of web pages supporting i-mode by directly entering web page addresses (URL) into i-mode phone.

i-mode Mail

You can send or receive messages of up to 5,000 full-pitch characters to and from i-mode mobile phones or to and from anyone who has e-mail addresses of the Internet. In addition, you can enjoy sending and receiving Deco mail, still images or moving images.

Structure of service



i-mode is only available on a subscription basis. Contact DoCoMo Information Center on the back page of this manual for subscriptions.

Information

When you newly subscribe to the FOMA service, you can use all services from the same day.

If you have switched your subscription from the mova service (with i-mode subscription) to the FOMA service, you can continue using the contents of My Menu that you had been using with the mova service. However, some sites cannot be inherited by My Menu of the FOMA phone, so these will need to be registered again. You can check "お知らせ&ヘルプ(Newsp & Help)" of Menu to find out which sites can be inherited by My Menu.

If you have switched your subscription from the mova service (with i-mode subscription) to the FOMA service, you can continue using the same i-mode address.

i-mode is the service that charges a fee for the amount of received and sent data (number of packets). This manual does not include information on fees. Refer to "FOMA i-mode User's Manual" you receive when applying for the i-mode service.

The contents of i-mode service might change, so see the latest "FOMA i-mode User's Manual" for details.

Site (Program) Access

You can connect to sites by easy key operation, and use various types of online services offered by IPs (Information Providers). These online services are for checking bank balance, transferring money, reserving tickets, checking the news, looking up dictionaries, and downloading melodies for the ring tone, and so on.

For some sites, such as ones for banks, you might need to apply to the IPs separately. "Sites" mean programs offered by IPs, and include mobile banking and news services.

Displaying sites




When you connect to the i-mode Center, the first display is the  Menu. From here you can access the various sites (programs) such as “週刊 i ガイド (Weekly i Guide)”. See page 193 for how to display sites.



Japanese



English

① マイメニュー (My Menu)	Once you register frequently used sites, you can connect to them directly. (See page 199) Information such as pay sites in  Menu are automatically registered. A total of 45 sites can be registered.
② 週刊 i ガイド (Weekly i Guide)	The latest information about newly opened sites or recommended sites are distributed everyday from Monday to Friday.
③ メニューリスト (Menu List)	Lists all sites by genre and region. You can select and connect to sites from this list.
④ とくするメニュー (Tokusuru Menu)	Gives weekly updates on interesting PR campaigns, premiums and discount coupons, etc. (Sponsor: D2 Communications)
⑤ i エリア (iArea)	Gives easy-to-use information on the area you are in now, such as weather forecast, maps and town information.
⑥ かんたん検索 (Kantan Search)	You can use keyword search from the category such as "Game" or "Stand-by display" to easily search the site. i アプリサーチ : Menu introducing i-appli by subject category, such (i-appli Search) as free information and games. 便利サイトサーチ : Menu introducing sites picked from the menu list (Convenient-site Search) that are handy for daily use, by usage category.
⑦ マイボックス (My Box)	Membership service that enables you to easily access the registered sites or shops that provide services.
⑧ オプション設定 (Options)	For i-mode mail settings and changing your i-mode password.
⑨ お知らせ&ヘルプ (News & Help)	Provides information from DoCoMo and instructions and rules for using i-mode.
<input type="checkbox"/> 料金&お申込 (Bill & application)	For checking or paying the bill, or changing the contracted contents and applying for services.
ENGLISH	Switches  Menu from Japanese to English.
日本語	Switches  Menu from English to Japanese.


Above displays are just samples. This actual displays may differ depend on the settings.


Information

"The serial number of your mobile phone/UIDM" are sent to the IP (Information Providers) over the Internet, so could be accessed by third parties. However, your phone numbers, address, age, and gender are not notified to the IP (Information Provider) by this operation.

Depending on the site, you may need to pay an information fee (i-mode pay sites).

Depending on the service which IP (Information Provider) offers, you may need to apply separately to use the service.

Even if  is blinking, you are not charged packet transmission fee except when you are communicating with the i-mode Center.

Some displays such as  Menu may differ if you sign up for Dual Network Service.

Other things you can do

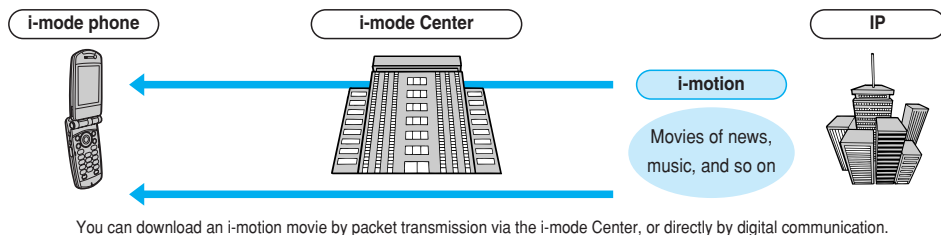
i-motion

You can download images and sound from i-mode sites to your i-mode phone, and then play them back or use them for the Stand-by display.

See page 328 for how to download an i-motion movie.

See page 353 for how to play back an i-motion movie.

See page 330 for i-motion automatic replay settings.



You can download an i-motion movie by packet transmission via the i-mode Center, or directly by digital communication.

Movie Ring Tone

You can download an i-motion movie from an i-mode site to your i-mode phone and set this for the ring tone and ring image. In addition to melodies, you can use the song of your favorite singer as the ring tone.

You cannot set some incompatible i-motion movies for a movie ring tone. Check "motion info" for whether the i-motion file can be set for. (See page 358)

See page 110 for how to set Movie Ring Tone.

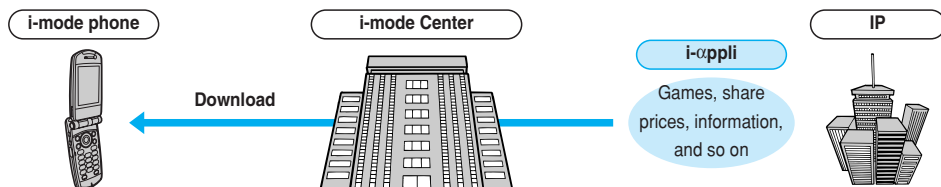
i-appli

You can make the i-mode phone more useful by downloading i-appli from sites. For instance, you can download various types of games to your i-mode phone for entertainment, or stock market i-appli for automatically checking stock prices at regular intervals. With map i-appli, you can scroll it smoothly because you download just the data you need.

See page 310 for how to download i-appli.

See page 312 for how to execute i-appli.

See page 324 for how to run i-appli automatically.



i-appli Stand-by display

With the i-appli Stand-by display, you can use i-appli for the Stand-by display, receive mail, and make calls. The Stand-by display can be even more useful, because you can use it to display latest news and weather forecast, and have your favorite animation character announce new mail and alarms.

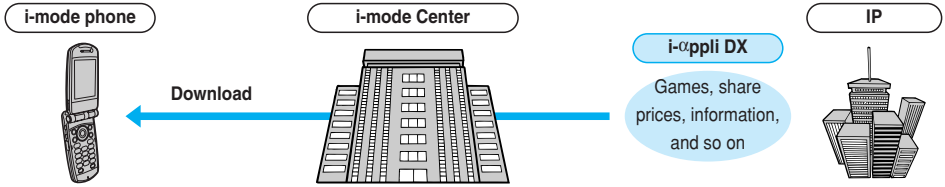
See page 325 for how to set the i-appli Stand-by display.

i-αppli DX

With i-αppli DX, you can make even greater use of i-αppli by, for instance, linking your i-mode phone information (mail and call records, Phonebook data, etc.) to compose the mail message on the display of your favorite animation character, having your animation character announce the names of callers, or obtaining realtime updates of information such as share prices or sport events.

See page 308 for i-αppli DX.

See page 312 for how to run i-αppli DX.



Chara-den

During video-phone calls, you can send image of an animation character (Chara-den) to the other party's display instead of sending your own image; you can also have the mouth of the animation character lip-sync your voice, and make the character move by key operation. You can download an animation character, and set the shot still image or moving image file of that animation character as the stand-by image, or send it as a mail attachment. (You cannot send the still image or moving image file of which attachment to mail or delivery to external devices is prohibited.)

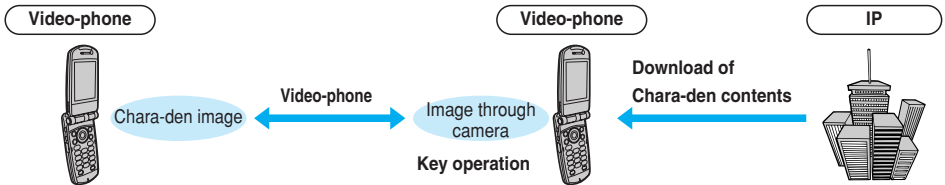
See page 211 for how to download a Chara-den image.

See page 367 for how to confirm a Chara-den image.

See page 79 for how to set a Chara-den image.

See page 367 for how to operate an animation character.

See page 370 for how to record a Chara-den image.



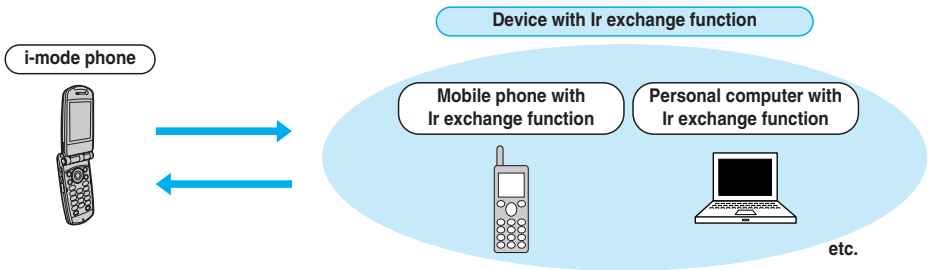
Ir exchange

You can exchange Phonebook, mail and bookmark data with another mobile phone or PC with Ir exchange function installed.

You can make even greater use of this function by combining it with i-αppli and linking to a device that supports Ir exchange function. You can use the FOMA phone, for instance, for a remote controller of TVs or member's certificates.

You might not be able to exchange data with some devices, even when they have the Ir exchange function.

See page 386 for how to exchange the infrared data.



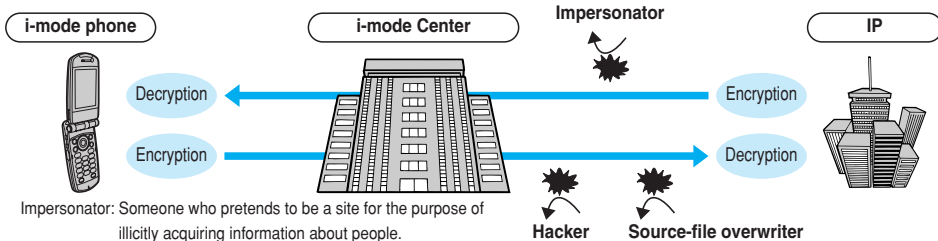
SSL transmission

SSL employs authentications/encryption technology to protect privacy and to make data transmission more secure. SSL pages use data encryption for data transmission to prevent hacking, impersonation (see page 192), and source-file overwriting (see page 192) so that you can more safely exchange personal information such as credit card numbers and addresses.

There are two types of SSL transmission. One is the transmission to display a SSL-compatible site (SSL page, see page 192) using the CA certificate in the phone without any special procedure. The other is the transmission to display a SSL-compatible site (SSL page) using the user certificate downloaded from the FirstPass Center. Depending on the site, you use the different certificate.

See page 222 for how to use the CA certificate stored in the i-mode phone.

See page 223 for how to use the user certificate from the FirstPass Center.



UIM restrictions

When you insert the UIM with your information (such as your phone number, or some Phonebook data), operation restrictions are applied to files of melodies, still images, moving images and other data you have downloaded from sites or have acquired from e-mail. Also, when you insert a different UIM or turn on the power without the UIM inserted, you cannot play back or display those files.

[Restricted files]

- Still image files
- i-αpli
- Chara-den
- Files pasted to Messages R/F
- Images inserted in Deco mail text
- Melody files
- Moving image files
- Images in Screen Memo (including Flash movies)
- Files attached to i-mode mail

This restriction function does not work for still images and moving images taken with the camera function, or for files saved to the i-mode phone from external storage devices.

Ring tone and stand-by image settings set for the i-mode phone are reset when this function is set.

i-melody

You can download the latest or favorite tunes from sites into the i-mode phone to use for ring tones. (See page 209)

Images and i-animation

You can download your favorite images and animation images from sites to the i-mode mobile phone and display them for displays such as the Stand-by display and Call Receiving display. (See page 208)

Flash™

Flash is an animation technology using pictures and sound. With Flash movies, you can use various kinds of animations and expressive sites. You can also download Flash movies to your i-mode mobile phone and set them for the Stand-by display. (See page 208)

Some Flash movies can refer to information data in your i-mode mobile phone. The following are available data:

- Battery Level
- Radio wave reception level
- Date and time
- Ring Volume
- English indications
- Phone model information

See page 214 for the settings for using stored data on the i-mode mobile phone.

Message services

Message services delivers your required information (Message) automatically to your i-mode phone. Message services are of two types, Message R (Request) and Message F (Free).

Message Request (MessageR)	Your required information is delivered automatically once you apply on the site providing the message service.
Message Free (MessageF)	Messages are delivered free of charge for packet transmission.

See page 216 for how to receive message services.

About Message F (Free)

The default for the Message F (Free) setting has been set to “受信する (Receive)” if you have newly signed up for the FOMA phone and at the same time subscribed to i-mode services after 1, October 2004. Note that you need to change the setting to “受信しない (Not receive)” by yourself if you do not want to receive Messages F (Free).

If you are not in the above case, you need to select the reception setting of Message F (Free) from “オプション設定 (option settings)” beforehand. The default has been set to “受信しない (Not receive)”.

Messages R/F are held at the i-mode Center during video-phone calls, when the power is off, and when you are out of the service area.

Information

The table below shows the number of messages that can be stored at the i-mode Center, and the storage period. When the maximum storage number and time are exceeded, messages are deleted from the oldest ones.

	Maximum number stored	Maximum time stored
MessageR	300	72 hours
MessageF	300	72 hours

You can use “Check new message” (see page 258) to receive Messages R/F held at the i-mode Center.

トクだねニュース便 (News delivery service)

DoCoMo distributes information such as news or weather forecast to i-mode mobile phones using the Message R (Request) function. “トクだねニュース便 (News delivery service)” is a pay service and you need to subscribe to it. After you finish with subscription, it is automatically stored to My Menu, enabling you to see the same information from My Menu.

See page 218 for how to see the Message R (Request) display.

i-mode password

The i-mode password is required to register/release My Menu items, to subscribe to i-mode pay sites, and to do i-mode mail settings. At purchase, this password is set to “0000”, so you need to change it to your own four-digit numbers. (See page 200)

Take care not to let others know your password.

Internet Access

By entering the Internet web page address (URL), you can access the Internet and display the Internet web pages supporting i-mode.

See page 200 for how to display Internet web pages.

Information

Web pages other than Internet web pages supporting i-mode might not be displayed correctly.

The Internet web pages supporting i-mode are created using i-mode-compatible tags. See page 192 for details.

Pages might appear different from those on the monitor of personal computers.

You may not be able to access the URLs with more than 256 characters.

Before Using i-mode

Contents of sites (programs) and web pages (Internet web pages) are generally protected by copyrights law. Data such as text and images that you download to the i-mode phone from sites (programs) and web pages can be used for personal entertainment but cannot be used in whole or in part, as it is or after modification, for commercial purposes or sent as e-mail attachments or output from your i-mode phone to other devices, unless you have permission from the copyright holders.

The data stored in your i-mode phone (mail, Messages R/F, Screen Memo, i-appli, and i-motion movies) and registered contents such as bookmarks could be lost if, for instance, the i-mode phone malfunctions or is repaired. It is advisable to keep a separate note of any necessary information or stored data. Note that we cannot be held responsible for the loss of data stored in your i-mode phone (see page 532).

When your i-mode phone is repaired, we do not move information downloaded via i-mode, i-appli, or i-motion movies to new mobile phones because of the Copyright Law, although there are some exceptions. Also, if you replace the existing UIM with the new one or turn the power on with the UIM not inserted, you cannot display or play still images, moving images, melody files, or those attached to mail, screen memos, or Messages R/F.

When the file whose display and/or playback is restricted by the UIM are set for the Stand-by display or specified ring tone, the set contents are reset when you replace the existing UIM with new one or turn on the power with the UIM not inserted.

Glossary

Internet web page

A web page where the server (where information is stored) provides brief information. With this web page as the starter, you can view detailed information by selecting items on the web page.

URL

The address of a page in the World Wide Web. You can access the web page by entering its URL.

Bookmark

With this function you can save the URLs of frequently accessed pages so that you can display them easily. You can save the URLs of favorite Internet web pages as bookmarks.

Cache

The place where the FOMA phone temporarily stores data such as web pages that you have displayed. You can easily return to previously opened web pages because their data is held in the cache for quick retrieval.

Download

The operation of obtaining and then saving data or software from servers via the Internet.

Link

A connection with data in another location. If, for example, a page contains "Contents", you might be able to move to different pages by selecting items from those contents. This is because the selected item has been linked to the URL for the item's page. Usually, to distinguish links from other parts of the page, they are displayed in a different color or are underlined.

SSL (Secure Sockets Layer)

Security protocol that encrypts information exchanged with servers via the Internet, so that it cannot be overwritten or seen by others.

SSL certificate

An electronic document issued by a third-party authenticating institution. The server and your FOMA phone to be connected by SSL transmission hold a certificate issued and provided by the authenticating institution. The authenticating institution is called CA (Certificate Authority).

SSL authentication

When the FOMA phone starts SSL transmission, this is the process whereby the connected server is authenticated by checking that it has a certificate issued by the same CA.

Impersonation

The act of posing as a site or other person to illicitly acquire that person's information.

Source-file overwriting

The act of overwriting a person's information while that person is exchanging information with a server via the Internet. Also called falsification.

Information

<When displaying pages stored in cache>

The cache is temporary storage in the FOMA phone, for holding data such as displayed web pages. By pressing or you can display pages stored in the cache without data transmission. (See page 194)

However, if the handset's cache overflows, or if you display the page that has been set (created) by the site to read the latest information, transmission occurs when you press or .

When you display pages stored in cache, you cannot display text or settings you entered when last connected.

The cache is cleared when you end i-mode.

The Download Completion display is not stored into cache.

The message "Displaying SSL page" appears when you load an SSL page from the cache.

< Menu >

Accessing Sites

You can use a variety of services offered by IPs (Information Providers).

From the display of the FOMA phone, you can check your bank balance, reserve tickets, and do similar tasks. (IPs offer different types of services. Some of them need to be applied for separately.)

1



Menu

While you are online, "↔" blinks.

While downloading a page, you can cancel it by pressing (OUT).

You can bring up the "i-mode menu" display also by pressing

() from the Stand-by display.



<i-mode Menu display>



2

Select an item (link)

If there is a number in front of the item showing the link, you can connect to that link directly by pressing the same number on the keypad. (Some sites cannot be connected.)

Repeat step 2 to display the desired site.

Scroll function (by line and by screen)

When the full list or text of a site's page does not fit on the display, press to scroll down and display the next part of the list or text. Further, when the next part of a list or text is displayed, press to scroll up to the previous part of the list or text.

Press or to scroll by screen.

To download SSL pages

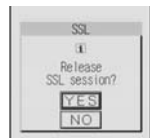
The display on the right appears when you are downloading an SSL site. When downloading is completed, the SSL page appears and "SSL" lights.

To cancel during authentication, press . To cancel downloading the SSL page after authentication, press (OUT).

To return to ordinary site

The display on the right appears when you return to a non-SSL site.




Select "YES" and press to display the ordinary site; "SSL" goes off.




Information

Set the date and time in "Set time" beforehand to do SSL transmission.

To end i-mode

1. From the i-mode display, press .
 2. Select "YES" and press .
- "" goes off and i-mode ends.
It may take longer to end i-mode.


Information

If you press and hold  for at least two seconds, the power is switched off.

Information




You cannot connect to sites while "PIM lock" or "Self mode" is activated.

When "圏外" is displayed, you are out of the service area or in a place where radio waves cannot reach. Move to a place with better reception so that the level indicator (such as "T" or "I") is displayed.

"" blinks while you are using the i-mode service (during i-mode stand-by).

Depending on the site, you may need to apply in writing separately to use the service.


Depending on the site, you may need to pay information fees.

With i-mode service inactive within the service area (when "" or "" is not displayed in the area), "" will blink and the message "Connecting to i-mode" will appear if you attempt to receive or send information via an i-mode site or the Internet (see page 200) or attempt to send i-mode mail (see page 235), and it might take extra time for the i-mode service to start.

The i-mode service area is the same as the FOMA service area (areas where you can make calls).

You can bring up the i-mode Menu display even when outside the service area. However, you cannot send or receive information via i-mode site or the Internet.

Depending on the site, images might not be displayable.

"" appears when the image is not correctly displayed.

You can make and receive calls even while being connected to a site. You can also send and receive mail. However, you cannot receive video-phone calls during i-mode communication.




Even when the message "Receiving Page..." is displayed, you can use  to scroll the display.


You can select underlined items in the displayed site. The selected item will be highlighted.

With some Internet web pages (sites) supporting i-mode, the color setting might make the text difficult or impossible to see.

Changing to Menu in English

The  Menu can be displayed in English.

- 1   Menu  ENGLISH


 Menu in English will be displayed.

To change back to the Japanese display, select "日本語 (Japanese)" and press  (Select).



Information

The  Menu in English differs slightly from the  Menu in Japanese.

Items such as Tokusuru Menu, i-appli Search, Convenient-site Search and News & Help are not shown on the English  Menu.

Generally, "What's New" site will be updated every other Monday.

English sites are displayed after entering Menu List (sites differ from Japanese version).

Access news from DoCoMo and usage regulations on "What's New".

Entering/Selecting Information on Sites

When you respond to questionnaires or submit applications on sites, you may use the displayed radio buttons, check boxes, text boxes, and pull down menus.

Return to Downloaded Previous Page/Go to Downloaded Next Page

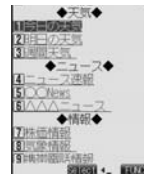
- 1 Press  to return to the previous page. Press  to go to the next page.



Two pages before



One page before



Currently displayed page

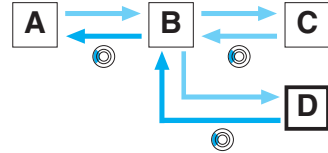
To turn pages

You can move back up through the pages that you have displayed so far by pressing repeatedly. However, if you press to return to the previous page (from "C" to "B"), and then display a different page ("D"), you cannot return to "C" from "D" displaying now, even when you press twice. Instead, the pages are displayed in the order of "D" "B" "A".

Information

When Flash movies are displayed, the displaying motion might differ.

<When pages have been displayed in the order "A" "B" "C" "B" "D">



.....Sequence of page display

.....Sequence when previous page from the display "D" has been displayed

Radio Button

Radio buttons are for selecting one of multiple choices. "" indicates the selected item.

1 Move " (frame)"

The radio button that you want to select turns "" and becomes selected.



Check Box

Check boxes are for selecting one or more items from multiple choices. "" indicates the selected item.

1 Move " (frame)"

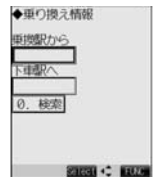
The check boxes that you want to select turn "" and become selected. If you select the checked box again, it will become unchecked.



Text box

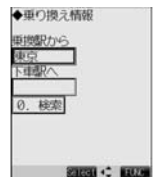
You can enter characters in text boxes.

1 Select a text box



2 Enter characters

The number and type of characters that can be entered depend on the particular text box. See page 482 for how to enter characters.



Information

Press (FNC) to select "Bar code reader" for scanning text information from a JAN code or QR code and entering it into the text box.



(You cannot enter melodies or images. They are displayed as text information.)

Pull Down Menu

With pull down menus, you cannot see the choices until you select a menu. When you select the menu, a list will be displayed for further selection.




1 Select a pull down menu ▶ 



2 Use  to select an item ▶ 






Information

Depending on the configuration of the site, you might be able to select multiple items from pull-down menus. Use  to select an item; then, press  to select/release items. After selecting items, press  (Finish).

Executing "OK" or "Cancel"







Sometimes, "OK" or "Cancel" is displayed on sites and web pages.

1 Use  to select "OK" or "Cancel".
The display will change to  or .

2 Press .

To enter user ID or password

Some sites have the "Authentication" display such as on the right.
(The format of the display varies according to the site.)

1. Select "User ID" and press .
 2. Enter your user ID and press .
 - See page 482 for how to enter characters.
 3. Select "Password" and press .
 4. Enter your password and press .
 - The entered password is displayed with " *".
 5. Select "OK" and press .
- Authentication of your user ID and password will begin.
To cancel this operation, select "Cancel" and press .



Information

When "Character input method" is set to "Mode2 (2-touch)", use the "Mode 2" method to enter numbers when entering your password.

Flash Function

Flash is an animation technology using pictures and sound. Flash movies make the sites more expressive. You can download Flash movies to your FOMA phone and play them back or set them for the Stand-by display.

Information

Some Flash movies refer to mobile information data in your FOMA phone. To use mobile information data, set "Use saved data" to "YES".

Effect tones sound for some Flash movies. To silence these, set "Sound effect setting" to "OFF". Even if you have set "Vibrator" to "ON", the FOMA phone does not vibrate when the effect tone plays.

An effect tone for the Flash movie set for the Stand-by display does not sound.


Some Flash movies may vibrate the FOMA phone while they are played back. The FOMA phone vibrates even if you have set "Vibrator" to "OFF".

"Retry" plays back the Flash movie from the beginning.






Flash movies cannot be displayed when "Set image display" is set to "OFF".

You may not be able to save part of the images even if you perform the operation for saving Flash movies or saving them to Screen Memo depending on the Flash movies. The Flash movies on the FOMA phone's display may appear different from those on sites. The Flash movie might not work correctly even if it can be displayed.

You cannot save the Flash movies if an error occurs while they are played back.

You can operate some Flash movies by pressing  or . Flash movies can be operated sometimes even when "" is not displayed.

Serial number for mobile phones/UIMs



If you select an item and press  while a site or web page is displayed, the confirmation display asking whether to send the serial number for mobile phone/UIM may come up. To send the information, select "YES" and press . Not to send it, select "NO" and press . To return to the previous display, press  or  (Return).





Information

"Serial number of mobile phone and FOMA card (UIM)" to be sent is used for identifying the user, providing customized information, and for checking to see if the contents offered by an IP (Information Provider) are available on your mobile phone. Your "Serial number of mobile phone and FOMA card (UIM)" is sent to an IP (Information Provider) over the Internet, so the information might be deciphered by third parties. However, it will never happen that your phone number, address, age, or gender is known by the IP (Information Provider) or others.

Function Menu while a Site is Displayed


1 From a site display  (FUNC)  Do the following operation.

Function menu	Operations
Add bookmark	You can store the site in Bookmark. (See page 203)
Save screen memo	You can save screen memos. (See page 206)
 Menu	You can return to "  Menu".
Bookmark	You can display the Bookmark Folder List. (See page 203)
Screen memo list	You can display the Screen Memo List. (See page 206)
Reload	The displayed contents will change to the latest ones each time you reload if the site has been updated.
Save image	You can save images. (See page 208)
Enter URL	You can directly enter a URL to display a web page. (See page 200)
Add to phonebook	You can store data in the Phonebook. (See page 97)
Add desktop icon	You can paste the icon of the site to the desktop. (See page 134)

Function menu	Operations
Compose message	You can paste or attach the URL of a displayed site or screen memo or images to the text to compose i-mode mail. Attach URL.....Pastes a URL to the text of i-mode mail. Attach mail.....Select an image to attach it to i-mode mail. Insert dec. mail .....Select an image to paste it to Deco mail. Go to step 2 on page 235. See page 240 for Deco mail.
Set as home URL	You can store a site as Home URL. (See page 202)
Display home	You can display the site stored as Home URL. (See page 203)
Title	You can display the title of the displayed site. After checking, select "OK" and press  .
URL	You can display the URL of the displayed site. After checking, select "OK" and press  .
Certificate	You can check the owner, issuer, validity period and serial number of certificate used in SSL transmission. Use  to scroll the display for information. After checking, press  .
Change CHR code	When characters are not correctly displayed, you can convert them to the correct ones.
Set image display	You can set whether to display the image. (See page 214)
Sound effect	You can set sound effect of Flash movie. (See page 214)
Retry	You can play back the animation or Flash movie from the beginning.

Information


<Reload>

If you execute "Reload" during browsing after entering characters or your ID/password, the message "Send data again?" might appear. (This appears on automatic updating sites even if you do not execute "Reload".) Select "YES" and press  to update the site.

<Compose message>

The number of characters of the URL you can paste to the text is up to 256 half-pitch characters. If the URL contains 256 half-pitch characters or more, you cannot paste it.

You cannot attach or paste the following images to i-mode mail.

- Images with "  " • Images of which attachment to mail or output from the FOMA phone to external devices is prohibited
- An image in excess of 10,000 bytes • An image in excess of savable data size

<Title>

You cannot edit the displayed title.

Titles can be displayed up to 128 half-pitch characters.

<URL>

You cannot edit the displayed URL.

<Certificate>

Up to four certifications are displayed. Use  to check the next/previous ones.

You can scroll only a line at a time, regardless of the setting for "Scroll".

<Change CHR code>

When characters are not correctly displayed, repeat the operation. However, the previous character is displayed if you repeat the operation four times.

Even when you repeat this operation, the correct character might not come up.

If you change the character code when the correct characters are displayed, wrong characters might come up instead.

"Change CHR code" is effective only for the displayed site.

<Retry>

When you select "Retry" during playback, playback will start again from the beginning.

Displaying Most Recently Accessed Site

Display Last URL


When you end i-mode, the URL of the page displayed last is stored as “Last URL”. You can display the most recently accessed site by selecting “Last URL” from the i-mode menu.

Some pages cannot be stored as “Last URL”, such as pages whose URLs contain more than 2048 half-pitch characters, the Download Completion display for melodies or i-motion movies, and FirstPass Center pages.

1   Last URL

Information

Each time another page is displayed, the URL of “Last URL” is updated to the current page.

If you select “Last URL” just after purchase or after performing “Reset last URL”, the  Menu display will come up.

Reset Last URL

You can initialize the URL of the page you viewed last to the  Menu URL.


1   i-mode settings  Reset last URL  YES

To cancel, select “NO” and press .

Using My Menu

If you register frequently used sites in My Menu, you will be able to access them easily.

Registering Sites in My Menu

1 Bring up the page of the site you want to register  Register My Menu


The page configuration depends on the site.

2 Select the i-mode password text box  Enter the i-mode password 

 決定 (OK)

The entered password is displayed by “*”.*”.
See page 191 for the i-mode password.

Information

If you have switched your subscription from the mova service (with i-mode subscription) to the FOMA service, you can continue using the contents of My Menu that you had been using with the mova service. However, some sites cannot be inherited by My Menu of the FOMA phone, so these will need to be registered again. You can check “お知らせ & ヘルプ (News & Help)” of  Menu to find out which sites can be inherited by My Menu. (See page 187)


Some sites cannot be registered in My Menu.

When you subscribe to a pay site in Menu List, it will be registered in My Menu automatically.

You can register up to 45 sites in My Menu.

Your i-mode password is required for registering sites to My Menu.

Accessing Sites from My Menu

- 1    Menu ▶ ENGLISH ▶ My Menu ▶ Select the site you want to access ▶ 

Information

You need to register the site in My Menu beforehand to access it directly from My Menu.




If you are using Dual Network Service, you might not be able to use My Menu registered by the mova phone using the FOMA phone, or My Menu registered by the FOMA phone using the mova phone.

<Change i-mode Password>

Changing i-mode Password

The i-mode password (four digits) is required to subscribe to and unsubscribe from message services and i-mode pay sites, and to do i-mode mail settings. At purchase, this password is set to "0000" (four zeros), so you need to change it to your own i-mode password.

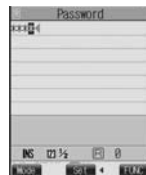
Be sure not to let others know your password.



- 1    Menu ▶ ENGLISH ▶ Options ▶ Change i-mode Password ▶ Select the "Current Password" text box ▶ 



- 2 Enter the i-mode password (four digits) ▶ 

The entered password is displayed by "*".

At purchase, the setting is "0000", so enter "0000" for the first time.



- 3 Select the "New Password" text box ▶  ▶ Enter the new i-mode password (four digits) ▶ 

- 4 Select the "New Password (Confirmation)" text box ▶  ▶ Enter the new i-mode password (four digits) ▶  ▶ Select

Enter the same number that you did in step 3.

Information

If you forget your i-mode password, you can have it reset to "0000" at a DoCoMo shop counter. You will be required to show your driver's license or similar official identification.



<Enter URL>

Accessing Internet Web Pages

You can display the web page by entering its URL.

You can enter only half-pitch alphanumerics and symbols for URLs.

- 1    Go to location ▶ Enter URL ▶ <NEW>

While the web page is displayed, press  (FUNCTION) and select "Enter URL" to bring up the display in step 2. Select the text box and press . (The URL of the site being displayed is in the text box.)

2 Enter a URL OK

"http://" is inserted automatically.

You can enter up to 256 half-pitch characters.

See page 482 for how to enter characters.

To cancel, select "Cancel" and press .



3 OK


Information

You can access another Internet web page while one Internet web page is displayed.

Web pages other than the Internet web pages supporting i-mode might not be displayed correctly.

Depending on the type of the accessed Internet site, the page might not be displayed correctly.

Receiving is stopped if the downloaded data exceeds the maximum size that can fit on one page.

The data downloaded so far might be displayable by pressing .

The displayed Internet web page can be registered in Bookmark, Screen Memo, Add Desktop Icon, or Set as Home URL.

<URL History>

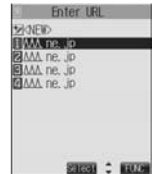
Displaying Web Pages from URL History

Up to 10 entered URLs can be registered in URL History.

1 Go to location Enter URL Select the URL to be displayed OK

You can edit the URL, by selecting the URL's text box and pressing  before selecting "OK".

To cancel, select "Cancel" and press .



<URL History List>

2 OK



Information

When the entered URLs exceed 10 items, the URL histories are erased automatically, starting from the oldest ones.








When the same URL is accessed from "Enter URL", it is not overwritten but registered as a separate item.

Excluding "http://" and "https://", up to 22 half-pitch characters can be displayed in the URL History List.

Function Menu of the URL History List

1 URL History List (FUNC) Do the following operation.

Function menu	Operations
Add desktop icon	You can paste the icon of the selected URL to the desktop. (See page 134)
Compose message	You can paste the URL you are selecting to the text of i-mode mail and send it. Go to step 2 on page 235.

Function menu	Operations
Set as home URL	You can store as Home URL. (See this page)
Delete	▶ YES To cancel, select "NO" and press  .
Delete selected	▶ Put check marks for the URL histories to be deleted ▶  ▶ YES "☐" and "☑" switch each time you press  . You can check or uncheck all items by pressing  (FUNC) and selecting "Select all/Release all". To cancel, select "NO" and press  .
Delete all	▶ Enter the Terminal Security Code ▶  ▶ YES To cancel, select "NO" and press  . See page 140 for the Terminal Security Code.

<Display Home>

Displaying Site Set as Home URL



You can display the web page set as Home URL by pressing  from the Stand-by display or by selecting "Display home" from the Function menu while a site is displayed.

Home URL


Setting at purchase
Invalid

You can set the URL of the web page as Home URL and select whether to validate Display Home.

Example: To enter URL and to select "Valid"

1  ▶  ▶ **i-mode settings** ▶ **Home URL**

2 Select the text box for "Home URL" ▶ 

To set to "Invalid", select "Invalid" and press .

To validate Home URL already entered, select "Valid" and press .



3 Enter a URL ▶  ▶ **Valid**

"http://" is inserted automatically.

You can enter up to 256 half-pitch characters.

See page 482 for how to enter characters.



Set as Home URL

You can register the URL of the displayed site, the bookmark in the Bookmark List, the history record in the URL History List as Home URL.

1 From a site display/Bookmark List/URL History List ▶  (**FUNC**)
▶ **Set as home URL** ▶ **YES**

To cancel, select "NO" and press .

Information

If any Home URL has been registered already, the message "Already Activate Overwrite?" is displayed. Select "YES" and press  to overwrite. Select "NO" and press  not to overwrite.


Even if you register the URL using "Set as home URL", "Invalid" and "Valid" of "Home URL" do not change.

Display Home

You can display a site from the URL registered in “Set as home URL” or “Home URL”.

1 Go to location ▶ Display home

While a site is displayed, press  () and select “Display home”.

You can display the page also by pressing  from the Stand-by display.

Information

When “Home URL” is set to “Invalid”, you cannot access the site from “Display home”.

When the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone Set with switch (option) is connected, you can also display the site set as Home URL by pressing the switch from the Stand-by display.

<Bookmark>


Bookmarking Web Pages or Sites for Quick Access

Registering Bookmark

Once you bookmark a frequently accessed site, you can display the page directly.

Up to 100 bookmarks can be registered (total for all folders).

1 From the page to be registered ▶ () ▶ Add bookmark ▶ YES

If you attempt to register the same URL, the message “Same URL already saved Overwrite?” is displayed. Select “YES” and press  to overwrite.

To cancel, select “NO” and press .

2 Select the folder in which you want to register the bookmark ▶

At purchase you can only select “Bookmark”.

Information

URLs containing up to 256 half-pitch characters can be registered. URLs longer than this cannot be registered.

The title can be up to 12 full-pitch or 24 half-pitch characters. For longer titles, the excess characters are deleted. If no title is entered, the URL without “http://” or “https://” is registered.

The contents entered in the input box, pull-down menu, check box, or radio button are not saved to the bookmark.

During “PIM lock”, bookmarks cannot be registered or displayed.

Some pages cannot be bookmarked.

When the number of bookmarks reaches the maximum, delete unnecessary bookmarks so that you can register new ones.

Important

The stored contents may be lost due to a malfunction, repair, or other mishandling of the FOMA phone. We cannot be held responsible for the loss of the stored contents. For just in case, you are well advised to take notes of the contents stored in the FOMA phone, or save them to the miniSD memory card (see page 376). If you have a personal computer, you can also save them to the personal computer by using the FOMA USB Cable (option) and the Data Link Software (see page 519).

Displaying Web Pages or Sites from a Bookmark

1 Bookmark ▶ Select a folder ▶

While a site is displayed, press  () and select “Bookmark”.

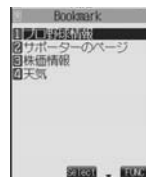
At purchase, you can only select “Bookmark”.



<Bookmark Folder List>

2 Select the bookmark to be displayed ▶

When there are 11 bookmarks or more, use  to move to the next or previous 10 bookmarks.



<Bookmark List>

Information










After you use a bookmark to display a page, that bookmark will be displayed at the top of the Bookmark List. Information might not be updated automatically; if so, perform "Reload"

Function Menu of the Bookmark Folder List



<Bookmark Folder List>

1 Bookmark Folder List ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Do the following operation.

Function menu	Operations
Add folder	You can add up to nine folders in addition to "Bookmark". ▶ Enter the folder name ▶  You can enter up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters. See page 482 for how to enter characters.
Edit folder name	▶ Edit the folder name ▶  You can enter up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters. See page 482 for how to enter characters.
No. of bookmarks	You can check the number of bookmarks stored in all folders. After checking, press  .
Send all Ir data	You can send all bookmarks via Ir exchange. (See page 389)
Delete folder	You can delete the selected folder and the bookmarks inside the folder. You cannot delete the "Bookmark" folder. ▶ Enter the Terminal Security Code ▶  ▶ YES When the folder contains bookmarks, the confirmation display appears asking whether to delete the bookmarks. To delete, select "YES" and press  . To cancel, select "NO" and press  . See page 140 for the Terminal Security Code. To cancel, select "NO" and press  .
Delete all	You can delete all bookmarks. The folders will not be deleted. ▶ Enter the Terminal Security Code ▶  ▶ YES See page 140 for the Terminal Security Code. To cancel, select "NO" and press  .

Information

<Add folder>

A new folder is added to the lowest of the Bookmark Folder List.
If you do not enter a folder name, you cannot add a new folder.

<Edit folder name>

You cannot edit the name of the "Bookmark" folder.
You can add folders with identical names.

<Delete all>

Even when no bookmark is stored, you can operate.

Function Menu of the Bookmark List

1 **Bookmark List** ▶ (**FUNC**) ▶ **Do the following operation.**




<Bookmark List>

Function menu	Operations
Move	<p>You can move a bookmark to a different folder.</p> <p>▶ Select the destination folder ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Put a check mark for the bookmark to be moved</p> <p>▶ (Finish) ▶ YES</p> <p>"<input type="checkbox"/>" and "<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>" switch each time you press (FUNC). You can check or uncheck all items by pressing (FUNC) and selecting "Select all/Release all". To cancel, select "NO" and press (FUNC).</p>
Edit title	<p>▶ Edit the title ▶ (FUNC)</p> <p>You can enter up to 12 full-pitch or 24 half-pitch characters. See page 482 for how to enter characters.</p>
Add desktop icon	You can paste the icon of the selected bookmark to the desktop. (See page 134)
Compose message	You can paste the selected URL to the text of i-mode mail and send it. Go to step 2 on page 235.
Send Ir data	You can send a single data item via Ir. (See page 388)
Export	You can export a data item to the miniSD memory card. (See page 382)
Set as home URL	You can register as Home URL. (See page 202)
Copy URL	<p>You can copy the URL of the bookmark.</p> <p>▶ Select the start point for copying ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Select the end point for copying ▶ (FUNC)</p> <p>See page 498 for how to paste copied characters.</p>
No. of bookmarks	You can display the number of bookmarks registered in the displayed folder. After checking, press (VIEW).
Delete	<p>▶ YES</p> <p>To cancel, select "NO" and press (FUNC).</p>
Delete selected	<p>▶ Put check marks for the bookmarks to be deleted ▶ (Finish) ▶ YES</p> <p>"<input type="checkbox"/>" and "<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>" switch each time you press (FUNC). You can check or uncheck all items by pressing (FUNC) and selecting "Select all/Release all". To cancel, select "NO" and press (FUNC).</p>
Delete all	<p>You can delete all bookmarks registered in the displayed folder.</p> <p>▶ Enter the Terminal Security Code ▶ (FUNC) ▶ YES</p> <p>See page 140 for the Terminal Security Code. To cancel, select "NO" and press (FUNC).</p>

Information

<Edit title>

If you delete (blank) the title and press , the URL without "http://" or "https://" is registered.

<Delete all>

"Delete all" deletes all the bookmarks in the displayed folder. It does not delete bookmarks in other folders.

<Screen Memo>

Saving Site Contents

Saving as a Screen Memo

You can save a displayed page as a screen memo to the FOMA phone. You can display the page saved as a screen memo without connecting to i-mode.

The FOMA phone can store up to 100 screen memos. (The actual number of savable screen memos may decrease depending on the data size.)

1 From the page to be saved (FUNC) > Save screen memo > YES

To cancel, select "NO" and press .

See page 212 when screen memos are stored to the maximum.

Information

You can save the title of up to 11 full-pitch or 22 half-pitch characters. When the title exceeds this length, the excess part will be deleted.

If you save the Download Completion display, its data will be saved as well. (The Download Completion display for the i-motion movies with playback time limits cannot be saved.) Some Download Completion displays cannot be saved as screen memos. The display except the Download Completion display saves URL of that page of up to 256 half-pitch characters.

When you save SSL pages, their SSL certificates are saved as well.

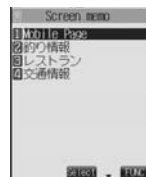
When you store the same page, it will be saved as another screen memo without being overwritten.

The contents entered in the input box, pull-down menu, check box, or radio button are not saved to screen memos.

Displaying a Screen Memo


1 > Screen memo

While the site is displayed, press  (FUNC) to select "Screen memo list".



<Screen Memo List>

2 Select the screen memo to be displayed

Use  to check other screen memos.



<Detailed Screen Memo display>

Information

The page saved as a screen memo has the information at the time it was saved. This might differ from the latest information on the site.














Untitled pages are indicated by "No title" in the Screen Memo List.

Function Menu of the Screen Memo List

1 Screen Memo List  (**FUNC**)  Do the following operation.



<Screen Memo List>

Function menu	Operations
Edit title	<p>▶ Edit the title </p> <p>You can enter up to 11 full-pitch or 22 half-pitch characters. See page 482 for how to enter characters.</p>
Protect ON/OFF	<p>You can protect screen memos. The protected screen memos cannot be deleted. You can protect up to 50 screen memos. (This number changes depending on the data size of the protected pages.) Protected items are indicated by "  ". To release protection, repeat the same procedure.</p> 
No. of memos	<p>You can display the number of stored screen memos and protected screen memos. After checking, press .</p>
Delete	<p>▶ YES To cancel, select "NO" and press .</p>
Delete selected	<p>▶ Put check marks for the screen memos to be deleted  (Finish) ▶ YES "  " and "  " switch each time you press . You can check or uncheck all items by pressing  (FUNC) and selecting "Select all/Release all". To cancel, select "NO" and press .</p>
Delete all	<p>▶ Enter the Terminal Security Code  ▶ YES See page 140 for the Terminal Security Code. To cancel, select "NO" and press .</p>

Information

<Edit title>

If you delete (blank) the title and press , the screen memo is registered as "No title".

<Delete><Delete selected><Delete all>

You cannot delete protected screen memos.



Function Menu of the Detailed Screen Memo Display

1 Detailed Screen Memo display  (**FUNC**)  Do the following operation.



<Detailed Screen Memo display>

Function menu	Operations
Save image	You can save images. (See page 208)
Add to phonebook	You can store data in the Phonebook. (See page 97)
Edit title	You can edit the title. (See this page)
Protect ON/OFF	You can protect/unprotect the screen memo. (See this page)

Function menu	Operations
Compose message	You can compose i-mode mail. (See page 198)
URL	You can display the URL of the screen memo. After checking, select "OK" and press  .
Certificate	You can check the certificate used for SSL transmission. (See page 198)
Sound effect	You can set sound effect of Flash movies. (See page 214)
Retry	You can play back the animation or Flash movie from the beginning.
Delete	▶ YES To cancel, select "NO" and press  .

Information

<URL>

You cannot edit the displayed URL.

<Retry>

If you select "Retry" midway while displaying, the animation or Flash movie is played back from the beginning.

<Delete>

You cannot delete protected screen memos. Delete them after you release the protection.

<Save Image>

Saving Images

You can save the image displayed on a site or screen memo, and then set it for the Stand-by display or Wake-up display. You can also save images, frames and marks to be used for Deco mail.

1 From a site display/Detailed Screen Memo display ▶  (**FUNC**) ▶ **Save image**

▶ **Select the image** ▶  ▶ **YES**

To cancel, select "NO" and press .


See page 212 when images are stored to the maximum.

2 Select the folder to which you want to save ▶ 

See page 334 for the folder of still image.

3 To execute "Set as display", select "YES" ▶ 

Go to step 1 on page 342.

To cancel, select "NO" and press .

Information

The saved image takes the file name of up to 36 half-pitch characters. If the file name is not specified, the letters between the last "/" of the downloaded URL and "." of that will be the file name. If, however, no letter is contained between "/" and ".", the file takes the name of "imagexxx" (xxx are numerals) and then saved.

Images cannot be saved when "Set image display" is set to "OFF". In addition, you cannot save the image when "  " appears.

The image satisfying the following conditions is saved as a frame or a mark.

- Transparent GIF file that is not animation GIF file
- The extension of file is "ifm".
- For the frame, the image size is CIF (352 x 288), Stand-by (240 x 320), QCIF (176 x 144), and Sub-QCIF (128 x 96). For the mark, the image is other than the frame image and 240 x 240 dots or less.

Important

The saved contents may be lost due to a malfunction, repair, or other mishandling of the FOMA phone. We cannot be held responsible for the loss of the saved contents. For just in case, you are well advised to save the contents stored in the FOMA phone to the miniSD memory card (see page 376). If you have a personal computer, you can also save them to the personal computer by using the FOMA USB Cable (option) and the Data Link Software (see page 519).


<i-melody>

Downloading Melodies from Sites

After downloading a melody from a site, you can set it as a ring tone. You can save 20 to 400 max. downloaded melodies. (The number of melodies that can be saved might decrease depending on the data size.)

1 Bring up a site from which melodies can be downloaded

▶ Select a melody ▶ ▶ Save ▶ YES

Select "Play" and press  to play back the melody. See page 371 for operation while Melody is being played back.

Select "Property" and press  to display melody information. (See page 374)

To cancel, select "NO" and press .

When melodies are saved to the maximum, see page 212.



<Download Completion display>

2 Select the folder to which you want to save ▶

See page 371 for the melody folder.

3 Select "YES" to set the downloaded melody as a ring tone ▶

Phone.....Sets the ring tone for incoming voice calls.

Video-phone.....Sets the ring tone for incoming video-phone calls.

Mail.....Sets the ring tone for incoming i-mode mail and Short Messages (SMS).

Chat mail.....Sets the ring tone for incoming chat mail.

MessageR.....Sets the ring tone for incoming Messages R (Request).

MessageF.....Sets the ring tone for incoming Messages F (Free).

To cancel, select "NO" and press .



Information

Depending on the site, you might not be able to download melodies.

For downloaded melodies or melodies attached to mail, or for attach-prohibited-melodies or export-prohibited-melodies from FOMA phone, the play part might have been specified. If you set the play-part-specified melody for a ring tone, the specified part only plays. Some downloaded melodies might not be played back successfully.

The saved melody takes the file name of up to 36 half-pitch characters. If the file name is not specified, the letters between the last "/" of the downloaded URL and "." of that will be the file name. If, however, no letter is contained between "/" and ".", the file takes the name of "melodyxxx" (xxx are numerals) and then saved.

The melody with no title is displayed as "No title" on the Download Completion display, however, the file name is displayed as the title on the list.

During a call, you cannot play melodies.

Important

The saved contents may be lost due to a malfunction, repair, or other mishandling of the FOMA phone. We cannot be held responsible for the loss of saved contents. If you have a personal computer, you are well advised to save the contents stored in the FOMA phone to the personal computer by using the FOMA USB Cable (option) and the Data Link Software (see page 519) for just in case.

Function Menu of the Download Completion Display

1 Download Completion display ▶ ⓘ (**FUNC**) ▶ Do the following operation.

Function menu	Operations
Save screen memo	You can save screen memos. (See page 206)

<Download Template>

Downloading Templates from Sites

You can download template data for Deco mail from sites. You can save up to 45 templates including those that stored in the FOMA phone at purchase.

1 Bring up a site from which a template can be downloaded
▶ Select a template ▶ Ⓞ



<Download Completion display>

2 Save ▶ YES

Select "Display" and press Ⓞ; then the contents of the template are displayed.

Select "Property" and press Ⓞ; the information about the template is displayed. (See page 289)

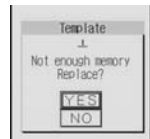
To cancel, select "NO" and press Ⓞ.

When templates are stored to the maximum

When the maximum number of templates is stored, the display on the right appears.

Delete unnecessary templates and then save new ones.

1. Select "YES" and press Ⓞ.
2. Select the template to be deleted and press Ⓞ.
3. Select "YES" and press Ⓞ.
To cancel, select "NO" and press Ⓞ.



Information

When no decoration is set for the template or when the image of which output to external devices from the FOMA phone is prohibited is inserted into the template, you cannot save the template.

When a file is attached to the template, that file is deleted.

The title of the downloaded template takes the name of "YYYY/MM/DD hh:mm". (Y: year, M: month, D: date, h: hour, m: minute)

When the date and time are not set, the title takes the name of "templateXX". (XX: 01 to 45)

Function Menu of the Download Completion Display


1 Download Completion display ▶ ⓘ (**FUNC**) ▶ Do the following operation.

Function menu	Operations
Save screen memo	You can save screen memos. (See page 206)



<Download Dictionary>

Downloading Dictionaries from Sites

You can download dictionary data from sites. Up to five dictionaries can be saved.

1 Bring up a site from which a dictionary can be downloaded ▶ Select a dictionary
▶ 




2 Save ▶ YES

Select "Property" and press  to display information about the dictionary. (See page 500)
To cancel, select "NO" and press .



<Download Completion display>

3 <Not stored>

If you select the item already stored and press , the confirmation display of "Overwrite dictionary?" appears.
To overwrite, select "YES" and press . To cancel, select "NO" and press .

See page 500 for how to operate the downloaded dictionary.

Information

Depending on the site, you might not be able to download.

Function Menu of the Download Completion Display

1 Download Completion display ▶  (**FUNC**) ▶ Do the following operation.

Function menu	Operations
Save screen memo	You can save screen memos. (See page 206)

<Download Chara-den Images>



Downloading Chara-den Images

You can download Chara-den images from sites.

You can save up to 10 Chara-den images including pre-installed ones.

1 Bring up a site from which a Chara-den image can be downloaded
▶ Select a Chara-den image ▶ 

2 Save ▶ YES

Select "Play" and press  to play back the Chara-den image.
Select "Property" and press ; then the information about the Chara-den image is displayed.
(See page 368)

To cancel, select "NO" and press .

See page 212 when Chara-den images are stored to the maximum.



<Download Completion display>

Function Menu of the Download Completion Display

1 Download Completion display ▶ (i) (FUNC) ▶ Do the following operation.

Function menu	Operations
Save screen memo	You can save screen memos. (See page 206)

When the data files are stored to the maximum

If the maximum number of data files is stored or there is not enough memory when you try to save the data files, the display on the right comes up. (The display is for images.)

Delete unnecessary data files and then save new ones.

1. Select "YES" and press (O).

2. Put check marks for the data files to be deleted, and press (M) (Finish).

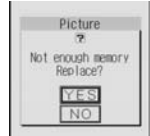
"□" and "☑" switch each time you press (O). For some data files, if you press (i) (FUNC) and select "Select all/Release all", you can add or remove the check marks at a time.

When "Viewer settings" is set to "Picture" for images, images are displayed in the list. Select an image to be deleted.

Continue putting check marks until "Finish" appears at the lower-left of the display.

3. Select "YES" and press (O).

To cancel, select "NO" and press (O).



For image

Information

This operation is done to save the following data:

- Screen memos
- images
- i-motion movies
- melodies
- Chara-den images

Operations from Highlighted Information

You can easily make a call, send mail, and display Internet web pages using highlighted information (phone numbers, mail addresses, URLs, melodies, images, and so on) displayed in the sites and mail.

The Web To, Phone To/AV Phone To, or Mail To functions might not be available for the mail sent from a personal computer.

Phone To/AV Phone To Function

You can make calls by using phone numbers or similar information in sites and mail.

The Phone To function is called the AV Phone To function for the video-phone.

1 Select the phone number or similar information ▶ (O)

Voice phoneDials a voice call.

32K V-phone.....Dials a 32K video-phone call.

64K V-phone.....Dials a 64K video-phone call.

Select image.....From "Me", "Pre-installed", "Original" or "Chara-den", select the image to be sent to the other party during a video-phone call.

Those choices may not be displayed when the phone number is prefixed by "tel:" or "tel-av:". Go to step 2.

2 Dial


To make an international call, select "International dial" and press (O). (See page 52)

To cancel, select "Cancel" and press (O).

To activate Caller ID, select "Notify caller ID" and press (O). Select from among "Don't notify", "Notify caller", and "Cancel prefix". If you select "Dial" and press (O), it works according to "Activate" of "Caller ID notification".

Press (P) (P) to cancel the call midway.

Information

You cannot make calls using the Phone To/AV Phone To function while "Restrict dialing", "Keypad dial lock", or "Self mode" is set. Depending on the site, you might not be able to use the Phone To/AV Phone To function. You can also use the Phone To/AV Phone To function when a sender's address or a destination address is a phone number. During a call, you can press and hold  for at least one second to return to the original display and continue i-mode operations. You can sometimes use the Phone To/AV Phone To function with highlighted information other than numerical strings representing phone numbers.

Mail To Function

You can send mail by using mail addresses or similar information displayed in sites and mail.

1 Select the mail address or similar information

The destination mail address is already entered in the address field.
Go to step 3 on page 235.





Information

You cannot send mail using the Mail To function during "PIM lock" or "Keypad dial lock". Depending on the site, you might not be able to use the Mail To function. If the mail address is not entered correctly, change it to the correct one and then send the mail. When multiple mail addresses are specified in the highlighted information, you can compose the message in which multiple destinations are entered [simultaneous mail sending (see page 232)]. You can sometimes use the Mail To function with highlighted information other than mail addresses.

Web To Function

You can access Internet web pages by using URLs or similar information displayed in sites and mail.

1 Select the URL or similar information

When the display appears asking whether to connect, select "YES" and press .
While downloading, you can cancel by pressing  () or .

Information

Depending on the site, you might not be able to use the Web To function. URLs are displayed differently depending on the site. You can sometimes use the Web To function with highlighted information other than URLs.


i-appli To Function

You can launch i-appli from URLs (links) displayed in sites and mail.

1 Select the i-appli information YES

i-appli starts.

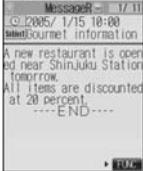

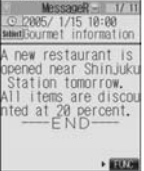
Information

You cannot start i-appli using pasted data, if you unchecked in "Set  appli To". When multiple data items have been pasted, the data itself might not be displayable. Even if the i-mode mail text contains links to launch i-appli, you cannot quote the links when forwarding or replying to. Also, you cannot quote them when you are using the data link software or communicating via Ir data exchange. If no i-appli to launch is found, the confirmation display about no software is displayed. In this case, you need to download it. You may need to set the communications setting while the i-appli software is running.

Setting Detailed Functions

You can set i-mode and Messages R/F.

1 **i-mode settings** ▶ **Do the following operation.**

Item	Operations
Scroll	You can set the number of lines that are scrolled for when you use while displaying a site, screen memo, or the text of Messages R/F. 1 line .....Scrolls one line at a time. (Setting at purchase) 3 lines .....Scrolls three lines at a time. 5 lines .....Scrolls five lines at a time.
Character size	You can set the font size for display of sites, screen memos, or the text of Messages R/F. Standard .....Displays characters in a standard size. (Setting at purchase) Small .....Displays characters in a small size. Large .....Displays characters in a large size. Message R/F display    <p style="text-align: center;">Standard Small Large</p>
Set image display	You can set whether to display images or Flash movies included in sites, screen memos, and the text of Messages R/F. ON .....Displays images and Flash movies. (Setting at purchase) OFF .....Does not display images and Flash movies. While a site is displayed, you can press (FUNC) to select "Set image display".
motion setting	You can set the i-motion setting. (See page 330)
Message auto display	You can set how to auto display Messages R/F. (See page 217)
Auto melody play	You can set whether to play back melody automatically for when you open a Messages R/F. (See page 217)
Use saved data	To display Flash movie while a site or screen memo is displayed, the information in the FOMA phone may be used. Then, you can select whether to allow the information to be used. YES .....Uses the information from the FOMA phone. (Setting at purchase) NO .....Does not use the information from the FOMA phone.
Home URL	You can set Home URL. (See page 202)
Sound effect setting	When you display an image while a site or screen memo is displayed, you can select whether to make an effect tone sound. ON .....Enables sound effects of Flash movies. (Setting at purchase) OFF .....Disables sound effects of Flash movies. While a site is displayed, or from the detailed Screen Memo display, press (FUNC) and select "Sound effect".
Check settings	You can check the individual i-mode settings. After checking, press .
Reset last URL	You can initialize the last URL contents to the Menu URL. (See page 199)
Reset	You can reset each of the "i-mode settings" to their defaults. See "Function List" for reset contents. (See page 502) ▶ Enter the Terminal Security Code ▶ ▶ YES To cancel, select "NO" and press . See page 140 for the Terminal Security Code.

Information

<Scroll>

When a certificate is displayed, it is scrolled one line at a time.

<Set image display>

Even when "ON" is set, images might not be displayed correctly. In this case, "X" will be displayed.

When "OFF" is set, " " is displayed and the data will not be received.

<Use saved data>

The available information is as follows:

- Date and time set by "Set time"
- Reception level of radio waves
- Battery level
- Sound volume set by "Phone" of "Ring volume"
- Language selected by "Select language"
- Model name and serial number of FOMA phone

<Sound effect setting>

Even when "ON" is set, the effect tones may not sound depending on Flash movies.

<Set Connection Timeout>

Setting Connection Timeout

Setting at purchase
60 seconds

It sometimes takes long to download some sites. You can set the time to wait before canceling downloading. Downloading is not canceled automatically when "Unlimited" is set.

1



Connection setting ▶ Set connection timeout

60 secondsCancels downloading after about 60 seconds.

90 secondsCancels downloading after about 90 seconds.

UnlimitedDoes not set a limit for disconnecting from the i-mode Center.

Information

Even when you have set "Unlimited", you may be disconnected owing to signal conditions.

<Host Selection>

Changing a Host from i-mode (ISP Connection Communication)

Setting at purchase
i-mode

Set/Change Host

* Normally, you do not need to change this setting.

You can set the host (APN) to use for receiving services other than i-mode (DoCoMo). If you change this setting, you will not be able to use i-mode.

1

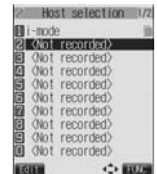


Connection setting ▶ Host selection

▶ Select <Not recorded> ▶ (Edit) ▶ Enter the Terminal Security Code ▶

To change, select the set host.

See page 140 for the Terminal Security Code.



<Host Selection display>

2

Title ▶ Enter a title ▶

You can enter up to 9 full-pitch or 18 half-pitch characters.

See page 482 for how to enter characters.

3

Host name ▶ Enter the name of the host ▶

You can enter up to 30 half-pitch alphanumerics.

See page 482 for how to enter characters.

4

Host address ▶ Enter the address of the connection destination ▶ (Finish)

You can enter up to 99 half-pitch alphanumerics.




See page 482 for how to enter characters.

Information

You cannot set the host during i-mode stand-by (while “” is blinking). End i-mode first, and then set the host.
If you set any other connection end than i-mode, “ (Packet Unlimited)” is not applied.

Function Menu of the Host Selection Display

1 Host Selection display ▶  (FUNC) ▶ Do the following operation.

Function menu	Operations
Edit	▶ Enter the Terminal Security Code ▶  Go to step 2 on page 215. See page 140 for the Terminal Security Code.
Delete	▶ Enter the Terminal Security Code ▶  ▶ YES To cancel, select “NO” and press  . See page 140 for the Terminal Security Code.

<Message R/F Receiving>

Receiving Messages R/F Automatically


Message services automatically deliver information you want to your FOMA phone.

You can save up to 100 each of received Messages R/F.

You can receive Messages R/F held at the i-mode Center by executing “Check new message”.

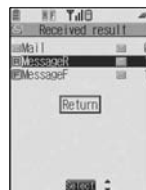
1 When you receive a Message R/F, “ (yellow)” or “ (yellow)” blinks and the message “MessageR Receiving...” or “MessageF Receiving...” appears.

After the message is received, the number of received mail and Messages R/F is displayed.

You can display the Message R/F List by selecting “MessageR” or “MessageF” and pressing .

If “Message auto display” is set to other than “OFF”, the contents of received Message R/F are displayed automatically.

The former display returns if you do not perform any operation for about 15 seconds.
(The seconds can vary depending on the setting for “Mail/Msg. ring time”.)



When returns to the Stand-by display

When the FOMA phone is closed

The information is displayed on the Private window.



Information

You can use "Message auto display" to set Messages R/F to be displayed automatically. Select "OFF" if you do not want them to be displayed automatically.

When a new Message R/F is delivered, other Messages R/F and i-mode mail that have been held at the i-mode Center will also be delivered.

Received Messages R/F are not displayed automatically while displaying the screen other than the Stand-by display, while i-appli is running, or during Drive Mode, All Lock, or PIM Lock.

If the maximum number of savable Messages R/F has already been stored when you received a Message R/F, Messages except unread or protected ones are deleted from the oldest one in stored order and new one is stored.

When the FOMA phone cannot receive any more Messages R/F, " (gray)" or " (gray)" is displayed. Read unread Messages R/F or release protection.

When " (yellow)" or " (yellow)" is displayed, the i-mode Center holds Messages R/F. Read unread Messages R/F or release protection, and then perform "Check new message".

When " (gray)" or " (gray)" is displayed, the i-mode Center can hold no more Messages R/F. Perform "Check new message" to receive them.

The i-mode Center can hold Messages R/F for maximum three days (72 hours). However, when it stores the maximum number of messages [300 Messages R (Request) and 300 Messages F (Free)], the oldest messages held at the i-mode Center will be deleted to make way for the newest ones.

After being displayed automatically, Messages R/F are still displayed as unread ones in the Message R/F List. However, if you scroll through the messages while they are being displayed automatically, they will be indicated in the Message R/F List as read.

See page 111 for priority of ring tones.

See page 113 for priority of vibrators.

See page 131 for priority of illuminations.

If you receive a message R/F when "Receiving display" is set to "Operation preferred" with other than the Stand-by display, the ring tone does not sound. When "Alarm preferred" is set, the ring tone sounds and the Reception Result display appears.

If you receive a Message R/F while playing back an i-motion movie, the video and sound might be interrupted.

i-mode

Message Auto Display

Setting at purchase
MessageR preferred

You can set how to auto-display messages R/F received during standby.

1



i-mode settings > Message auto display

MessageR preferred ..Messages R (Request) have priority for automatic display.

MessageF preferred...Messages F (Free) have priority for automatic display.

MessageR only.....Only Messages R (Request) are displayed automatically.

MessageF onlyOnly Messages F (Free) are displayed automatically.

OFF.....Messages R/F are not displayed automatically.

Auto Melody Play

Setting at purchase
ON

You can set whether to play back pasted or attached melodies automatically for when you open a Message R/F.

1



i-mode settings > Auto melody play


ON.....Automatically plays back pasted or attached melodies when Messages R/F are opened.

OFF.....Does not automatically play back pasted or attached melodies when Messages R/F are opened.

<Display Message R/F>

Reading Received Messages R/F

When your FOMA phone is in the service area, it receives Messages R/F automatically from the i-mode Center.

“ (yellow)” or “ (yellow)” appears at the top of the display when a Message R/F is delivered.

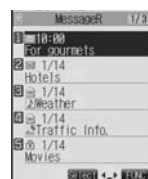
1 Message

MessageRDisplays the Message R (Request) List.

MessageFDisplays the Message F (Free) List.

2 Select the Message R/F you want to display


When you select an unread Message R/F, “” changes to “”.




<Message R/F List>



<Detailed Message R/F display>

Use  to check other Messages R/F.

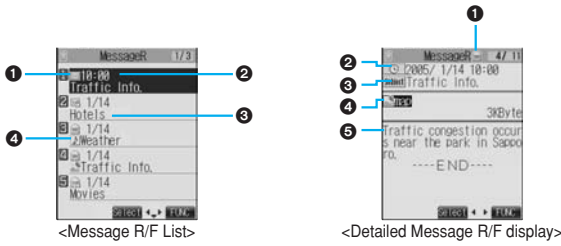
When the text of Message R/F is long, you can use  to scroll the display.

Also, you can press  or  to scroll by page.

Information

“OK” and “Cancel” might be displayed in Messages R/F. If so, follow the same operations as for sites. (See page 196)

Message R/F List and detailed Message R/F displays



1 Status of Message R/F

Icon	Description
	Unread Message R/F
	Read Message R/F
	Unread and protected Message R/F
	Read and protected Message R/F

2 Date and time received

The list shows the time for the Message R/F received today, and shows the date for the Message R/F received on earlier days. The detailed display shows the date and time the Message R/F was received.

3 Subject

4 Icons which show a melody or image has been attached or pasted

They appear even when the attached or pasted data is invalid. The detailed display shows the data volume of the attached or pasted data.

<For Message R/F List or detailed Message R/F display>

Icon	Description
	A melody is attached or pasted.
	Multiple melodies are attached or pasted, and some of them are invalid. (List only)
	All attached or pasted melodies are invalid.
	An image is attached.
	Multiple images are attached, and some of them are invalid. (List only)
	All attached images are invalid.
	Multiple data items are pasted.

5 Text of message

Information

If the clock of the FOMA phone is not set, the time and date are displayed as "--:--" and "--/--".















Function Menu of the Message R/F List

1

Message R/F List  (**FUNC**)  Do the following operation.



<Message R/F List>

Function menu	Operations
Display all	You can re-display all Messages R/F in the "Chronological" order after using the Sort or Filter function.
Sort	You can rearrange the displaying order of Messages R/F. Chronological .....Sorts by date and time from the most recent. Chronological .....Sorts by date and time from the oldest.
Filter	You can change the displayed type of Messages R/F. Unread .....Displays only unread Messages R/F. Read .....Displays only read Messages R/F. Protected .....Displays only protected Messages R/F. Melody .....Displays only Messages R/F attached with melodies. Image .....Displays only Messages R/F attached with images.
Protect ON/OFF	You can protect Messages R/F. You can protect up to 50 messages [50 messages for Message R (Request) and Message F (Free) each]. Protected messages are indicated by "  " or "  ". To release protection, repeat the above procedure.
Unprotect all	You can release all protection. ▶ YES To cancel, select "NO" and press  .
No. of messages	You can display the total number of Messages R/F stored in the FOMA phone, as well as the number of unread messages and protected messages. After checking, press  .
Delete	▶ YES To cancel, select "NO" and press  .
Delete selected	▶ Put check marks for the Messages R/F to be deleted  (Finish) ▶ YES "  " and "  " switch each time you press  . You can check or uncheck all items by pressing  (FUNC) and selecting "Select all/Release all". To cancel, select "NO" and press  .
Delete read	You can delete read Messages R/F. ▶ YES To cancel, select "NO" and press  .
Delete all	You can delete all Messages R/F. ▶ Enter the Terminal Security Code  ▶ YES To cancel, select "NO" and press  See page 140 for the Terminal Security Code.

Information

<Sort>

You can use the Filter and Sort functions together.

To return to the former status, execute "Display all".

If you close sorted Message R/F List and re-open it, you can return to the List of all items.

<Filter>

If you close filtered Message R/F List and re-open it, or you execute "Display all", you can return to the List of all items.

When "Set image display" is set to "OFF", you cannot select "Image".

<Protect ON/OFF>

When the number of Messages R/F stored in the FOMA phone reaches the maximum, new Messages R/F will overwrite the read, unprotected ones, starting from the oldest messages.

<Delete><Delete selected>

You can also delete unread Messages R/F.

You cannot delete protected Messages R/F.

<Delete read>

Protected and read Messages R/F are not deleted.

When only the Messages R/F filtered by the Filter function are displayed, only the unprotected read Messages R/F displayed in the list are deleted by "Delete read".

<Delete all>

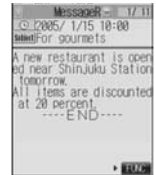
You can also delete unread Messages R/F.

Protected Messages R/F are not deleted.






When only the Messages R/F filtered by the Filter function are displayed, all the unprotected Messages R/F displayed in the list are deleted by "Delete all".

Function Menu of the Detailed Message R/F Display

1 Detailed Message R/F display  (**FUNC**)  Do the following operation.




<Detailed Message R/F display>

Function menu	Operations
Add to phonebook	You can store data in the Phonebook. (See page 97)
Save melody	You can save attached or pasted melodies and set them as ring tones. ▶ YES Go to step 2 on page 209. When multiple melodies are attached, use  to select the melody to save and then save it. To cancel, select "NO" and press  See page 212 when melodies are stored to the maximum.
Save image	You can save attached images and set them as the Stand-by display or Wake-up display. ▶ YES Go to step 2 on page 208. To cancel, select "NO" and press  See page 212 when images are stored to the maximum.
Reload image	When "  " is displayed instead of an image in the text of a Message R/F, you can reload the image to display it.
Protect ON/OFF	You can protect/unprotect a message. (See page 220)
Delete	▶ YES To cancel, select "NO" and press  .

Information

<Save melody>

You can play back an attached melody by highlighting it and pressing .

You cannot play back melodies during a call.

When saving a melody, the title for the melody is stored instead of file name. If the melody has no title, the file name is stored.

Sometimes saved melodies cannot be played back successfully.

<Reload image>

Sometimes the image cannot be displayed even after reloading.

<Delete>

You cannot delete protected Messages R/F.



<SSL Certificate Operation>

Operating SSL Certificates


Displaying a SSL Certificate

The subject name, author, validity period, and serial number are displayed.



You can check the certificate also by pressing  instead of  (**[FUNC]**).

Use  to scroll the display.

After checking, press .

i-mode

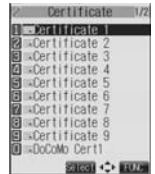
Validating/Invalidating SSL Certificates

Setting at purchase
All Valid



The selected item is revoked; then "E" changes to "E".

When you select an invalid certificate, it will be validated.



Certificates used for SSL communication

CertificateCertificate issued by the authenticating company and stored in the FOMA phone at purchase.

DoCoMo CertificateCertificate required for connecting to the FirstPass Center or FirstPass sites; it is stored in the UIM (green).

User CertificateCertificates downloaded from the FirstPass Center by selecting "Client certificate" from i-mode menu; it is stored in the UIM (green).

Information

If you set a certificate to "Invalid", you cannot display the sites with that certificate.

You cannot set "DoCoMo Cert2" to "Invalid".

<User Certificate Operation>

Setting FirstPass

User certificates verify that you have subscribed to the FOMA service. Downloaded user certificates are stored in the UIM for the use on FirstPass sites. When you cannot display a FirstPass site because the user certificate in the UIM has expired or the required user certificate is not stored in the UIM, you can request the issue and download the user certificate from the FirstPass Center.

- You can request and download user certificates from the FirstPass Center.
- This function is not available with the blue UIM.
- The display and operating method displayed in the FirstPass Center site are subject to change.
- You cannot send/receive mail or receive Messages R/F while connected to the FirstPass Center.
- Set the date and time using “Set time” beforehand to connect to the FirstPass Center.


Client Certification


- With the FOMA phone, server certification and client certification are performed for safer data exchange. The site and your FOMA phone exchange certification, check the other party's certification and verify each other for safer communication service.
By getting client certification, you can enjoy more secure communication services.
- Client certification is available via the Internet communication from the FOMA phone or via the Internet communication with the FOMA phone connected to a personal computer. To use the personal computer to exchange client certification, you need to install the FirstPass PC software from the supplied CD-ROM. See “FirstPassManual (PDF format)” in the “FirstPassPCSoft” folder of the CD-ROM for details. Adobe Reader (version 6.0 or higher is recommended) is required to view “FirstPassManual (PDF format)”. If it is not installed in your personal computer, you can download the latest version from the web page of Adobe Systems Incorporated (communication charge is applied separately). For details, see the web page of Adobe Systems Incorporated.

I-mode

Accessing Sites with a User Certificate

You can connect to FirstPass sites with your user certificate.

1 Bring up a FirstPass site ▶ Select an item ▶ 

2 YES
To cancel, select “NO” and press .



3 Enter your PIN2 code (4 to 8 digits) ▶ 

When you enter this code for the first time, for instance just after subscribing, enter “0000”.

The entered PIN2 code is displayed as “_”.

When the PIN2 code is entered wrongly three times, the PIN2 code will be locked and cannot be used.

(The number of times you can attempt entry before the code is locked is indicated as the message “Rest”.)

When you enter the correct PIN2 code, “Rest” returns to three.


See page 143 for how to release PIN lock.


When you enter the PIN2 code correctly, the “Authenticating” display appears and then the site comes up.

See page 141 for PIN2 code.

Information

You need to enter the PIN2 code to access FirstPass sites using your downloaded user certificate.

If you have tried to connect to a FirstPass site without having a user certificate, the confirmation display appears asking whether to connect. Select "NO" and press  to return to the previous page. Download the user certificate from the FirstPass Center and then access the site again.

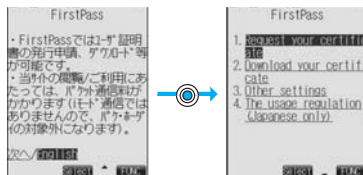
If your user certificate has expired, the confirmation display appears asking whether to connect. Select "NO" and press  to return to the previous page. Update your user certificate from the FirstPass Center and then access the site again.

Accessing FirstPass Center

The FirstPass Center performs user certificate operations.

The display and operating method displayed in the FirstPass Center site are subject to change.

1   **Client certificate**  **English**



<Site display of FirstPass Center>

Information

Note that "ボケホーダイ (packet unlimited)" does not support the packet transmission fee for requesting and downloading the issue of FirstPass user certificates.

"ボケホーダイ (packet unlimited)" does not support the packet transmission while connected to the FirstPass site.

Before using the FirstPass Center, select "The usage regulation (Japanese only)" and carefully read the regulation.

You cannot use the following functions while connected to the FirstPass Center:

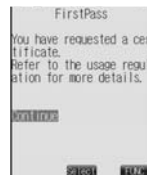
- Video-phone (You can still make voice calls.)
- Sending a photo during a voice call
- Sending/receiving i-mode mail (You can send/receive SMS.)
- Check new message (You can check SMS.)
- Receiving Messages R/F
- Downloading an i-motion movie
- The Web To function

Requesting Issue of User Certificate

You need to request the issue of the user certificate before you download it.

1 **Site display of the FirstPass Center**  **Request your certificate**
 **Continue**

For an update, the message "Updating user certificate" is displayed.



2 **Enter your PIN2 code (4 to 8 digits)** 

When you enter this code for the first time, for instance just after subscribing, enter "0000".

The entered PIN2 code is displayed as "_".

When the PIN2 code is entered wrongly three times, the PIN2 code will be locked and cannot be used.

(The number of times you can attempt entry before the code is locked is indicated as the message "Rest".)

When you enter the correct PIN2 code, "Rest" returns to three.

See page 143 for how to release PIN lock.

Enter the PIN2 code correctly and the display for completing certificate requesting appears.

See page 141 for PIN2 code.



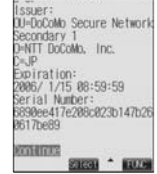
Information

Before downloading a new or an updated certificate, be sure to apply for the user certificate to be issued. User certificates cannot be downloaded until the application for issue has been made.

Downloading User Certificate

After applying for issue, you can download the user certificate. The downloaded user certificate will be saved to the UIM so that you can display FirstPass sites.

- 1 Site display of the FirstPass Center ▶ Download your certificate
▶ Continue



Requesting Revocation of User Certificate

You can revoke the downloaded user certificate.

- 1 Site display of the FirstPass Center ▶ Other settings ▶ Revoke your certificate
▶ YES

- 2 Enter your PIN2 code (4 to 8 digits) ▶

When you enter this code for the first time, for instance just after subscribing, enter "0000".

The entered PIN2 code is displayed as "_".

When the PIN2 code is entered wrongly three times, the PIN2 code will be locked and cannot be used.

(The number of times you can attempt entry before the code is locked is indicated as "Rest".)

When you enter the correct PIN2 code, "Rest" returns to three.

See page 143 for how to release PIN lock.

Enter the PIN2 code correctly and the display for confirming certificate revocation appears.

See page 141 for PIN2 code.

- 3 Continue ▶ Continue ▶ Continue



Information

You cannot consecutively perform user certificate issue application, download, or revoke application. You need to complete a particular operation and disconnect the FirstPass Center before doing another operation.

After revoking a certificate application, you will not be able to display FirstPass sites.

To use FirstPass after revoking a certificate application, you need to apply again for your user certificate to be issued and then download it.

To view the downloaded user certificate, see page 222.

Set/Change a CA Center

* Normally, you do not need to change this setting.

You can set the host for downloading the user certificate.

- 1 **Connection setting** **Certificate host**
 ▶ Select **<Not recorded>** **(Edit)** ▶ Enter the Terminal Security Code

To change, select the already set host.
See page 140 for the Terminal Security Code.



<Certificate host display>

- 2 **Default URL** ▶ Enter a default URL

You can enter up to 100 half-pitch alphanumerics.
See page 482 for how to enter characters.

- 3 **Host address** ▶ Enter the address **(Finish)**

You can enter up to 99 half-pitch alphanumerics.
See page 482 for how to enter characters.

Function Menu of the Certificate Host Display

- 1 **Certificate Host display** **(FUNC)** ▶ Do the following operation.

Function menu	Operations
Edit	▶ Enter the Terminal Security Code Go to step 2 on this page. See page 140 for the Terminal Security Code.
Delete	▶ Enter the Terminal Security Code ▶ YES To cancel, select "NO" and press . See page 140 for the Terminal Security Code.

Before Using FirstPass

FirstPass is DoCoMo's electronic authentication service. By using FirstPass, client authentication is enabled, whereby the site and your FOMA phone exchange certificates, check the other party's certification and perform mutual authentication.

When requesting issue of a user certificate, carefully read the "FirstPassご利用規約 (the usage regulation)" on the display, agree to these, and then make the request.

You need to enter the PIN2 code to use the user certificate.

Once you have entered your PIN2 code, all subsequent operations will be deemed to be done by you, so be careful not to let anyone else use your UIM or PIN2 code.

If your UIM is lost or stolen, a DoCoMo shop counter can revoke your user certificate.

DoCoMo bears no obligation or responsibility with regard to the sites and information provided by FirstPass sites.

Please solve the problem between you and FirstPass sites.

DoCoMo and the CA do not guarantee security when you use FirstPass and SSL, so you should use them on your own judgment and responsibility.

Mail

Mail Functions of FOMA Phone.....	228
Composing i-mode Mail	
Composing i-mode Mail to Send.....<Compose i-mode Mail>	235
Composing Deco Mail (Decoration Mail) to Send.....	240
Sending Mail with a Still Image, Melody, Moving Image or i-motion Movie Attached.....<Attachments>	249
Using Photo-sending.....<Photo-sending>	251
Receiving and Operating i-mode Mail	
Receiving i-mode Mail Automatically.....<Mail Auto-receive>	254
When Kirari Mail Comes in.....<Kirari Mail>	256
Receiving Selected i-mode Mail.....<Mail Receive Option>	257
Checking whether Center Holds i-mode Mail.....<Check New Message>	258
Replying to Received i-mode Mail.....<Reply><Reply with Quote>	259
Forwarding Received i-mode Mail.....<Forward>	260
Playing/Saving Attached Melodies.....<Play Melody><Save Melody>	261
Displaying/Saving Attached Images.....<Display Image><Save Image>	262
Downloading an i-motion Movie from i-motion Mail.....<i-motion Mail>	263
Operating Mail Box	
Displaying Mail from Inbox/Outbox/Draft Box.....<Inbox><Outbox><Draft Box>	264
How to See Inbox/Outbox/Draft List and Detailed Display.....	266
Managing Mail Messages.....	271
Using Mail History	
Displaying Sent Mail Record.....<Sent Address>	281
Displaying Received Mail Record.....<Received Address>	283
Setting Mail Settings	
Sorting Mail Automatically to Each Folder.....<Auto-Sort>	284
Creating Mail Member.....<Mail Member>	286
Displaying Template.....<Template>	288
Detailed Settings for i-mode Mail and Short Messages (SMS).....<Mail Settings>	290
Using Chat Mail	
Using Chat Mail.....<Chat Mail>	293
Creating Chat Group.....<Chat Group>	299
Using Short Message (SMS)	
Composing Short Messages (SMS) to Send.....<Compose SMS>	301
Receiving Short Messages (SMS) Automatically.....<Receiving Short Messages (SMS)>	303
Checking whether Center Holds Short Messages (SMS).....<Check New SMS>	304
Setting Details for Short Messages (SMS).....	305

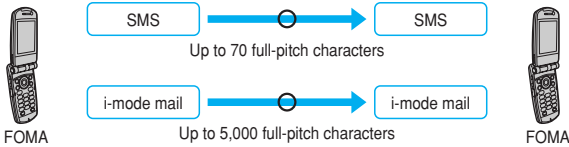
Mail Functions of FOMA Phone

The FOMA phone has mail functions for sending and receiving i-mode mail and Short Messages (SMS). You need to subscribe to i-mode to use i-mode mail.

Sending and Receiving of Mail

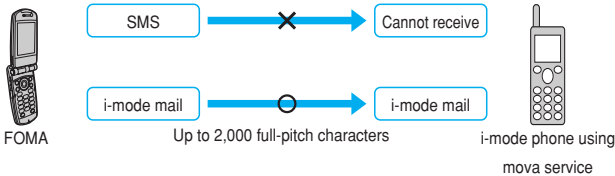
FOMA phone FOMA phone

Short Messages (SMS) can be exchanged between FOMA phones only.



FOMA phone i-mode phone using mova service

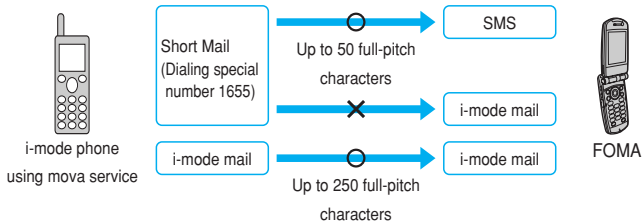
The i-mode mail service is used for sending messages from the FOMA phone to i-mode phones using the mova service.



Varies according to the settings of the i-mode phone using the mova service.

i-mode phone using mova service FOMA phone

Short Mail sent from i-mode phones using the mova service is received as Short Messages (SMS) by the FOMA phone.



The Short Mail service enables text messages to be exchanged between DoCoMo mobile phones.

- You cannot send Short Mail from the FOMA phone, even when you use the special number 1655.
- When Short Mail is sent from i-mode phones using the mova service, the FOMA phone receives it as a Short Message (SMS).

i-mode mail

Once you subscribe to i-mode, you can exchange e-mail over the Internet as well as with other i-mode phones (including the mova).

For how to send and receive i-mode mail, see pages 235, 254.

When you first subscribe to the i-mode service, your mail address is as below.

If you have subscribed to i-mode newly

The alphanumeric before the "@" mark are a random combination, check your address after signing up for the i-mode service.

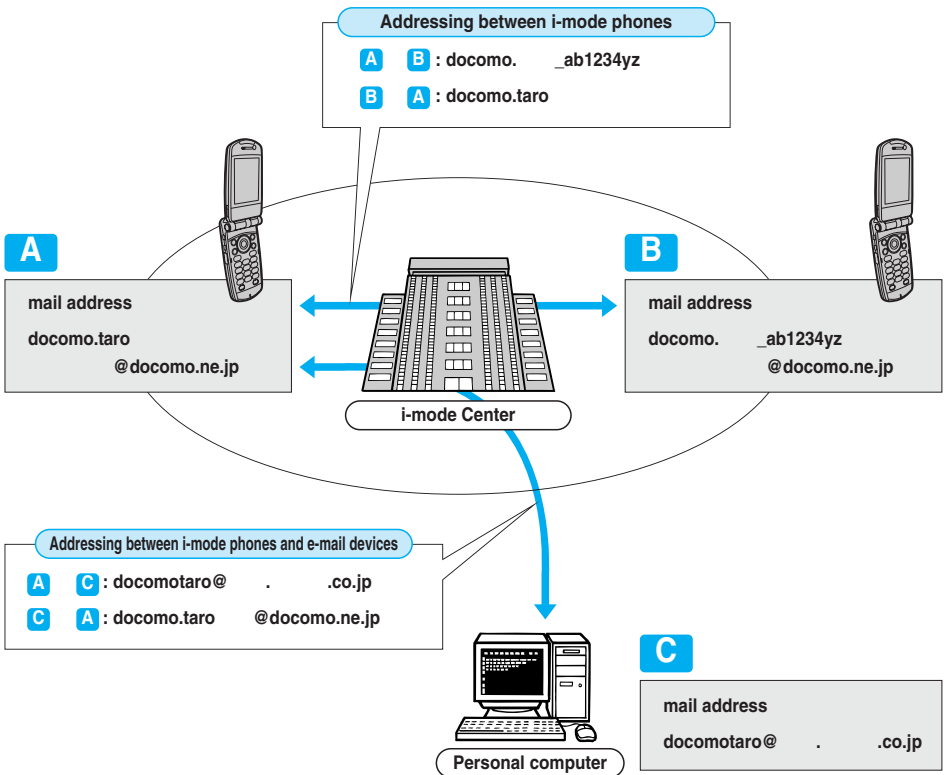
<Example> abc1234 ~ 789xyz@docomo.ne.jp

<How to check your mail address>

☰ Menu display ENGLISH 4 000 Options 1 000 Mail Settings Confirm Mail Address.

When exchanging mail with other i-mode phones (including the mova), you only need to use the part of your address preceding the "@" mark.

When you receive e-mail from personal computers, the senders need to use your full address including @docomo.ne.jp.



Selecting and receiving i-mode mail

You can check the titles of i-mode mail held at the i-mode Center, select messages to receive, or delete messages at the i-mode Center before receiving them. (See page 257)

Doing the mail settings

The following settings are available:

<Setting method>

☰ Menu display ENGLISH (4.c) Options (1) Mail Settings 【Each Setting】

For details, see “FOMA i-mode User’s Manual” you received when applying for the i-mode service.

Changing mail address 【Change Mail Address】

You can change the part of your mail address preceding the “@” mark as in “docomo.△△_ab1234yz@docomo.ne.jp”.

Registering a secret code 【Mail Address (Other Settings) Register a Secret Code】

You can register a four-digit secret code for your phone number when you use it as the mail address. Then, you will not receive i-mode mail that does not include your secret code, thus eliminating unwanted i-mode mail.

Resetting mail address 【Mail Address (Other Settings) Reset Mail Address】

You can set your mail address to the format “your mobile phone number@docomo.ne.jp”.

Confirming mail address 【Confirm Mail Address】

You can confirm what the currently set mail address is.

Mail reject/receive settings

You can restrict receiving mail by setting the accept/reject mail settings following any of the methods shown below:

① Receiving mail from selected domains 【Receiving Mail (Reject/Receive Mail Settings) Receive Mail from Selected Domains】

- You can receive mail from the specified companies from among au, vodafone, TU-KA, and WILLCOM.
- You can also receive mail sent from the specified domains other than the above companies.

All messages are received from i-mode, i-shot, Fixed Amount Arrival Notice Service, e billing invoice, and M-stage Visual Net.

② Receiving/Rejecting selected mail 【Receiving Mail (Reject/Receive Mail Settings) Receive Selected Mail, Reject Selected Mail】

- You can accept/reject mail from specified mail addresses.

③ Receiving/Rejecting only i-mode mail 【Receiving Mail (Reject/Receive Mail Settings) Receive only i-mode mail, Reject only i-mode mail】

- You can accept (reject mail over the Internet)/reject mail only between i-mode mobile phones.

④ Rejecting mass i-mode mail senders 【Receiving Mail (Other Settings) Reject Mass i-mode Mail Senders】

- You can reject receiving i-mode mail from 200th and after sent from a single i-mode mobile phone (including the mova) per day. The default is “Reject”, so you do not need to set if you want to reject a bulky number of messages from the same sender.

⑤ Rejecting unsolicited ad mail 【Receiving Mail (Other Settings) Reject Unsolicited Ad Mail】

- You can reject receiving mail with “未承諾広告” (Unsolicited advertisement) inserted to the title field of mail display, which is incoming for advertising/promoting purposes without your agreement. The default is “Reject”, so you do not need to set if you want to reject mail with “未承諾広告”.

(Senders are obligated by the law to describe “未承諾広告” (six full-pitch characters) to the head of title name field.)

You cannot set “Receive Mail from Selected Domains”, “Receive Selected Mail”, “Reject Selected Mail”, “Receive only i-mode mail”, and “Reject only i-mode mail” at the same time.

⑥ Rejecting SMS 【Receiving Mail (Other Settings) Set/Confirm SMS Rejection Settings】

- You can set to reject all Short Messages (SMS) or to reject only Short Messages (SMS) without the Caller ID or can check the setting status.

Confirming settings 【Confirm Settings】

You can check the current mail settings for whether mail is accepted or rejected.

Limiting mail size 【Limit Mail Size】

You can limit the size of i-mode mail you receive by specifying the size in advance.

Suspending mail functions 【Suspend Mail】

If you do not use the mail functions, you can have the i-mode Center suspend them.

After the Mail functions are suspended, you can reactivate them. However, the mail address immediately after the mail functions are resumed will be “phone number@docomo.ne.jp”.

Preventing nuisance mail

You can effectively prevent receiving nuisance mail by changing your mail address, or by using Receive/Reject Selected Mail.

Number of characters that can be sent/received

The numbers of characters that can be sent/received by i-mode mail are as below.

Item	Full-pitch (kanji, hiragana, pictographs, etc.)	Half-pitch (alphabet, numbers, katakana, etc.)
Subject	15	30
Address	-	50
Text	5000	10000

When a file such as a melody, image or i-motion movie is attached or text is decorated, the number of characters that can be received/sent decreases.

Information

Up to 5,000 full-pitch characters (10,000 bytes) can be sent/received as the text of i-mode mail, but this number can be lower, depending on the volume of attached files. Files that are not compatible with i-mode mail cannot be received or sent; such files are deleted automatically at the i-mode Center and just the mail text is delivered. In this case, the text is headed by the message “添付ファイル削除 (Attachment deleted)”. [Then, the mail is received up to the maximum number of characters including “添付ファイル削除 (Attachment deleted)”.]

When the text of the i-mode mail contains more than the maximum characters, “” or “/” is inserted at the end and the excess part is deleted automatically.

When sending i-mode mail to i-mode phones using the mova service, the text can be sent up to 2,000 full-pitch characters. Any attachments other than i-shot will be deleted.

Characters in the subject field of the i-mode mail that are in excess of the maximum will be deleted.

You can exchange mail containing half-pitch katakana or pictographs only between i-mode phones (includes the mova). In other cases, those characters might not be displayed correctly on the receiver's end.

When you cannot receive i-mode mail



i-mode mail is delivered to your i-mode phone as soon as it arrives at the i-mode Center. However, if your FOMA phone is off or out of the service area, or Receive Option Setting is set to “ON”, the mail will be kept at the i-mode Center. Mail held at the i-mode Center will be resent at certain intervals up to three times. You can also set your FOMA phone so that you can select i-mode mail at the i-mode Center to receive it.

Information

The table below shows the maximum number of i-mode mail messages that can be held at the i-mode Center and the maximum holding period.

	Maximum Number Held	Maximum Holding Period
i-mode mail	207 - 1,000 (up to approx. 2 Mbytes)	720 hours

Once the holding period expires, the i-mode mail is deleted automatically.

The maximum number of i-mode mail messages that can be held varies according to their data size. When the maximum number is exceeded, the i-mode Center stops receiving i-mode mail and returns an error message to the senders. Your i-mode phone will display “ (gray)” (indicates maximum number of messages held) indicating that your mailbox at the Center is full. While Receive Option Setting is set to “ON”, “ (gray)” (indicates maximum number of messages held) does not appear even when the maximum number of messages is exceeded.

You can receive i-mode mail held at the i-mode Center using “Check new message” (see page 258) or “Receive option” (see page 257). Further, if new i-mode mail is delivered, it will be sent with other i-mode mail and Messages R/F that have been held at the Center.

Once you receive i-mode mail, it will be deleted at the i-mode Center. Your FOMA phone will store the i-mode mail. (See page 254)

When the Mail function is suspended, no more mail is held at the i-mode Center.

The i-mode Center might not accept extremely bulky i-mode mail.

Other things you can do

Mail attachments

- **Melody mail** (see page 249 for sending, and page 261 for receiving.)

You can exchange melody files downloaded from sites or Internet web pages by attaching them to i-mode mail. (Melody files cannot be sent if they are prohibited from being attached to mail or being output from the FOMA phone to other devices.)

Melodies might not be played back successfully if exchanged with models other than FOMA P700i/P901i.

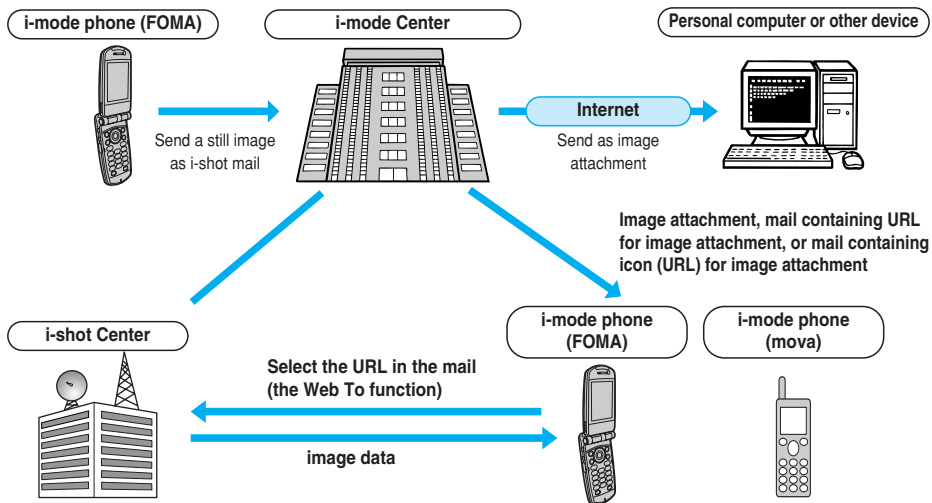
- **Image mail** (see page 249 for sending, and page 262 for receiving.)

You can attach still image files downloaded from sites, Internet or obtained from external memory to i-mode mail. (Still image files cannot be sent if they are prohibited from being attached to mail or being output from the FOMA phone to other devices.) If you send files other than i-shot to i-mode phones using the mova service, these will be deleted and just the mail text will be sent.

Sending/receiving i-shot (see page 249 for sending, and page 262 for receiving.)

You can attach still images shot by the mobile phone with camera function and exchange them with other i-mode phones (including the mova), personal computers, and mobile phones of other carriers. To the receiving end, the file is sent in file attachment format or as the URL (or icon) for browsing the image with the expiration of stored period automatically attached. You can access the image by selecting the URL.

Up to 184 full-pitch characters (369 bytes) in the text of mail can be sent to i-mode phones using the mova service. However, if multiple files have been attached, those files will be deleted and only the text is delivered.



When the mail containing URL for image attachment is received

Image files are retained for maximum 10 days at the i-shot Center and are automatically deleted when the savable period is elapsed.

The data size of a still image you can receive by the i-mode mobile phone is up to 500 Kbytes. The dimensions of the downloaded still image are automatically converted to the screen dimensions of the i-mode mobile phone.

Deco mail

When you are editing i-mode mail, you can change the font size and the background color, and paste an image into the text. In this way you can compose and send your own customized mail and also receive decorated mail. (Decorated mail from a personal computer might not work in the same way as on the personal computer owing to the decoration not supported by the i-mode phone.)

If you send Deco mail to an incompatible mobile phone, it is received at the receiving end as URL-attached mail. The recipient can see the Deco mail by selecting the URL.

See pages 242 to 248 for how to edit Decoration mail.

See page 240 for how to send Decoration mail.

Compatible devices: 90Xi series, 70Xi series, 880IES (For receiving Deco mail only)

Simultaneous mail sending

You can send the same i-mode mail simultaneously to multiple addresses (up to five addresses). (See page 237)

You can also register five addresses for a Mail member. (See page 286)

The transmission charge is the same rate as for sending to one address. (However, the data for the added address will involve a higher charge.)

Sending/Receiving Cc and Bcc

Just as with personal computers, you can select To, Cc, and Bcc address fields when editing i-mode mail. However, you cannot send mail when the To field is empty. (See page 237)

Chat mail

You can send and receive messages as if you are having a conversation with multiple persons.

The transmission charge for sending to multiple destinations is the same as that for sending simultaneous mail.

Pasted i-appli (see page 213 for receiving.)

You can launch i-appli from URLs (links) pasted to received i-mode mail.

i-motion Mail

You can send or receive moving images shot by the i-motion mail compatible phone or downloaded from a site to and from i-motion mail compatible phones, personal computers, or mobile phones of other carriers. (Moving image files cannot be sent if they are prohibited from being attached to mail or being output from the FOMA phone to other devices.)

See page 250 for how to send i-motion mail.

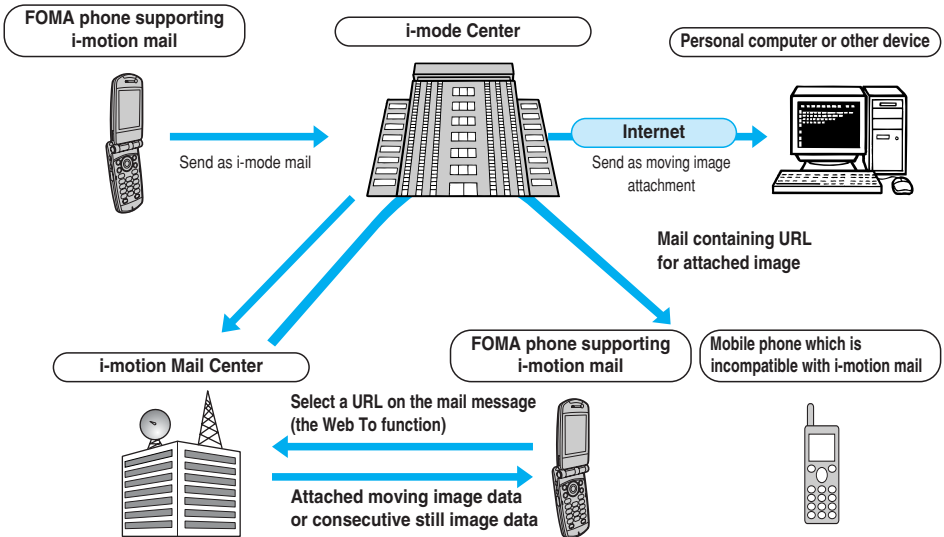
See page 263 for how to receive i-motion mail.

How service works

The moving image file attached to i-mode mail is sent to the i-motion Mail Center where it is stored. (If the destination is a personal computer, the file will be sent directly as an attachment.)

When you receive i-motion mail with i-motion mail compatible phone, you can download a moving image by selecting the URL displayed in the text of the mail.

When you send i-motion mail to a device that does not support i-motion mail, the i-motion movie is converted to consecutive still images and the mail is received as the message which contains URL. The recipient can download the successive still images by selecting the displayed URL.



Moving images are stored for 10 days at the i-motion Mail Center. When holding period expires, moving images are automatically deleted.

The data size of a moving image you can receive by the i-motion mail compatible phone is up to 500 Kbytes. The dimensions of the downloaded moving image are automatically converted to the screen dimensions of the i-motion mail compatible phone.

Information

i-motion mail sent to a personal computer arrives as a file attachment.

Apart from the text of i-motion mail, you can send attachments of up to 500 Kbytes of moving images. You cannot attach an i-motion movie which exceeds the maximum size.

If you send a moving image attached to i-motion mail to an i-mode mobile phone, you can download the image up to 50 times per URL stored at the i-motion Mail Center for browsing i-motion. When the number of times of browsing has exceeded 50 times, you can no longer download the i-motion movie.

To play back an i-motion movie on devices such as personal computers, you need to install "QuickTime 6.3" and "3GPP Component" or "QuickTime 6.4" or later. You can download "QuickTime" from the web page of Apple Computer, Inc. free of charge.

Short Message (SMS)

You can send and receive Short Messages (SMS) even if you have not contracted for the i-mode service. With Short Message, you can exchange brief text messages with other FOMA phones.

See pages 301, 303 for how to send and receive Short Messages (SMS).

Short Message (SMS) will be available for connecting with users of overseas carriers. The DoCoMo web page will announce the date of service start and information about overseas carriers.

Information

Short Messages (SMS) received by the FOMA phone can be saved to the UIM. (See page 419)

Address for Short Message (SMS)

The address for Short Message (SMS) is the contracted mobile phone number.

Number of characters that can be sent/received

The numbers of characters that can be sent/received by Short Message (SMS) are as below.

SMS input character	Japanese (70 characters)	English (160 characters)
Address	20 (except "+")	
Text	70	160

When Short Messages (SMS) cannot be received

The Short Message Center delivers Short Messages (SMS) to your FOMA phone as soon as they are received. However, if your FOMA phone is off or out of the service area, the Short Messages will be kept at the Center.

Information

You cannot send Short Messages (SMS) from the FOMA phone to the i-mode phone of the mova service.

The Short Message Center keeps Short Messages (SMS) for a maximum period of 72 hours. You can set the holding period with "SMS validity period".

When the holding period expires, Short Messages (SMS) are deleted automatically.

You can receive Short Messages (SMS) held at the Short Message Center using "Check new SMS" (see page 304).

Once your FOMA phone receives Short Messages (SMS), they will be deleted at the Short Message Center. Your FOMA phone will store the Short Messages (SMS). (See page 303)

Composing i-mode Mail to Send


You can compose i-mode mail and send it.

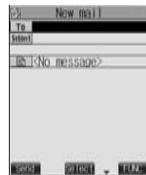
See page 240 for composing Deco Mail.

1 Compose message

If the Draft box already contains five mail messages, you cannot compose a new mail message.

Send or delete the draft mail and then compose the mail message.

You can also display "Mail menu" by pressing  () from the Stand-by display.



<Message Composition display>

2 Select the address field Enter an address

You can enter up to 50 half-pitch characters.

See page 482 for how to enter characters.

See page 236 to call up an address from the Phonebook, histories or Mail Member.

If the destination is an i-mode phone, you can also send mail by entering only the part preceding the "@" mark of a mail address.

See page 237 to send to multiple recipients.

See page 237 to delete an added address.

3 Select the subject field Enter the title

You can enter up to 15 full-pitch or 30 half-pitch characters.

See page 482 for how to enter characters.

4 Select the text field Enter the text

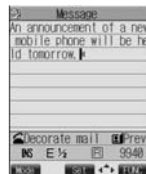
You can enter up to 5,000 full-pitch or 10,000 half-pitch characters.

See page 482 for how to enter characters.

See page 238 to paste a header or signature.

See page 238 to delete the entire message you have entered.


See page 249 to attach a file.



<Message Entry display>

5 Press ().

The Mail Sending display appears and mail is sent.

To cancel sending midway, press and hold  for at least one second. However, this might be too late to stop sending the mail.

6 OK



Information



Depending on the radio wave conditions, the characters might not be displayed successfully at the destination.



Do not use half-pitch katakana or pictographs except when exchanging mail with i-mode phones. The characters might not be displayed successfully.

When the number of sent mail items exceeds the FOMA phone's storage maximum, they will be overwritten from the oldest one.

However, protected sent mail cannot be overwritten.

If you do not send the mail and instead press  or , the message "Cancel and discard work in progress?" will be displayed.

Select "YES" and press  to delete all the text entered so far. Select "NO" and press  to return to the previous display.

If you try to send the mail whose address is a phone number headed by "184" or "186", the message "Send without prefix numbers?" will be displayed. Select "YES" and press  to delete "184" or "186" and send the mail. Select "NO" and press  to return to the previous display.

You cannot send mail to addresses that include a comma (,).

You can enter an address in the To, Cc and Bcc fields, but the mail cannot be sent if the To field is empty.

If the destination has been set in the Phonebook with the secret code, the secret code will be added automatically at sending.

However, the secret code cannot be added unless the address is a phone number or "phone number@docomo.ne.jp".

If you store the secret code and send mail to a mail address other than that of DoCoMo mobile phones, you might not receive the error message for unknown address.

From the FOMA phone, you can send i-mode mail to an i-mode phone using the mova service, if the destination has subscribed to i-mode. (See page 228)

You can start a new line while editing the text. Each line feed is counted as one full-pitch character.

A space is counted as a full-pitch or half-pitch character.

Look-up address/Refer address

You can look up and enter the address of i-mode mail or Short Message (SMS) from the Phonebook or from the Sent/Received Mail Address.

You can also look up the phone number from the Phonebook or Received Call Record using respective functions.

1 Display you want to call up the phone number from

▶ Look-up address/Refer address

PhonebookCalls up the phone number or mail address from the Phonebook.

Sent addressCalls up the phone number or mail address from Sent Address.

Received addressCalls up the phone number or mail address from Received Address.

Dialed callsCalls up the phone number from Dialed Call Record.

Received callsCalls up the phone number from Received Call Record.

Mail memberCalls up the mail address stored as a mail member.

The item displayed differs depending on the function.

2 Phonebook

Call up the desired Phonebook entry ▶ Display the phone number or mail address ▶ 

See page 99 for how to look up the Phonebook.

Sent Address/Received Address/Dialed Call Record/Received Call Record

Select the desired phone number or mail address ▶  ▶ 

Mail Member

Select the desired mail member ▶ 

Information

If the phone number or mail address is already entered, the confirmation display appears asking whether to overwrite the data. Select "YES" and press . To cancel, select "NO" and press .

When "Restrict dialing" is activated, you can only look up phone numbers in the Phonebook specified for "Restrict dialing".

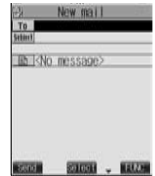
You cannot display "Dialed calls" or "Sent address" when "Redial/Dialed calls" of "Record display set" is set to "OFF".

You cannot display "Received calls" or "Received address" when "Received calls" of "Record display set" is set to "OFF".

When (Change) appears, you can press (Change) to switch between Sent Address and Redial or between Received Address and Received Calls.








Function Menu of the Message Composition Display

1 Message Composition display (FUNC) Do the following operation.



<Message Composition display>

Function menu	Operations
Send	You can send mail messages. Go to step 6 on page 235.
Preview	Check the address, subject, text and attachments before sending. After checking, press . You can send the mail message by pressing (Send). You can send also by pressing (FUNC) and selecting "Send". You can save the mail message by pressing (FUNC) and selecting "Save".
Save	While composing or editing mail, you can save it to the Draft box. You cannot save the item when the address, subject and text are all empty and there is no attached file.
Look-up address	You can look up a phone number or mail address from the Phonebook, Sent Address, Received Address, or Mail Member to enter it. (See page 236)
Add receiver (Phonebook)	You can add addresses. You can enter multiple addresses in the address field to send the same i-mode mail to multiple destinations simultaneously. You can send the same mail to up to five addresses at the same time. Phonebook.....Calls up the address from the Phonebook. Go to step 2 on page 236. Sent address.....Calls up the address from Sent Address. Go to step 2 on page 236. Received address...Calls up the address from Received Address. Go to step 2 on page 236. Enter address .....Enter the mail address or phone number and then press .
Delete receiver	You can select and delete an address from multiple addresses in the address field. ▶ YES To cancel, select "NO" and press .
Change rcv. type	To.....Changes the address type to "To". The phone number or mail address set in the "To" field is the directly addressed recipient. Cc.....Changes the address type to "Cc". The phone number or mail address set in the "Cc" field is displayed on the recipient's side. Bcc.....Changes the address type to "Bcc". The phone number or mail address set in the "Bcc" field is not displayed on the recipient's side.



Function menu	Operations
Template (Load template)	<p>You can read in a template and compose Deco mail.</p> <p>▶ Load template</p> <p>When the text has already been entered or a file has been attached, the confirmation display appears asking whether to delete the text or attached file. Select "YES" or "NO" and press .</p> <p>▶ Select a template </p> <p>The contents of the template are entered into the text.</p> <p>While selecting a template, press   to check the contents of the template.</p> <p>See page 240 for composing Deco mail.</p> <p>See page 509 for templates stored at the time of purchase.</p>
Template (Save template)	<p>You can save the Deco mail you are creating as a template.</p> <p>▶ Save template ▶ YES</p> <p>See page 210 when templates are stored to the maximum.</p> <p>To cancel, select "NO" and press .</p>
Attach file	You can add attached files. (See page 249)
Activate camera	<p>You can shoot and attach the image or i-motion movie.</p> <p>Photo mode .....Shoots still images.</p> <p>Movie mode .....Shoots i-motion movies.</p> <p>See pages 160, 166 for how to shoot.</p>
Delete att. file	You can delete attached files. (See page 250)
Del all att. files	You can delete all attached files. (See page 250)
Add header	<p>You can paste a header at the beginning of the text of i-mode mail.</p> <p>You need to register a header beforehand. (See page 292)</p>
Add signature	<p>You can paste a signature at the end of the text of i-mode mail.</p> <p>You need to register a signature beforehand. (See page 292)</p>
Erase message	<p>You can delete all the text and inserted images. You cannot delete the address, subject or attached files.</p> <p>▶ YES</p> <p>To cancel, select "NO" and press .</p>
Delete	<p>▶ YES</p> <p>The i-mode mail you have been editing is deleted.</p> <p>To cancel, select "NO" and press .</p>

Information

<Add receiver>

If the mail is not sent successfully to any address, the message "Some mail not sent" is displayed.

You cannot add addresses if the address field already contains five addresses or contains no addresses.

If you enter the multiple same addresses to send the mail, the message "Same address is entered Send?" is displayed. Select "YES" and press  to delete the redundant address and send the mail. To cancel, select "NO" and press .

<Change rcv. type>

You cannot send i-mode mail if the "To" field is empty.

The mail addresses entered in the "To" and "Cc" field are displayed on the receiving end. However, they might not be displayed depending on the mobile phone, equipment, or software on the receiving end.

<Template (Save template)>

You cannot save i-mode mail whose text is not decorated.

The subject of i-mode mail you are composing will be the title of the template. If no subject is entered, the title takes the name of "YYYY/MM/DD hh:mm". (Y: year, M: month, D: date, h: hour, m: minute)

When the date and time are not set, the title takes the name of "templateXX". (XX: 01 to 45)

Information

<Activate camera>

The image sizes that can be set in Photo Mode are "Stand-by (240 x 320)" and "Sub-QCIF (128 x 96)".

You cannot attach some shot images to i-mode mail.

<Add header> <Add signature>

If you have put a check mark for "Insert" of "Header/Signature", the header/signature is pasted automatically into the text of i-mode mail.

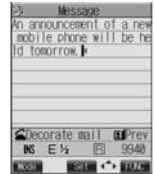
You cannot paste a header/signature if the text, including the header/signature, would exceed 5,000 full-pitch or 10,000 half-pitch characters.

If you paste the signature to the decorated text, the signature is together decorated.



If you paste the header to the decorated text, the header is decorated in accordance with the beginning of the text.

Function Menu of the Message Entry Display

1 Message Entry display  (**FUNC**)  Do the following operation.



<Message Entry display>

Function menu	Operations
Decorate mail	You can display Palette. (See page 242)
Decorate all reset	You can release all the decorations. ▶ YES If you have inserted an image, the message "In-line image is deleted" is displayed. Press  to return to the Message Entry display. You cannot execute "Decorate all reset" from Palette.
PI-SB input mode	You can enter pictographs and symbols. (See page 493)
Upper case/Lower case	You can switch between uppercase and lowercase. (See page 493)
Full pitch/Half pitch	You can switch between the full-pitch mode and the half-pitch mode. (See page 493)
Copy	You can copy characters. (See page 497)
Cut	You can cut characters. (See page 497)
Paste	You can paste copied or cut characters. (See page 498)
Common phrases	You can enter common phrases. (See page 494)
Space	You can insert a space. (See page 494)
Line feed	You can start a new line. (See page 494)
Symbols	You can enter symbols. (See page 494)
Pictograph	You can enter pictographs. (See page 494)
Quote phonebook	You can quote Phonebook entries. (See page 494)
Quote own number	You can quote your personal data. (See page 494)
Jump	You can jump the cursor. (See page 495)
Property	You can display the file name and file size of the image inserted in Deco mail. After checking, press  .

Function menu	Operations
Undo	After entering or deleting characters, pasting data, or operating on a Decoration, you can undo your most recent operation.
Preview	You can view the contents of the text before sending. You can preview also by pressing (F5) from the Message Entry display. After checking, press (EXIT).

Information

<Decorate all reset>

You cannot delete any line feed that is inserted automatically when a decoration is set.
Using "Undo", you can return the decoration you have released by "Decorate all reset".

<Undo>

Once you use "Undo" to return to the previous status, you cannot cancel this by using "Undo" again.

If you close the Message Entry display, you cannot return to the previous status by using "Undo" when you re-open it. (However, after you have used "Preview", you can return to the previous status.)

Composing Deco Mail (Decoration Mail) to Send

When editing i-mode mail message, you can change the size of the font and the color of the background as well as inserting images, thus composing your own original mail.

The Decoration function enables you to customize Font Color, Font Size, Blink, Ticker, Swing, Word Alignment, Insert Line, Insert Image, Font Effect, and Background Color.

You can also compose Deco mail using the templates (patterns). (See page 288.)

You cannot combine Ticker, Swing, and Word Alignment for one point.

You can combine Insert Line only with Font Color.

You can combine Insert Image or Font Effect only with Word Alignment.



1 Perform the operation in step 1 to 3 on page 235.

2 Select the text field ▶ (F5)

3 Decorate the text using Palette.

See page 242 for how to use Palette.

To enter the text after selecting decorations

 ▶ **Select one of decorations** ▶ **Enter the text**

See pages 244 to 248 about detailed operations of each decoration.

To set decorations after entering the text


Enter the text ▶  ▶ 

Go to page 243.

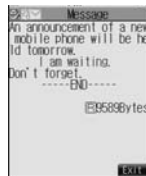
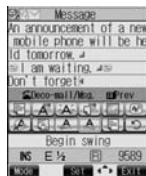
You can enter up to 5,000 full-pitch or 10,000 half-pitch characters.

(The number of characters you can enter will be lower because of the decoration.)

Once you decorate the mail text, "" appears.

You can view the contents of the text by pressing .

Press  again,  (**EXIT**) or  to return to the previous display.




4 Press .

The Message Composition display is displayed.

Go to step 5 on page 235.

Information

Even if you delete the decorated characters, only the decorated data remains and the number of characters you can enter might decrease. Clear the decoration and then delete the characters. If you delete the characters by pressing and holding  for at least one second, the characters as well as the decorated data are deleted.

If you quote Deco mail to reply to or to forward to, the text is displayed with the decoration and inserted image quoted.

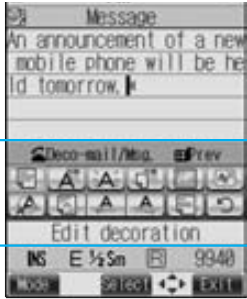
If you quote Deco mail to reply to or to forward to and that data size is in excess of 10,000 bytes, the message "Message too long to add header & signature" is displayed. You cannot quote it for replying to or forwarding to.


If you use a template containing an image unable to attach to mail for sending, the image is deleted.


Decorations might not be correctly displayed if you send or receive messages to and from devices such as personal computers other than Deco mail compatible i-mode mobile phones.



How to use Palette

You can decorate the text of i-mode mail using Palette. You can set multiple decorations for one point.



Press  from the Message Entry display to display Palette.


You can also bring up Palette by selecting "Decorate mail" from the Function menu and pressing .

Press  (**EXIT**) to close Palette. You can also close Palette by pressing  while you are working on it.

See the operating procedures on page 243 through 248 for the icons on Palette.

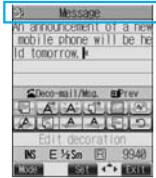
— Decoration Palette

Switch operations

You can switch between the operation of Palette and the operation of entering text, each time you press . You can move the cursor and enter texts with Palette displayed.




Palette operation



Text Entry operation

After you enter texts, the Text Entry operation returns.


When you use Palette in succession, press  and operate.


Icons



Depressed

When the cursor is over the decorated character, the set decoration icon appears depressed.

Select the depressed icon and press ; then you can change or cancel the decoration.

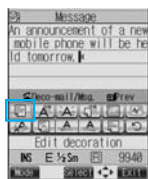
You can also cancel the decoration by pressing  with the area for decorating selected.

You cannot select the icon displayed in gray.

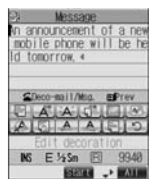
Decoration (Edit decoration)


You can set Font Color, Blink, Font Size, Word Alignment, Ticker and Swing over the selected text you have entered. You can also change and add the set decoration, or cancel Blink, Ticker or Swing.

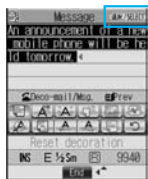
Press  in step 3 on page 241 to display Palette.



Select .



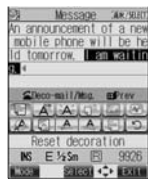
Select the start point. You can select all text by pressing  (ALL) and "YES".



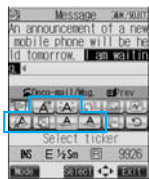
Select the end point. "SELECT/SELECT" is displayed during selecting decoration area.

After this, set, change, add or cancel each decoration.

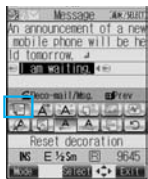
Set, change or add decoration



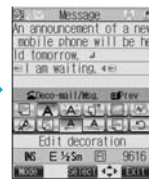
Select the area of characters to be set, changed, or added decorations for.



Select an icon and set, change, or add decoration. Select other icons in succession to change the multiple decorations or add decoration.

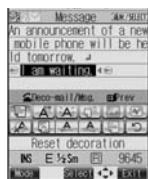


Select .

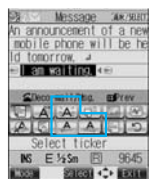


When Blink, Ticker, or Swing has been set, select the icons for respective settings and define the end point.

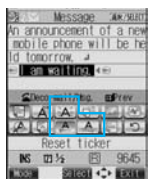
Cancel Blink, Ticker or Swing



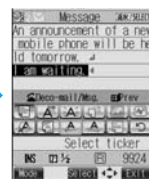
Select the area of characters for which Blink, Ticker, or Swing is to be canceled.



Select the icon for Blink, Ticker, or Swing.



Select the same icon again.



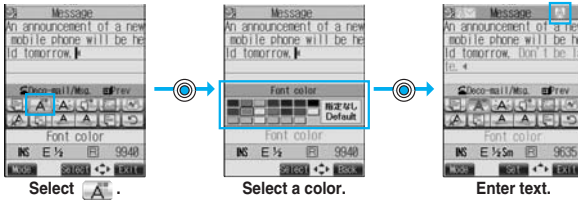
Information

You cannot select "Background color", "Insert image", "Font effect", "Insert line", and "Undo" while decoration area is selected.

Decoration (Font color)

You can change the color of characters and lines to be entered.

Press  in step 3 on page 241 to display Palette.



Select .

Select a color.

Enter text.

In the font color changing mode, "A" is displayed.

If you want to set other decorations, continue from here.

If you have already selected the area for decorating, you do not need to enter the text.

See page 248 to insert a line.

Information

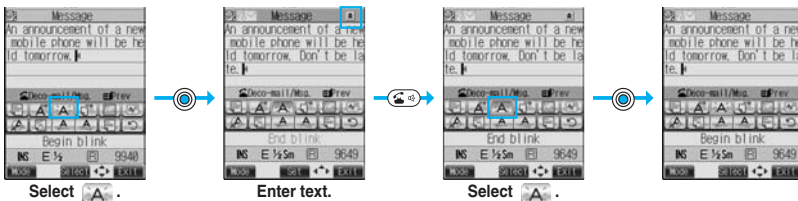
If you move the cursor to the character for which another color is set, the setting changes to that color.

The color for pictographs is also displayed in the font color you specify. To return to ordinary color, select "指定なし - Default".

Decoration (Blink)

You can make the text to be entered blink.

Press  in step 3 on page 241 to display Palette.



Select .

Enter text.

Select .

In the blink setting mode, "A" is displayed.

The set characters are blinking.

If you want to set other decorations, set them in succession.

Information

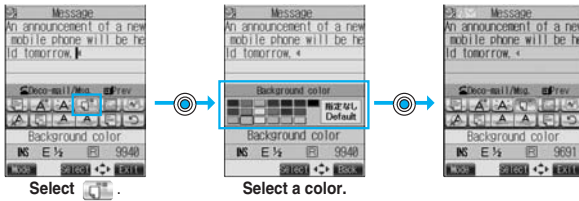
Characters stop blinking after a certain period of time.

See page 243 to cancel the set Blink.

Decoration (Background color)

You can change the background color of the mail text.

Press **☰** in step 3 on page 241 to display Palette.



Information

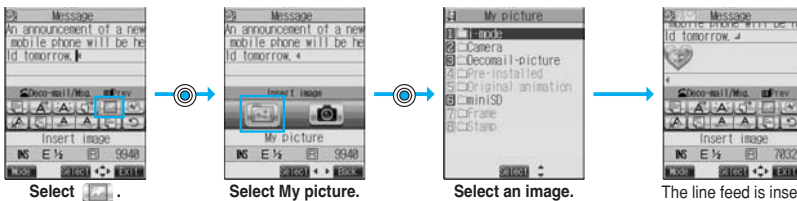
When background colors of Deco mail overlap the URL colors of images or of i-motion movies to be downloaded, the URLs might be unseeable.

Decoration (Insert image)

You can insert the images stored in “My picture” or shot by camera on the spot into the text of mail.

Press **☰** in step 3 on page 241 to display Palette.

Inserting the saved image



Select **☰**.

Select My picture.

Select an image.

The line feed is inserted automatically, and the image is inserted.

See page 334 for the still image folder and list.
See page 508 for Deco mail pictures stored at the time of purchase.

To delete the image, place the cursor on the image and press **☰**.

Shooting an image by the camera and inserting it



Select **☰**.

Select Camera.

Shoot a still image.

The line feed is inserted automatically, and the image is inserted.

The camera starts up.
See page 160 for how to shoot.

To delete the image, place the cursor on the image and press **☰**.

Information

You can insert up to 10 JPEG or GIF images of up to 10,000 bytes (total of mail text and images).

You can insert up to 10 image files. However, even if the inserted image files are 10 or less, the confirmation display appears for some operations asking whether to re-edit the image because of insufficient memory space. Select "YES" and press ; then proceed to editing the text.

Even if multiple same images are inserted, they are counted as a single file.

If you copy or paste the image already inserted into the edit display, that image is regarded as the same image and handled as a single file including the copied origin.

If an animation is inserted, it stops animating after a certain period of time.

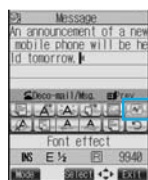
The image size of camera is Sub-QCIF (128 x 96).

You cannot insert the image of which attachment to mail or distribution to external devices is prohibited.

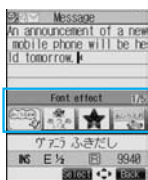
Decoration (Moving font effect)

You can convert characters to a mark and insert it into the text. The mark animates in various ways and conveys your feelings to the other party.

Press in step 3 on page 241 to display Palette.

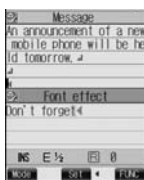


Select .



Select a moving font effect.

See page 509 for the moving font effect stored at the time of purchase.



Enter text.

Enter the text you want to set Font effect.



The line feed is inserted automatically and the moving font effect is inserted.

To delete the moving font effect, move the cursor over the moving font effect and press .

Information

The moving font effect is inserted as an animation GIF image.

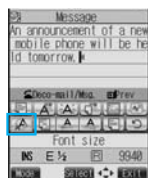
You can insert up to 10 moving font effects if the total size of mail text and moving font effects are 10,000 bytes or less.

The animation stops moving after a certain period of time.

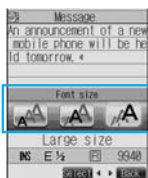
Decoration (Font size)

You can change the size of characters to be entered.

Press in step 3 on page 241 to display Palette.

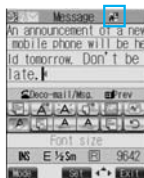


Select .



Select a font size.

Select a font size from among Small size (16 dots), Standard size (20 dots) and Large size (24 dots).



Enter text.

In the font size changing mode, "" or "" is displayed.

If you want to set other decorations, continue from here.

When you have already selected the area for decorating, you do not need to enter the text.

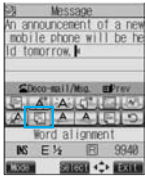
Information

If you move the cursor to the character for which a different font size is set, the font size is changed to that size of the character.

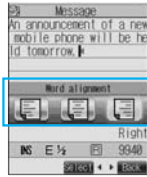
Decoration (Word alignment)

You can change the position of characters to be entered and images to be inserted.

Press **☰** in step 3 on page 241 to display Palette.

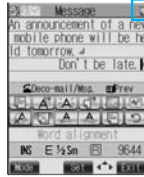


Select **☰**.



Select a word alignment.

Select a word alignment from among Left, Center, and Right.



Enter text.

The line feed is inserted automatically, and the alignment is set.

In the word alignment setting mode, "☐" is displayed.

If you want to set other decorations, continue from here.

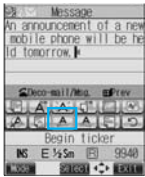
When you have already selected the area for decorating, you do not need to enter the text.

See page 245 for inserting image.

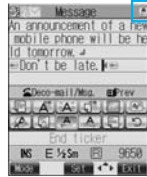
Decoration (Ticker)

You can make the characters flow from right to left.

Press **☰** in step 3 on page 241 to display Palette.



Select **☰**.



Enter text.

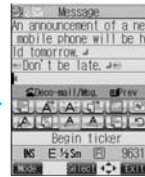
The line feed is inserted automatically and "☐" and "☐" are displayed before and after the cursor.

In the ticker setting mode, "☐" is displayed.

If you want to set other decorations, continue from here.



Select **☰**.



The line feed is inserted automatically.

You can preview the Ticker by

pressing **☑**.

Information

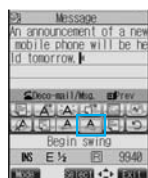
Characters stop ticker movement after a certain period of time.

See page 243 to cancel the set Ticker.

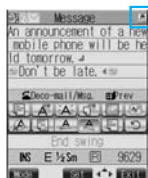
Decoration (Swing)

You can make the characters to be entered swing (moving to left and right back).



Press  in step 3 on page 241 to display Palette.




Select .

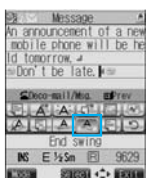


Enter text.

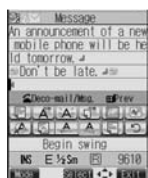
The line feed is inserted automatically and “” and “” are displayed before and after the cursor.


In the swing setting mode, “” is displayed.

If you want to set other decorations, continue from here.



Select .



The line feed is inserted automatically.
You can preview the Swing by pressing .

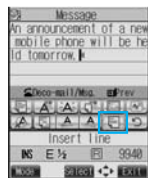
Information

Characters stop swinging after a certain period of time.
See page 243 to cancel the set Swing.

Decoration (Insert line)


You can insert a horizontal line into the mail text.

Press  in step 3 on page 241 to display Palette.



Select .



The line feed is inserted automatically, and the line is inserted.
To delete the line, move the cursor over the line and press .

Decoration (Undo)

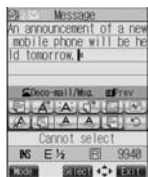
You can return to the previous status of the set decoration.

Press  in step 3 on page 241 to display Palette.

(Example) When you undo the line insertion



Select .



Information

If you execute “Undo” while an area is selected, the area selection is released.

Sending Mail with a Still Image, Melody, Moving Image or i-motion Movie Attached

You can send i-mode mail with an image or melody attached. You can also attach a moving image or i-motion movie to send as an i-motion message.

About attachable files

File type	Melody	Image of 10,000 bytes or less (JPEG, GIF)	Image in excess of 10,000 bytes (JPEG)	Moving image/i-motion movie
Maximum number of attachable files	10 files in total ¹		A single file for either of the two ²	

¹ Up to 10 files when the maximum size of a data file including text, melody and image is equivalent of 5,000 full-pitch characters (10,000 bytes). The maximum number of files you can attach may be less than 10 depending on the file size.

² You can attach either an image or moving image/i-motion movie of up to 500 Kbytes. You can attach the file separately from the melody files and images of 10,000 bytes or less.

You cannot attach files that are prohibited from being attached to mail or output from the FOMA phone to other devices.

You can attach still image or moving image taken with your own FOMA phone or the file received by Ir exchange regardless of the "File restriction" setting.

When a JPEG image in excess of 10,000 bytes or i-motion movie is attached, the number of characters you can enter in the text decrease by the equivalent of 100 full-pitch characters (200 half-pitch characters). When the text is decorated, the number of characters used for the text decreases by the equivalent of 200 full-pitch characters (400 half-pitch characters).

You cannot attach a GIF image in excess of 10,000 bytes.

If you send a JPEG image in excess of 10,000 bytes to an i-mode compatible phone, the size is converted to the size fit to i-mode compatible phones at the i-shot Center.

Attach Image

1 Message Composition display (**FUNC**) Attach file Attach image

2 Select a folder Select an image

When the selected image size is larger than QVGA (320 x 240) size or Stand-by (240 x 320) size, the confirmation display appears asking "Large size image. Attach to mail?". Select "YES" and press to attach the image. To cancel, select "NO" and press .

Select an attached image and press to display the image. Press again to return to the previous display.

See page 334 for the still image folder and list.

Go to step 2 on page 235.

Information

You cannot attach an image in excess of 500 Kbytes. If you execute "Compose message" (see page 336) or "Size for mail", you can convert the size to 500 Kbytes or less.

The image displayed from the i-mode mail and that from the Picture viewer might differ. To correctly display the image, you need to once save the image to the phone, and then display it from the Picture viewer.

You can send attachments of still images taken with your own FOMA phone to i-mode phones, personal computers, and mobile phones of other carriers. However, the images are not sent as the attachments to i-mode phones of mova service; they are in the form of URLs and automatically attached with expiry dates and can be downloaded by selecting URLs. The mail text that can be sent to an i-mode phone of mova service is up to 184 full-pitch characters (369 bytes). (When the acceptable number of characters of the mova phone is "250 full-pitch characters") When multiple files are attached, the files are deleted and just the mail text is sent.

You cannot receive a GIF image on the i-mode phone of mova service.

Attach Melody

1 Message Composition display (**FUNC**) Attach file Attach melody

2 Select a folder ▶ Select a melody ▶

Select an attached melody and press  to play back the melody.

Press any key to stop it.

See page 371 for the melody folder and list.

Go to step 2 on page 235.

Information

You cannot attach the melody file in excess of 10,000 bytes.

You cannot attach a melody if no melodies have been stored.



If the receiving device is not FOMA P700i/P901i, the melody might not be played back successfully or the attachment might be deleted.

You cannot receive the attached melody on the i-mode phone of mova service.

Attach an i-motion movie (i-motion Mail)

1 Message Composition display ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Attach file ▶ Attach i-motion

2 Select a folder ▶ Select an i-motion movie ▶

Select an attached i-motion movie and press  to play back the i-motion movie. During playback, press  to return to the previous display.


See page 354 for the i-motion folder and list.

Go to step 2 on page 235.

About Software for Playing Moving Images

To play back moving images (MP4) on a personal computer, you need to install "QuickTime 6.3" and "3GPP Component" or "QuickTime 6.4" or later. You can download "QuickTime" from the Web page of Apple Computer, Inc. free of charge.

Information

When the file size of an i-motion movie is larger than 500 Kbytes, the confirmation display appears asking whether to trim that file size to fit the mail size. Select "YES" and press ; then up to 490 Kbytes from the beginning of the i-motion movie are trimmed.

Some i-motion movies cannot be attached to mail or their sizes may change.

Moving images stored in the miniSD memory card cannot be attached. Import the moving images. (See page 343)

The moving image may get coarse or be converted to consecutive still images depending on the receiver's mobile phone.

Delete Attached File

You can delete the selected attached files.

1 Message Composition display ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Delete att. file ▶ YES

To cancel, select "NO" and press .

Delete All Attached File

1 Message Composition display ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Del all att. files ▶ YES

To cancel, select "NO" and press .

<Photo-sending>

Using Photo-sending

You can send photos (still images) to the other party during a voice call. The photo is sent as the attachments of i-mode mail, and the receiving side can display it during a call.

To send photos during a call, you need to store the phone number and mail address of the other party in the same Phonebook entry beforehand.

When the other party's phone is other than the FOMA P700i/P901i/P900iV/P900i, the other party might not be able to view the photo during a call.

Shooting and Sending Photos

During a voice call, you can send photos (still images) you shoot on the spot.

1 During a voice call ▶ () (FUNC) ▶ Shoot/send photo ▶ Photo mode

The camera starts up.

2 Press ().

The photo is taken.

See page 157 for the camera.

Press () to return to the "Talking" display.



<Finder display>

3 () ▶ Select a folder ▶ ()

To cancel, press ().

See page 334 for the folder of still image.



<Post View display>

4 Select a mail address ▶ ()

The photo is sent. After sending, select "OK" and press () to return to the "Talking" display.

When multiple mail addresses are stored, select the mail address you send mail to and press ().

To cancel, select "Quit" and press ().

Selecting and Sending Photos

You can send the saved photos (still images).

1 During a voice call ▶ () (FUNC) ▶ Shoot/send photo ▶ My picture

2 Select a folder ▶ () ▶ Select a photo (still image) ▶ ()

See page 334 for still image folder and list.

3 Select a mail address ▶ ()


The photo is sent. After sending, select "OK" and press () to return to the "Talking" display.

When multiple addresses are stored, select the mail address you send the mail to and press ().

To cancel, select "Quit" and press ().

Function Menu of Voice Phone Call

1 During a voice call ▶  (**FUNC**) ▶ Do the following operation.

Function menu	Operations
Shoot/send photo	You can send a photo (still image) during a voice call. (See page 251)
Display photo	If you have received a photo during a voice call, the photo is displayed. When "Photo auto display" is set to "ON", the photo is automatically displayed. If you have received multiple photos during a voice call, you can press  to switch them.
Check new msg.	You can execute "Check new message" during a voice call. (See page 258)

Displays by the setting of "Photo auto display" and "Receiving display" when photo mail is received

During a call

Receiving display \ Photo auto display	ON	OFF
	Operation preferred	Displays a photo	No change
Alarm preferred	Displays a photo	Reception Result display

While displaying a photo received during a call

Receiving display \ Photo auto display	ON	OFF
	Operation preferred	No change
Alarm preferred	No change	Reception Result display

You can switch the photos by using .

Function Menu of the Finder Display

1 Finder display ▶ ⓘ (**FUNC**) ▶ Do the following operation.



<Finder display>



Function menu	Operations
Inside camera/ Outside camera	You can switch between the inside camera and outside camera. (See page 171)
CHG camera-mode	You cannot select this function.
Format setting	You can specify the size of image. (See page 171)
Interval/Number	You cannot select this function.
Image quality	You can adjust the image quality. (See pages 172)
Auto save set	You can select whether to automatically save. (See page 172)
Store in	You cannot select this function.
Shutter sound	You can select a shutter sound. (See page 173)
Auto timer	You can set Auto Timer. (See page 175)
Select frame	You can select a frame. (See page 173)
File restriction	You can set the file restriction. (See page 174)
Display size	You can select how to display still images. (See page 173)
Memory info	You can check for the memory capacity. (See page 173)

Function Menu of the Post View Display

1 Post View display ▶ ⓘ (**FUNC**) ▶ Do the following operation.



<Post View display>

Function menu	Operations
Save & send	You can send a shot photo (still image) after saving. ▶ Select a folder ▶  Go to step 4 on page 251. See page 334 for the folder of still image.
Set as display	You can send a shot photo after executing "Set as display". (See page 163)
File restriction	You can set "File restriction" for a shot photo. (See page 174)
Cancel	You can cancel sending a photo during a voice call. ▶ YES To cancel, select "NO" and press  .

Information

This function is not available in the following cases:

- When the phone number and mail address of the other party on the phone are not stored in the Phonebook
- When the phone number and mail address of the other party on the phone are stored in the Phonebook in "Secret mode" or "Secret only mode"
- When the Caller ID is not notified to the receiving end (User unset, Not supported)
(However, this function is available from the calling end.)
- When "Restrict dialing" is not set for the phone number of the other party on the phone during "Restrict dialing"
- During PIM Lock
- When Draft is full (you cannot send.)
- When the Inbox is full of unread or protected mail (you cannot receive.)
- While you are receiving i-mode mail with JPEG image in excess of 10,000 bytes attached.
- During Call Waiting

You cannot send the following photos (images) during a voice call.

- Files in excess of the maximum size for Photo-sending
- Files other than JPEG and GIF
- Files other than QCIF (176 x 144) and Sub-QCIF (128 x 96)
- Files prohibited from being output from the FOMA phone
- Chara-den picture that you shot a Chara-den model with "Rec. file restriction"

A photo sent or received during a voice call is saved to the Outbox or Inbox as a file attachment of the image mail without text, of which title takes the phone number. If you suspend sending a photo during a voice call, it is saved to the Draft Box.

If you do not put a check mark for "Image-valid" of "Attached file", the attached file is deleted when you receive photos.

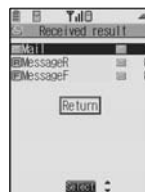
<Mail Auto-receive>

Receiving i-mode Mail Automatically

When the FOMA phone is in the service area, you can receive i-mode mail, Short Message (SMS), and SMS report automatically (you can select i-mode mail to receive or not to receive. see page 257). Your FOMA phone can also receive i-mode mail sent from mova service i-mode phones.


When a message comes in, "✉ (pink)" appears at the top of the display.

- 1** When i-mode mail arrives, "✉ (pink)" blinks and the message "Mail Receiving..." is displayed.




<Reception Result display>




When receiving is completed, the display shows the number of received i-mode mail messages and Messages R/F.

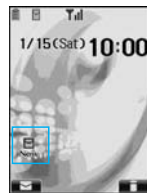
You can display the Inbox List by selecting "Mail" and pressing .

If no key is pressed for about 15 seconds

The former display returns. (The transit time varies depending on the setting for "Mail/Msg. ring time".)

" New" appears on the desktop.

Press , select " New", and press  again to display the Inbox List.





When the FOMA phone is closed


The information is displayed on the Private window.



Information

When the total number of received messages stored in the FOMA phone has reached the maximum, the messages will be overwritten in the priority of mail in the "Trash box" folder, and older received mail. However, unread or protected mail is not overwritten.

When the total number of unread or protected messages in the Inbox has reached the maximum, no new mail can be received and " (gray)" is displayed. To be able to receive i-mode mail, delete Inbox mail or open unread mail or release protection of mail until " (gray)" clears, and then perform "Check new message".

If you have set to selectively receive i-mode mail, the i-mode Center will hold your i-mode mail. (" " will appear at the top of the display.) You can check the titles of the i-mode mail held at the Center and select items to receive. (See page 257)

When new i-mode mail is delivered, it will be sent with other i-mode mail and Messages R/F that have been held at the i-mode Center. You can receive i-mode mail with melody or still image files attached. Incompatible attachments are deleted automatically at the i-mode Center. When an attachment has been deleted, the message "添付ファイル削除 (attached file deleted)" is added to the mail text.

The i-mode Center might not accept extremely bulky i-mode mail, in which case it will be returned to the sender with an error message.

Once the FOMA phone receives i-mode mail, it will be deleted at the i-mode Center.

You can restrict the type of incoming attachments in advance. (See page 291)

When you receive mail from a device that can set To, Cc and Bcc, you can check whether the message was sent to you as To, Cc or Bcc.

See page 111 for the priority of ring tones.

See page 113 for the priority of vibrators.

See page 131 for the priority of Illuminations.

The ring tone does not sound when you receive i-mode mail in the status other than the Stand-by display with "Receiving display" set to "Operation preferred". When "Alarm preferred" is set, the ring tone sounds and the Reception Result display appears.

If you receive i-mode mail while an i-motion movie is played back, the images and the sound might be interrupted.

When the FOMA phone receives i-shot mail from an i-mode phone of mova service, this is received as an attachment file.

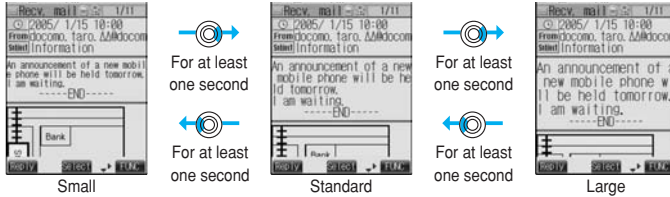
Displaying Newly Received i-mode Mail

1 Reception Result display ▶ Mail ▶ Select the i-mode mail to be displayed ▶ 



Switching i-mode mail display

You can change the size of the font displayed in the detailed i-mode mail display (text).



Information

If you bring up a display other than a detailed display, the standard size will return automatically even when small or large size was selected. However, if you return to the detailed display, small or large size will return.

When you use the above operation to switch the font size, the setting for "Character size" and "Font size" also changes.

Information

Undisplayable characters are displayed by spaces.

When the number of characters in the text of received i-mode mail exceeds the maximum, "r" or "/" is inserted at the end of the text and the excess part is deleted automatically.

Images attached to i-mode mail might not be displayed successfully. If the size of image display exceeds 240 dots horizontally, the image display is scaled down to 240 dots horizontally with proportional ratio retained.

Some decorations inserted into the decorated mail (HTML mail) sent from a personal computer might not be displayed correctly.

The Web To, Phone To/AV Phone To, or Mail To function might not be available for the mail sent from a personal computer.

<Kirari Mail>

When Kirari Mail Comes in

Kirari Mail is a function that makes the Call/Charging indicator illuminate in response to Kirari Mail pictographs contained in the text of mail. The Call/Charging indicator illuminates when mail comes in, the detailed i-mode mail display appears, or when the Preview display for composing mail appears.

When mail comes in

- If compatible pictographs are contained, the Call/Charging indicator illuminates whether it is i-mode mail or Short Message (SMS).
- If you receive multiple messages at the same time, the Call/Charging indicator illuminates for the message you received at the last.
- The Call/Charging indicator flickers as usual and then illuminates.
- The Call/Charging indicator does not illuminate in Drive Mode, or during a call.

When the detailed i-mode Mail display appears

- If a melody is attached or pasted, the Call/Charging indicator illuminates after the melody is played back.
- When the display switches to other than the detailed display, lighting and flickering are suspended.
- The Call/Charging indicator does not illuminate when the mail is displayed from the mail-linked i-appli.

When mail you are composing is previewed

- The Call/Charging indicator illuminates regardless of the "Kirari Mail" setting.

Checking the lighting or flickering of the Call/Charging indicator

Press from the detailed Received Mail display, detailed Sent Mail display, Message Composition display, or Preview display for sending.

You can also press (F1) from the detailed Received Mail display, detailed Sent Mail display, or Preview display for sending and then select "View Kirari mail" for checking.

You can check regardless of the "Kirari Mail" setting.

If you check from the Message Composition display, press any key to stop the Call/Charging indicator from lighting or flickering.

You can set whether to select and receive necessary i-mode mail only.

1



Mail settings ▶ Receive option setting

- ON.....Receives i-mode mail after selecting.
- OFF.....Receives i-mode mail automatically.

Information

When this function is set to "ON", you cannot receive i-mode mail automatically. The i-mode Center will hold incoming mail for you, and "MAIL" will be displayed. To receive it, use "Check new message" or "Receive option".

When "ON" is set, the mail ring tone does not sound. Also, the vibrator does not work even when Manner Mode or Vibrator is activated.

Even when "Receive option setting" is set to "ON", you will still receive all mail messages held at the Center if you use "Check new message". If you do not want to receive all mail messages, remove a check mark from "Mail". (See page 259)

You cannot select Short Messages (SMS) to receive them.

<Check New Message>

Checking whether Center Holds i-mode Mail

When i-mode mail and Messages R/F arrive at the i-mode Center, they are automatically sent to your FOMA phone, but will be held at the Center if your FOMA phone is off, out of the service area, or cannot receive mail because its memory is full.

In this case, "MAIL (pink)" is displayed. You can receive mail by checking the i-mode Center.

1



Check new message

The i-mode mail icon "MAIL (pink)" and Messages (R/F) icons "R (yellow)/ F (yellow)" will blink, the message "Mail Checking..." will be displayed, and the i-mode mail and Messages R/F will be delivered.

On the results of checking, the numbers of the received i-mode mail and Messages R/F are shown.

You can check also by pressing and holding "MAIL" for at least one second from the Stand-by display.

To cancel receiving midway, press and hold "END" for at least one second. However, this might be too late to stop receiving the mail.

Information

You cannot check mail when out of the service area.

When you attempt to check mail without launching i-mode ("MAIL" is not displayed), the checking process will start after i-mode is launched. Consequently, when checking completes, you will return to the i-mode Stand-by status ("MAIL" blinks).






When icons such as "MAIL (gray)", "R (gray)/ F (gray)" or "MAIL" are displayed, the FOMA phone cannot receive any more i-mode mail or Messages R/F. Delete unnecessary i-mode mail, Short Messages (SMS) and Messages R/F, or open unread i-mode mail, Short Messages (SMS) and Messages R/F, or release protection. (Read and unprotected mail and Messages R/F are overwritten automatically from the oldest one.)

Sometimes the i-mode Center might hold i-mode mail even though "MAIL (pink)" is not displayed. (This happens if mail arrives at the Center when, for instance, your FOMA phone is off.)

You can select items to be checked by "Set check new message".

You cannot use this function to receive Short Messages (SMS). Use "Check new SMS" to receive Short Messages (SMS).

You can select items to be checked from among i-mode mail, Messages R (Request) and Messages F (Free), for when you perform "Check new message".

- 1  **Connection setting**  **Set check new message**
 **Put a check mark for the item to be checked**  **(Finish)**
 and switch each time you press .

Information

At purchase, all the items are selected: Mail", MessageR", and MessageF". If you do not want to receive Messages R (Request) and Messages F (Free), change these settings to .

<Reply><Reply with Quote>

Replying to Received i-mode Mail

You can reply to the sender of i-mode mail and Short Messages (SMS). With "Reply with quote", you can quote the original text in your received i-mode mail and reply it. You cannot use "Reply with quote" for Short Messages (SMS).

- 1 **Detailed Received Mail display**  **(FUNC)**  **Reply or Reply with quote**

You can reply by pressing  **(Reply)**.

If there are multiple destinations, you can choose whether to reply (reply with quote) to the sender only or to all addresses.

Select "To sender" or "To all" and press .


- 2 **Enter the subject and text and send.**

Go to step 3 on page 235, or step 3 of "Composing Short Message (SMS) to Send" on page 301.

When you send mail,  changes to .

Information

You cannot paste headers, signatures or quotation marks to Short Messages (SMS).

For the unreturnable sender (such as when the mail address exceeds 50 half-pitch characters),  is displayed.


When the Draft box contains five mail messages, you cannot reply to mail.

"Re:" is prefixed to the title of Reply and Reply with Quote i-mode mail. When the subject (including "Re:") exceeds 15 full-pitch characters, the excess part is deleted. (When the title of the received mail starts with "Re:", the title of your reply will be "Re2:". When the prefixes "Re2:" to "Re98:" have been used, the next prefixes will be "Re3:" to "Re99:").

Just one quotation mark (see page 292) is added to the beginning of the quote in the Reply with Quote i-mode mail.

The quotation marks are not added to each line of the text.

If the total of the quotation mark and the text exceeds 5,000 full-pitch characters, the display appears informing you that the number of characters exceeds the maximum. Then, the Message Entry display appears; you need to delete up to the specified number of characters.


When you reply quoting i-mode mail with a file attached, a warning tone sounds and the message "Attached file is deleted" is displayed. Press  to delete the file and display the Reply Mail display.

If the text of i-mode mail contains pasted data, this data cannot be quoted in your reply. Also, the pasted data cannot be quoted when using data link software or Ir exchange. See page 267 for pasted data.

If the text of Deco mail contains images that are prohibited from being attached to mail or being output from the FOMA phone to other devices, such images will be deleted when the reply is sent.

Forwarding Received i-mode Mail

You can forward the i-mode mail or Short Messages (SMS) to others.

1 Detailed Received Mail display  ()  Forward

2 Enter the address and send the mail.

Go to step 2 on page 235, or step 2 of "Composing Short Message (SMS) to Send" on page 301.

After you send mail, " " changes to ".

Information


You cannot paste headers, signatures or the quotation marks to Short Messages (SMS).

When the Draft box contains five mail messages, you cannot forward mail.

"Fw:" is prefixed to the title of i-mode mail to be forwarded. When the subject (including "Fw:") exceeds 15 full-pitch characters, the excess part is deleted. (When the title of the received mail starts with "Fw:", the title will be "Fw2:". When the prefixes "Fw2:" to "Fw98:" have been used, the next prefixes will be "Fw3." to "Fw99:").

You can add the text, edit it, and edit the subject. The i-mode mail to be forwarded can consist of the equivalent of 5,000 full-pitch or 10,000 half-pitch characters maximum, including the received message, added text, header, signature, and attached melodies or images, and images inserted in the text of message.

If the i-mode mail to be forwarded contains (as attachments or pasted in the text) melodies or images that are prohibited being output from the FOMA phone to other devices, the message appears to tell you that those files will be deleted.

Press  to delete the melodies or images, and the Mail Forwarding display appears.

If i-mode mail containing the image that is not downloaded from sites is forwarded, the information about the image is deleted.

If the text of i-mode mail contains pasted data, this data cannot be quoted in forwarded mail. Also, the pasted data cannot be quoted when using data link software or Ir exchange. See page 267 for pasted data.

Playing/Saving Attached Melodies

Play Melody

You can play attached or pasted melodies.

- 1** Detailed Sent Mail display/Detailed Received Mail display ▶ Select an attached or pasted melody ▶ 

Information

You cannot play back melodies during a call.

Save Data

You can save attached or pasted melodies and set them as ring tones.

When the sender's device is not the FOMA P700i/P901i, received melodies might not be played back successfully.

- 1** Detailed Sent Mail display/Detailed Received Mail display ▶ Select an attached or pasted melody ▶   (FUNC) ▶ Save data ▶ YES

Go to step 2 on page 209.

When multiple melodies are attached or pasted, use  to select the melody to be saved, and then proceed.

To cancel, select "NO" and press .

See page 212 when melodies are stored to the maximum.


Information

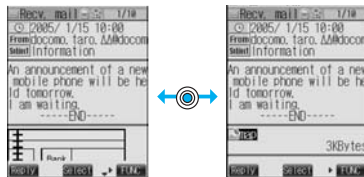
When multiple data items are pasted, they might not be displayed.

Displaying/Saving Attached Images


Display Image

1 Detailed Sent Mail display/Detailed Received Mail display ▶ Select an attached image ▶

Image display and file name display switches each time you press .




When you receive a JPEG image in excess of 10,000 bytes

When you receive i-mode mail attached with a JPEG image in excess of 10,000 bytes, the image is automatically acquired and saved to the "i-mode" folder. If "  image" appears, the image is not automatically acquired and it is stored at the i-shot Center. Download the image and save it to the "i-mode" folder.

1. Select "  image" and press .

Downloading the JPEG image in excess of 10,000 bytes starts. When the download is completed, the image is saved and then the Received Mail display returns.

To cancel midway, press and hold  for at least one second. However, you may not be able to stop downloading depending on the operation timing.

If downloaded data is invalid, "  " is displayed.

Information

If the size of the image is larger than that of the screen, it is displayed shrunk. However, too large image may not be displayed. Images inserted into the text of Deco mail are displayed automatically. Images attached to Deco mail are not displayed automatically. The image displayed from the i-mode mail and that from the Picture viewer might differ. To correctly display the image, you need to display the image saved to the "i-mode" folder using the Picture viewer. In this manual, some displays take file names instead of displaying image for illustrative purpose.

Save Data

You can save attached images, and set them as the Stand-by display and Wake-up display.

You do not need to operate this for JPEG images in excess of 10,000 bytes as they are saved when received.

1 Detailed Sent Mail display/Detailed Received Mail display ▶ Select an attached image ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Save data ▶ YES

Go to step 2 on page 208.

To cancel, select "NO" and press .

See page 212 when images are stored to the maximum.

Save Decoration Image

You can save the image inserted into the Deco Mail text, and set them as the Stand-by display and Wake-up display.

1 Detailed Sent Mail display/Detailed Received Mail display/Detailed Template display ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Save decor. image ▶ Select an image ▶ ▶ YES

Go to step 2 on page 208.

To cancel, select "NO" and press .

See page 212 when images are stored to the maximum.

Downloading an i-motion Movie from i-motion Mail

Download an i-motion movie

By selecting the URL in the received i-motion mail, you can download the i-motion movie held at the i-motion Mail Center and save it.

- 1   **Inbox**  **Select a folder**  
 **Select an i-motion mail** 






- 2 **Select a URL**   **YES**


Downloading an i-motion movie starts.

If "Automatic replay" is set to "ON", the i-motion movie is played back automatically after downloading.

If the i-motion movie can be played back during downloading, that i-motion movie is played back during downloading.



- 3 **Save**  **YES**  **Select the folder to which you want to save the data** 

To cancel, select "NO" and press press .

See page 212 when i-motion movies are stored to the maximum.

See page 353 for the i-motion folder.

Information

If multiple files are pasted, they might not be displayed.

You can forward or reply quoting a URL in the i-motion mail.

See pages 328 through 330 for details about downloading, playing back or saving an i-motion movie.

Displaying Mail from Inbox/Outbox/Draft Box

Displaying Mail from Inbox

You can save up to 1,000 received i-mode mail messages including Short Messages (SMS). You can check the received i-mode mail messages and Short Messages (SMS).

1 **Inbox**

You can display "Mail menu" also by pressing () from the Stand-by display. At purchase, you can select only the "Inbox" folder, "Chat" folder, and "Trash box".



<Inbox Folder List>

2 **Select a mail message**

When you select an unread mail message, "" changes to "".



<Inbox List>



<Detailed Received Mail display>

Use to check other mail messages.

When the mail text is long, you can use to scroll the display.

Also, you can press or to scroll by page.

When a melody is attached, it is played back automatically. (You can change this setting by "Auto melody play".)

Displaying Mail from Outbox

You can save a total of 400 sent i-mode mail messages and Short Messages (SMS).

You can check the sent i-mode mail and Short Messages (SMS).

1 **Outbox**

You can display "Mail menu" also by pressing () from the Stand-by display. At purchase, you can select only the "Outbox" folder and "Chat" folder.



<Outbox Folder List>

2 Select a mail message ▶



<Outbox List>



<Detailed Sent Mail display>

Use to check other mail messages.
 When the mail text is long, you can use to scroll the display.
 Also, you can press or to scroll by page.

Displaying Mail from Draft Box

You can edit draft i-mode mail and Short Messages (SMS) in “Draft” box, and send them.
 You can save a total of five messages including i-mode mail messages and Short Messages (SMS).

1 ▶ Draft

You can display “Mail menu” also by pressing () from the Stand-by display.



<Draft List>

2 Select a mail message ▶

Go to step 2 on page 235, or step 2 of “Composing Short Messages (SMS) to Send” on page 301.

Information

To display the inside of the folder set with Mail Security, enter the Terminal Security Code and press . However, when the “Inbox” or “Outbox” folder inside the mail menu is set with Mail security (see page 150), you do not need to enter the Terminal Security Code because the Terminal Security Code is required when you bring up the Inbox Folder List or Outbox Folder List.

Important

The saved contents may be lost due to a malfunction, repair, or other mishandling of the FOMA phone. We cannot be held responsible for the saved contents. For just in case, you are well advised to take notes of the contents stored in the FOMA phone, or save them to the miniSD memory card (see page 376). If you have a personal computer, you can also save them to the personal computer by using the FOMA USB Cable (option) and the Data Link Software (see page 519).

How to See Inbox/Outbox/Draft List and Detailed Display

Inbox Folder List



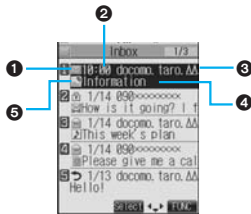
1 Folder status

Icon	Description
	Folder containing no unread mail
	Folder containing unread mail
	Mail Security-activated folder containing no unread mail
	Mail Security-activated folder containing unread mail
	i-oppli mail folder containing no unread mail
	i-oppli mail folder containing unread mail

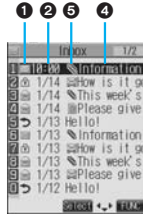
Icon	Description
	Mail Security-activated i-oppli mail folder containing no unread mail
	Mail Security-activated i-oppli mail folder containing unread mail
	Trash box folder
	Mail Security-activated Trash box folder

2 Folder name

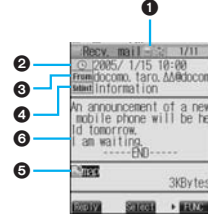
Inbox List and detailed Received Mail display



<Inbox List (2-lines display)>



<Inbox List (1-line display)>



<Detailed Received Mail display>

1 Mail status and type

Icon	Description
	Unread mail
	Read mail
	Forwarded mail
	Replied mail
	Unread and protected mail
	Read and protected mail

Icon	Description
	Forwarded and protected mail
	Replied and protected mail
	Mail received as To-type
	Mail received as Cc-type
	Mail received as Bcc-type

2 Received date and time

The Inbox List shows the time for the mail received today, and shows the date for the mail received up to previous day. The detailed display shows the date and time the mail was received.

3 Sender's and recipient's phone numbers or mail addresses

When the phone number or mail address is stored in the Phonebook, the name stored in the Phonebook is displayed. (See page 271)

Icon	Description
	Sender's address (Detailed display only)
	Sender's address that cannot be replied to (Detailed display only)

Icon	Description
	Recipient's mail addresses of simultaneous mail (Detailed display only)
	Recipient's mail addresses of simultaneous mail that cannot be replied to (Detailed display only)

4 Subject

For Short Messages (SMS), the beginning of the text is displayed. (Indicated by "SMS" in the detailed display.)

Icon	Description
	Short Message (SMS)
	Short Message (SMS) stored in UIM.

⑤ Appears when a melody, image, i-appli, JPEG image in excess of 10,000 bytes has been attached or pasted, or when it is i-motion mail or i-appli mail.

Appears even when the attached or pasted data is invalid.

The detailed display shows the data volume of the attached or pasted data.

<For Inbox List (2-lines display) and detailed Received Mail display>

Icon	Description
	A melody is attached or pasted.
	Multiple melodies are attached or pasted and some of them are invalid. Also displayed when they have been deleted by "添付ファイル削除 (attachment deleted)". (list only)
	All attached or pasted melodies are invalid. Also displayed when they have been deleted by "添付ファイル削除 (attachment deleted)". (list only)
	An image is attached.
	Multiple images are attached, and some of them are invalid. Also displayed when they have been deleted by "添付ファイル削除 (attachment deleted)". (list only)
	All attached images are invalid. Also displayed when they have been deleted by "添付ファイル削除 (attachment deleted)". (list only)
	i-appli launch information is pasted. (list only)
	A JPEG image in excess of 10,000 bytes is attached.
	An attached JPEG image in excess of 10,000 bytes is invalid. Also displayed when it has been deleted by "添付ファイル削除 (attachment deleted)". (list only)
	An undownloaded JPEG image in excess of 10,000 bytes is attached. (list only)
	Data of undownloaded JPEG image in excess of 10,000 bytes attachment is invalid.
	An undownloaded JPEG image in excess of 10,000 bytes is attached. (detailed display only)
	A URL of the i-motion movie is indicated. (detailed display only)
	Multiple data items have been pasted.
	Data set with the UIM restrictions is attached.
	i-appli mail (list only)
	A melody has been deleted by "添付ファイル削除 (attachment deleted)". (detailed display only)
	An image has been deleted by "添付ファイル削除 (attachment deleted)". (detailed display only)
	A JPEG image in excess of 10,000 bytes has been deleted by "添付ファイル削除 (attachment deleted)". (detailed display only)

<For Inbox List (1-line display)>

Icon	Description
	One or multiple melodies or images are attached.
	Multiple melodies or images are attached, and some of them are invalid.
	Multiple melodies or images are attached and all of them are invalid.
	One or multiple files which contain JPEG image in excess of 10,000 bytes are attached.
	Multiple files which contain JPEG image in excess of 10,000 bytes are attached, and some of them are invalid.
	Multiple files which contain JPEG image in excess of 10,000 bytes are attached, and all of them are invalid.
	Data set with the UIM restrictions is attached.
	i-appli mail

⑥ Text of mail

Outbox Folder List

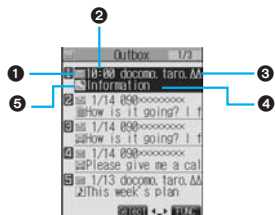


1 Folder status

Icon	Description
	Ordinary folder
	Mail security-activated folder
	Ordinary i-appli mail folder
	Mail security-activated i-appli mail folder

2 Folder name

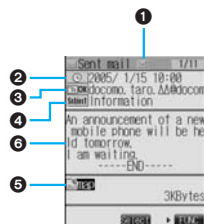
Outbox List and detailed Sent Mail display



<Outbox List (2-lines display)>



<Outbox List (1-line display)>



<Detailed Sent Mail display>

1 Mail status

Icon	Description
	Successfully sent mail
	Unsuccessfully sent mail
	Simultaneous mail successfully sent to all addresses
	Simultaneous mail sent to part of addresses
	Simultaneous mail unsuccessfully sent to all addresses
	Protected mail successfully sent

Icon	Description
	Protected mail failed to send
	Protected simultaneous mail successfully sent to all addresses
	Protected simultaneous mail sent to part of addresses
	Protected simultaneous mail failed to send to all addresses

2 Sent date and time

The Outbox List shows the time for the mail sent today, and shows the date for the mail sent up to previous day.

The detailed display shows the date and time the mail was sent.

3 Recipient's phone numbers or mail addresses

When the phone number or mail address is stored in the Phonebook, the name stored in the Phonebook is displayed.

(See page 271)

Icon	Description
	Mail address successfully sent as To-type mail (Detailed display only)
	Mail address successfully sent as Cc-type mail (Detailed display only)
	Mail address successfully sent as Bcc-type mail (Detailed display only)
	Mail address failed to send as To-type mail (Detailed display only)
	Mail address failed to send as Cc-type mail (Detailed display only)
	Mail address failed to send as Bcc-type mail (Detailed display only)

3 Subject

















For Short Messages (SMS), the beginning of the text is displayed. (Indicated by "SMS" in the detailed display.)

Icon	Description
	Short Message (SMS)
	Short Message (SMS) stored in UIM
	Mail with SMS report [List (2-lines display) and the detailed display only]









⑤ Appears when a melody, image, JPEG image in excess of 10,000 bytes or i-motion movie has been attached.

The detailed display shows the data volume of the attached data.

<For Outbox List (2-lines display) and detailed Sent Mail display>

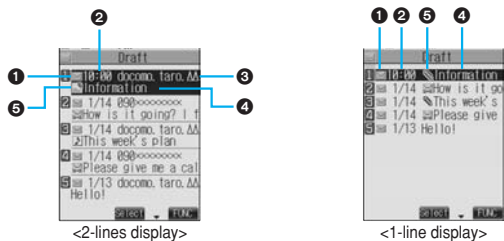
Icon	Description
	A melody is attached.
	Multiple melodies are attached and some of the melodies have been deleted by “添付ファイル削除 (attachment deleted)”. (list only)
	All attached melodies have been deleted by “添付ファイル削除 (attachment deleted)”. (list only)
	An image is attached.
	Multiple images are attached and some of the images have been deleted by “添付ファイル削除 (attachment deleted)”. (list only)
	All attached images have been deleted by “添付ファイル削除 (attachment deleted)”. (list only)
	A JPEG image in excess of 10,000 bytes is attached.
	An attached JPEG image in excess of 10,000 bytes has been deleted by “添付ファイル削除 (attachment deleted)”. (list only)
	An i-motion movie is attached.
	An attached i-motion movie has been deleted by “添付ファイル削除 (attachment deleted)”. (list only)
	Data set with the UIM restrictions is attached.
	i-appli mail (list only)
	A melody has been deleted by “添付ファイル削除 (attachment deleted)”. (detailed display only)
	An image has been deleted by “添付ファイル削除 (attachment deleted)”. (detailed display only)
	A JPEG image in excess of 10,000 bytes has been deleted by “添付ファイル削除 (attachment deleted)”. (detailed display only)
	An i-motion movie has been deleted by “添付ファイル削除 (attachment deleted)”. (detailed display only)

<For Outbox List (1-line display)>

Icon	Description
	One or multiple melodies or images are attached.
	Multiple melodies or images are attached and some of the files have been deleted by “添付ファイル削除 (attachment deleted)”.
	Multiple melodies or images are attached and all the files have been deleted by “添付ファイル削除 (attachment deleted)”.
	One or multiple files which contain a JPEG image in excess of 10,000 bytes or i-motion movie are attached.
	Multiple files including i-motion movie and JPEG image in excess of 10,000 bytes are attached and part of the files has been deleted by “添付ファイル削除 (attachment deleted)”.
	Multiple files including i-motion movie and JPEG image in excess of 10,000 bytes are attached and all the files have been deleted by “添付ファイル削除 (attachment deleted)”.
	Data set with UIM restrictions is attached.
	i-appli mail

⑥ Text of mail

Draft List



1 Mail status

Icon	Description
	Draft mail
	Draft simultaneous mail

2 Saved date and time

The Draft List shows the time for the mail saved today, and shows the date for the mail saved up to previous day.

3 Recipient's phone numbers or mail addresses

When the phone number or mail address is stored in the Phonebook, the name stored in the Phonebook is displayed.
(See page 271)

4 Subject

For Short Messages (SMS), the beginning of the text is displayed.

Icon	Description
	Short Message (SMS)

5 Appears when a melody, image, JPEG image in excess of 10,000 bytes or i-motion movie has been attached.

<For 2-lines display>

Icon	Description
	A melody is attached.
	An image is attached.
	A JPEG image in excess of 10,000 bytes is attached.
	An i-motion movie is attached.
	Data set with UIM restrictions is attached.

<For 1-line display>

Icon	Description
	One or multiple melodies or images are attached.
	One or multiple files which contain a JPEG image in excess of 10,000 bytes or i-motion movie are attached.
	Data set with UIM restrictions is attached.

Information

If the clock of the FOMA phone is not set, the time and date of the sent mail or draft mail are displayed as "--:--" and "--/--".

When the subject field of i-mode mail is empty, this is indicated by "No title".

For i-mode mail with an image attached, you can select the image from the detailed Received Mail display or the detailed Sent Mail display, and then press to switch between the image display and the file name display. In this manual, the file name display is used for some explanations.

Names (of senders) displayed on received mail messages

Depending on the Phonebook contents, mail addresses are displayed by name on the received mail messages.

Contents of Phonebook	Data entry field	
	Phone number	Mail address
Phone number (Minimum of 11 digits starting with 0) Example: 090XXXXXXXX		
Alphanumeric (except @docomo.ne.jp) Example: abc1234 ~ 789xyz	-	×
Phone number@docomo.ne.jp Example: 090XXXXXXXX@docomo.ne.jp	-	×
Alphanumeric@docomo.ne.jp Example: abc1234@docomo.ne.jp	-	
Phone number @ . .ne.jp (when part after “@” is other than “docomo.ne.jp”) Example: 090XXXXXXXX@ . .ne.jp	-	
Mail addresses other than above	-	

-Displayed by name.
 - ×Not displayed by name.
 -Cannot store.
- Displayed by name if you have stored phone numbers only.

Names (of recipients) displayed on sent mail messages

When the mail addresses of recipients correspond to the Phonebook contents, they are displayed by names.

Information

When a sender's/recipient's phone number or mail address matches a secret Phonebook entry, the name is not displayed. It is displayed only in Secret Mode or Secret Only Mode.
Even when a sender's/recipient's phone number or mail address matches an unsecret Phonebook entry, you cannot display the name in Secret Only Mode. Switch to Secret Mode or release Secret Only Mode to display the name.

Managing Mail Messages















Function Menu of the Inbox Folder List

1 Inbox Folder List ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Do the following operation.



<Inbox Folder List>

Function menu	Operations
Add folder	<p>You can add a new folder. If you set “Auto-sort” for the newly added folder, you can sort messages from the specified addresses or phone numbers into it. You can add up to 22 folders in addition to the “Inbox” folder, “Outbox” folder, “Chat” folder, “Trash box” folder, and i-appli mail folder.</p> <p>▶ Enter the folder name ▶ (FUNC)</p> <p>You can enter up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters. See page 482 for how to enter characters.</p>
Auto-sort	You can set Auto-sort. (See page 284)

Function menu	Operations
Edit folder name	<p>▶ Edit the folder name ▶ </p> <p>You can enter up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters. See page 482 for how to enter characters.</p>
Mail security	<p>You can set the folder not to be displayed unless you enter the Terminal Security Code.</p> <p>▶ Enter the Terminal Security Code ▶  ▶ YES</p> <p>The folder switches to " ". To cancel, select "NO" and press . See page 140 for the Terminal Security Code. Do the same operation to release.</p>
Delete folder	<p>You can delete a folder. All mail in the folder will be deleted as well.</p> <p>▶ Enter the Terminal Security Code ▶  ▶ YES</p> <p>To cancel, select "NO" and press . See page 140 for the Terminal Security Code. When the folder is set with "Auto-sort", the confirmation display appears asking whether to delete the folder. Select "YES" and press . To cancel, select "NO" and press .</p>
Sort folder	<p>You can sort the order of the folders you have selected. You can sort the order of added folders only.</p> <p>▶ Sort the order of folders using  ▶ </p>
Memory info	<p>Received mail</p> <p>All .....Total messages in all Inbox folders Unread.....Total unread messages in all Inbox folders Protected .....Total protected messages in all Inbox folders</p> <p>Sent mail</p> <p>All .....Total messages in all Outbox folders Protected .....Total protected messages in all Outbox folders</p> <p>UIM</p> <p>Received .....Total received Short Messages (SMS) in UIM Sent .....Total sent Short Messages (SMS) in UIM Includes the Short Messages (SMS) stored in the UIM, and the messages in the respective folders. After checking, press .</p>
Open folder	<p>You can display mail messages in a folder. You can display mail in i-appli mail folder without running mail-linked i-appli by executing "Open folder".</p>
Send all Ir data	<p>You can send all data items using infrared rays. (See page 389)</p>
Delete read (Delete all read)	<p>You can delete all read messages in all Inbox folders. All read Short Messages (SMS) in the UIM will be deleted as well.</p> <p>▶ YES</p> <p>To cancel, select "NO" and press .</p>
Delete all (Delete all in Inbox)	<p>You can delete all messages in all Inbox folders. All received Short Messages (SMS) in the UIM will be deleted as well.</p> <p>▶ Enter the Terminal Security Code ▶  ▶ YES</p> <p>To cancel, select "NO" and press . See page 140 for the Terminal Security Code.</p>

Information

<Add folder>

The folder for i-αppli mail is automatically created if you download mail-linked i-αppli.

<Edit folder name>

You cannot edit the name of the "Inbox" folder, "Outbox" folder, "Chat" folder, "Trash box" folder, and i-αppli mail folder.

<Mail security>

You can neither delete the Mail security-activated folder nor edit its name.

<Delete folder>

When messages within the folder are protected or set with the mail security, you cannot delete that folder. Release the protection or release the mail security and then delete the folder.

You cannot delete an i-αppli mail folder if corresponding mail-linked i-αppli exists. If the software does not exist, you can delete the i-αppli mail folder, but this will delete both folders created in the Outbox Folder List and Inbox Folder List.

If you delete the folder set with "Auto-sort", the Auto-sort setting for that folder is released.

<Sort folder>

You cannot sort the "Inbox" folder, "Outbox" folder, "Chat" folder, and "Trash box" folder. You cannot execute "Sort folder" while you are selecting any of these folders.

You cannot execute "Sort folder" when you have a single folder only.

<Delete read (Delete all read)>

Protected read i-mode mail and Short Messages (SMS) are not deleted.

<Delete all (Delete all in Inbox)>

Unread mail is also deleted. Protected i-mode mail and Short Messages (SMS) are not deleted.

Function Menu of the Inbox List

1 Inbox List



(FUNC)



























Do the following operation.



<Inbox List>

Function menu	Operations
Move	<p>You can move the mail to other folders.</p> <p>▶ Select the destination folder ▶ ▶ Put a check mark for the mail to be moved</p> <p>▶ (FINISH) ▶ YES</p> <p>"" and "" switch each time you press . You can check or uncheck all items by pressing (FUNC) and selecting "Select all/Release all".</p> <p>To cancel, select "NO" and press .</p>
Search mail (Search sender ¹) (Search receiver ²)	<p>You can look up the mail from the sender's or receiver's mail addresses and phone numbers.</p> <p>▶ Search sender ¹ or Search receiver ²</p> <p>Phonebook.....Looks up from the Phonebook. Go to step 2 on page 236.</p> <p>Received address.....Looks up from Received Address. Go to step 2 on page 236.</p> <p>Sent address.....Looks up from Sent Address. Go to step 2 on page 236.</p> <p>Enter address .....Enter the mail address or phone number and then press .</p> <p>You can enter up to 50 half-pitch characters.</p> <p>See page 482 for how to enter characters.</p> <p>1 Displayed on the Inbox List.</p> <p>2 Displayed on the Outbox List.</p>
Search mail (Search subject)	<p>You can look up the mail from the subject.</p> <p>▶ Search subject ▶ Enter the subject ▶ </p> <p>You can enter up to 15 full-pitch or 30 half-pitch characters.</p> <p>See page 482 for how to enter characters.</p>
Display all	<p>You can use this function to display all mail in "Chronological" order after executing Mail Search, the Sort function or Filter function.</p>

Function menu	Operations
Sort	<p>You can change the order of displayed mail.</p> <p>Chronological .....Sorts chronologically from the most recent item.</p> <p>Chronological .....Sorts chronologically from the oldest item.</p> <p>By address .....Sorts by receiver's or sender's addresses in numeric and then alphabetic order (ascending).</p> <p>By address .....Sorts by receiver's or sender's addresses in alphabetic and then numeric order (descending).</p> <p>By subject .....Sorts by subject, in order from no subject, numerals, letters of the alphabet, katakana, hiragana, kanji and pictographs (ascending).</p> <p>By subject .....Sorts by subject, in order from pictographs, kanji, hiragana, katakana, letters of the alphabet, numerals and no subject (descending).</p>
Filter	<p>You can change the type of displayed mail. You can set the type of mail up to three times in succession.</p> <p>Unread ¹ ².....Displays unread mail only.</p> <p>Read ¹ ².....Displays read mail only.</p> <p>Protected ².....Displays protected mail only.</p> <p>Melody.....Displays only mail with melodies attached.</p> <p>Image.....Displays only mail with images pasted or attached.</p> <p>i motion.....Displays only mail with an i-motion movie attached (indicated with .</p> <p>i appli ¹.....Displays only mail with i-appli auto start information pasted.</p> <p>SMS.....Displays only Short Messages (SMS) and SMS report.</p> <p>Failed ³.....Displays only mail that was not sent successfully.</p> <p>1 Cannot be displayed when the Outbox List is selected.</p> <p>2 Cannot be selected when the "Trash box" folder is selected from the Inbox List.</p> <p>3 Cannot be displayed when the Inbox List is selected.</p>
List setting	<p>You can switch between the name stored in the Phonebook and the mail address/phone number for when displaying the sender of mail or the destination.</p> <p><2-lines display></p> <p>Name.....Displays the name stored in the Phonebook.</p> <p>Address.....Displays the mail address or phone number.</p> <p><1-line display></p> <p>Subject.....Displays the title.</p> <p>Name.....Displays the name stored in the Phonebook.</p> <p>Address.....Displays the mail address or phone number.</p>
Read all	<p>You can change unread mail in the folder to read mail.</p> <p>▶ YES</p> <p>To cancel, select "NO" and press .</p>
Protect ON/OFF	<p>You can protect mail so that it is not overwritten and deleted.</p> <p>You can protect a maximum of 500 received mail messages and a maximum of 200 sent mail messages (total of Short Messages (SMS) and i-mode mail).</p> <p>Protected mail is indicated by ".</p> <p>Do the same operation to unprotect.</p>
Unprotect all	<p>You can release protection for all protected.</p> <p>▶ YES</p> <p>To cancel, select "NO" and press .</p>
Send Ir data	You can send a single data item using infrared rays. (See page 388)
Export	You can export a single data item to the miniSD memory card. (See page 382)
UIM operation	You can copy or move data to the UIM or FOMA phone. (See page 420)
Mail info	<p>You can check the sender's mail address or phone number, reception date/time, and subject.</p> <p>After checking, press .</p>

Function menu	Operations
No. of messages	<p>Received mail</p> <p>In folder .....Total of messages in a folder. ¹</p> <p>Unread.....Total of unread messages in a folder. ¹</p> <p>Protected .....Total of protected messages in a folder.</p> <p>Sent mail</p> <p>In folder .....Total of messages in a folder. ²</p> <p>Protected .....Total of protected messages in a folder.</p> <p>Draft</p> <p>All .....Total of messages in the Draft box.</p> <p>UIM</p> <p>Received .....Total of received Short Messages (SMS) in the UIM.</p> <p>Sent .....Total of sent Short Messages (SMS) in the UIM.</p> <p>¹ When you select the "Inbox" folder, the count includes the Short Messages (SMS) stored in the UIM.</p> <p>² When you select the "Outbox" folder, the count includes the Short Messages (SMS) stored in the UIM.</p> <p>After checking, press .</p>
Move trash box	<p>You can move the mail to the "Trash box" folder. Mail messages moved to the "Trash box" folder are preferentially overwritten (deleted).</p> <p>▶Put check marks for messages to be moved to the trash box  (Finish) ▶YES</p> <p>"" and "" switch each time you press . You can check or uncheck all items by pressing  (FUNC) and selecting "Select all/Release all".</p> <p>To cancel, select "NO" and press .</p>
Delete	<p>▶YES</p> <p>To cancel, select "NO" and press .</p>
Delete selected	<p>▶Put check marks for messages to be deleted  (Finish) ▶YES</p> <p>"" and "" switch each time you press . You can check or uncheck all items by pressing  (FUNC) and selecting "Select all/Release all".</p> <p>To cancel, select "NO" and press .</p>
Delete read	<p>You can delete the read mail in a folder.</p> <p>▶YES</p> <p>To cancel, select "NO" and press .</p>
Delete all SMS-R	<p>You can delete all the SMS reports.</p> <p>▶Enter the Terminal Security Code  ▶YES</p> <p>To cancel, select "NO" and press .</p> <p>See page 140 for the Terminal Security Code.</p>
Delete all	<p>You can delete all messages in a folder.</p> <p>▶Enter the Terminal Security Code  ▶YES</p> <p>To cancel, select "NO" and press .</p> <p>See page 140 for the Terminal Security Code.</p>

Information

<Move>

You cannot move to the "Trash box" folder.

You cannot move Short Messages (SMS) or SMS reports stored in the UIM.

<Search mail>

You can further search for the retrieval result.

You can use the Filter and Sort functions together.

To return to the former status, execute "Display all".

Even if you specify "No title" in title subject search, you cannot search for i-mode mail message listed as "No title" with no title entered.

<Sort>

You can use the Filter and Sort functions together.

To return to the former status, execute "Display all".

If you close the sorted list and display it again, it will return to the list of "Display all".

<Filter>

The selectable Filter functions for the Inbox differ from those for the Outbox.

If you close the filtered list and display it again, it will return to the list of "Display all". You can also return by executing "Display all".

<List setting>

You can also switch among "Subject", "Name", and "Address" by pressing **(H*)** from the Inbox List, Outbox List or Draft List.

<Read all>

If you execute "Read all" after displaying mail using the Search Mail function or Filter function, only the displayed mail will be changed to read mail.

<Protect ON/OFF>

When the number of received messages or sent messages in the FOMA phone (total of Short Messages (SMS) and i-mode mail) reaches the maximum, unprotected and read messages are overwritten from the oldest one.

You cannot protect Short Messages (SMS) stored in the UIM.

You cannot protect messages in the "Trash box" folder.

<Unprotect all>

If you execute "Unprotect all" after displaying mail using the Search Mail function or Filter function, only the displayed mail will be unprotected.

<Move trash box>

You cannot move protected mail, Short Messages (SMS) stored in the UIM and SMS reports to the Trash box.

If you move unread mail to the Trash box, it will be changed to read mail.

If you execute "Move trash box" after displaying mail using the Search Mail function or Filter function, only the displayed mail can be moved to the Trash box.

<Delete>

You can delete unread i-mode mail and Short Messages (SMS).

You cannot delete protected i-mode mail and Short Messages (SMS).

<Delete selected>

You cannot select protected i-mode mail and Short Messages (SMS).

<Delete read>

You cannot delete all protected read i-mode mail and Short Messages (SMS).

<Delete all SMS-R>

You cannot delete protected SMS reports.

If you execute "Delete all SMS-R" after displaying SMS reports using the Search Mail function or Filter function, only the displayed SMS reports will be deleted.

<Delete all>

You can also delete unread i-mode mail and Short Messages (SMS).

You cannot delete protected i-mode mail and Short Messages (SMS).











Function Menu of the Detailed Received Mail Display



1 Detailed Received Mail display (FUNC)

▶ Do the following operation.



<Detailed Received Mail display>

Function menu	Operations
Reply	You can reply to mail. (See page 259)
Reply with quote	You can reply to mail with quote. (See page 259)
View Kirari mail	You can check Kirari mail. (See page 256)
Forward	You can forward mail. (See page 260)
Protect ON/OFF	You can protect mail. (See page 274)
Move	You can move mail to other folders. ▶ Select the destination folder  
Copy	Message .....Copies the text. Subject .....Copies the subject of the message. Address .....Copies the address or phone number. See page 497 for how to copy. If there are multiple senders (and recipients of simultaneous mail) or destinations, use  to select the mail address or phone number to be copied, and press  .
Store address	You can store the sender (and recipients of simultaneous mail) in the Phonebook. (See page 97)
Add to phonebook	You can store data in the Phonebook. (See page 97)
Save data	You can save data. (See pages 261, 262)
Save decor. image	You can save the image inserted into the text. (See page 262)
Add desktop icon	You can paste the icon of the sender's address-entered mail to the desktop. (See page 134)
Save template	You can save the sent/received Deco mail as a template. ▶ YES See page 210 when the templates are stored to the maximum. To cancel, select "NO" and press  .
Property	You can display the file name and size of the image inserted into the text. ▶ Select an image   After checking, press  .
URL	You can display the URL of the JPEG image in excess of 10,000 bytes, which is pasted to i-mode mail. You can display up to 200 half-pitch characters. After checking, select "OK" and press  .
Chat mail	You can store the sender's mail address as a chat mail member and Chat Mail starts. Go to step 2 on page 293.
Send Ir data	You can send a single data item using infrared rays. (See page 388)
Export	You can export a single data item to the miniSD memory card. (See page 382)
UIM operation	You can copy or move mail to the UIM or FOMA phone. (See page 420)
Scroll	You can set the number of the lines that are scrolled. (See page 290)
Font size	You can change the size of font. (See page 290)
Delete att. file	▶ YES To cancel, select "NO" and press  .

Function menu	Operations
Move to trash	You can move mail to the "Trash box" folder. Mail messages moved to the "Trash box" folder are preferentially overwritten (deleted). ▶ YES To cancel, select "NO" and press  .
Delete	▶ YES To cancel, select "NO" and press  .

Information

<Reply><Reply with quote><Forward>


If you copy the Deco mail text while composing, the information about the decoration is also copied.

<Move>

You cannot move to the "Trash box" folder.

You cannot move Short Messages (SMS) or SMS reports stored in the UIM.

<URL>

You can display the URL when "  image" is displayed.

<Delete att. file>

You cannot delete the data pasted to the text of mail.

< Move to trash >



You cannot move protected mail, Short Messages (SMS) inside the UIM, or SMS reports to the "Trash box".

Function Menu of the Outbox Folder List

1 Outbox Folder List ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Do the following operation.



<Outbox Folder List>

Function menu	Operations
Add folder	You can add a new folder. (See page 271)
Auto-sort	You can set Auto-sort. (See page 284)
Edit folder name	You can edit the folder name. (See page 272)
Mail security	You can set the Mail security. (See page 272)
Delete folder	You can delete the folder. (See page 272)
Sort folder	You can sort the folder. (See page 272)
Memory info	You can check the number of stored messages. (See page 272)
Open folder	You can display mail in a folder. You can display mail in i-appli mail folder without running mail-linked i-appli by executing "Open folder".
Send all Ir data	You can send all data items using infrared rays. (See page 389)
Delete all (Delete all in Outbox)	You can delete all messages in all folders for Outbox. All sent Short Messages (SMS) in the UIM will also be deleted. ▶ Enter the Terminal Security Code ▶  ▶ YES To cancel, select "NO" and press  . See page 140 for the Terminal Security Code.

Information

<Delete all (Delete all in Outbox)>

You cannot delete protected i-mode mail or Short Messages (SMS).

Function Menu of the Detailed Sent Mail Display

1 Detailed Sent Mail display ▶ (i) (FUNC) ▶ Do the following operation.



<Detailed Sent Mail display>

Function menu	Operations
Edit	You can re-edit sent mail and send it again. Go to step 2 on page 235, or step 2 of "Composing Short Messages (SMS) to Send" on page 301.
Resend	You can resend sent mail. ▶ YES
View Kirari mail	You can check Kirari mail. (See page 256)
Move	You can move mail to other folders. (See page 277)
Copy	You can copy such as the text. (See page 277)
Store address	You can store the destination address in the Phonebook. (See page 97)
Add to phonebook	You can store data in the Phonebook. (See page 97)
Save data	You can save data. (See pages 261, 262)
Save decor. image	You can save the image inserted into the text. (See page 262)
Add desktop icon	You can paste the icon of the recipient's address-entered mail to the desktop. (See page 134)
Save template	You can save data items as templates. (See page 277)
Protect ON/OFF	You can protect mail. (See page 274)
Property	You can display the property. (See page 277)
Display SMS report	You can check the results of the Short Message (SMS) you have sent, or the time it has arrived at the destination. To receive the SMS report, set "SMS report request" to "ON".
Send Ir data	You can send a single data item using infrared rays. (See page 388)
Export	You can export a single data item to the miniSD memory card. (See page 382)
UIM operation	You can copy or move mail to the UIM or FOMA phone. (See page 420)
Scroll	You can set the number of the lines that are scrolled. (See page 290)
Font size	You can change the size of font. (See page 290)
Delete att. file	You can delete attached files. (See page 277)
Delete	▶ YES To cancel, select "NO" and press (O).

Information

<Resend>

If you re-send the mail you failed to send, it is saved as sent mail. Also, if you re-send the mail that you failed to send simultaneously to all addresses, it is saved as sent mail.

<Display SMS report>

If there is no SMS report for the selected message, you cannot use this function.







Even if you have set "SMS report request" to "ON", a SMS report cannot be provided for any undelivered message (message that could not be sent).

Function Menu of the Draft List

1 Draft List (**FUNC**) Do the following operation.



<Draft List>


Function menu	Operations
List setting	You can switch the setting of List. (See page 274)
Send Ir data	You can send a single data item using infrared rays. (See page 388)
Send all Ir data	You can send all data items using infrared rays. (See page 389)
Export	You can export a single data item to the miniSD memory card. (See page 382)
No. of messages	You can check the number of stored messages. (See page 275)
Delete	<p> YES</p> <p>To cancel, select "NO" and press .</p>
Delete selected	You can delete multiple selected messages. (See page 275)
Delete all	<p> Enter the Terminal Security Code   YES</p> <p>To cancel, select "NO" and press .</p> <p>See page 140 for the Terminal Security Code.</p>


<Sent Address>

Displaying Sent Mail Record

When you send i-mode mail or Short Messages (SMS), these transmissions are recorded up to 30 items in Sent Address, so you can use this to check the destination mail addresses and phone numbers. When you sent to the same mail address or phone number, the old data is deleted.

1 Dialed calls (**FUNC**) Sent address

You can also bring up the Sent Address List after bringing up the Redial List by pressing  from the Stand-by display.


You can also bring up the Sent Address List by pressing and holding  for at least one second from the Stand-by display.

The latest data is displayed on top.

Press  (Change) from the Sent Address List to display the Redial List or the Dialed Call List.

Indicates Short Message (SMS) that was sent successfully.

Indicates i-mode mail that was sent successfully.

Indicates Short Message (SMS) that was not sent successfully.


Indicates i-mode mail that was not sent successfully.



<Sent Address List>

2 Select the record to be displayed

When the other party's mail address or phone number is stored in the Phonebook, the mail address or phone number, name, and icon are displayed.

To send mail to the displayed address or phone number, press . Go to step 3 on page 235 or step 3 of "Composing Short Message (SMS) to Send" on page 301 .

To store in the Phonebook, press  (Store). Go to step 2 on page 97.



<Detailed Sent Address display>












Information

You cannot display the record when "Redial/Dialed calls" of "Record display set" is set to "OFF".

When "PIM lock", "Keypad dial lock", or "Restrict dialing" is activated, the addresses in the Sent Address List up to that point are all deleted. Data recorded after "PIM lock", "Keypad dial lock", or "Restrict dialing" is activated is all retained.

Function Menu of the Sent Address List/Detailed Sent Address Display

- 1** Sent Address List/Detailed Sent Address display  (**FUNC**)
 ▶ Do the following operation.

Function menu	Operations
Add to phonebook	You can store data in the Phonebook. (See page 97)
Add desktop icon	You can paste the icon of the recipient's address-entered mail to the desktop. (See page 134)
Compose message	You can compose i-mode mail message. The mail address is entered in the address field. Go to step 3 on page 235.
Compose SMS	You can compose the Short Message (SMS). The phone number is entered into the address field. Go to step 3 of "Composing Short Messages (SMS) to Send" on page 301.
Dialing	<p>If a mail address has been stored in the Phonebook, you can dial the phone number stored in the Phonebook.</p> <p>Voice phone .....Dials a voice call. 32K V-phone .....Dials a 32K video-phone call. 64K V-phone .....Dials a 64K video-phone call. Select image .....Select an image to send to the other party during a video-phone call from "Me" or "Chara-den". To release the setting for "Me" and "Chara-den", select "Release".</p> <p>When multiple phone numbers are stored in a Phonebook entry, you can dial the first phone number.</p> <p>▶ Dial To make an international call, select "International dial" and press . (See step 2 on page 52) To cancel, select "Cancel" and press . To set Caller ID, select "Notify caller ID" and press . Select "Don't notify" or "Notify caller". If you select "Dial" and press , the setting by "Activate" of "Caller ID notification" works.</p>
Dialed calls	You can display the Redial List or the Dialed Call List.
Delete this	▶ YES To cancel, select "NO" and press  .
Delete selected	▶ Put check marks for the records to be deleted  (finish) ▶ YES " <input type="checkbox"/> " and " <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> " switch each time you press  . You can check or uncheck all items by pressing  (FUNC) and selecting "Select all/Release all". To cancel, select "NO" and press  .
Delete all	▶ Enter the Terminal Security Code  ▶ YES To cancel, select "NO" and press  . See page 140 for the Terminal Security Code.

Displaying Received Mail Record

When you receive i-mode mail and Short Messages (SMS), these transmissions are recorded up to 30 items in Received Address, so you can use this to check the sender's addresses and phone numbers. When mail comes in from the same mail address or phone number, the old data is deleted.

1 Received calls ▶ All calls ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Received address

If you have selected "Missed calls", you can bring up the Received Address List by performing same procedure. You can bring up the Received Address List also by pressing and holding (C) for at least one second from the Stand-by display.

The latest data is displayed on top.

Press (M) (Phone) from the Received Address List to bring up the Received Call Record List.

(SMS)Indicates a Short Message (SMS).

(M)Indicates i-mode mail.



<Received Address List>

2 Select the record to be displayed ▶ (C)

When the other party's mail address or phone number is stored in the Phonebook, the mail address or phone number, name, and icon are displayed.

With Short Message (SMS) for which the other party's phone number is not notified, the reason for No Caller ID is displayed.

To send mail to the displayed address or phone number, press (C).

Go to step 3 on page 235 or step 3 of "Composing Short Message (SMS) to Send" on page 301.

To store in the Phonebook, press (M) (Store). Go to step 2 on page 97.



<Detailed Received Address display>

Information

You cannot display the record when "Received calls" or "Record display set" is set to "OFF".

When "PIM lock" or "Keypad dial lock" is activated, the addresses in the Sent Address List up to that point are all deleted. Data after "PIM lock" or "Keypad dial lock" is set is all retained.

Function Menu of the Received Address List/Detailed Received Address Display

1 Received Address List/Detailed Received Address display ▶ (i) (FUNC) ▶ Do the following operation.

Function menu	Operations
Add to phonebook	You can store data in the Phonebook. (See page 97)
Add desktop icon	You can paste the icon of the sender's address-entered mail to the desktop. (See page 134)
Compose message	You can compose i-mode mail message. The mail address is entered in the address field. Go to step 3 on page 235.
Compose SMS	You can compose the Short Message (SMS). The phone number is entered into the address field. Go to step 3 of "Composing Short Message (SMS) to Send" on page 301.
Dialing	You can make a call. (See page 282)
Received calls	You can display the Received Call Record List.
Delete this	▶ YES To cancel, select "NO" and press (C).
Delete selected	▶ Put check marks for the records to be deleted ▶ (M) (Finish) ▶ YES "☐" and "☑" switch each time you press (C). You can check or uncheck all items by pressing (i) (FUNC) and selecting "Select all/Release all". To cancel, select "NO" and press (C).

Function menu	Operations
Delete all	<p>▶ Enter the Terminal Security Code ▶ ▶ YES</p> <p>To cancel, select "NO" and press .</p> <p>See page 140 for the Terminal Security Code.</p>

Information

<Received calls>

"All calls" (all received call records) is displayed by this function.

<Auto-Sort>

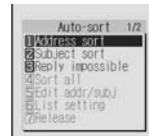
Sorting Mail Automatically to Each Folder

You can save mail that matches a set condition automatically to the specified folder.

To use this function, you need to add a new folder to the "Outbox Folder List" or "Inbox Folder List" beforehand.

1 Outbox Folder List/Inbox Folder List (FUNC) ▶ Auto-sort

Follow the operation of the Function menu list on page 285 to set "Auto-sort".



<Auto-sort Menu display>

If you select a folder for which Auto-sort conditions have been set, the Auto-sort Setting display (Address sort) comes up.



<Auto-sort Setting display>

To change the condition

When you change a previously set condition, the confirmation display comes up.

Select "YES" and press to replace the set condition with the new one.

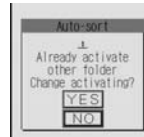


When the same condition is set for another folder

When the same condition has been set for another folder, the confirmation display comes up.

Select "YES" and press to release the condition set for the other folder and change the setting.

You cannot change the setting set for a Mail security-activated folder.



Information

You can store up to 700 addresses per folder. Also, you can store a total of 700 addresses in all folders.

You cannot set the Auto-sort function for the "Inbox" folder, "Outbox" folder, "Chat" folder, and the "Trash box" folder.

If security is activated for the "Inbox" and "Outbox" of the Mail menu (see page 150), "🔒" will be displayed for "Inbox" and "Outbox" of the Mail menu. In this case, you will need to enter the Terminal Security Code.

If Mail Security is activated for an added folder (see page 272), you will need to enter the Terminal Security Code after step 1.

When multiple conditions match, sorting is done in the priority below.








- ① Sort all
- ② Subject sort
- ③ Reply impossible/Send impossible
- ④ Address sort (Look-up address/Enter address)
- ⑤ Address sort (Look-up member)
- ⑥ Address sort (Look-up group)

Mail messages sent simultaneously to multiple members cannot be sorted by "Address sort" or "Send impossible".

Function Menu of the Auto-sort Setting Display

1 Auto-sort Setting display ▶ (i) (FUNC) ▶ Do the following operation.

Function menu	Operations
Address sort (Look-up address)	You can look up mail addresses or phone numbers to be sorted into folders from the Phonebook or Sent/Received Address. ▶ Look-up address Phonebook.....Looks up from the Phonebook. Go to step 2 on page 236. Received address...Looks up from the Received Address. Go to step 2 on page 236. Sent address.....Looks up from the Sent Address. Go to step 2 on page 236.
Address sort (Look-up group)	You can set groups to be sorted into folders. ▶ Look-up group ▶ Select a group ▶ (👁)
Address sort (Look-up member)	You can set mail members to be sorted into folders. ▶ Look-up member ▶ Select member ▶ (👁)
Address sort (Enter address)	You can directly enter the mail addresses or phone numbers to be sorted into the folder. ▶ Enter address ▶ Enter the mail address or phone number ▶ (👁) You can enter up to 50 half-pitch characters for the address or phone number. See page 482 for how to enter characters.
Subject sort	You can enter the titles of i-mode mail to be sorted into folders. ▶ Enter the title ▶ (👁) See page 482 for how to enter characters.
Reply impossible	You can set reply-disabled mail to be sorted into folders.
Send impossible	You can set failed-to-send messages to be sorted.
Sort all	You can sort all the mail into the i-appli mail folder. ▶ YES
Edit addr/subj	You can edit and store the mail addresses, phone numbers, and subjects set for the folder. ▶ Edit the mail address, phone number or subject ▶ (👁)
List setting	You can switch whether to display the destination by the name stored in the Phonebook or by the mail address or phone number. Name.....Displays names for the destinations. Address.....Displays addresses or phone numbers for the destinations.


Function menu	Operations
Release	You can release the sort condition. (The item is deleted from the "Auto-sort Setting display".) ▶ YES To cancel, select "NO" and press  .
Release selected	You can select mail addresses and phone numbers, and release the sort condition for them. (The items are deleted from the "Auto-sort Setting display".) ▶ Put check marks for the mail addresses and phone numbers to be released ▶  (Finish) ▶ YES "☐" and "☑" switch each time you press  . You can check or uncheck all items by pressing  (FUNC) and selecting "Select all/Release all". You can press  to switch between the name and mail address (phone number). To cancel, select "NO" and press  .
Release all	You can release all sort conditions. (The items are deleted from the "Auto-sort Setting display".) ▶ YES To cancel, select "NO" and press  .

Information

<Address sort (Look-up group)>

On the Auto-sort Setting display, "" is added to the front of group name.
You cannot set "Group 00" or groups in the UIM.

<Address sort (Look-up member)>

On the Auto-sort Setting display, "" is added to the front of mail member name.

<Subject sort>

When the title matches sort conditions for multiple folders, it is sorted to the folder nearest to the Inbox folder.
Only one title can be set per folder.
Even if you set "No title", the i-mode mail titled "No title" due to no title cannot be sorted.
Short Messages (SMS) cannot be sorted by subject.

<Reply impossible>

You cannot sort SMS reports.
You can set "Reply impossible" for only one folder.


<Send impossible>

You can set "Send impossible" for only one folder.

<Sort all>

You cannot sort SMS reports or Short Messages (SMS) that have been received directly in the UIM.
"Sort all" can be set for only one each i-appli mail folder in the Inbox and Outbox.
When "Sort all" is set, other sort settings are disabled.

<List setting>

You can also press  to switch between "Name" and "Address" from the Auto-sort Setting display.




<Mail Member>

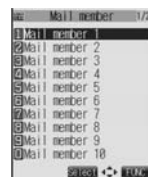
  

Creating Mail Member

You can store mail addresses by group. You can send mail to regular members in the list.
You can store up to five addresses per group, and up to 20 groups.

1 ▶ Mail member ▶ Select a Mail member to be stored

When the selected Mail member has any entry, "" appears at the lower left of the display.
Press   to send i-mode mail to a selected Mail member.
Go to step 3 on page 235.



<Mail member List>

2 Select <Not stored> > (Edit)

If you edit a stored mail address, select the mail address.



<Mail Address List>

3 Enter a mail address >

Repeat steps 2 and 3 to store multiple mail addresses.

You can enter up to 50 half-pitch characters.

See page 482 for how to enter characters.

Information

During PIM Lock, you cannot display Mail members.

If you store the same mail address in a Mail member and try to send a message, the message "Same address is entered Send?" appears. Select "YES" and press (OK); the duplicated addresses are deleted and the message is then sent. To cancel, select "NO" and press (OK).

Checking Stored Mail Address

1 (Left Arrow) (Right Arrow) Mail member > Select a Mail member > (OK) > Select a mail address > (OK)

You can bring up the edit display by pressing (Edit) (Edit). Go to step 3 on this page.

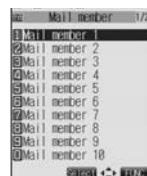


<Mail Address Confirmation display>

Mail

Function Menu of the Mail Member List

1 Mail Member List > (Info) (FUNC) > Do the following operation.



<Mail member List>

Function menu	Operations
Compose message	You can send i-mode mail to a Mail member. Go to step 3 on page 235.
Edit member name	> Enter the name of the mail member > (OK) You can enter up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters. See page 482 for how to enter characters.
Reset member name	You can reset the names of mail members to the default ones. > YES To cancel, select "NO" and press (OK).

Function Menu of the the Mail Address List/Mail Address Confirmation Display

1 Mail Address List/Mail Address Confirmation display ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Do the following operation.



<Mail Address List>



<Mail Address Confirmation display>

Function menu	Operations
Edit address	You can edit a mail address. Go to step 3 on page 287.
Look-up address	You can look up a phone number or mail address in the Phonebook, Sent Address, or Received Address to enter it. (See page 236)
Delete this	▶ YES To cancel, select "NO" and press
Delete all	Enter the Terminal Security code ▶ ▶ YES To cancel, select "NO" and press See page 140 for the Terminal Security Code.

<Template>

Displaying Template

Template is form data for Deco mail for which decorations such as font size and image insertion are already specified. You can read in a template to easily create Deco mail.

Other than those pre-installed in the FOMA phone, you can download templates from sites or can save Deco mail you sent or received or you are creating as a template. You can edit the saved template using Palette.

You can delete the templates saved at the time of purchase. You can download them from the "P-SQUARE" site if necessary.

See page 238 for reading in a template.

See pages 238, 277 for saving a template.

See page 210 for downloading a template.

1 ▶ Template

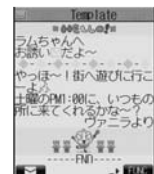


<Template List>

2 Select a template ▶

Press () to compose Deco mail with the contents of the template.

Go to step 2 on page 235.



<Detailed Template display>

Function Menu of the Template List



1 Template List > (FUNC) > Do the following operation.

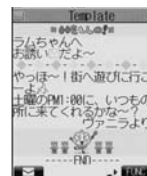
Function menu	Operations
Compose message	You can compose Deco mail with the contents of template. Go to step 2 on page 235.
Sort	You can change the order of displayed mail. Chronological .....Sorts messages in order starting from the latest date and time. Chronological .....Sorts messages in order starting from the oldest date and time. By title .....Sorts by title in ascending order. By title .....Sorts by title in descending order.
Edit title	> Enter the title > (OK) You can enter up to 15 full-pitch or 30 half-pitch characters. See page 482 for how to enter characters.
Info	You can display the template for the file size, saved date and time, and for whether images are contained. After checking, press (OK).
Memory info	You can display the number of stored templates. After checking, press (OK).
Delete	> YES To cancel, select "NO" and press (OK).
Delete selected	> Put check marks for the templates to be deleted > (Finish) > YES "☐" and "☑" switch each time you press (OK). You can check or uncheck all items by pressing (FUNC) and selecting "Select all/Release all". To cancel, select "NO" and press (OK).
Delete all	> Enter the Terminal Security Code > (OK) > YES To cancel, select "NO" and press (OK). See page 140 for the Terminal Security Code.

Information

<Compose message>

Even if you select "Header/Signature" to automatically paste the header or signature, you cannot paste them.




Function Menu of the Detailed Template Display



1 Detailed Template display > (FUNC) > Do the following operation.

<Detailed Template display>

Function menu	Operations
Compose message	You can compose Deco mail using the contents of the template. Go to step 2 on page 235.

Function menu	Operations
Edit	<p>You can edit the contents of the template and save it.</p> <p>▶ Edit the text </p> <p>See step 3 on page 241 for how to edit the text.</p> <p>▶  YES or NO</p> <p>YES .....Overwrites and saves.</p> <p>NO .....Saves as a separate file.</p> <p>You can save also by pressing  (FUNC) and select "Save".</p> <p>See page 210 when the templates are stored to the maximum.</p>
Save insert image	You can save the image inserted into the text. (See page 262)

Information

<Compose message>

Even if you select "Header/Signature" to automatically paste the header or signature, you cannot paste them.

<Edit>

The title name when saved as a separate file takes "YYYY/MM/DD hh:mm" (Y: Year, M: Month, D: Date, h: hour, m: minute).

When the date and time are not set, the title name takes "templateXX" (XX: 01 to 45).

You cannot save the template if no decoration is found after editing.




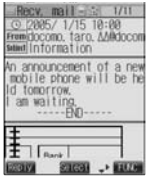

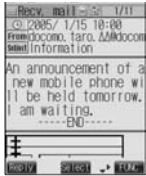
<Mail Settings>

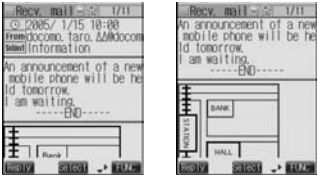







Detailed Settings for i-mode Mail and Short Messages (SMS)

1




▶ Mail settings ▶ Do the following operation.

Item	Operations
Scroll	<p>You can set the number of lines that are scrolled at a time for when you press  on the detailed mail display, Message Composition display and preview display.</p> <p>1 line .....Scrolls one line at a time. (Setting at purchase)</p> <p>3 lines .....Scrolls three lines at a time.</p> <p>5 lines .....Scrolls five lines at a time.</p> <p>While received or sent mail is displayed, press  (FUNC) to select "Scroll".</p>
Character size	<p>You can change the font size for the text of the detailed mail display.</p> <p>Standard .....Displays characters in a standard size. (Setting at purchase)</p> <p>Small .....Displays characters in a small size.</p> <p>Large .....Displays characters in a large size.</p> <p>While sent or received mail is displayed, press  (FUNC) to select "Font size".</p> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around;"> <div style="text-align: center;">  <p>Standard</p> </div> <div style="text-align: center;">  <p>Small</p> </div> <div style="text-align: center;">  <p>Large</p> </div> </div>

Item	Operations
Mail list disp.	You can set the number of lines for a mail item displayed in the Mail List. 2 lines .....Displays in two lines. (Setting at purchase) 1 line .....Displays in one line.
Message display	You can set whether to display received mail in Standard display (from the top) or from the text. Standard.....Displays from the top. (Setting at purchase) From message.....Displays from the text.  <p style="text-align: center;">Standard From message</p>
Auto melody play	You can set whether to play back the attached or pasted melodies automatically for when you display the text of received mail. ON .....Plays melody automatically. (Setting at purchase) OFF .....Does not play melody automatically.
Header/Signature	You can store a header, signature and quotation marks. (See page 292)
Mail security	You can set Security function for the Inbox, Outbox, and Draft box of the Mail menu. (See page 150)
Receiving display	You can set whether to display the Message Receiving and Reception Result displays, even during operation of another function. Alarm preferred .....Prioritizes the Message Receiving and the Reception Result displays when you have new mail. (Setting at purchase) Operation preferred .....Prioritizes the display of the current operation when you have new mail.
Receive option setting	You can set whether to select and receive i-mode mail. (See page 258)
Attached file	You can set whether to receive the files attached to i-mode mail. Set for image attachments and melody attachments, respectively. ▶ Put check marks for the attached files to receive ▶   “ <input type="checkbox"/> ” and “ <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> ” switch each time you press  . A check mark is placed to “Melody-valid” and “Image-valid” at purchase.
Photo auto display	You can set whether to automatically display the photo (still image) received during a call. ON .....Displays the photo automatically. (Setting at purchase) OFF .....Does not display the photo automatically.
Kirari Mail	You can set how the FOMA phone works when Kirari mail is received. (See page 257)
Chat	You can set the chat setting. (See page 298)
SMS report request	You can set whether to request SMS report (delivery report). (See page 305)
SMS validity period	You can set the length of time Short Messages (SMS) are held at the Short Message Center. (See page 305)
SMS input character	You can set the characters you can enter into the text of Short Messages (SMS). (See page 306)
Check settings	You can check the individual mail settings. Use  to scroll the display. After checking, press  .
Reset	You can reset the individual “Mail settings” to their default settings. See “Function List” for the items to be reset. (See page 502) ▶ Enter the Terminal Security Code ▶  ▶ YES To cancel, select “NO” and press  . See page 140 for the Terminal Security Code.

Information

<Character size>

While the text is displayed, you can change font size by pressing and holding  for at least one second (see pages 256, 304). In this case, the setting here will also change.

If you bring up a display other than a detailed display, the standard size will return automatically even when small or large size was selected. However, if you return to the detailed display, small or large size will be resumed.

<Mail list disp.>

When "2 lines" is set, the listing switches to the Name display.

When "1 line" is set, the listing switches to the Subject display.

<Message display>

Even if "From message" is selected, the message might not be displayed from the text body depending on the number of characters in the text.

<Auto melody play>

Even when "Auto melody play" is set to "ON", melodies might not be played back successfully if it was sent from devices other than FOMA P700i/P901i.

<Attached file>

When the check box is set to "" and the message with an attached file comes in, the attached file or image inserted into Deco mail is deleted at the i-mode Center. You cannot receive the deleted file.

You can receive melodies if you have checked "Melody-valid", but they might not be played back successfully if they are sent from devices other than FOMA P700i/P901i.

Header/Signature

Setting at purchase

Header.....Not entered (Automatically inserted)

Signature.....Not entered (Automatically inserted)

Quotation mark

You can store a header, signature and quotation mark.

Also, you can set whether to automatically paste the header or signature.

1











Mail settings ▶ Header/Signature



2

Do the following operation.

Item	Operations
Header	<p>The header is the sentence such as greeting at the beginning of the text.</p> <p>▶ Select the header field ▶  ▶ Enter the header ▶ </p> <p>If you do not want the header to be pasted automatically, select "Insert" and press  to change "<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>" to "<input type="checkbox"/>".</p> <p>You can enter up to 120 full-pitch or 240 half-pitch characters.</p> <p>See page 482 for how to enter characters.</p>
Signature	<p>The signature is your name and other information, placed at the end of the text.</p> <p>▶ Select the signature field ▶  ▶ Enter the signature ▶ </p> <p>If you do not want the signature to be pasted automatically, select "Insert" and press  to change "<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>" to "<input type="checkbox"/>".</p> <p>You can enter up to 120 full-pitch or 240 half-pitch characters.</p> <p>See page 482 for how to enter characters.</p>
Quotation marks	<p>The quotation mark is the symbol indicating a quote from received mail.</p> <p>▶ Select the quotation mark field ▶  ▶ Enter the quotation mark ▶ </p> <p>You can enter up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters.</p> <p>See page 482 for how to enter characters.</p>

3 Press (Finish)

To cancel, press  or , select "YES", and press .

Information

Even when you have put a check mark for "Insert", the header and signature cannot be pasted when you compose i-mode mail for Photo-sending during a call or from a template or i-appli.

<Chat Mail>

Using Chat Mail

You can send and receive messages as if you were talking with multiple parties. You can see outgoing and incoming messages on a single display.

Exchanging Chat Mail Messages

To use Chat Mail, you need to store the mail address of the other party in Chat Member beforehand. (See page 296)

Starting Chat Mail

1



Chat mail

Chat members are not stored at the time of purchase. Store chat members. (See page 296)



<Chat Mail display>

Sending chat mail message

2

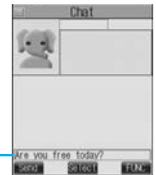


The entered characters are displayed in the input box.

You can enter up to 250 full-pitch or 500 half-pitch characters.

See page 482 for how to enter characters.

Input box



3

Press  (Send).

The chat mail message is sent.

The sent chat mail message is displayed at top of the Chat Mail display.

Receiving chat mail message

4

The display for receiving chat mail appears and a chat mail message is received.

The received chat mail message is displayed at top of the Chat Mail display.

Repeat steps 2 to 4 to send and receive chat mail messages.



5

 (FUNC) > Quit

YES.....You can delete read and sent chat mail message from the “Chat” folder.

NO.....You do not delete read and sent chat mail message from the “Chat” folder.

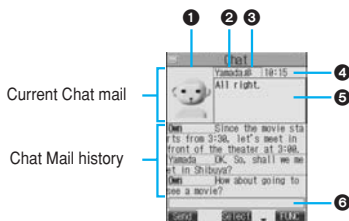
Chat mail is ended.

You can end Chat Mail by pressing  or .

When no sent and received chat mail messages are found, the confirmation display does not appear.

Chat Mail display

The Chat Mail display appears as follows.



1 Images

The images stored in the chat group are displayed.

- Images are not displayed in the Chat Mail history.



2 Member name

The names of chat members stored in the chat group are displayed. Also, the names are displayed with a specified background color.

- When the names are not stored in the chat group, up to eight half-pitch characters from the beginning of the mail address are displayed. When the mail address is stored in the Phonebook, up to four full-pitch or eight half-pitch characters from the beginning of the name are displayed.

3 Broadcast mark

Displayed when the chat mail message set with multiple addresses is received.



-  (blue) : All addresses are stored in Chat Member
-  (dark blue) : Addresses that are not stored in Chat Member are found

4 Sent/Received date and time

The date and time chat mail messages are sent or received are displayed. The time is displayed for the sent or received chat mail messages on the day and the date for sent or received chat mail messages up to previous day.

- If you send chat mail when the date/time is not set, “-/-/” is displayed. “-/-/” is also displayed when an abnormality is found with the date/time information about the received mail.

5 Text

The text of chat mail message is displayed. The number of characters of the text to be displayed is up to 250 full-pitch or 500 half-pitch characters. If the text exceeds four lines,  is displayed and you can switch the page by pressing .

- You cannot switch the page of the text on the Chat Mail history.
- The text of the chat mail message successfully sent is displayed in black. The text of the chat mail message failed to send is displayed in gray.

6 Input box

Entered characters (characters to send) are displayed from the beginning by a factor of one line.

Information

Transmission fee for when you send chat mail messages to multiple chat members is the same as for when you send a chat mail message to one member. (However, the amount of information for added addresses increases.)

When "Mail security" is set for the "Inbox" folder, "Outbox" folder, or "Chat" folder, or for folders chat mail is stored in, the display for entering the Terminal Security Code appears.

When "Receive option setting" is set to "ON", you cannot execute Chat Mail.



When received messages are full of unread or protected messages, you cannot execute Chat Mail. Delete unnecessary messages or read unread messages, or release the protection and then operate.

Attached files or pasted data are not displayed.

Sent or received chat mail messages are saved to the "Chat" folder. To re-send, send messages from the "Chat" folder. (You can also change the setting from "Auto-sort".)


The subject of a sent chat mail message is "Chat mail" (half-pitch).

The chat mail message received on the Chat Mail display is stored to the "Chat" folder as the read message.

If you try to send a message without entering text, the confirmation display appears. Select "YES" and press ; then you can send the chat mail message without text. To cancel, select "NO" and press .

Even when the chat mail text on the Chat Mail display contains the phone number, mail address, or URL, the Phone To/AV Phone To, Mail To, and Web To functions are not available. However, those functions will be available when Chat Mail is finished and chat mail message is brought up from the "Inbox" or "Outbox".

If You Receive Chat Mail during Stand-by

If you receive a chat mail message during Stand-by, " " appears on the desktop.


Press , select " ", and press ; then Chat Mail starts up.

Information

Messages are recognized as chat mail messages in the following cases:


- When the sender's or receiver's address is stored in Chat Member or in a chat group
- When the subject contains "チャットメール (chat mail)" (all full-pitch or all half-pitch)

Even when you receive a chat mail message from a member of a chat group other than Chat Member while Chat Mail is running,

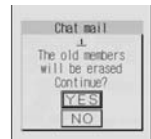
" " appears.

If you start Chat Mail from the desktop, received mail, or Chat Group

If you start Chat Mail from a mail address or from a chat group that is not stored in Chat Member, the display on the right appears.

Select "YES" and press ; then the current chat members are deleted and the sender's mail address or chat group members are stored in Chat Member.

To cancel, select "NO" and press .



<If you start Chat Mail from the desktop or received mail>

The sender's mail address is stored in Chat Member. When the sender's mail address has been stored in a chat group, that chat group members are stored in Chat Member. However, the mail address selected as the destination is only the mail address of the sender.

<If you start Chat Mail from Chat Group>

The chat group members are stored in Chat Member. All members of the group are selected as the destination.

Function Menu of the Chat Mail Display

1 Chat Mail display  (**FUNC**)  Do the following operation.



<Chat Mail display>

Function menu	Operations
Send	You can send chat mail messages.

Function menu	Operations
Select receiver	You can select a destination address to send chat mail messages to from chat members. ▶ Put a check mark to the destination address you want to send the messages to ▶ (Finish) "☐" and "☑" switch each time you press (OK).
Chat member	You can store chat members. (See this page)
Broadcast address	You can check the destination addresses you have simultaneously sent a chat mail message to. You can store the displayed destination addresses in Chat Member. After checking, press (OK). When the message you have sent contains the destination addresses that are not stored in Chat Member, the confirmation display appears asking whether to store those in Chat Member. Select "YES" and press (OK); then put a check mark for the destination addresses to store in Chat Member and press (Finish). Not to store, select "NO" and press (OK).
Reload	You can receive chat mail messages that you could not automatically receive. If you receive a new chat mail message, the Chat Mail display is updated.
View first line	You can display the latest chat mail message.
View last line	You can display the oldest chat mail message.
Delete read	You can delete the received and read chat mail messages and sent chat mail messages. ▶ YES
Quit	You can end Chat Mail. (See page 294)

Information

<Broadcast address>

You can store up to six members (including yourself) in Chat Member.

<Reload>

If you receive mail messages other than chat mail messages, the Chat Mail display is not updated.

<Delete read>

The chat mail messages failed to send are also deleted.

You cannot delete protected chat mail messages.

Chat Member

You can store chat members to exchange chat mail messages.

You can store up to six chat members including the user (yourself).

1 Chat Mail display ▶ (INFO) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Chat member ▶ <Not recorded>

If you edit a stored member, select the stored member.



<Chat Member List>

2 Enter a mail address ▶ (OK)

You can enter up to 50 half-pitch characters.

See page 482 for how to enter characters.

When you store an i-mode mail address for a chat member, store it correctly including its domain (the part after @ mark).

For the address "phone number@docomo.ne.jp", however, store the phone number only.

Information

You cannot store the same mail address as that of the stored member.

When the stored mail address is also stored in a chat group, the member's name is displayed. When the mail address is not stored in any chat group, up to eight half-pitch characters from the beginning of the name are displayed. When the mail address is stored in the Phonebook, up to four full-pitch or eight half-pitch characters from the beginning of the name are displayed.








If you edit the mail address of the stored member, the member's name and image are changed.

Function Menu of the Chat Member List

1 Chat Member List (FUNC) Do the following operation.







<Chat Member List>

Function menu	Operations
Edit	You can edit a mail address. Go to step 2 on page 296.
Refer address	You can call up a phone number or mail address from the Phonebook, Received Address, or Sent Address to enter it. (See page 236)
Change member (Chat group)	You can store the members stored in a chat group in Chat Member. ▶ Chat group Group list -----You can select by unit of a chat group. Member list ----You can select members from the members stored in all chat groups. If you select "Group list", select a chat group and press  . The members from the selected group are stored. If you select "Member list", check the members you want to store and press  (finish).
Change member (Mail member)	You can store the members stored in Mail Member as chat members. ▶ Mail member ▶ Select a Mail member ▶ 
Display setting	You can check a chat member's name, image, background color, and mail address. You can press  to switch members. After checking, press  .
Delete	▶ YES To cancel, select "NO" and press  .
Delete all	▶ YES To cancel, select "NO" and press  .

Information

<Change member>

When chat members have already been stored, the confirmation display appears asking whether to replace all chat members. Select "YES" and press . To cancel, select "NO" and press .

When a chat mail message comes in from a member deleted from Chat Member, the confirmation display appears asking whether to delete that chat mail message. Select "YES" and press  to delete the chat mail message. Not to delete, select "NO" and press .

<Display setting>

If you display "Display setting" for the user (yourself), the mail address is not displayed.

<Delete><Delete all>

You cannot delete the user (yourself).


Chat (Sound Setting)

Setting at purchase
Pattern1

You can set a sound to sound for when you receive a chat mail message on the Chat Mail display.

1   Mail settings ▶ Chat ▶ Sound setting

2 Select a folder ▶  ▶ Select a sound ▶ 

Not to sound the sound, select "OFF" and press . The setting is completed.
See page 371 for the melody folder and list.



Information

The sound does not sound when a chat mail message comes in from a member not stored in Chat Member.

Chat (Chat Image)

Setting at purchase
ON

You can set whether to display images on the Chat Mail display.

1   Mail settings ▶ Chat ▶ Chat image

ON.....Displays images.

OFF.....Does not display images.

Chat (User Setting)

Setting at purchase


Name.....Own

ImageElephant

You can set the name of the user (yourself).

1   Mail settings ▶ Chat ▶ User setting



2 Name ▶ Enter your user name ▶ 

You can enter up to four full-pitch or eight half-pitch characters.

See page 482 for how to enter characters.

Not to change the user name, go to step 3.

3 Image ▶ Select a folder ▶  ▶ Select an image ▶ 

See page 334 for the still image folder and list.

Information

If you enter nothing for the user name, or leave a blank only, the user's name takes "Own".


You cannot change the background color.

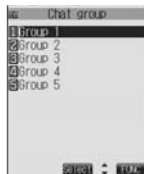
<Chat Group>

Creating Chat Group

You can store the mail addresses you want to exchange chat mail per group.
If multiple members are stored in a group, you can set them as chat members at a time.
You can store up to five mail addresses per group. You can create up to five groups.

1 Chat group ▶ Select a chat group to be stored ▶

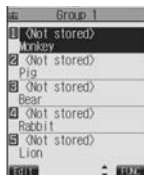
When the selected chat group has any entry, "CHAT" appears at the lower left of the display.
If you press  (CHAT), Chat group members are stored in Chat Member and Chat Mail starts.
Go to step 2 on page 293.



<Chat Group List>

2 Select <Not stored> ▶ (Edit)

Select a mail address to edit the stored mail address.



<Mail Address List>

3 Enter a mail address ▶

Repeat steps 2 and 3 to store multiple mail addresses.

You can enter up to 50 half-pitch characters.

See page 482 for how to enter characters.



When you store an i-mode mail address for a chat member, store it correctly including its domain (the part after @ mark).

For the address "phone number@docomo.ne.jp", however, store the phone number only.

Information

During PIM Lock, you cannot display any chat group.

You can set up to eight half-pitch characters from the beginning of the stored mail address as a member name. When the mail address is stored in the Phonebook, up to four full-pitch or eight half-pitch characters from the beginning of the name stored in the Phonebook are displayed. When the image is stored in the Phonebook, the image is also set together with the name.

When a member having the same mail address is stored in another group, the confirmation display appears asking whether to change the group. Select "YES" and press ; then the member is changed into the new group from the stored group. To cancel, select "NO" and press .

Checking Stored Mail Address

1 Chat group ▶ Select a chat group ▶ ▶ Select a mail address ▶

You can bring up the edit display by pressing  (Edit). Go to step 3 on this page.



<Mail Address Confirmation display>

Function Menu of the Chat Group List

1 Chat Group List ▶ ⓘ (FUNC) ▶ Do the following operation.

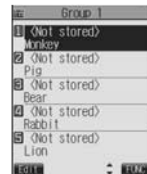


<Chat Group List>

Function menu	Operations
Activate chat	The members in the chat group are stored in Chat Member and Chat Mail starts. Go to step 2 on page 293.
Edit group name	▶ Enter a chat group name ▶ ⓘ You can enter up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters. See page 482 for how to enter characters.
Reset group name	You can reset the names of chat groups to the default ones. ▶ YES To cancel, select "NO" and press ⓘ.

Function Menu of the the Mail Address List/ Mail Address Confirmation Display

1 Mail Address List/Mail Address Confirmation display ▶ ⓘ (FUNC) ▶ Do the following operation.



<Mail Address List>



<Mail Address Confirmation display>

Function menu	Operations
Edit	You can edit a mail address. Go to step 3 on page 299.
Refer address	You can look up a phone number or mail address from the Phonebook, Sent Address, or Received Address to enter it. (See page 236)
Change member	You can store members from Mail Member in a chat group. ▶ Mail Member ▶ Select a Mail member ▶ ⓘ
Member setting	You can set the name of the member's name and image. (See page 301)
Delete	▶ YES To cancel, select "NO" and press ⓘ.
Delete all	▶ Enter the Terminal Security Code ▶ ⓘ ▶ YES To cancel, select "NO" and press ⓘ. See page 140 for the Terminal Security Code.

Information

<Change member>


When members have already been stored, the confirmation display appears asking whether to replace the members. Select "YES" and press ⓘ. To cancel, select "NO" and press ⓘ.

Member Setting

You can set the member's name and image.

1 Mail Address List/Detailed Mail Address display (FUNC)

▶ Member setting

You can switch members by pressing .



2 Name ▶ Enter the member's name

You can enter up to four full-pitch or eight half-pitch characters.
See page 482 for how to enter characters.
Go to step 3, if you do not change member name.

3 Picture ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select an image

See page 334 for the still image folder and list.

Information

When you enter nothing for the member's name, up to eight half-pitch characters from the beginning of the mail address becomes the member's name. When the mail address is stored in the Phonebook, up to four full-pitch or eight half-pitch characters from the beginning of the name stored in the Phonebook are displayed. When the image is stored in the Phonebook, the image is also set together with the name.

You cannot change the background color.

<Compose SMS>



Composing Short Messages (SMS) to Send

You can compose and send Short Messages (SMS).

Short Messages (SMS) can be sent only to the FOMA phones.

Short Message (SMS) will be available for connecting with users of overseas carriers. The DoCoMo web page will announce the starting date of the service and information about overseas carriers.

1 ▶ Compose SMS

If the Draft box already contains five draft mail messages, you cannot compose Short Messages (SMS). Send or delete the draft mail messages and then compose the new message.
You can display "Mail menu" also by pressing  () from the Stand-by display.




<Short Message (SMS) Composition display>

2 Select the address field ▶ Enter the destination phone number

Only one address can be specified.

You can enter up to 20 digits (except "+").

When the address is that of overseas carriers other than DoCoMo, enter "+" (press and hold  for at least one second), "country code", and "phone number" in that order. When the phone number starts with "0", enter the phone number excepting "0".

See page 302 to call up the address from the Phonebook or records.

3 Select the text field ▶ Enter the text

The number of characters you can enter differs depending on the "SMS input character".

See page 482 for how to enter characters.

4 Press (Send).



The animation display under communications appears and mail is sent.



Information



Depending on the radio wave conditions, the characters might not be sent successfully to the destination.

You cannot send Short Messages (SMS) from the FOMA phone to the i-mode phone of the mova service.

When the number of sent mail messages exceeds the maximum number of storage, they will be overwritten starting from the oldest sent mail. However, protected sent mail cannot be overwritten.

If you do not send the mail and instead press  or , the message "Cancel and discard work in progress?" will be displayed.

Select "YES" and press  to delete all the text entered so far. Select "NO" and press  to return to the former display.

If you attempt to send the Short Message (SMS) to a phone number headed by "184" or "186", the message "Send without prefix numbers?" will be displayed. Select "YES" and press  to delete "184" or "186" and send the mail. Select "NO" and press  to return to the former display.

Even if "Activate" of "Caller ID notification" is set to "OFF", the Caller ID is notified to the other party you have sent Short Message (SMS).

"+" is valid only at the beginning of the address.

You cannot send the message to addresses that include any characters other than numbers, "*", "#" and "+".

You can start a new line while editing the text. If you set "Japanese (70char.)" for "SMS input character", each line feed is counted as two full-pitch characters. If you set "English (160char.)" for "SMS input character", each line feed is counted as one half-pitch character.






Each space is counted as a character.

You cannot reply to Short Message (SMS) when the sender is User unset/Payphone/Not supported.

Function Menu of the Short Message (SMS) Composition Display

1 Short Message (SMS) Composition display


▶ Do the following operation.

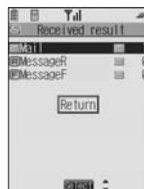
Function menu	Operations
Send	You can send Short Messages (SMS). Go to step 5 on this page.
Preview	Before sending a message, you can check the address and the text contents. After checking, press  . Press  () to send the Short Message (SMS).
Save	When you are composing or editing a Short Message (SMS), you can save it to the Draft box. You cannot save the message when the address field and text field are empty.
Look-up address	You can look up the phone number from the Phonebook, Sent Address, or Received Address to enter it. (See page 236)
SMS report req.	You can set whether to request a report for the Short Message (SMS) you are composing. (See page 305)
SMS valid. per.	You can set the validity period for the Short Message (SMS) you are composing. (See page 305)
SMS input char.	You can set the characters to be entered into the Short Message (SMS) you compose. (See page 306)
Erase message	You can delete the entire text. You cannot delete the address. ▶ YES To cancel, select "NO" and press  .
Delete	▶ YES To cancel, select "NO" and press  .

<Receiving Short Messages (SMS)>

Receiving Short Messages (SMS) Automatically


You can save up to 1000 received Short Messages (SMS) including i-mode mail messages.

- 1 When a Short Message (SMS) arrives, “ (pink)” lights and the message “Mail Receiving...” is displayed.




<Reception Result display>

When receiving ends, the display shows the number of received Short Messages (SMS).

You can display the Inbox List by selecting “Mail” and pressing .

If no key is pressed for about 15 seconds

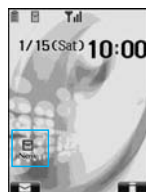
The former display returns. (The actual number of seconds varies depending on the setting for “Mail/Msg. ring time.”)

“ ” appears on the desktop.

Press , select “ ”, and press  to display the Inbox List.



When the FOMA phone is closed

The information is displayed on the Private window.



Information

When the total number of messages stored in the FOMA phone's Inbox [the total of Short Messages (SMS) and i-mode mail] exceeds 1,000, the messages will be overwritten from the mail in “Trash box” and oldest received mail in that order. However, unread or protected mail is not overwritten.

When the number of unread or protected messages in the Inbox has reached the maximum, no new messages can be received and “ (gray)” is displayed. To be able to receive Short Messages (SMS), delete mail in the Inbox or open unread mail or release protection until “ (gray)” clears, and then perform “Check new SMS”.

See page 111 for the priority of ring tones.

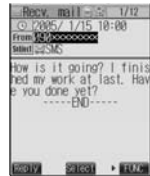
See page 113 for the priority of vibrators.

See page 131 for the priority of Illuminations.

The ring tone does not sound when you receive a Short Message (SMS) in the status other than the Stand-by display with “Receiving display” is set to “Operation preferred”. When it is set to “Alarm preferred”, the ring tone sounds and the Reception Result display appears.

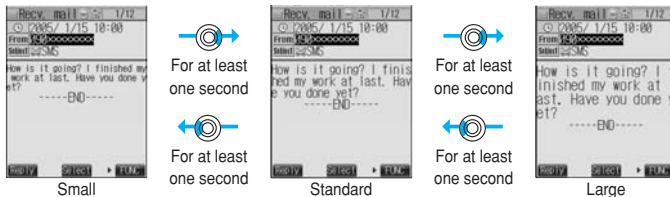
If you receive a Short Message (SMS) while an i-motion movie is being played back, the image and the sound might be interrupted.

1 Reception Result display ▶ Mail ▶ Select the Short Message (SMS) to be displayed ▶



Switching Short Message (SMS) display

You can change the font size on the detailed Short Message (SMS) display (mail text).



Information

If you bring up a display other than a detailed display, the standard size will return automatically even when small or large size was selected. However, if you return to the detailed display, small or large size will return.

When you use the above operation to switch the font size, the setting for "Character size" and "Font size" also changes.

Information

Spaces will be displayed in the received Short Message (SMS) if it contains characters other than half-pitch alphanumeric and symbols (except 「」 { } [] | . , * ^ ~) including Russian and Greek letters, certain symbols, and full-pitch characters that are not in the Kuten Code List.

You cannot reply to Short Mail received as Short Message (SMS) sent from an i-mode phone of the mova service.

While the phone number of the sender is highlighted from displayed Short Message (SMS), you can press to dial it (the Phone To/AV Phone To function).

Further, if the sender's phone number is stored in the Phonebook, the stored "Name" is highlighted. In this case, you can dial the phone number in the same way.

SMS reports are delivered only if you have requested delivery in the SMS Report Request.

You can also check by "Display SMS report" of Sent Mail.

The FOMA phone receives Short Mail as Short Message (SMS). When the Caller ID is not provided, the reason of no Caller ID is displayed in the "From" field.

<Check New SMS>

Checking whether Center Holds Short Messages (SMS)

When Short Messages (SMS) arrive at the Short Message Center, they are automatically sent to your FOMA phone, but will be held at the Center if your FOMA phone is off, out of the service area, or cannot receive messages because its memory is full.

You can receive the messages by checking the Short Message Center.



2 Press .



If the Short Message Center has any message for you, it will be delivered automatically.



Information

Some Short Messages (SMS) are not delivered immediately after checking.

You cannot check messages when out of the service area.

When icons such as "  (gray)" or "  " are displayed, the FOMA phone cannot receive any more Short Messages (SMS). Delete unnecessary mail, or open unread mail, or release protection. (Read and unprotected messages are overwritten automatically from the oldest one.)

You cannot use this function to receive i-mode mail or Messages R/F. Use "Check new messages" to receive i-mode mail or Messages R/F.

Setting Details for Short Messages (SMS)

SMS Report Request


Setting at purchase
OFF

You can set whether to request an SMS report for when sending Short Message (SMS).
The SMS report lets you know whether your Short Message (SMS) was delivered to the destination.

1 Mail settings ▶ SMS report request

ON.....Reports when a Short Message (SMS) is delivered to its destination.

OFF.....Does not report when a Short Message (SMS) is delivered to its destination.

While you are composing a Short Message (SMS), you can press  (**FUNC**) and select "SMS report req."

Information

You can check received SMS report in the "Inbox" folder.

SMS Validity Period

Setting at purchase
3 days

You can set the length of time that Short Messages (SMS) are held at the Short Message Center.


1 Mail settings ▶ SMS validity period

None.....Does not keep at Short Message Center.

1 day.....Keeps at Short Message Center for about one day.

2 days.....Keeps at Short Message Center for about two days.

3 days.....Keeps at Short Message Center for about three days.


While you are composing a Short Message (SMS), press  (**FUNC**) and select "SMS valid. per."

You can set the characters you can enter into the text of Short Messages (SMS). You can set so that you can enter only half-pitch alphanumeric and half-pitch symbols.

1 Mail settings ▶ SMS input character

Japanese (70char.)You can enter full-pitch and half-pitch characters. You cannot enter pictographs except “♥” and “☺” (see pages 484, 485). You can enter up to 70 characters for the text.

English (160char.)You can enter only half-pitch alphanumeric and half-pitch symbols. You can enter up to 160 characters for the text.

While you are composing a Short Message (SMS), you can press  (F10) and select “SMS input char.”.

In this case, “Japanese (70char.)” is displayed as “Japanese” and “English (160char.)” is displayed as “English”.

Information

You cannot set this function if the text has been entered.

SMS Center Selection

* Normally, you do not need to change this setting.

You can set the address and “Type of Number” for Short Message Center. This setting is for getting any service other than SMS service you currently use.

1 Connection setting ▶ SMS center selection ▶ User setting ▶ Enter the address ▶





You can enter up to 20 half-pitch characters.

See page 482 for how to enter characters.

2 International or Unknown

If “*” or “#” is included in the entered address, you cannot set it for “International”.

To reset the user setting

1. In step 1, select “Reset” and press .
2. Enter the Terminal Security Code and press .
3. Select “YES” and press .
To cancel, select “NO” and press .



Information

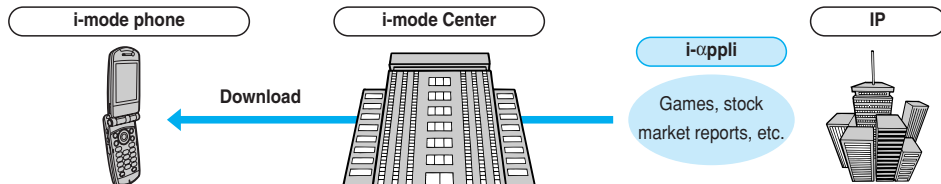
After resetting, the SMS Center will be “DoCoMo”.

i-αppli

What is i-αppli?	308
Downloading i-αppli	<i-αppli Download> 310
Starting i-αppli	<i-αppli Launch> 312
Pre-installed i-αppli Software	317
Starting i-αppli Automatically	324
Operating i-αppli Stand-by Display	<i-αppli Stand-by Display> 325
Setting Lights and Vibrators for when Running i-αppli	326

What is i-αppli?

By downloading i-αppli from i-mode sites, you can make full use of your FOMA phone supporting i-mode (i-mode phone). For example, you can enjoy various games on i-mode phone, and can check the stock prices at regular intervals once you have downloaded a stock price information i-αppli. In addition, you can download only the necessary data of map i-αppli so that you scroll it smoothly. You can also store data directly from i-αppli into the Phonebook or Schedule. i-αppli that links to Multimedia is also available, enabling you to download and save images.



See page 310 for downloading i-αppli.

See page 312 for running i-αppli.

See page 324 for running i-αppli automatically.

- The serial number of your i-mode mobile phone/UIM may be used depending on the software.
- Some of software do communication when it is started; you can set the software not to communicate.

Using stored data

Some of i-αppli software are able to refer to, save, and operate the stored data in your i-mode phone (Phonebook, Bookmark, Schedule, images and icon information). The following are the items you can do using the stored data:

- Storing Phonebook entry
- Using icon information
- Saving to Bookmark
- Storing schedule event
- Retrieving images from Data BOX
- Saving image to Data BOX

What is i-αppli DX?

i-αppli DX enables you to link to your i-mode phone's information (mail, Dialed Call Record/Received Call Record/Redial, or Phonebook data), in a more convenient and pleasurable way. i-αppli DX also enables you to compose a mail message in the display where your desired graphic character appears, or where that graphic character tells you who the caller is. By linking to mail, your desired information such as the stock price, or the progress of games is updated in real time.

See page 312 for running i-αppli DX.

Using stored data

i-αppli DX enables you to refer to, store, and operate the stored data such as in mail, Redial, Received Call Record, and ringing tone in addition to the stored data in the Phonebook, Bookmark, Schedule, images, and icon information which are in use for ordinary i-αppli. The following are the items you can do using the stored data:

- Storing Phonebook entry
- Referring to Phonebook
- Using icon information
- Saving to Bookmark
- Storing schedule event
- Using Mail Menu
- Using i-mode Mail Composition display
- Referring to the latest data in Redial
- Referring to the latest data in Received Call Record
- Referring to the latest unread mail
- Saving ring tone
- Changing ring tone (for calls, mail, message)
- Retrieving images from Data BOX
- Saving images to Data BOX
- Changing display settings (for the Stand-by display, Dialing/Receiving display, Mail Sending/Receiving display, Message R/F Receiving display)

- i-αppli DX might do communication to confirm the validity of software regardless of the communication settings of the software. Communication frequencies and timing differ depending on the software.

- You need to set "Set time" to start up i-αppli DX.

What is Mail-linked i-appli?

Mail-linked i-appli is a type of i-appli DX, enabling you to use i-appli in a more convenient and pleasurable way. By exchanging information via i-mode mail, your desired information such as the stock price or the progress of games is updated in real time.

- i-appli mail running under mail-linked i-appli may not be displayed correctly.

Other things you can do

i-appli Stand-by display

You can set i-appli for the Stand-by display, so that you can receive mail or make a phone call from the i-appli Stand-by display. You can also set the i-appli Stand-by display more convenient; it enables you to display the latest information about news or weather forecast, or to bring up your desired graphic characters that notifies you of incoming mail or alarm. (See page 325)

They are the functions that can be used under the software supporting the i-appli Stand-by display.

i-appli auto start

You can auto-start the software by specifying the date, time, and the day of the week. Some of software can be auto-started at the time intervals set in the software. (See page 324)

Shooting with camera

You can take a picture using the i-mode phone's camera from the software.

This is a function that can be used under the software supporting the camera shooting function.

Ir Exchange

You can communicate with the devices that come with the Ir exchange functions. i-appli has now a wide variety of usage by linking to the Ir exchange devices. (See page 386)

This is a function that can be used under the software supporting the Ir exchange functions.

Some data might not be transferred to some devices even if they support the Ir exchange functions.

Ir remote-controller

You can operate, from the software, various devices such as home electronic appliances supporting the Ir remote-controller. (See page 323)

This is a function that can be used under the software supporting the Ir remote-controller. You need to have the software compatible with target devices.

Downloading i-αppli

You can download software from sites to the FOMA phone.

You can store from 10 to 200 downloaded software programs. (The actual number of savable software programs may decrease depending on the data size.)


1 Bring up a site from which i-αppli can be downloaded

▶ Select the software ▶

To cancel, select "Cancel" and press .



2 Press when downloading ends.

When downloading ends, the display for setting the software (Network Setting, Stand-by Setting, or Stand-by Display Network) might come up. Press  (**Finish**), after setting is completed. These settings can also be done from the Software List.


3 YES or NO

YES.....Launches i-αppli.

NO.....Returns to the site display.


When software launches, " " appears at the bottom of the display.

i-αppli that launches directly from sites




Some software launches as soon as it is downloaded. This software is downloaded but not saved. When you end the software, the confirmation display appears asking whether to save it. To save the software, select "YES" and press .

When software programs are stored to the maximum


When the maximum number of software programs is stored or there is not enough memory, the confirmation display appears asking whether to delete unnecessary software programs to save new ones.

1. Select "YES" and press .

2. Put check marks for the software programs to be deleted and press  (**Finish**).

" " and " " switch each time you press .

Continue checking items until the number of insufficient bytes becomes zero and "**Finish**" appears at the lower-left of the display.

3. Select "YES" and press .

To cancel, select "NO" and press .

See page 316 for deleting mail-linked i-αppli.

Deleted software programs cannot be recovered.

Software is not saved if downloading fails because of radio wave conditions.

Downloading mail-linked i-αppli

When you download mail-linked i-αppli, each i-αppli mail folder is created automatically in the Inbox/Outbox Folder List. The name of the folder is the same as that of the downloaded mail-linked i-αppli, and cannot be changed.

You can automatically sort the i-αppli mail you have already received to the created folder when you download the mail-linked i-αppli. Also, you can manually sort it.

Up to five mail-linked i-αppli can be saved.

You cannot download the software if the mail-linked i-αppli using the same folder is already in the Software List.


You cannot download mail-linked i-αppli while Mail Security is ON.

You cannot download mail-linked i-αppli if the Inbox/Outbox Folder List contains five i-αppli mail folders.


Reloading mail-linked i-αppli


You can use an existing i-αppli mail folder when downloading mail-linked i-αppli whose folder only remains. If you do not intend to use the existing i-αppli mail folder, delete the folder and create a new i-αppli mail folder. You cannot download mail-linked i-αppli without creating a new folder.

To use the existing i-αppli mail folder

1. From the confirmation display asking whether to use the folder, select "YES" and press .

To delete the existing folder and create a new i-αppli mail folder

1. From the confirmation display asking whether to use the folder, select "NO" and press .

2. From the confirmation display asking whether to create a folder, select "YES" and press .


Information



"i-αppli mail" is the mail sent and saved by mail-linked i-αppli and mail received for mail-linked i-αppli. i-αppli data is set for i-αppli mail so that i-αppli mail is automatically assigned to the i-αppli mail folder.


Information

Downloading cannot be done depending on the accessed sites.


Some i-αppli software can automatically connect to the i-mode Center after it is downloaded. However, to use this service, you need to set it in advance in "Software setting (Network set)".

" SSL" appears at the top of the display while software information or software is being downloaded from SSL pages.

The default for "Display software info" is "Not display". If you set this to "Display", you can check the software information before downloading it. From the software information confirmation display, press  to display the message "Download?". From the download confirmation display, select "YES" and press  to start downloading.

When you attempt to download software, the confirmation display might appear for asking whether to send "your mobile phone/UIM serial number". Select "YES" and press  to start downloading. In this case, "your mobile phone/UIM serial number" is sent to the IP (Information Provider) over the Internet, so could be accessed by third parties. However, your phone numbers, address, age, and gender are not notified to the IP (Information Provider) by this operation.

To cancel, select "NO" and press .

If you attempt to re-download software that was downloaded with a different UIM, the message "Already downloaded by different UIM Overwrite?" is displayed. Select "YES" and press  to start downloading. When downloading ends, the software that was downloaded using a different UIM is deleted.

The 3D polygonal engine enables cubic images to be displayed in i-αppli.

By combining polygons, a deep, cubic image is displayed.

Display Software Information

Setting at purchase
Not display

You can set whether to display software information before downloading i-αppli.

1



αppli settings ▶ Display software info

DisplayDisplays software information before downloading.

Not displayDoes not display software information before downloading.


Starting i-αppli


1




Software list ▶ Select the software to launch ▶



From the Stand-by display, you can bring up "Software list" by pressing and holding  for at least one second as well.

To cancel launching the software, select "Cancel" and press .


If you have set "Software setting (Network set)" to "Check every start", the confirmation display might appear for asking whether to use network transmission. Select "YES" or "NO" and press .

 or  is displayed while i-αppli is running.



To run i-αppli DX

i-αppli DX uses information and functions of the FOMA phone.

When i-αppli DX has been launched and is running, a message appears to confirm the use of the FOMA phone's information and functions. Select "YES" and press  to enable i-αppli DX to use the information and functions.

Information

Set the date and time of the clock beforehand by "Set time" for i-αppli DX to run.

Launching mail-linked i-αppli

You can launch mail-linked i-αppli from the Inbox/Outbox Folder List as well as from the Software List.

1. From the Inbox/Outbox Folder List, select an i-αppli mail folder and press .

If security settings have been set for the i-αppli mail folder, you need to enter the Terminal Security Code.

To launch another software from the current software

With some software you can launch the specified i-αppli and enjoy it without returning to the Software List.

Some software launches the specified software only.

When software to be launched is specified

While i-αppli is running, the confirmation display appears asking whether to launch specified software.

1. Select "YES" and press  to launch the software.

When software to be launched is not specified

When software to be launched is not specified, you need to select the software. While i-αppli is running, the confirmation display appears asking whether to select software.

1. Select "YES" and press  to display the Software List.

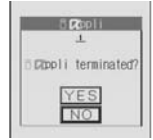
2. Select the software and press .

Information

If the specified software is not in the Software List, the display to the effect that the software is not found appears. You need to download it.

To end i-αppli

1. While the software is running, press and hold **(PUP)** for at least one second or press **(PWR OFF)**.
2. Select "YES" and press **(F1)**.
To cancel, select "NO" and press **(F2)**.



When software malfunctions

You can check the details when software malfunctions.

1. From the Stand-by display, press **(AC2)**.
2. Select **(i-αppli)** and press **(F1)**.
3. Select "i-αppli info" and press **(F1)**.
4. Select "Trace info" and press **(F1)**.

The display for Trace Information comes up.

When a security error occurs

You can check the details when i-αppli ends because of a security error.

If "Error" is displayed on the desktop, you can select the icon and press **(F1)** to display the Security Error History.

1. From the Stand-by display, press **(AC2)**.
2. Select **(i-αppli)** and press **(F1)**.
3. Select "i-αppli info" and press **(F1)**.
4. Select "Security error history" and press **(F1)**.

The display for Security Error History comes up.

When "FUNC:" appears on the Trace Information or Security Error History display

You can copy information by pressing **(F1)** (**FUNC:**) and select "Copy info", and press **(F1)**. To delete information, select "Delete info" and press **(F1)**, and select "YES" and press **(F1)**.

Information

When there is no Trace Information, "Trace info" is not displayed.




When the memory space for the Trace information becomes full, the information is overwritten from the oldest one.

To creators of i-αppli

If you encounter an error while creating software, the Trace Information display might help identify the problem.

See " When software malfunctions" on this page to confirm the Trace Information.

Information

You can receive mail and Messages R/F while i-αppli is launching or running. i-αppli will continue and the icon “ (pink)”, “ (yellow)” or “ (yellow)” will be displayed. To check mail or messages you have received, close i-αppli or use the Multitask function.

While software is running, any melody will be played at the volume set for “Phone” of “Ring volume”. However, melodies are not played during a call.

If a call comes in while i-αppli is running, i-αppli will be interrupted temporarily. The i-αppli display returns when you end the call.

With some software you can use the Web To function and the Phone To/AV Phone To function from i-αppli. However, you cannot use the Web To function from the i-αppli Stand-by display.

If i-motion (image and sound data) is played back while i-αppli is running, see page 353 for operation instructions. The i-αppli display returns when you cancel playback.

If the camera is launched from i-αppli, the images taken are not saved with ordinary images, but are saved as part of i-αppli for its usage.


You can scan the QR codes and JAN codes from i-αppli using the camera. The scanned data is saved and used by the software.



Images that are used by i-αppli and data you have entered can be sent over the Internet to the server automatically.

i-αppli uses the following types of images:

- Images taken by the camera after it is launched from a camera-linked i-αppli
- Images obtained by the i-αppli Ir-exchange function
- Images downloaded from sites or the Internet web pages
- Images obtained from Data Box by i-αppli

i-αppli mail running under mail-linked i-αppli may not be displayed correctly.

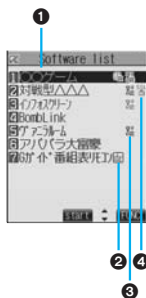
At i-αppli launch, the confirmation display might appear asking whether to upgrade the software to the latest one. Select “YES” and press  to upgrade the software. (See page 315)

Some programs of i-αppli software save the various information running under i-αppli when you finish it. Therefore, the information might not be saved if the battery alarm sounds or the battery pack is removed while i-αppli is running. If the battery level indicates “”, either press  or end i-αppli in accordance with the instructions from each software.

You cannot save some software programs that launches immediately from sites by the i-αppli To function.

Software List

The following items appear in the Software List.



1 Title

i-αppli title

2 i-αppli DX

 Mail-linked i-αppli

3 Auto Start

Indicates that Auto Start is set.

i-αppli Stand-by display

Indicates that the software is set as the i-αppli Stand-by display.

Auto Start and i-αppli Stand-by displays

Indicates that the software is set as the i-αppli Stand-by display and Auto Start is set.

OK for setting

Indicates that you can set “Auto start time” or “Software setting (Stand-by set)”.

UIM execution restrictions

Indicates that the contents have been downloaded or upgraded by using a different UIM.

4 SSL










Indicates that the contents have been downloaded from an SSL page.

Information

The software launched in the last is displayed on the first line. You cannot sort the order of the software programs manually.

Function Menu of the Software List

1 Software list (**FUNC**) Do the following operation.

Function menu	Operations
Set  αppli To	<p>You can set whether to launch i-αppli from sites or mail. You can set this to each software.</p> <p>▶ Put check marks for the items to be set  (IN ISN)</p> <p>Site "  αppli To" You can launch i-αppli from the site containing links for launching i-αppli.</p> <p>Mail "  αppli To" You can launch i-αppli from the mail containing links for launching i-αppli.</p> <p>Ir "  αppli To" You can launch i-αppli from external device that receives Ir data for launching i-αppli.</p> <p>Bar code "  αppli To" You can launch i-αppli from the bar code for launching i-αppli.</p> <p>" <input type="checkbox"/> " and " <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> " switch each time you press .</p> <p>Some items might not be set depending on the software.</p>
Auto start time	You can set the time and date for Auto Start. (See page 324)
Software setting (Stand-by set)	You can set the software as the i-αppli Stand-by display. (See page 325)
Software setting (Network set)	<p>You can set whether to go online while i-αppli is running.</p> <p>▶ Network set</p> <p>ON i-αppli launches without displaying the confirmation display.</p> <p>OFF Displays the online-disabled confirmation display and then launches i-αppli.</p> <p>Check every start You are asked whether to permit going online each time i-αppli launches.</p>
Software setting (Stand-by net)	You can set whether to go online while the i-αppli Stand-by display is running. (See page 326)
Software setting (Icon info)	<p>You can set whether to enable i-αppli to use information of icons for the i-mode mail, Short Messages (SMS), Messages R/F, battery level, Manner Mode and for service area/out of service area.</p> <p>▶ Icon info</p> <p>ON i-αppli uses icon information.</p> <p>OFF i-αppli does not use icon information.</p>
Software setting (Change mld./img.)	<p>You can set whether to enable i-αppli to change the setting for the ring tone or the Stand-by display. This function is available only for i-αppli DX.</p> <p>▶ Change mld./img.</p> <p>ON i-αppli can change the setting for the ring tone and Stand-by display.</p> <p>OFF i-αppli cannot change the setting for the ring tone and Stand-by display.</p> <p>Check every change You are asked whether to permit i-αppli to change the settings for the ring tone and Stand-by display each time.</p>
Software setting (See P.book/hist.)	<p>You can set whether to enable i-αppli to look up the Phonebook, Redial, and Received Call Record. This function is available only for i-αppli DX.</p> <p>▶ See P.book/hist.</p> <p>ON i-αppli looks up Phonebook entries, received call records, and redial items.</p> <p>OFF i-αppli does not look up Phonebook entries, received cal records, and redial items.</p>
Software desc.	<p>You can display the name of i-αppli software and software version.</p> <p>Use  to scroll the display.</p>
Upgrade	<p>You can upgrade the version of the software.</p> <p>▶ YES</p> <p>To cancel, select "NO" and press .</p>

Function menu	Operations
Add desktop icon	You can paste the selected i-appli icon to the desktop. (See page 134)
Delete	<p>▶ YES</p> <p>A confirmation display appears for the software that has been set as the Stand-by display or set for Auto Start. Select "YES" and press ; the software program is deleted.</p> <p>To cancel, select "NO" and press .</p>
Delete selected	<p>Put check marks for the software programs to be deleted ▶ (Finish) ▶ YES</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> and <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> switch each time you press . You can check or uncheck all items by pressing (FUNC) and selecting "Select all/Release all".</p> <p>If there is the software that has been set as the Stand-by display or set for Auto Start, a confirmation display appears. Select "YES" and press ; the software programs are deleted.</p> <p>To cancel, select "NO" and press .</p>
Delete all	<p>▶ Enter the Terminal Security Code ▶ ▶ YES</p> <p>If there is the software that has been set as the Stand-by display or set for Auto Start, a confirmation display appears. Select "YES" and press ; all the software programs are deleted.</p> <p>To cancel, select "NO" and press .</p> <p>See page 140 for the Terminal Security Code.</p>

Information

<Software setting (Icon info)>

When you set "Software setting (Icon info)" to "ON" for the i-appli Stand-by display, icons for unread mail/message, battery level, Manner Mode, radio wave strength and out of area can be sent to your provider over the Internet, in the same way as your mobile phone/UIIM serial number, and can be acquired by third parties.

When the software needs "Software setting (Icon info)", the software might not run if "OFF" is selected.

<Software desc.>

You cannot change the name of the i-appli software displayed in "Software desc."

<Upgrade>

When the software has been updated at launching, you can automatically update that software.

When there is not enough memory, the confirmation display comes up for asking whether to delete unnecessary software programs and save new ones. (See page 310)

At upgrading, the confirmation display might appear for asking whether to send "your mobile phone/UIIM serial number".

Select "YES" and press ; upgrading will begin. In this case, your mobile phone/UIIM serial number is sent to the provider over the Internet, so could be accessed by third parties. However, your phone numbers, address, age, and gender are not notified to the IP (Information Provider) by this operation. To cancel, select "NO" and press .

You cannot update the mail-linked i-appli in the following cases:

- While details of the i-appli compatible folder are displayed
- While Mail Security is set
- Mail Security is set to the i-appli compatible folder

When you delete mail-linked i-appli

When deleting mail-linked i-appli, you can select whether to delete the automatically created i-appli mail folders. If just the folders are left, you can check the text of mail from the Inbox/Outbox List.

1. Do the operation for "Delete", "Delete selected" or "Delete all".

YESDeletes both the software program and the i-appli mail folder.

NODoes not delete the i-appli mail folder; deletes the software only.

CancelDoes not delete both the software and i-appli mail folder; the previous display will return.



For "Delete"

Information

When the i-appli mail folder contains protected mail, you cannot delete both the software and the folder even if you select "YES". You cannot delete the i-appli mail folder in the following cases:

- While displaying details of the folder
- While Mail Security is set
- When the folder is set with security
- When the folder contains protected mail

Pre-installed i-appli Software

BombLink

Rotate a bomb, get the fuse fired using flames falling from both sides of the display, and explode the bombs. Point the fuse of another bomb to the exploding bomb, and the bombs get exploded in a chain. Bombs rise up in series from the bottom. When bombs are piled up to the top of the display, the game is over.

If you explode a bomb, you get a point. If you explode many bombs at a time or bonus bomb (big one), you get high points. When the level is upgraded, you can get points as well.

1 Software list ▶ BombLink



<Title display>

2 Select game mode ▶

ENDLESS.....Continues playing the game until it is over.

100 ATTACK.....Continues playing the game until flames fall 100 times.

OPTION.....Operates the optional functions.

3 Select the level ▶

EASYEasy to operate.

NORMAL ...Moderate to operate.

HARD.....Difficult to operate.

Key operation

Move the cursor over the bomb you want to explode and rotate the bomb to change a facing direction of the fuse. You cannot rotate the bonus bomb (big one) and square bomb.

Key operation	Operating contents	
	Running game	Main display/Selecting the level/ Option
Press /	Moves the cursor upwards.	Selects the item.
Press /	Moves the cursor downwards.	Selects the item.
Press /	Moves the cursor to the left.	Switches the display (RECORD).
Press /	Moves the cursor to the right.	Switches the display (RECORD).
Press / /	Rotates bomb clockwise.	Fixes. (does not work.)
Press /	Rotates bomb counterclockwise.	_____
Press /	Raises bomb one step up.	_____
Press	Sets sound volume.	Sets sound volume.
Press	Returns to the Title display.	Returns to the Title display./ Ends software.

To operate OPTION

1. Select "OPTION" while the Title display appears and press .

2. Do the settings.

VIBRATOR...Sets the vibrator to ON/OFF.

You need to set αVibrator to "Depend on software" to make the setting effective.

RECORD.....Displays high score for "ENDLESS/100 ATTACK" by pressing .

CLEARClears high score.

HELP.....Displays HELP.

This is a card game, the multimillionaire.

You can download an avatar by trading off points you get by winning the game.



© Panasonic Mobile Communications Co., Ltd.

1 Software list ▶ アババラ大富豪 (Avatar & game paradise, the multimillionaire) ▶

2 Do the following operation.

- はじめから (From the beginning)Play the game from the beginning.
- つづきから (From saved position)Play the game from the saved position.
- アバターの更新/変更 (Update/change avatar)Update/change the current avatar.
- ポイント送信 (Send points)Send points.
- 遊び方 (How to play)Displays the overview of the game.
- ユーザー登録 (User registration)You need to register as a user to download an avatar.

You are charged transmission fee for using avatars.

When no point transmission is done for more than five months, the avatar user information may be erased without notice.

Avatar downloading service may end without notice.

3 Select a game mode ▶

- COM対戦 (COM match)Play the game with three competitors you selected.
- いきなりCOM対戦 (Sudden COM match)Start playing the game without selecting competitors, rules, or rounds.
- みんなで対戦 (Matching with all)Play the game while passing the FOMA phone among participants.
(You cannot communicate.)

For COM match

1. Select matching competitors and press .
Select three matching competitors. At the beginning, you can select the competitors from among six.
As the game proceeds, you will be able to select from among nine competitors.
2. Press ().

For matching with all

1. Select a matching method and press .
With “2人対戦 (Matching with two)” and “3人対戦 (Matching with three)”, select competitors and press .
You cannot select competitors with “4人対戦 (Matching with four)”.

4 Press to select a rule ▶ Press to select a setting ▶ Select “決定 (Fix)” ▶

When a rule is selected, the description of the rule appears at the bottom of the display.

ONMakes the selected rule valid.

OFFMakes the selected rule invalid.

5 Press to select the number of rounds ▶

Select from one through nine rounds.


When the setting of the game rounds is completed, the game will start.

Cards are dealt from the poorest clockwise.

In the first game, when there is no ranking for each participant, the participant having the three of Diamonds places a card.



When the ranking of participants is defined:

1. Press to select a strong or weak card, press to fix, and press .
When card exchanges are completed, the game takes place.

When “” etc. appears at the lower left of the display, press  to adjust the sound volume.

When you have no card to play, you finish. When the third participant finishes, the game is over.

When the game is over, the Game Result display appears.

Press  () to return to the Game display.



When the specified rounds of the game are over, the results for all games are displayed.

Scoring







First: Three points

Second: One point

Bonus points might be added.

Press  () to return to the Title display.

Key Operation

Key operation	Description
Press 	Selects a card.
Press 	Fixes the selected card.
Press 	Withdraws the fixed card.
Press 	Places the fixed card.
Press 	Passes.
Press 	Displays the MENU [履歴 (history)/中断 (suspension)/ルール確認 (check rule)/音量調節 (volume adjustment)/戻る (return)]

インフォスクリーン (Info. screen)

You can download news, weather forecast, or fortune.

On the Stand-by display, the calendar is brought up.

Set the date and time beforehand.

You will be billed for transmission charge for downloading data.

Information distribution services such as news, weather forecast, fortune-telling, and anniversaries or holidays on the calendar are period-limited and scheduled to finish towards the end of February 2008. The services might be finished even within the specified period without notice.

You can set this software as the i-appli Stand-by display. (See page 325)



© Panasonic Mobile Communications Co., Ltd.

1 Software list ▶ インフォスクリーン (Info. screen)

2 Do the following operation.

Press to select an item.

You can also press the numeric keys to select the item.

: news, : weather, : fortune, : calendar, : menu

Item	Operations
news	▶ Press to select an item ▶
weather	Displays the weather forecast.
fortune	▶ Press to check fortune.
calendar	▶ Press to check calendar.
menu	▶ Press to select an item ▶ ▶ Press to select an item ▶ See the table below for the menu items.

"menu" items		Description
最新データ取得 (Latest data download)		Downloads the latest data.
データ取得設定 (Data download setting)	自動表示設定 (Auto-display setting)	Sets whether to automatically download data.
	ニュース取得件数 (News download Number of cases)	Sets the number of news items to be downloaded.
背景設定 (Background setting)	背景 (background) 1 to 4	Sets the image to be displayed on the Stand-by display.
ユーザー設定 (User setting)	都道府県 (Prefectures)	Selects from among Hokkaido through Okinawa.
	地域 (Area)	Sets the area for weather forecast.
	星座 (Horoscope fortune-telling)	Sets a sign of zodiac for horoscope.
待受表示設定 (Stand-by display setting)	情報表示 (Property)	Sets Information display on the Stand-by display.
	カレンダー表示 (Display calendar)	Sets the calendar for the Stand-by display.
	天気表示 (Display weather forecast)	Sets a weather mark for the Stand-by display.
音設定 (Tone Setting)		Sets "ON" or "OFF" of sound.
アプリ終了 (End i-appli)		Closes i-appli and the Stand-by display returns.

Items of news are deleted automatically from the oldest one in order.

Vanilla's room changes when a present is delivered or an event occurs.

Set the date and time beforehand.

A present is brought to the room. Some presents change the background.

When the usage status of the FOMA phone such as time zone or the number of incoming calls changes, an event occurs and the animated character in the room is transformed. In addition, seasonal events will occur. When a seasonal event is just around the corner, a present is brought to the room making the atmosphere different from ordinary life.

You can set this software as the i-appli Stand-by display. (See page 325)

1 Software list ▶ ヴァニラルーム (Vanilla's room) ▶ Ⓞ ▶ Ⓞ ▶ Ⓞ



© kero/Kodansha Ltd.


© Panasonic Mobile Communications Co., Ltd.

2 Do the following operation.

Item	Operations
カスタマイズ (Customize)	<p>You can select the frame, signal level, battery level, or landscape for display in the room.</p> <p>You can set an image in the Data Box or downloaded from a site for the landscape.</p> <p>Operate from the step 1 on page 322 to customize.</p> <p>You can set the Sub-QCIF image or smaller, and the image is trimmed to 54 wide by 38 deep (dots) from the upper left.</p> <p>You cannot set some images.</p> <p>Even if you delete the image set for each item, the setting at purchase does not return.</p> <p>If a call comes in or if you press during customizing, customizing is suspended and the contents are not changed. Then the contents previously set appear, however, the contents by the default might return.</p>
マイバースデー (My birthday)	▶ Press to move the cursor and enter the birthday ▶
アイテムセットDL (Item set DL)	▶ Yes ▶ YES ▶ Select items from the site. When a set is selected from the site, download starts and i-appli is automatically closed.
アイテム達成率 (Item accomplishment rate)	Shows what percentage of small items among the currently set items is displayed.
ヘルプ (Help)	Displays HELP.

You are charged transmission fee. Downloading service may end without notice.

How to set customizing

1. Select a customizing item and press .

フレーム (Frame)Sets the frame.


電波 (Signal)Sets the image of the signal level.


電池 (Battery)Sets the image of the battery level.

風景 (Landscape)Sets the image of landscape.

全アイテムを元に戻す (Reset all items) ...Returns all items to original state.


The signal level appears at the upper left, the battery level at the lower right, and the landscape at the upper right of the display.

Press  (表示) to display the current room.


2. Select “アイテムのダウンロード (Download item)” and press .


Select “このアイテムを元に戻す (Reset the item)” to return only the item you are selecting to the original location.


When “風景” is selected:

1. Select “アイテムのダウンロード (Download item)” or “写真から選択 (Select image)” and press .

If you select “写真から選択”, select an image from the Data Box. The setting is completed.


3. Select “Yes” and press .

4. Select the image from the site to be set, and press .

5. Select “Yes” and press ; then the selected image is downloaded and the setting is completed.

The image selected in step 1 through 5 is stored.

To do the setting in succession, repeat step 1 through 5.

Press  to return to the preceding display.

Information

You can download the image from the “P-SQUARE” site that can be set to each area in order as shown below:

 Menu メニューリスト (Menu List) ケータイ電話メーカー (Mobile phone maker) P-SQUARE



Images on the display differ from the actual ones. Local programs broadcasted by local channels will appear on your display.

This is useful i-appli that bundles TV program listings and a TV remote-control function and free of monthly charge.

Anywhere at any time, you can easily download TV program information you want to know. You can check program titles, program contents, start/end time of programs, and G code according to your local TV station. The "おすすめメール (recommendation mail)" function enables you to immediately send information about program titles and their broadcast schedules to your friends once you have found program information you like. You can also remotely control your TV. (Some TVs are not supported.)

For details, see "FOMA i-mode User's Manual".

"G Guide Program List Remote Controller" is free of monthly charge. You are charged packet transmission fee.

Ir remote-controller

You can use the FOMA phone as a remote-controller for devices supporting Ir remote-controllers. i-appli makes use of Ir to let the FOMA phone send remote control signals.

To use remote control devices, you may need to download the software for those devices.

This function does not work with some devices.

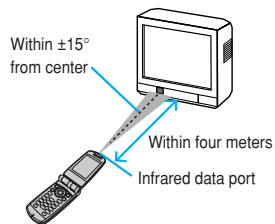
Communication might be affected by compatible devices and the ambient light.

You cannot use Ir remote-controller during Self Mode.

Aim the FOMA phone's infrared data port at the front of the device to be operated.

You can operate up to four meters away from the device.

Keep the angle of the infrared rays within $\pm 15^\circ$ from center.



Information

You can delete pre-installed software programs. You can reload them from the "P-SQUARE" site.

☰ Menu メニューリスト (Menu List) ケータイ電話メーカー (Mobile phone maker) P-SQUARE

If you use the UIM other than the UIM used when downloading, the UIM restrictions are activated. (See page 37)

Starting i-αppli Automatically

You can have i-αppli launch automatically at set date and time. You can set the date and time for automatic start using Auto Start Time.

Automatic Start Setting









Setting at purchase
OFF

You can set whether to enable automatic start of i-αppli.

-   **Auto start set**
ON.....Enables automatic start of i-αppli.
OFF.....Disables automatic start of i-αppli.


Automatic Start Time

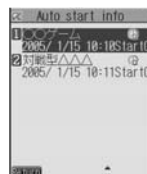
You can set the time and date for automatic start. You can set up to three items.

- Software list**  (**FUNC**) **Auto start time**
- Put the check marks for the items to be set**  (**Finish**)
Time interval setStarts at an interval specified by the software. The setting is completed.
Start time setStarts at the set start time automatically.
" " and " " switch each time you press .
- Select start time**  **Enter the date and time to be set** 
Use  to move the cursor and use the keypad to enter numbers.
Enter the western calendar year.
Enter the time on 24-hour basis.
- 1 time**
1 time.....The setting is for no repetitions (once only). The setting is completed.
DailyThe software starts every day. The setting is completed.
Weekly.....The software starts on the specified day/s of the week.
- Put the check marks for the day/s of the week to be set**  (**Finish**)
" " and " " switch each time you press .

Automatic Start Information

You can check whether software has started automatically and properly.

-    **αppli info** **Auto start info**
StartStarted automatically.
Start xDid not start automatically.
Start -Has not started yet.




<Auto Start Info display>

Information

Software does not start automatically in the following cases:

- The FOMA phone is switched off
- The date and time are not set
- Another task is running
- You are on the phone
- During All Lock or PIM Lock
- The time set for automatic start is identical to the time set for "Software update", or an alarm of "Alarm", "Schedule" or "ToDo"

If automatic start fails, "Not run" appears on the desktop; when you select this icon, the message "Not run soft" is displayed. Select the icon and press  to bring up the Auto Start Info display.

The failure of automatic start, which occurs during i-mode or when another software is running, is also recorded.


<i-αppli Stand-by Display>

Operating i-αppli Stand-by Display

Software Setting (Stand-by Setting)

You can set i-αppli for the Stand-by display. Once set, the i-αppli Stand-by display automatically appears each time you bring up the Stand-by display.



1 Software list () ▶ Software setting


"" appears for the software set as the Stand-by display.

2 Stand-by set

ON.....Sets the i-αppli Stand-by display.





OFF.....Cancels the i-αppli Stand-by display.


"" or "" is displayed while an i-αppli Stand-by display is running.



To cancel starting the software, select "Cancel" and press .



To operate i-αppli as a normal i-αppli while an i-αppli Stand-by display is running

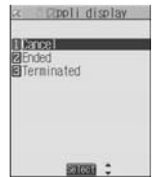
From the i-αppli Stand-by display, press .

"" or "" changes to a blinking "" or "" and you can operate the i-αppli normally.

To return to the i-αppli Stand-by display, press and hold  for at least one second; you can also press

, select "Ended" and press . To cancel the i-αppli Stand-by display, select "Terminated", press


, select "YES" and then press .



Information

With some software programs set as the i-αppli Stand-by display, you can press a key to go from the normal i-αppli status to the i-αppli Stand-by display status. However, you cannot return to the i-αppli Stand-by display if other menu functions are operating.

Information

If you turn off the FOMA phone while the i-αppli Stand-by display is running, the confirmation display appears asking whether to launch i-αppli when you turn on the power again. Select "YES" or "NO" and press .

You can set only one software program for the i-αppli Stand-by display.

Some i-αppli cannot be set for the Stand-by display.

Note that you might not be able to receive timely information if you have set "Software setting (Stand-by net)" to "OFF".

If the software set for the i-αppli Stand-by display connects to the network, it might not operate successfully because of radio wave conditions.

When the i-αppli Stand-by display is activated, the image set for "Stand-by display" of "Display setting" will not be displayed.

When you bring up the Stand-by display while a menu function is operating, the image set for "Stand-by display" of "Display setting" will be displayed, even when the i-αppli Stand-by display is set.

You cannot use the Web To function from the i-αppli Stand-by display.

If you set All Lock or PIM Lock while the i-αppli Stand-by display is running, the i-αppli Stand-by display will end. If you set All Lock, the image set for "Stand-by display" of "Display setting" will be displayed and if you set PIM Lock, the Stand-by display at purchase will be displayed. The i-αppli Stand-by display will return when you cancel All Lock or PIM Lock.

Software Setting (Stand-by Network)

You can set whether to connect the network for when the i-αppli Stand-by display is displayed.

1 Software list (**FUNC**) Software setting Stand-by net

ON.....Enables connection to the network while the i-αppli Stand-by display is displayed.

OFF.....Disables connection to the network while the i-αppli Stand-by display is displayed.

End Stand-by Display

You can end running the i-αppli set for the Stand-by display. The i-αppli Stand-by display is released.

1 αppli settings End stand-by display

EndThe i-αppli Stand-by display under running is ended.

Terminate..i-αppli set for the Stand-by display is released.

Information





If you release the i-αppli Stand-by display, the image set for "Stand-by display" of "Display setting" is displayed.

End Stand-by Information

When the i-αppli Stand-by display does not end successfully, you can check the time and reason.

1 αppli info End stand-by info

When "**FUNC**" is displayed on the End Stand-by information display

Press  (**FUNC**), select "Copy info", and press  to copy the information. Select "Delete info" and press ; then select "YES", and press  to delete the information.

Information

When the i-αppli Stand-by display ends successfully (normal end), it is not recorded.

Setting Lights and Vibrators for when Running i-αppli

αDisplay Light

Setting at purchase
Depend on system

You can set the display light operation for when an i-αppli is running.

1 αppli settings αDisplay light

Depend on system.....Same as "Display light".

Depend on software ..Same as software's setting.

αVibrator

Setting at purchase
Depend on system

You can set the vibrator operation for when an i-αppli is running.

1 αppli settings αVibrator

Depend on system.....Does not work regardless of the setting of "Vibrator". With some software, vibrator will work.

Depend on software ..Same as software's setting.

Information

With some software, the display light and vibrator settings are "OFF". Consequently, if you set "Depend on software", the display light and vibrator will not work; if you want them to work, set "Depend on system".

i-motion

What is i-motion?.....	328
Downloading an i-motion Movie	<i-motion Download> 328
Setting whether to Play an i-motion Movie Automatically	<i-motion Auto Play> 330

What is i-motion?

i-motion contains moving image data such as movies and sounds that you can replay or use for the Stand-by display.

There are different types of i-motion movies as shown below. The type of i-motion movies has been set and not selectable. FOMA P700i does not support streaming type i-motion.

Categories		Description
Type	Playback type	
Standard type (can be saved)	Plays back after downloading (up to 500 Kbytes)	Plays back after downloading all i-motion movies.
	Plays back while downloading (up to 500 Kbytes)	Plays back while downloading an i-motion movie. After downloading, you can also play it back same as "Plays back after downloading".
Streaming type (cannot be saved)	Plays back while downloading (up to 2 Mbytes)	Plays back while downloading an i-motion movie. The data is deleted after playback, so you cannot play it back again or save it to the FOMA phone. * FOMA P700i does not support this.

Some i-motion movies cannot be saved.

<i-motion Download>

Downloading an i-motion Movie

You can download an i-motion movie from sites.

Playing an i-motion Movie Downloaded from a Site

1 Select an i-motion movie from a site that supports the downloading of i-motion movies ▶ ▶ Play

See page 353 for the operation during playback.

If "Automatic replay" is set to "ON", the i-motion movie will be played back automatically after it is downloaded.

If an i-motion movie can be played back during downloading, that i-motion movie will be played back during downloading.



<Download Completion display>

Information

For an i-motion movie without title, "No title" is displayed on the Download Completion display.

Depending on the site or an i-motion movie, you might not be able to play it back during downloading.

Even when you stop playing back the data of standard type while downloading, downloading still continues.

Even when "Automatic replay" is set to "ON", the data is not automatically played back after downloading if it is played back while downloading.

If "Automatic replay" is set to "OFF", the i-motion movie will not be played back automatically after it is downloaded, and instead the Download Completion display appears.

If an i-motion movie has restrictions for the number of playbacks, playback period, or playback expiry date, "⌚" will be displayed before the title. An i-motion movie with playback period restrictions cannot be played back prior to or after the restriction period.

Further, if you keep the battery detached for a lengthy period, the clock in your FOMA phone might be reset. If this happens, you will not be able to play back an i-motion movie that has playback period and playback expiry restrictions. See page 358 for checking the replay restrictions.

Some i-motion movies will not be played back successfully even when the data has been downloaded.

When downloading data is suspended due to the line speed, transmission condition or radio wave status, or when you download data in excess of maximum size, the confirmation display, if any of "Play", "Save", or "Property" can be displayed, appears and then the Download Completion display appears.

Because of the line speed, transmission condition, or radio wave conditions, playback might be interrupted while the data is being downloaded, or it might be erratic. An i-motion movie can be played back repeatedly after downloading.

You cannot download an i-motion movie in ASF format.

Saving an i-motion Movie

You can save a downloaded i-motion movie to your FOMA phone and up to 100 items can be saved. (The actual number of storable i-motion movies may decrease depending on the data size.)

1 Download Completion display ▶ Save ▶ YES ▶ Select the destination folder ▶

To cancel, select "NO" and press .

See page 212 when i-motion files are stored to the maximum.

See page 354 for the i-motion folder.

Information

Untitled i-motion files are indicated by "movie" in the i-motion List.

Depending on the i-motion movie, you might not be able to save the downloaded data to the FOMA phone.

You can set a downloaded i-motion movie for the Stand-by display. (See page 121)

However, some i-motion movies cannot be set for the Stand-by display.

You cannot use the Web To, Mail To, Phone To/AV Phone To function from an i-motion file set for the Stand-by display.

Important

The saved contents may be lost due to a malfunction, repair, or other mishandling of the FOMA phone. We cannot be held responsible for the loss of saved contents. For just in case, you are well advised to save the contents stored in the FOMA phone to the miniSD memory card (see page 376). If you have a personal computer, you can also save them to the personal computer by using the FOMA USB Cable (option) and the Data Link Software (see page 519).

Property

You can display the property of a downloaded i-motion movie. (See page 358)

1 Download Completion display ▶ Property

Use  to scroll the display to check the information.

After checking, press .

When a Link is Set in a Ticker

When a ticker has been set in an i-motion movie, it is displayed during playback.

When the ticker contains the underscored phone number, mail address, or URL for sites, you can execute the Phone To, Mail To, Web To function, or can save the data to the Phonebook at the end of play or in pause.

Example: Connecting to a URL in a ticker

1 At the end of play ▶ YES

To cancel, select "NO" and press .



Function Menu of the Download Completion Display

1 Download Completion display ▶  (**FUNC**) ▶ Do the following operation.

Function menu	Operations
Save screen memo	You can save screen memos. (See page 206)

<i-motion Auto Play>

Setting whether to Play an i-motion Movie Automatically Setting at purchase ON

You can set whether to play back an i-motion movie automatically, for when you have downloaded a standard (normal) type of i-motion movie from a site or have selected a screen memo which contains a standard (normal) type of i-motion movie.

1  ▶  ▶ **i-mode settings** ▶  **motion setting** ▶ **Automatic replay**

ON.....Plays back the i-motion movie automatically.

OFF.....Plays back the i-motion movie manually.

Information

When the setting is "OFF" and you have downloaded a standard (normal) type of i-motion movie from a site or have selected it from a screen memo which contains a standard (normal) type of i-motion movie, the i-motion movie will not be played back automatically; instead the Download Completion display will be displayed.

Data Display/Edit/Management

Making Full Use of Still Images

Displaying Images	<Picture Viewer>	332
Folder Configuration in Data Box.....		333
How to Display Image List		334
Setting Display Contents of Still Image List.....	<Viewer Settings>	347
Editing Still Images.....	<Edit Picture>	347
Creating Animations	<Original Animation>	352

Making Full Use of Moving Images

Playing Moving/i-motion Movies	<i-motion Player>	353
How to Display Moving Image List.....		354
Editing Moving/i-motion Movies.....	<Edit i-motion>	361

Making Full Use of Chara-den

What is Chara-den?	<Chara-den>	367
Displaying/Operating Chara-den	<Chara-den Player>	367
Recording Chara-den	<Record Chara-den>	370

Making Full Use of Melodies

Playing Melodies	<Melody Player>	371
------------------------	-----------------	-----

Making Full Use of miniSD Memory Card

Notes for Using miniSD Memory Card.....		376
Inserting/Removing miniSD Memory Card		377
Folder Configuration on miniSD Memory Card.....		378
Using miniSD Memory Card	<SD-PIM>	380
Formatting miniSD Memory Card	<miniSD Format>	383
Checking miniSD Memory Card	<miniSD Check>	384
Displaying Capacity of miniSD Memory Card.....	<miniSD Information>	384

Making Full Use of Data

Using a miniSD Memory Card with a Personal Computer		385
---	--	-----

Making Full Use of Infrared Data Exchange Mode

Infrared Data Exchange Mode		386
Sending/Receiving Data Files One by One.....		388
Sending/Receiving All Data Items		389
Transmission Setting	<Forwarding Image>	391

Displaying Images

You can display the shot still images (see pages 160, 161), downloaded still images (see page 208), or still images saved to the miniSD memory card.

On the FOMA phone, you can display JPEG files, GIF files, or Flash movies. However, you may not display some files even when their file formats are supported.

1



My picture

- i-modeLists the still images shot by the camera or downloaded.
- Camera.....Lists the still images shot by the camera or shot Chara-den images.
- Decomail-picture.....Lists the still images which can be used for composing Deco mail.
- Pre-installedLists the pre-installed still images.
- User folderLists the still images inside the user folder.
- Original animationDisplays original animations.
- miniSDDisplays the folders within the miniSD memory card.
- FrameDisplays the list of frames.
- StampDisplays the list of marker stamps and cushy marks.

The displayed folder names differ after executing "Add folder" or "Edit folder name".

If you select "miniSD", the Folder List is displayed. Select a folder and press to list the still images.

You can activate Picture Viewer also by selecting from the Shortcut menu and pressing .

You can activate Picture Viewer also by selecting "My picture" from Camera menu and pressing .

2

Select a file

Information

During "PIM lock", only the still images pre-installed at the time of purchase are displayed.

You cannot display the still image in excess of 1632 x 1224 dots size.

You cannot display the still image in excess of 700 Kbytes.

When the FOMA phone or miniSD memory card has many data files, it may take longer to access the image file you want to display. See page 352 for original animations.

Operations when playing back still images

You can do the following operations from the display for playing back still images.

Operation	Key operation
Display the next file ¹	Press .
Display the previous file ¹	Press .
Display in equivalent size ²	Press (Normal). Press (Return) again to return to the previous file.

¹ Displays in the order at the Still Image List.

² You cannot operate depending on the image size.

Specifications for playing back still image files

File format	JPEG, GIF, Flash
Pixels	Files of 1632 x 1224 dots or less
Extension	jpg (Exif/CIFF/JFIF format Baseline, Progressive), gif, swf, ifm

Folder Configuration in Data Box

You can use data files such as still images shot by the camera, downloaded images and melodies in Data Box.

DATA BOX

My Picture

- i-modeYou can display the list of still images shot or downloaded.
- CameraYou can display the list of shot still images or shot Chara-den images.
- Decomail-pictureYou can display the list of still images to be used for composing Deco mail.
- Pre-installedYou can display the list of still images stored at the time of purchase.
- User folderYou can display the list of still images inside the user folder.
- Original animationYou can display original animations.
- miniSDYou can display folders inside the miniSD memory card.
- FrameYou can display the list of frames.
- StampYou can display the list of marker stamps and cushy marks.

i-motion

- i-modeYou can display the list of i-motion movies recorded by the camera or downloaded.
- CameraYou can display the list of recorded i-motion movies or shot Chara-den videos.
- Pre-installedYou can display the list of i-motion movies stored at the time of purchase.
- User folderYou can display the list of i-motion movies inside the user folder.
- miniSDYou can display the list of i-motion movies inside the miniSD memory card.
- PlaylistYou can continuously play up to 10 i-motion movies.

Melody

- i-modeYou can display the list of melodies downloaded from sites.
- Pre-installedYou can display the list of stored melodies.
- User folderYou can display the list of melodies inside the user folder.
- Voice announceYou can display the list of data recorded using the "Voice announce" function.
- PlaylistYou can continuously play up to 10 melodies.

Chara-den

The displayed folder names differ after executing "Add folder" or "Edit folder name".


How to Display Image List


You can bring up the list of saved still images.

1



My picture

You can activate Picture Viewer also by selecting  from the Shortcut menu and pressing .

You can activate Picture Viewer also by selecting "My picture" from Camera menu and pressing .



<Folder List>

2

Select a folder 



- i-modeLists the still images shot by the camera or downloaded.
- Camera.....Lists the still images shot by the camera or shot Chara-den images.
- Deco mail-picture.....Lists the still images which can be used for composing Deco mail.
- Pre-installedLists the pre-installed still images.
- User folderLists the still images inside the user folder.
- Original animationDisplays original animations.
- miniSDDisplays the folders within the miniSD memory card.
- FrameDisplays the list of frames.
- StampDisplays the list of marker stamps.

The displayed folder names differ after executing "Add folder" or "Edit folder name".



<Still Image List>

When you select "miniSD"






- Select "Picture" or "Image Box" and press .
 - PictureDisplays still images inside the "DCIM" folder. (See page 378)
 - Image BoxDisplays still images inside the "PRIVATE" folder. (See page 378)
- Select the folder and press  to display the list of still images.



<miniSD memory card Folder List>





Icons in the File List

<File format>








File format	Icon
JPEG format	 (blue)
GIF format	 (orange)
Frame/Marker stamp	
Cushy mark	
Flash	

For the file with the file restriction, " " is added to the icon. This is not displayed for Flash movie.

<Acquired source>

Acquired source	Icon
Files downloaded or attached to i-mode mail	
Files shot by the FOMA phone	
Files sent via Ir data exchange or data link software	
Files recorded Chara-den	

<Available operation>

Available operation	Icon
Attach to i-mode mail (10000 bytes or less)	
Attach to i-mode mail (Over 10000 bytes and 500 Kbytes or less)	 (gray clip)
Attach to i-mode mail (Over 500 Kbytes)	 (red clip)
Insert image into Deco Mail	
Set display	
Send Ir data	
Export to miniSD memory card	

If you cannot display a preview image

The following image is displayed.



Cannot be played back

When selecting folders or still images by another functions

Some folders or still images may not be displayed depending on the function.

You may at times be able to confirm the still image by pressing (M) (Play) while you are selecting it.

Information

During "PIM lock", only the still images pre-installed at the time of purchase are displayed.

Function Menu of the Folder List

1 Folder List > (i) (FUNC) > Do the following operation.



<Folder List>

Function menu	Operations
Add folder	<p>You can create new user folder. You can create up to 20 folders.</p> <p>▶ Enter the folder name > (O)</p> <p>You can enter up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters. See page 482 for how to enter characters.</p>
Edit folder name	<p>▶ Enter the folder name > (O)</p> <p>You can enter up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters. See page 482 for how to enter characters.</p>
Delete folder	<p>▶ Enter the Terminal Security Code > (O) ▶ YES</p> <p>To cancel, select "NO" and press (O).</p> <p>See page 140 for the Terminal Security Code.</p>
Delete all image	<p>You can delete all files. However, you cannot delete files stored at the time of purchase or files inside the miniSD memory card.</p> <p>▶ Enter the Terminal Security Code > (O) ▶ YES</p> <p>To cancel, select "NO" and press (O).</p> <p>See page 140 for the Terminal Security Code.</p>


Information

<Edit folder name>

You can edit the name for the User folder only.

<Delete folder> <Delete all image>

You can delete the User folder only.

If the folder contains the following files, the confirmation display appears asking whether to delete them. Select "YES" or "NO" and press .

- Still images set for the Stand-by display/Wake-up display/Dialing display/Call Receiving display/Mail Sending display/Mail Receiving display/Checking display
- Still images set for the User icons of Schedule
- Still images set for the icons on the Menu Display Set
- Moving image set for the Stand-by display
- Files set for playlist
- Files with access right set for reading only by devices such as a personal computer.
- Files attached to mail
- Still images set for Phonebook Image for incoming calls
- Still images set for original animations
- Still images stored in the Phonebook
- Moving images set for Ring Tone (Movie Ring Tone)

If you delete the following folders, the setting returns to the default.

- Still images set for the Stand-by display/Wake-up display/Dialing display/Call Receiving display/Mail Sending display/Mail Receiving display/Checking display
- Still images set for the User icons of Schedule
- Moving images set for Ring Tone (Movie Ring Tone)
- Still images set for Phonebook Image for incoming calls
- Moving images set for the Stand-by display

Even if you delete the source still image of the attached image, you cannot delete the image attached to mail. (You can delete the JPEG image in excess of 10,000 bytes attached to i-mode mail.)







If you delete original moving image of the attached moving image, you can also delete the moving image attached to mail.










Function Menu of the Still Image List














1 Still Image List (FUNC) Do the following operation.












<Still Image List>

Function menu	Operations
Edit picture	You can edit the still image. (See page 347)
Edit title	<p> Enter the title </p> <p>In the case of a file inside the FOMA phone, you can enter up to 9 full-pitch or 18 half-pitch characters.</p> <p>In the case of a file inside the miniSD memory card, you can enter up to 18 full-pitch or 36 half-pitch characters.</p> <p>See page 482 for how to enter characters.</p>
Display picture	You can display images. You can switch a equivalent size and standard size by pressing  . (You may not be able to display the image in equivalent size depending on the file size or image size.)
Set display	You can paste the still image to the display such as the Stand-by display and display it. (See page 342)
Picture info	You can display information. (See page 343)
Compose message	Go to step 2 on page 235. If you scale down or cut out the still image to QVGA (320 x 240) size, press  (CANCEL) to scale down or cut that image. You can scale down or cut it out again also by pressing  (FUNC) and selecting "Cancel". When you press  (FUNC) and select "Set", the Message Composition display appears.

Function menu	Operations
Send Ir data	You can send a single data using infrared rays. (See page 388)
Decorate mail	Go to step 2 on page 235. See page 240 for Deco mail. If you scale down or cut out the still image to Sub-QCIF (128 x 96) size, press  (Cancel) to scale down or cut out that image again. You can scale down or cut it out again also by pressing  (FUNC) and selecting "Cancel". When you press  (FUNC) and select "Set", the Message Composition display appears.
Add desktop icon	You can paste the icon of the selected still image to the desktop. (See page 134)
Import	You can import a single still image from the miniSD memory card. (See page 343)
Export	You can export a single still image to the miniSD memory card. (See page 344)
Add picture to PB	You can store the still image in the Phonebook. (See page 97)
Size for mail	You can change the file size of the still image to a file size or image size that can be pasted to mail. The file after changing its size is saved separately from the original file, so the size of the original file is not changed. Attach mail.....The file size is converted to 500 Kbytes or less without changing the image size. QVGA scale down..You can reduce the size of the still image to within QVGA (320 x 240) and convert the file size to 500 Kbytes or less. The proportional ratio of the still image is retained. QVGA trim away.....Reduces or cuts out the still image to QVGA (320 x 240) and converts the file size to 500 Kbytes or less. You cannot select "Attach mail" for a still image in excess of 500 Kbytes after the file size is converted.  ▶ YES If you scale down or cut out the still image to QVGA (320 x 240), press  (Cancel) to scale down or cut it out again. You can also press  (FUNC) and select "Cancel" to scale down or cut it out again. Press  (FUNC) and select "Save" for saving the still image. See page 212 for when images are stored to the maximum.
Positioning	You can set the position for when you paste the still image to the Stand-by display. See page 342 for "Set display". Center.....Displays the still image at the center of the display. (Setting at purchase) Top.....Displays the still image at the upper part of the display. Bottom.....Displays the still image at the lower part of the display.
Clipping area	You can set the clipping area for when you paste the still image to the Stand-by display. See page 342 for "Set display". Center.....Displays at the center of the display. (Setting at purchase) Upper.....Displays at the upper part of the display. Lower.....Displays at the lower part of the display.
Edit file name	 ▶ Enter the file name ▶  You can enter up to 36 half-pitch alphanumeric. See page 482 for how to enter characters.
File restriction	If you set "File restricted" for the file, the operation of attaching to i-mode mail is disabled at the receiving end who receives the image as the first distribution. File unrestricted.....Does not set the file restriction. File restricted.....Disables the secondary distribution. See page 174 for File Restriction.

Function menu	Operations
Move	You can move still images and moving images inside the FOMA phone to other folders inside it. ▶Select the destination folder▶ 
DPOF setting	You can set information to the still image within the miniSD memory card, about whether to print it out and number of print copies. You can print out the desired still images by bringing the card to a service shop which supports printing from the miniSD memory card or by using the printer supporting DPOF. Print Prints the selected still image. Print OFF Sets the selected still image not to be printed. The setting is completed. All print OFF Sets all still images not to be printed. The setting is completed. ▶Enter the number of frames to be printed out▶  Enter "01" through "99" in two digits.
Copy	You can copy the still or moving image in the miniSD memory card to another folder in the miniSD memory card. ▶Select the destination folder▶ 
Move	You can move the still or moving image in the miniSD memory card to another folder in the miniSD memory card. ▶Select the destination folder▶ 
Delete this	▶YES To cancel, select "NO" and press  .
Delete all	You can delete all files in the folder. ▶Enter the Terminal Security Code▶  ▶YES To cancel, select "NO" and press  See page 140 for the Terminal Security Code.
Multiple-choice	You can select multiple files and operate them. ▶Select files▶  " <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> " is displayed each time you press  on the picture list. " <input type="checkbox"/> " and " <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> " switch each time you press  on the title list. ▶  () Picture/Title name You can switch the list of still images. (See page 345) Delete Deletes files. (See "Delete this" on this page) DPOF setting Sets DPOF. (See this page) Copy Copies files. (See this page) Move Moves folders. (See this page) Select all Selects all files. Release all Release "Select all".
Memory info	You can display the unused space and memory capacity (reference) for still and moving images to be saved to the FOMA phone and miniSD memory card. After checking, press  .
Sort	You can change displayed order. Chronological Sorts files in the order of latest to oldest date/time they were saved. (Setting at purchase) Chronological Sorts files in the order of oldest to latest date/time they were saved. By title Sorts by title in ascending order. By title Sorts by title in descending order. By size Sorts files in the order of large to small sizes. By size Sorts files in the order of small to large sizes. By source Sorts files by acquired source.

Function menu	Operations
Picture/ Title name	You can switch the list of still images. (See page 345)
Composite image	<p>You can create a single image by compounding four images.</p> <p>▶ Select an image location, <Upper left>, <Upper right>, <Lower left>, or <Lower right> ▶  </p> <p>Select a folder ▶  Select an image ▶  </p> <p>Repeat the above procedure and position four images.</p> <p>To release the located image, select "Release this" and press .</p> <p>See page 334 for the still image folder and list.</p> <p>▶  (Finish) ▶ </p> <p>To return to the steps to select the image location, press  (Cancel).</p>

Information

<Edit title>

Even if you edit the title, the default title is displayed in " Ⓜ motion info". The title is not displayed in "Picture info".

You may not be able to edit the title when the unused space inside the miniSD memory card is short.

You cannot edit the titles of frames or marker stamps stored at the time of purchase.

You cannot edit the titles of still images in the miniSD memory card in excess of 1632 x 1224 dots size.

You may not be able to edit the title of the file attached to the mail you are composing.


<Display picture>

You may not be able to execute the Display Image depending on the file.


Flash movies are played back at the volume set for "Phone" of "Ring tone". When "Phone" of "Ring volume" is set to "Step", they sound at "Level 2".


<Compose message>

When a JPEG format image in excess of 10,000 bytes is sent to the phone supporting i-mode, it is converted to "the size fit to i-mode mobile phone" at the i-shot Center.

When a screen size is larger than QVGA (320 x 240) size, the confirmation display appears asking whether to scaledown or cut out the still image. The converted still image is saved as a separate file so the original still image does not change. Select "Attach mail" and press ; then the screen size does not change and the file size is converted to 500 Kbytes or less.

You cannot select "Attach mail" for a still image in excess of 500 Kbytes after the file size is converted.

Select "QVGA scale down" and press ; then the screen size is reduced to within QVGA (320 x 240) size and the file size is converted to 500 Kbytes or less. Proportional ratio of the still image is retained.

Select "QVGA trim away" and press ; then the screen size is scaledown or cut out to QVGA (320 x 240) size and the file size is converted to 500 Kbytes or less.

See page 212 when the images are stored to the maximum.

The screen size of a still image appropriate to send to an i-mode mobile phone is QVGA (320 x 240) size.

You cannot compose i-mode mail in the following cases:

- When five draft mail messages are saved
- Flash movie
- GIF file in excess of 10,000 bytes
- The JPEG file in the extension base line format in excess of 500 Kbytes
- Still image other than JPEG inside the miniSD memory card
- Still image in excess of 1632 x 1224 dots size inside the miniSD memory card
- Still image in excess of 700 Kbytes inside the miniSD memory card
- Chara-den picture that you shot a Chara-den model with "Rec. file restriction"
- Files of which output from the FOMA phone is prohibited


See page 174 for attaching the file set with the file restriction to mail.


Information

<Decorate mail>

You can compose Deco mail only from the "Decomail-picture" folder.

When a screen size is larger than Sub-QCIF (128 x 96) size, the confirmation display appears asking whether to cut out or scale down the still image. The edited still image is saved as a separate file so the original still image does not change.

Select "Sub-QCIF scale down" and press ; then the screen size is scaled down to within Sub-QCIF (128 x 96) size and the file size is converted to the maximum size to create Deco mail or less. Proportional ratio of the still image is retained.

Select "Sub-QCIF trim away" and press ; then the screen size is cut out or scaled down to Sub-QCIF (128 x 96) size and the file size is converted to the maximum size to create Deco mail or less.

See page 212 when images are stored to the maximum.

You cannot create Deco mail in the following cases:

- When five saved messages are saved
- Flash movie
- The GIF file in excess of the maximum size to create Deco mail
- The JPEG file in excess of the maximum size to create Deco mail
- The file whose output from the FOMA phone is prohibited

<Size for mail>

The name of the saved file, title and its storage location are as follows:

- File name: "YYYYMMDDhhmmnn" (Y: year, M: month, D: date, h: hour, m: minute, n:number)
image (when date and time are not set)
- Title: "YYYY/MM/DD hh:mm" (Y: year, M: month, D: date, h: hour, m: minute)
image (when date and time are not set)
- Storage location: Folder the source file is saved to (however, "i-mode" for "miniSD")

You cannot change the file size for mail in the following cases:

- Files other than JPEG
- Files of QVGA (320 x 240) size or less and 500 Kbytes or less
- For the JPEG file in the extension base line format
- Files of which output from the FOMA phone is prohibited
- Files in excess of 1632 x 1224 dots size inside the miniSD memory card
- Files in excess of 700 Kbytes inside the miniSD memory card
- Chara-den pictures that you shot a Chara-den model with "Rec. file restriction"

<Positioning>

The still image may not be positioned in the specified place depending on the size of the image.

The set display position is valid for the Stand-by, Wake-up, Dialing, Call Receiving, Video-phone Dialing, VP Call Receiving, Mail Sending, Mail Receiving, and Check New Message displays.


<Clipping area>

The set clipping area is valid for the Stand-by, Wake-up, Dialing, Call Receiving, Video-phone Dialing, VP Call Receiving, Mail Sending, Mail Receiving, and Check New Message displays. But the still image may not be clipped in the specified area depending on the size of the image.

<Edit file name>

You cannot edit the file name for the following files:

- Files inside the miniSD memory card
- Images pre-installed at the time of purchase
- When the unused space inside the FOMA phone is not enough
- Files that you shot a Chara-den model with "Rec. file restriction"
- Files whose output from the FOMA phone is prohibited
- Files attached to the mail you are creating

If you try to edit the file name of a JPEG format image or of i-motion movie in excess of 10,000 byte which is attached to mail, the confirmation display appears asking whether to cancel the attachment. Select "YES" or "NO" and press .

You cannot use half-pitch space for the file name.

Information

<File restriction>

Even if you set the "File restriction" to "File restricted", the still or moving image files you send via Ir exchange function or export to the miniSD memory card can be output from the FOMA phone.

You cannot set file restriction for the following files:

- Moving image files without the information on the redistribution
- Still images that exceeds 700 Kbytes by applying the restrictions
- Moving images that exceeds 800 Kbytes by applying the restrictions
- Still images other than JPEG files
- Files that you shot a Chara-den model with "Rec. file restriction"
- Files inside the miniSD memory card
- Files of which output from the FOMA phone is prohibited

<DPOF setting>

You can set the DPOF setting for up to 999 still image files.

You cannot set the DPOF setting for the still image in excess of 700 Kbytes.

You cannot set the DPOF setting for the image in excess of 1632 x 1224 dots size.

The DPOF setting set by other devices such as personal computers is disabled except the information about the number of frames to be printed out.

If space in the miniSD memory card is not enough, the DPOF setting might not be set. (Icon displays and picture information are set finished.) Delete unnecessary files, make memory space, and then try again.

<Copy>

If a call comes in while copying multiple files, copying is canceled even midway.

<Move>

If a call comes in while moving multiple files, moving is canceled even midway.

<Delete this><Delete all>

You cannot delete the images pre-installed at the time of purchase.

If the following files are included, the confirmation display appears asking whether to delete them. Select "YES" or "NO" and press



- Still images set for the Stand-by display/Wake-up display/Dialing display/Call Receiving display/Mail Sending display/Mail Receiving display/Check New Message display
- Still images set for the User icons of Schedule
- Still images set for the icons on the Menu Display Set
- Moving images set for the Stand-by display
- Moving images set for programs
- Files with access right set for reading only by devices such as a personal computer.
- Files attached to mail
- Still images set for Phonebook Image for incoming calls
- Still images set for original animations
- Still images stored in the Phonebook
- Moving images set for Ring Tone (Movie Ring Tone)

Even if you delete the source still image of the pasted one, the image set for the followings will not change.

- Video-phone answer hold image
- Video-phone in-talk hold image
- Video-phone substitutive image
- Video-phone record message image
- Preparing Video-phone message image
- Video-phone voice memo image

If you delete the following files, the setting returns to the default.

- Still images set for the Stand-by display/Wake-up display/Dialing display/Call Receiving display/Mail Sending display/Mail Receiving display/Check New Message display
- Still images set for the User icons of Schedule
- Moving images set for Ring Tone (Movie Ring Tone)
- Still images set for Phonebook Image for incoming calls
- Moving images set for the Stand-by display

Even if you delete the source still image of the attached image, you cannot delete the image attached to mail. (You can delete the JPEG image in excess of 10,000 bytes attached to i-mode mail.)

If you delete the source moving image of the attached moving image, the moving image attached to mail will be deleted.

If a call comes in while deleting multiple files from the miniSD memory card, deleting is canceled even midway.

<Multiple-choice>

You can select up to 280 files from the "My picture" folder and 100 from the "i-motion" folder inside the FOMA phone, and 100 from the miniSD memory card.

You cannot execute "Select all" or "Release all" of the still images inside the miniSD memory card.

You cannot select multiple files pre-installed at the time of purchase.

<Sort>

You cannot sort the files inside the miniSD memory card.

<Composite image>

You can select the JPEG file only.

You cannot select the still image in excess of CIF (352 x 288) except VGA (640 x 480).

You can paste the image to the Stand-by display and other displays for displaying. See “Positioning” and “Clipping area” (see page 337) for the position or area in which you paste the still image.

1 Still image in play/Still Image List (FUNC) Set display

- Stand-by displayPastes to the Stand-by display (see page 121).
- Wake-up displayPastes to the Wake-up display (see page 122).
- DialingPastes to the Dialing display (see page 122).
- CallingPastes to the Call Receiving display (see page 122).
- Video-phone dialPastes to the Video-phone dial display (see page 122).
- VP receive callPastes to the Video-phone receive call display (see page 122).
- Mail sendingPastes to the Mail Sending display (see page 122).
- Mail receivingPastes to the Mail Receiving display (see page 122).
- CheckingPastes to the display for “Check new message” and “Check new SMS” (see page 122).
- On holdPastes to the Video-phone Call Hold display (see page 85).
- HoldingPastes to the Video-phone Call Hold in Talk display (see page 85).
- Substitutive imagePastes to the Video-phone Substitutive image display (see page 85).
- Record messagePastes to the Video-phone Record Message display (see page 85).
- Preparing VP MsgPastes to the preparing Video-phone message display. (see page 85).
- VP voice memoPastes to the Video-phone voice memo display (see page 85).

“ ” is displayed for the pasted items but not for the video-phone related items other than “Video-phone dial” or “VP receive call” even if already pasted.

If you select the video-phone related items other than “Video-phone dial” or “VP receive call”, “応答保留/On Hold”, “保留/Holding”, “カメラオフ/Camera off”, “伝言メモ録音中/Recording Voice only”, “伝言メモ準備中/Preparing”, or “音声メモ録音中/Recording Voice only” is displayed.

Format pasting to	File format		
	GIF	JPEG	Flash
Stand-by display			
Wake-up display			
Dialing			
Calling			
Video-phone dial			
VP receive call			
Mail sending			
Mail receiving			
Checking			×
On hold	×		×
Holding	×		×
Substitutive image	×		×
Record message	×		×
Preparing VP Msg	×		×
VP voice memo	×		×

: Pasting enabled

×: Pasting disabled

Information

You cannot execute "Set display" for the still image larger than VGA (640 x 480) size.

You cannot paste the still image larger than 100 Kbytes.

The displayed size might differ from actual size depending on the image size or the display pasted to.

You cannot paste still images within the miniSD memory card.

You can paste the still images in the "Pre-installed" folder to "Stand-by display" and "Wake-up display" only.

You can paste original animations to "Stand-by display", "Wake-up display", "Dialing", "Calling", "Video-phone dial", "VP receive call", "Mail sending", "Mail receiving", and "Checking".

You cannot execute "Set display" for a Chara-den picture that you shot a Chara-den model with "Rec. file restriction".

You cannot paste the image file whose output from the FOMA phone is prohibited.

You cannot execute "Set display" for some image files.

Picture Information

1 Still image in play/Still Image List > (i) (FUNC) > Picture info

Use (⊙) to scroll the display to check the information.

The item of "Set as display" only is displayed for "Picture info" of original animations.

After checking, press (OUT).

Item	Information details
File name	Displays the file name.
File classification	Displays the file format. It is not displayed for the file of Flash movie.
File size	Displays the file size.
Saved at	Displays the date/time the file was saved. If there is no information, "----/--- --:--" is displayed.
File restriction	Displays whether the file is restricted or not.
Show Size	Displays the display size. It is not displayed for the file of Flash movie.
Received from	Displays the acquired file source.
DPOF setting	Displays whether the DPOF setting is set or not (the number of frames when the DPOF setting is set). " * * " indicates that 100 or more frames are set. (only still images in the "Picture" folder within the miniSD memory card)
Transfer for repair	Displays the picture information about whether it is possible to move your personal information at the DoCoMo specified Service Station when repairing your FOMA phone. (Note that if we at DoCoMo cannot move data and it is lost or modified, we are not held responsible for the loss or modification of data.) "Permitted" is displayed for the still images and melodies that are transfer-permitted and downloaded.
Set as display	Displays the folder to paste to. (Video-phone related items other than "Video-phone dial" and "VP receive call" are not displayed.

Information

You cannot display the picture information about a still image in excess of 700 Kbytes.

Import

You can import the files in the miniSD memory card to the i-mode folder within the FOMA phone.

You can import only JPEG and MP4 files. The ASF files, the MP4 files in excess of 800 Kbytes and the files of QVGA (320 x 240) size are trimmed, converted or shrunk to 800 Kbytes or less and then imported.

1 Still image in miniSD memory card in play/Still Image List/Moving image in pause/Moving image play end/Moving Image List > (i) (FUNC) > Import

See page 212 when images/i-motion movies are stored to the maximum.

To cancel, press (⊗) (QUIT).

Information

Do not pull out the miniSD memory card during importing.


You cannot import Flash movies.


You cannot import an image in excess of 700 Kbytes.


You cannot import an image in excess of 1632 x 1224 dots.

Playing the imported ASF file may take a time. Also, you cannot import some ASF files.

When importing moving images, the images are trimmed, converted or shrunk; therefore the images may deteriorate or the file size may change.

When importing the moving image in excess of QCIF (176 x 144) size with ticker, or moving images in excess of 800 Kbytes with ticker, the confirmation display to the effect that the ticker information will be lost appears. Select "YES" and press .

When importing QVGA (320 x 240) size of moving images, the confirmation display to the effect that the image is converted into QCIF (176 x 144) size appears. Select "YES" and press .

When importing QVGA (320 x 240) size of moving images, the ASF file, the file in excess of 800 Kbytes, the confirmation display to the effect that it takes a longer time appears. Select "YES" and press .

You cannot import ASF file or the moving image file in excess of 800 Kbytes in the following cases:

- When incompatible codec is contained
- When the voice codec is AAC
- When no video or voice is contained
- When moving image bit rate is in excess of restriction
- When Seek is disabled

• When the moving image size is other than QVGA (320 x 240), QCIF (176 x 144) or Sub-QCIF (128 x 96)

Some i-motion files cannot be imported in the conditions other than the above.

The file after importing takes the title of the one set within the miniSD memory card.


When no title is set within the miniSD memory card or default title is unknown, the file name will be the title.

When importing the JPEG file in excess of VGA (640 x 480) size, it might be shrunk to VGA (640 x 480) size.

Export

You can copy the file from the FOMA phone to the miniSD memory card. The file is copied to the folder set by "Select storage". You can export only JPEG files and MP4 files.

1 Still image in play/Still Image List/Moving image in pause/Moving image play end/Moving Image List   (**FUNC**)  Export

To cancel, press  (**QUIT**).

Information

Do not pull out the miniSD memory card during exporting.

You can export files only in the folders of "i-mode", "Camera", and "User folder".

When the folder in the miniSD memory card is full of files, the new folder is automatically created, saving files to it.

When exporting is completed, "Storage is changed to XXXXXXXX" (XXXXXXX denotes the folder name) is displayed.

The file after exporting takes the name of:

- Still image file: PXXXXXXX (X denotes numerals.)
- Moving image file: MOLXXX (X denotes Alphanumeric.)

You cannot export files in the following cases:

- Still images in excess of 1632 x 1224 dots
- Other than JPEG images
- Files that you shot a Chara-den model with "Rec. file restriction"
- Files of which output from the FOMA phone is prohibited
- Files set with playback restrictions
- Moving images with the voice only recorded
- When the miniSD memory card is write-protected
- When memory in the miniSD memory card is full
- When 256 Mbytes or more of the miniSD memory card is inserted
- When an error occurred in the miniSD memory card
- In the insertion process of the miniSD memory card
- When "USB mode setting" is set to "miniSD" and the FOMA phone and a personal computer are connected

If you export the file to the miniSD memory card, the image quality may deteriorate or the file size becomes large.

If you have not set the clock and export the file whose saving date/time is "----/-- --:--", the saving date/time for the file will be "2004/ 1/ 1 00:00".

When exporting the JPEG file in excess of VGA (640 x 480) size, it might be shrunk to VGA (640 x 480) size.

Picture/Title Name

Setting at purchase

Picture

You can change the displayed contents of the Still Image List.

1 Still Image List (FUNC) Picture or Title name

Currently, "Title name" is displayed for the Picture List and "Picture" is displayed for the Title Name List.

About the Picture List and Title Name List

If you use "Picture" to display still images, preview images are displayed on the display so that you can operate while viewing images.

- You can display up to nine still images saved to the FOMA phone.
- You can display up to four still images saved to the miniSD memory card.

If you use "Title name" to display still images, many titles are listed on the display.



Picture List



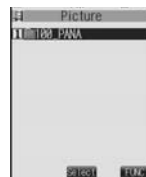
Title Name List

Information

The setting here also applies to "Viewer settings".

When you use "Picture" to display still images, some images may appear different.

Function Menu of the miniSD memory card Folder List



<miniSD memory card Folder List>

- 1** miniSD Memory Card Folder List ▶ ⓘ (**FUNC**)
▶ Do the following operation.

Function menu	Operations
Edit fldr title	▶ Enter the folder title ▶ ⓘ You can enter up to 31 full-pitch or 63 half-pitch characters. See page 482 for how to enter characters.
Create folder	▶ Enter the folder name ▶ ⓘ You can enter up to 31 full-pitch or 63 half-pitch characters. See page 482 for how to enter characters.
Delete folder	▶ Enter the Terminal Security Code ▶ ⓘ ▶ YES To cancel, select "NO" and press ⓘ. See page 140 for the Terminal Security Code.
Select storage	You can set the destination folder for when you save the still or moving images you took to the miniSD memory card. ▶ YES To cancel, select "NO" and press ⓘ.

Information

<Edit fldr title>

You cannot operate the folders inside the "Image Box" folder.

<Create folder>

You cannot operate the folders inside the "Image Box" folder.

You cannot create any folders when the "Picture" folder inside the miniSD memory card contains 900 folders or the "i-motion" folder contains 4095 folders.

<Delete folder>

If you try to delete the following folders, the confirmation display appears. Select "YES" or "NO" and press ⓘ.

- Folders with access right set for reading only by devices such as a personal computer.
- Folders specified as storage location
- Folders including files
- Folders including files set for reading only

<Select storage>

You cannot operate the folders inside the "Image Box" folder.

The "📁" icon is displayed for the folder set as the storage location on the miniSD memory card Folder List.

If you do turning the power off, checking the miniSD for disc, formatting miniSD, or removing the miniSD memory card, the folder of storage location is set for the latest folder created with the FOMA phone. When setting is changed, set the folder of storage location again.

When you create or edit a folder by using a personal computer, the folder of the storage location might be changed.

When the setting is changed, set the folder of storage location again.

Function Menu while Playing back Still Image

- 1** While playing back the still image ▶ ⓘ (**FUNC**) ▶ Do the following operation.

Function menu	Operations
Edit picture	You can edit the still image. (See page 347)
Set display	You can paste the still image to the Stand-by display and other displays for displaying. (See page 342)
Picture info	You can display information. (See page 343)

Function menu	Operations
Compose message	You can compose i-mode mail message. (See page 336)
Decorate mail	You can compose Deco mail. (See page 337)
Send Ir data	You can send a single data using infrared rays. (See page 388)
Set image disp.	You can set the display method for the still image. Normal .....Displays in original size (equivalent size). (Setting at purchase) (The still image in excess of the display size is reduced to the display size.) Fit in display ..Displays the still image to fit to the display size.
Add desktop icon	You can paste the icon of the selected still image to the desktop. (See page 134)
Import	You can import a single still image from the miniSD memory card. (See page 343)
Export	You can export a single still image to the miniSD memory card. (See page 344)
Add picture to PB	You can store the still image in the Phonebook. (See page 97)
Positioning	You can set the position for pasting and displaying the image. (See page 337)
Clipping area	You can set the area for pasting and displaying the image. (See page 337)
DPOF setting	You can set DPOF. (See page 338)
Delete this	You can delete an image. (See page 338)
Retry	You can play back the animation or Flash movies from the beginning.

<Viewer Settings>

Setting Display Contents of Still Image List

Setting at purchase
Picture

1



Display ▶ Viewer settings

PictureDisplays preview images.

TitleDisplays only titles.

Information

See page 345 for the Picture or Title.

<Edit Picture>

Editing Still Images

You can edit still image. The edited image is saved to the folder containing the source image of the edited image.

1

Still image in play/Still Image List ▶ () () ▶ Edit picture

When the still image to be edited is larger than the display size, use to scroll the image.



<Picture Edit display>

2

(FUNC) > Edit the still image

See pages 349 to 351 for how to operate.

3

Press .

YES.....Overwrites the image to save.

NO.....Saves the image as a new still image.

The edited still image is saved.

Not to save the edited still image, press  or ; then select "YES" and press .

See page 212 when images are stored to the maximum.

The size of still image that you can edit

Edit menu	SXGA ¹	VGA	CIF	QVGA (Stand-by) (Screen)	QCIF	Sub-QCIF	Less than VGA sizes larger than CIF	Other sizes smaller than CIF
Marker stamp								
Frame	x	x					x	x
Character stamp								²
Funny transform	x	x					x	
Cushy mark	x	x					x	
Change size								
Trim away								
Retouch	x	x					x	
Rotate								
Brightness								
Compose message								

: Picture editing is enabled. x : Picture editing is disabled.

¹ The still image is shrunk to VGA when it is edited.

² You cannot edit the still image smaller than 24 x 24 dots.

You can also edit the still images of 1600 x 1200 dots, 1616 x 1212 dots, and 1632 x 1224 dots. Edit menu is the same as with SXGA.

Information

You can execute "Edit picture" only for the "File unrestricted" files of still images shot by the camera, obtained by data transmission, downloaded from sites, or retrieved from i-mode mail.

You cannot edit the still images other than JPEG image.

You cannot edit the still images whose output from the FOMA phone is prohibited.

You cannot edit Chara-den pictures that you shot a Chara-den model with "Rec. file restriction".

You cannot execute "Edit picture" for the still images stored in the "Decomail-picture" folder, "Pre-installed" folder, "miniSD" folder, "Frame" folder and "Stamp" folder.

If you repeat editing image such as pasting frames or marker stamps to the shot still image, the image quality may be deteriorated or the file size becomes large.

You cannot edit some still images as you desire.





If you edit and save the JPEG image in excess of 10,000 bytes that is attached to the mail you are composing, it is saved anew and the source image before editing stays attached to the mail. If the JPEG image in excess of 10,000 bytes attached to the mail other than that you are editing (sent mail etc.) is edited and overwritten, the mail attachment is released.
























If the battery runs short during editing, the edited contents are discarded.









File name, title, and storage location of the saved still image are as follows:

- File name: "YYYYMMDDhhmmnn" (Y: year, M: month, D: date, h: hour, m: minute, n: number)
image (when date and time are not set)
- Title: "YYYY/MM/DD hh:mm" (Y: year, M: month, D: date, h: hour, m: minute)
image (when date and time are not set)
- Storage location: Folder the source file is saved to

1 Picture Edit display ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Do the following operation.

Function menu	Operations
Marker stamp	<p>You can add the marker stamp inside the stamp folder.</p> <p>▶ Select a marker stamp ▶ (FUNC)</p> <p>You can rotate the marker stamp by pressing (FUNC) and selecting "90° to right/90° to left/180°". Select "Scale up/Scale down" to enlarge or shrink the marker stamp. To select the marker stamp again, press (Cancel).</p> <p>See page 508 for the marker stamp pre-installed at the time of purchase.</p> <p>▶ Use (FUNC) to position the marker stamp ▶ (FUNC)</p> <p>To add a marker stamp, press (Add). You can also press (FUNC) and select "Add" to add the marker stamp.</p> <p>▶ (FUNC)</p> <p>You can also press (FUNC) and select "Set" to fix the marker stamp.</p> 
Frame	<p>▶ Select a frame ▶ (FUNC) ▶ (FUNC)</p> <p>You can set the frame by pressing (FUNC) from the display on the right and selecting "Set".</p> <p>You can display the previous or next frame by pressing (FUNC) from the display on the right.</p> <p>Press and hold (FUNC) for at least one second to display sequentially.</p> <p>To select another frame, press (Cancel) from the display on the right.</p> <p>You can select another frame also by pressing (FUNC) and selecting "Cancel".</p> <p>See page 508 for the frames pre-installed at the time of purchase.</p> 
Character stamp	<p>You can add the text.</p> <p>▶ Enter characters ▶ (FUNC)</p> <p>You can enter up to 15 full-pitch or 30 half-pitch characters. However, the number of characters you can enter decreases depending on the size of the still image.</p> <p>Press (FUNC) and select "Character color" to select a color; then, you can change the color of characters. You can switch between "16 Color" and "256 Color" by pressing (Change). Select "Font" and "Gothic style/Pop style" to change the fonts. Select "Character size" and "Enlargement size/Standard size/Reduction size" to enlarge or shrink characters. Select "Character Input" to edit entered characters.</p> <p>See page 482 for how to enter characters.</p> <p>▶ Use (FUNC) to position the characters ▶ (FUNC)</p> <p>▶ (FUNC)</p> <p>You can set the character stamp also by pressing (FUNC) and selecting "Set".</p> <p>To select another position, press (Cancel). You can select another position also by pressing (FUNC) and selecting "Cancel".</p> 
Funny transform	<p>You can change person's expression.</p> <p>▶ Select an expression pattern ▶ (FUNC) ▶ (FUNC)</p> <p>You can set the funny transform by pressing (FUNC) from the display on the right and selecting "Set".</p> <p>To re-select an expression pattern, press (Cancel) from the display on the right. You can re-select an expression pattern also by pressing (FUNC) and selecting "Cancel".</p> 

Function menu	Operations
Cushy mark	<p>You can compound a cushy mark of the stamp folder. The person's facial region is automatically recognized and the cushy mark is pasted to an appropriate position.</p> <p>▶ Select a cushy mark ▶ </p> <p>Press  (FUNC) and select "Scale up/Scale down" to enlarge or shrink the cushy mark.</p> <p>To cancel, press  (Cancel).</p> <p>See page 508 for the cushy marks pre-installed at the time of purchase.</p> <p>▶ Use  to position the cushy mark ▶ </p> <p>The cushy mark that comes out of the still image is cut off.</p> <p>To add a cushy mark, press  (Add). You can add a cushy mark also by pressing  (FUNC) and selecting "Add".</p> <p>▶ </p> <p>You can set the cushy mark also by pressing  (FUNC) and selecting "Set".</p> 
Change size	<p>VGA (640 x 480).....Changes the image to VGA size.</p> <p>CIF (352 x 288).....Changes the image to CIF size.</p> <p>QVGA (320 x 240).....Changes the image to QVGA size.</p> <p>QCIF (176 x 144).....Changes the image to QCIF size.</p> <p>Sub-QCIF (128 x 96).....Changes the image to Sub-QCIF size.</p> <p>Screen (240 x 320).....Changes the image to the Screen size.</p> <p>VGA Vert. (480 x 640).....Changes the image to vertically-long VGA size.</p> <p>CIF Vert. (288 x 352).....Changes the image to vertically-long CIF size.</p> <p>QCIF Vert. (144 x 176).....Changes the image to vertically-long QCIF size.</p> <p>Sub-QCIF Vert. (96 x 128).....Changes the image to vertically-long Sub-QCIF size.</p> <p>If you select the size different in proportional ratio from the original still image, the original still image is enlarged or shrunk to the maximum so that it does not exceed the selected size with its proportional ratio retained.</p> <p>▶ </p> <p>You can set the size also by pressing  (FUNC) and selecting "Set".</p> <p>To re-select a size, press  (Cancel). You can re-select a size also by pressing  (FUNC) and selecting "Cancel".</p>
Trim away	<p>You can trim the still image to a certain size.</p> <p>CIF (352 x 288).....Trims the image to CIF size.</p> <p>QVGA (320 x 240).....Trims the image to QVGA size.</p> <p>QCIF (176 x 144).....Trims the image to QCIF size.</p> <p>Sub-QCIF (128 x 96).....Trims the image to Sub-QCIF size.</p> <p>Screen (240 x 320).....Trims the image to the Screen size.</p> <p>CIF Vert. (288 x 352).....Trims the image to vertically-long CIF size.</p> <p>QCIF Vert. (144 x 176).....Trims the image to vertically-long QCIF size.</p> <p>Sub-QCIF Vert. (96 x 128).....Trims the image to vertically-long Sub-QCIF size.</p> <p>Chat picture (80 x 80).....Trims the image to the chat image size.</p> <p>You cannot select a trimming frame larger than the still image you are editing.</p> <p>The still image you are editing and the trimming frame are halved at both lengthwise and sidewise to be displayed.</p> <p>▶ Use  to select the part to trim ▶ </p> <p>You can set the position of trimming frame also by pressing  (FUNC) and selecting "Set".</p> <p>To re-select a size to trim, press  (Cancel). You can re-select a size to trim also by pressing  (FUNC) and selecting "Cancel". When you have moved the trimming frame, it returns to the center position.</p> <p>▶ </p> <p>You can set trimming also by pressing  (FUNC) and selecting "Set".</p> <p>To re-select the part to trim, press  (Cancel). You can re-select the part to trim also by pressing  (FUNC) and selecting "Cancel".</p>

Function menu	Operations
Retouch	<p>You can set texture and color tone of the still image.</p> <p>Sharp .....Stresses the outline.</p> <p>Blur .....Softens the outline.</p> <p>Sepia .....Makes the color tone sepia.</p> <p>Emboss .....Makes the still image rugged.</p> <p>Negative .....Reverses the color tone.</p> <p>Horizontal flip .....Flips the image horizontally.</p> <p>Super clear shadow .....Makes the dark still image clear.</p> <p>Memory color.....Draws the color tone close to the one human being has in mind.</p> <p>▶  You can set Retouch also by pressing  (FUNC) and selecting "Set". To re-select an effect, press  (Cancel). You can re-select an effect also by pressing  (FUNC) and selecting "Cancel".</p>
Rotate	<p>90° to right.....Rotates the image 90 degrees clockwise.</p> <p>90° to left.....Rotates the image 90 degrees counterclockwise.</p> <p>180° .....Rotates the 180 degrees.</p> <p>▶  You can set the rotation also by pressing  (FUNC) and selecting "Set". To cancel, press  (Cancel). You can cancel also by pressing  (FUNC) and selecting "Cancel".</p>
Brightness	<p>You can set the brightness.</p> <p>- 2 .....Grows dark.</p> <p>- 1 .....Grows slightly dark.</p> <p>± 0 .....Standard</p> <p>+ 1 .....Grows slightly bright.</p> <p>+ 2 .....Grows bright.</p>
Compose message	You can compose an i-mode mail message. (See page 336)
Save	You can save the edited still image. (See page 348)

Information

<Marker stamp>

You cannot select the marker stamp larger than the still image you are editing or the marker stamp with following dimensions: QVGA (320 x 240), CIF (352 x 288), QCIF (176 x 144), Sub-QCIF (128 x 96)

You can enlarge or shrink the still image repeatedly.

You cannot enlarge the marker stamp to the size larger than the still image you are editing. You cannot reduce the marker stamp size to one dot or less.

<Frame>

You cannot add the frame whose size is not the same as the size of the image you are editing.

<Character stamp>

You cannot compound some character color depending on the image to be edited. In that case, select another color.

<Funny transform>

Sometimes, person's face or outline cannot be recognized exactly. When multiple persons' faces are found, a single person's face only is recognized. In addition, if no person is found, the still image may be deformed.

<Cushy mark>

You cannot select the cushy mark larger than CIF (352 x 288), or CIF Vert. (288 x 352) size.

Sometimes, person's face or outline cannot be recognized exactly. When multiple persons' faces are found, a single person's face only is recognized.

You can enlarge or shrink the still image up to three times.

You cannot enlarge a cushy mark to the size larger than CIF (352 x 288) size. You cannot shrink the cushy mark to one dot or less.

<Original Animation>

Creating Animations


You can select up to 20 JPEG files (20 frames) from the “i-mode”, “Camera” and “User folder” folder and play back them as an animation. You can register 20 original animations.

1   **My picture**  **Original animation**  **<New>**


To change, select an original animation you have set.



<Original Animation List>

2 Select a frame position from **<1st>** to **<20th>** 





3 Select a folder  **Select a still image** 

To release the still image already stored, select “Release this” and press .
See page 334 for the still image folder and list.

4 Repeat step 2 and 3.
After storing all images, press  **Finish**.

Function Menu of the Original Animation List

1 Original Animation List  **(FUNC)**  Do the following operation.

Function menu	Operations
Edit title	 Enter the title  You can enter up to 9 full-pitch or 18 half-pitch characters. See page 482 for how to enter characters.
Org. animation	Go to step 2 on this page.
Display picture	You can play back the original animation.
Set display	You can paste the still image to the Stand-by display and other displays for displaying. (See page 342)
Picture info	You can display information. (See page 343)
Release animat.	 YES To cancel, select “NO” and press  .

Function Menu while Playing back Original Animation

1 While playing back original animation  **(FUNC)**  Do the following operation.

Function menu	Operations
Set display	You can paste the still image to the Stand-by display and other displays for displaying. (See page 342)
Set image disp.	You can set how to display. (See page 347)
Retry	You can play back the original animation again.

Information





When any of the frame contains no image, only the frames with images are displayed in order.
 You cannot store JPEG files in excess of VGA (640 x 480) size or still images from the miniSD memory card.

<i-motion Player>

Playing Moving/i-motion Movies

You can play back moving images shot by the camera (see page 166), downloaded moving images (see page 328), or moving images saved to the miniSD memory card.
 You can play back MP4 file or ASF file with the FOMA phone. However, you cannot play some files even if they are supported-format files.

1 i-motion

- i-mode**Lists the i-motion movies shot by the camera or downloaded.
- Camera**.....Lists the i-motion movies shot by the camera or shot Chara-den images.
- Pre-installed**Lists the pre-installed i-motion movies.
- User folder**Lists the i-motion movies inside the user folder.
- miniSD**Displays folders inside the miniSD memory card.
- Playlist**Plays back up to 10 i-motion movies in succession.
 The folder names differ after executing "Add folder" or "Edit folder name".
 If you select "miniSD", the Folder List is displayed. Select a folder and press  to list moving images.
 You can activate the i-motion player also by selecting  from the Shortcut menu and pressing .
 You can activate the i-motion player also by selecting "i-motion" from the Camera menu and pressing .












2 Select a file

Information

When many files are stored in the FOMA phone or miniSD memory card, it will take time to access the file.
 If you receive mail or a message R/F while playing moving image or i-motion movie, the image or voice might be interrupted.

Operations when playing moving image



You can do the following operations from the display for playing moving images.



Operation	Key operation
Fast	Press  (Fast). (See page 360)
Mute	Press  (M). Press  (M) again or adjust the sound volume, and then the sound is output.
Pause	Press  (Stop). To resume, press  (Play).
Sound volume adjustment	Press  or  . Press and hold the key to adjust the sound volume sequentially.
Displays next file ¹	Press  .
Displays previous file ¹	Press  . ²
Seek (fast forward)	Press and hold  to forward the image fast while it is pressed.
Seek (fast rewind)	Press and hold  to rewind the image fast while it is pressed.

¹ Displayed in the sorted order on the Moving Image List. You can operate this function when you play back from the Moving Image List.

² When playback time is over 10 seconds, it reaches the beginning of the file being played.

Play back frame by frame

You can play back moving images frame by frame by pressing  ( **Frame**) on the Pause display.

Press  ( **Frame**) to forward frame by frame.

You cannot display Ticker while playing back moving images frame by frame.

Information

The default sound volume for i-motion player is set at Level 4. You can set the sound volume at Level 0 through 6 and the sound is played back at the set level the next time, too.

You can seek (fast forward or fast rewind) while pausing or playing back the moving image (including slow and fast playback). No sound is output during seek.

You might not be able to fast forward some i-motion movies of QVGA (320 x 240) size.

You cannot seek (fast forward or fast rewind) in the following cases:

- While playing back an i-motion movie that can be played while downloading files
- For files with no seek point
- For files whose interval between seek points is wide
- For files with seek point is only at the top of moving image
- For ASF file with voice but without seek information

During seeking (fast forward or fast rewind) or playing frame by frame, ticker is not displayed.

Specifications for moving image playback

File format	MP4, ASF		
Coding system	MP4 file	Image: MPEG4, H.263	Sound: AMR, AAC
	ASF file	Image: MPEG4	Sound: G.726
Pixels	MPEG4: files with QVGA (320 x 240) size or smaller		
	H.263: files with QCIF (176 x 144) size or smaller		
Extension	sdv, 3gp, mp4, asf		

About Software for Playing Moving Image

To play back moving images (MP4) on a personal computer, you need to install "QuickTime 6.3" and "3GPP Component" or "QuickTime 6.4" or later. You can download "QuickTime" for free from the web page of Apple Computer, Inc.

How to Display Moving Image List

You can bring up the list of files saved to the FOMA phone or miniSD memory card.

1

   **motion**

Select  from the Shortcut menu and press ; then you can also activate the i-motion player.

Select "i-motion" from the Camera menu and press ; then you can also activate the i-motion player.



<Folder List>

2 Select a folder

i-modeLists the i-motion movies shot by the camera or downloaded.

Camera.....Lists the i-motion movies shot by the camera or shot Chara-den images.

Pre-installedLists the pre-installed i-motion movies.

User folderLists the i-motion movies inside the user folder.

miniSDDisplays folders inside the miniSD memory card.

PlaylistPlays back up to 10 i-motion movies in succession.

The folder names differ after executing "Add folder" or "Edit folder name".



When you select "miniSD"

The Folder List is displayed.




Select a folder and press  to list moving images.






<miniSD memory card Folder List>

Icons in the file list

<File format>





File format	Audio format	Icon
MP4 file	AMR	
	AAC	
ASF file	-	

Playable frequency, time limit, and term of i-motion (playback restrictions) might be restricted depending on i-motion movies.

"" (with playback restrictions) or "" (playback restrictions expired) is added to the icon for the file set with the playback restrictions. You can check the playback restrictions for the file using " motion info".

"" is added to the icon for the file set with the file restrictions.

<Acquired source>

Acquired source	Icon
Files downloaded or attached to i-mode mail	
Files shot by the FOMA phone	
Files sent via Ir data exchange or data link software	
Files recorded Chara-den	

When you cannot display the preview images

The following images are displayed.





Cannot be played back



Playback restrictions have expired, and the like.

When you select folders or i-motion movies from another function

Some folders or i-motion movies may not be displayed depending on the function.

While selecting an i-motion movie, you may be able to confirm the i-motion movie by pressing  ( Play).

Function Menu of the Folder List

1 Folder List (**FUNC**) Do the following operation.



<Folder List>

Function menu	Operations
Add folder	You can add a folder. (See page 335)
Edit folder name	You can edit a folder name. (See page 335)
Delete folder	You can delete a folder. (See page 335)
Edit playlist	<p>You can select up to 10 i-motion files and program them in order as you like. Displayed while you are selecting "Playlist".</p> <p> Select a Playlist <1st> to <10th> Select a folder </p> <p> Select an i-motion movie </p> <p>To cancel the i-motion file already stored, select "Release this" and press . ("Release this" is displayed only when you select the i-motion movie already stored.) See page 354 for the i-motion folder and List.</p> <p> Repeat the operation and complete the playlist editing (Finish)</p>
Release playlist	<p>You can cancel all the programs you have edited. Displayed while you are selecting "Playlist".</p> <p> YES</p> <p>To cancel, select "NO" and press .</p>

Function Menu of the Moving Image List

1 Moving Image List (**FUNC**) Do the following operation.



<Moving Image List>

Function menu	Operations
Edit motion	You can edit the moving image/i-motion movie. (See page 361)
Edit title	You can edit the title. (See page 336)
Set as ring tone	<p>You can set the moving image for the ring tone.</p> <p>Phone .....Sets the moving image as the ring tone (Movie ringtone) for when a call comes in.</p> <p>Video-phone .....Sets the moving image as the ring tone (Movie ringtone) for when a video-phone call comes in.</p> <p>Mail .....Sets the moving image as the ring tone (Movie ringtone) for when an i-mode mail message or Short Message (SMS) comes in.</p> <p>Chat mail .....Sets the moving image as the ring tone (Movie ringtone) for when a chat mail message comes in.</p> <p>MessageR .....Sets the moving image as the ring tone (Movie ringtone) for when a Message R (Request) comes in.</p> <p>MessageF .....Sets the moving image as the ring tone (Movie ringtone) for when a Message F (Free) comes in.</p> <p>The " " mark is added to the set items.</p>
Stand-by display	You can set the moving image/i-motion movie for the Stand-by display. (See page 358)

Function menu	Operations
 motion info	You can display information. (See page 358)
Compose message	You can compose i-motion mail message with the file attached. Go to step 2 on page 235.
Send Ir data	You can send a single data using infrared rays. (See page 388)
Import	You can import a single data from the miniSD memory card. (See page 343)
Export	You can export a single data item to the miniSD memory card. (See page 344)
Move	You can move the folder. (See page 338)
Add desktop icon	You can paste the icon of the selected moving image to the desktop. (See page 134)
Edit file name	You can edit the file name. (See page 337)
File restriction	You can set file restrictions. (See page 337)
Copy	You can copy the moving image/i-motion movie. (See page 338)
Move	You can move the moving image/i-motion movie. (See page 338)
Reset title	You can reset the title to the default one. ▶ YES To cancel, select "NO" and press  .
Delete this	You can delete a file. (See page 338)
Delete all	You can delete all files. (See page 338)
Multiple-choice	You can select multiple files. (See page 338)
Memory info	You can check a memory capacity. (See page 338)
Sort	You can change the displaying order. (See page 338)
Listing	You can switch the lists for moving images. (See page 359)

Information


<Set as ring tone>

You can set the i-motion file as Ring Tone only if its property for "Ring tone" is "Unprotect". See "imotion info" to confirm whether "Ring tone" is "Unprotect" or "Protect".

<Compose message>

When the file size is larger than 500 Kbytes, the confirmation display appears asking whether to cut out the size to the mail size.

Select "YES" and press  to cut out 490 Kbytes from the beginning of the i-motion movie.

For the i-motion movie with a ticker, the confirmation display appears telling that you cannot cut out the ticker. Select "YES" or "NO" and press .

You cannot compose i-mode mail messages in the following cases:

- When five draft mail messages are saved
- When the i-motion movies inside the folder other than "i-mode", "Camera" or "User folder" folder.
- When the i-motion movies set with replay restrictions
- When the Chara-den moving image that you shot a Chara-den model with "Rec. file restriction"
- When i-motion files of which output from the FOMA phone is prohibited

Depending on the i-motion movie, its file size may decrease or increase, or you may not be able to attach it to mail.

You cannot attach an i-motion movie in excess of 500 Kbytes to mail from the i-motion Edit display. See "Trim for mail" for how to cut out the i-motion movie for attaching to i-motion mail.

See page 174 for attaching the file with the file restriction to i-mode mail.

Set as Stand-by



You can set an i-motion movie shot by the FOMA phone or downloaded from sites for the Stand-by display.

1 During pause/At the end of play/Moving Image List ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Set as stand-by or Stand-by display ▶ YES

To cancel, select "NO" and press .

To play back the moving image file set for the Stand-by display

When you open the FOMA phone, the moving image is played back.

Press  or  to adjust the sound volume during playback.

If you press , , ,  or , playback ends.

If you play it back during Manner Mode, the voice cannot be played back.

Information

If you delete the moving image file set for the Stand-by display, the setting for the Stand-by display is released.

You cannot set the moving image for the Stand-by display in the following cases:

- Files inside the miniSD memory card
- Moving image files without images
- Moving image files other than MP4
- Files with playback restrictions
- When the image size is less than 4 x 4 or in excess of QCIF (176 x 144) size
- Files not supported by the FOMA phone

You cannot display some i-motion movies correctly.

You cannot use the Web To, Mail To, or Phone To/AV Phone To function from an i-motion file set for the Stand-by display.

motion info

1 During pause/At the end of play/Moving Image List ▶ (FUNC) ▶ motion info

Use  to scroll the display to check the information.

After checking, press .

Item	Contents	
File name	Displays the file name.	
Format	Displays file format.	
Title	Displays the default title for the file. When no default title is stored, "Unknown" is displayed.	
Creator	Displays the information about the creator of the file. When no information is contained, "Unknown" is displayed.	
Copyright	Displays if the file contains the information about copyright or not. When no information is contained, "Unknown" is displayed.	
Saved at	Displays the date/time the file was saved. When no information is contained, "----/--/-- --:--" is displayed.	
File size	Displays the file size.	
Display size	Displays the size of the moving image. For the moving image only with voice, "0 x 0" is displayed.	
Received from	Displays the acquired source.	
Description	Displays the description for the file. When no description is contained, "Unknown" is displayed.	
File restriction	Displays File restricted/File unrestricted.	
Replay restriction	When the frequency restriction is contained	"Replay YY (YY/XX)" (YY: Play frequency, XX: Max. play frequency) is displayed.
	When the limit restriction is contained	"Date/time file saved" ~ "Play limit date/time" is displayed.
	When the period restriction is contained	"Date/time play enabled" ~ "Play limit date/time" is displayed.
	When no playback restrictions are contained	"Not restricted" is displayed
Video	Displays File restricted/File unrestricted/Unplayable.	
Audio	Displays AAC/AMR/File unrestricted/Playable/Unplayable.	
Text	Displays File restricted/File unrestricted/Unplayable.	
Ring Tone	Displays Protect/Unprotect. When Ring Tone is set, the function the ring tone is set for is displayed.	

You can switch display Moving Image List.

1 Moving Image List ▶ (i) (FUNC) ▶ Listing

TitleThe title or file name only is displayed.

Title + ImageThe title or file name and the selected preview image are displayed.

Title/File nameYou can select whether to display the title or file name. This is displayed from the list for miniSD memory card only.

In the case of the list for miniSD memory card, "Title" is displayed as "Name", and "Title + Image" is displayed as "Name + Image".

About Listing

If you select "Title" for display, you can list many titles and file names on the display.

- The title is displayed for moving image files within the FOMA phone.
- The title or file name is displayed for moving image files within the miniSD memory card.



Title

If you select "Title + Image", the title or file name, and preview image are displayed; therefore you can operate while confirming the title or file name, and image at the same time.

- The title is displayed for moving image files saved to the FOMA phone.
- The title or file name is displayed for moving image files saved to the miniSD memory card.
- The first frame of the preview image is displayed for the moving image file.



Title + Image

Function Menu of the miniSD Memory Card Folder List

1 miniSD Memory Card Folder List ▶ (i) (FUNC)

▶ Do the following operation.









<miniSD memory card Folder List>

Function menu	Operations
Edit fldr title	You can edit the folder title. (See page 346)
Create folder	You can create a folder. (See page 346)
Delete folder	You can delete a folder. (See page 346)
Select storage	You can select a folder the file is saved to. (See page 346)

Function Menu during Pause/At the End of Play

1 During pause/At the end of play ▶  (**FUNC**) ▶ Do the following operation.

Function menu	Operations
Normal play	The moving image is played at the normal speed.
Slow	The moving image file is played at half the normal speed. To cancel Slow play, press  (Play), or perform "Normal play".
Fast	The moving image is played at double the normal speed. To cancel Fast play, press  (Play), or perform "Normal play".
Stop	You can end playback.
Position to play	You can set the start point for playing the moving image. ▶ Select the cursor position of the Time bar ▶  To cancel "Position to play", press  .
Edit  motion	You can edit the moving image/i-motion movie. (See page 361)
Compose message	You can compose i-motion mail. (See page 357)
Set as ring tone	You can set the data file as a ring tone. (See page 356)
Set as stand-by	You can set the data file for the Stand-by display. (See page 358)
 motion info	You can display information. (See page 358)
Send Ir data	You can send a single data using infrared rays. (See page 388)
Import	You can import a single data item from the miniSD memory card. (See page 343)
Export	You can export a single data item to the miniSD memory card. (See page 344)
Add desktop icon	You can paste the icon of the selected moving image to the desktop. (See page 134)
Set image disp.	You can set the display method for moving images. Actual size .....Displays in the original size (equivalent size). (The moving image in excess of the display size is reduced to the display size.) Fit in display .....Displays the moving image to fit to the display size.

Information

<Slow>

No sound is output during slow playback.
You cannot slow-play an i-motion movie when playing while downloading data.

<Fast>

No sound is output during fast playback.
You might not be able to fast-forward some i-motion movies.
You cannot fast-play an i-motion movie when playing while downloading data.

<Position to play>

You might not be able to select the position to play depending on moving or i-motion movies.

<Set image disp.>

This setting is valid only for the current playback. When playback ends, "Actual size" will return.
The moving image whose size is over QCIF (176 x 144) and QVGA (320 x 240) or less will be fitted in the display size regardless of this setting.

Editing Moving/i-motion Movies

You can edit the moving image or i-motion movie. The moving image or i-motion movie you edited is saved to the folder containing the source moving image or i-motion movie.

1 During pause/At the end of play/Moving Image List

▶ (FUNC) ▶ Edit motion

Press (MUTE) or (VOL-), (VOL+) to adjust the sound volume.



<i-motion Edit display>

2 (FUNC) ▶ Edit the moving or i-motion movie

See pages 361 to 366 for how to operate.

3 Press (OK).

Not to save the edited moving or i-motion movie, press (SKIP) or (STOP); then select "YES" and press (OK).

4 YES

The edited moving or i-motion movie is saved.

See page 212 for when i-motion movies are stored to the maximum.

Information

You can execute "Edit motion" only for the "File unrestricted" files of moving images shot by the camera, i-motion movies obtained by data transmission, downloaded from sites, or retrieved from i-mode mail.

You can edit only QCIF (176 x 144) and Sub-QCIF (128 x 96) size of moving images/i-motion movies only.

You cannot execute "Edit motion" for the moving images/i-motion movies stored in the "Pre-installed" folder and miniSD memory card.

You might not be able to edit some i-motion movies.

The displayed file size during editing an i-motion movie is an estimate.










The image quality may deteriorate or the file size may become large or small by editing an i-motion movie.

When a call comes in, the battery level goes flat, or the FOMA phone is closed while editing, the moving image or i-motion movie is saved with the edited contents reflected. However, those are not saved when i-motion movies are stored to the maximum.

Function Menu of the i-motion Edit Display

1 i-motion Edit display ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Do the following operation.

Function menu	Operations
Trim motion	You can trim away the moving image/i-motion movie. (See page 362)
Trim for picture	<p>You can cut out a still image and save it.</p> <p>▶ Press (OK) to select a frame ▶ (FUNC) ▶ YES ▶ Select the folder ▶ (OK)</p> <p>For the moving or i-motion movie containing a ticker, the confirmation display to the effect that you cannot cut out the ticker appears. Select "YES" and press (OK).</p> <p>Press and hold (MUTE) for at least one second to fast rewind and (VOL+) to fast forward.</p> <p>Press (VOL-) to play back the moving or i-motion movie. Press (OK) again to pause.</p> <p>To cancel, select "NO" and press (OK).</p> <p>See page 334 for the folder of still image.</p> <p>See page 212 for when still images are stored to the maximum.</p>

Function menu	Operations
Rerecord sound	You can record sound. (See page 363)
Edit ticker	You can edit the ticker. (See page 363)
Trim for mail	<p>You can cut out the moving or i-motion movie to the size attachable to i-motion mail.</p> <p>Mail size (S).....Cuts out to the size of 290 Kbytes or less.</p> <p>Mail size.....Cuts out to the size of 490 Kbytes or less.</p> <p>For the moving or i-motion movie containing a ticker, the confirmation display to the effect that you cannot cut out the ticker appears. Select "YES" and press .</p> <p>▶ Press  to select the start frame ▶  (Start)</p> <p>The moving image or i-motion movie is replayed. When the file size reaches 290 Kbytes or less, or 490 Kbytes or less, the file automatically stops replaying.</p> <p>Press and hold  for at least one second to fast rewind and  to fast forward.</p> <p>Press  to play back the moving or i-motion movie. Press  again to pause.</p> <p>▶   (Play) to play demo image and you can check edited moving or i-motion movie.</p>
Compose message	You can compose i-motion mail. (See page 357)
File restriction	You can set the file restrictions. (See page 337)

Information

<Trim for mail>

While editing, an approximate size of the cut out file is displayed.

For 290 Kbytes or more and 490 Kbytes or less of the i-motion movie, you cannot select "Mail size".

Trim an i-motion movie

You can cut out a certain range from an i-motion movie.

1 i-motion Edit display ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Trim motion

For the moving or i-motion movie containing a ticker, the confirmation display to the effect that you cannot cut out the ticker appears. Select "YES" and press .

2 Press to select the start frame ▶ (Start)

The start frame is set and the moving or i-motion movie is played.

Press and hold  for at least one second to fast rewind and  to fast forward.

Press  to play the moving or i-motion movie. Press  again to pause.

3 Press at the position you want to cut out.

Playing the moving or i-motion movie stops temporarily.

4 Press to select the end frame ▶ (End)


The cut out range is played.

Press and hold  for at least one second to fast rewind and  to fast forward.

Press  to play the moving or i-motion movie. Press  again to pause.


When the file size reaches approx. 800 Kbytes, the end frame is automatically set.

5 Press .

Press  (Play) to play demo image so that you can check the edited moving or i-motion movie.

Information

While editing, an approximate size of the cut out file is displayed.

If you execute "Trim  motion", playback time may become longer.

Rerecord Sound

You can record the voice over a certain range of an i-motion movie.

1 i-motion Edit display ▶ (i) (FUNC) ▶ Rerecord sound

For the moving or i-motion movie containing a ticker, the confirmation display to the effect that the ticker is deleted appears.

Select "YES" and press (OK).

To start recording from the first frame, go to step 3.

2 Select the start frame.

Press (Left) to play back the moving or i-motion movie.

3 Press (Start).

Recording starts. Speak into the microphone.

When the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone Set with switch (option) is connected, record the voice from the microphone of the Set.

4 Press (End).

Recording ends.

To record in succession, repeat steps 3 to 4.

5 Press (OK).

Record Sound is finished.

6 Press (OK).

Press (Play) to play demo image so that you can check the edited moving or i-motion movie.

Edit Ticker

You can compose and edit the ticker information (text information displayed during play) of i-motion movie.

For "New"

You can compose up to five tickers per moving or i-motion movie.

1 i-motion Edit display ▶ (i) (FUNC) ▶ Edit ticker ▶ New

When a ticker has already been contained, the confirmation display appears. Select "YES" and press (OK).

2 Press (Left) to select the start frame ▶ (Start)

Press and hold (Left) for at least one second to fast rewind and (Right) to fast forward.

Press (Left) to play back the moving or i-motion movie. Press (Right) again to pause.

When the end point of the ticker previously specified is reached by fast rewind, the confirmation display appears telling that the start point is defined. Select "YES" and press (OK); then the start point is fixed and you can create a ticker with no gap between the previous ticker.

3 Enter a ticker ▶ (OK)

You can enter up to 20 full-pitch or 40 half-pitch characters.

See page 482 for how to enter characters.

4 Select a ticker effect.

Font colorSelects the character color from 16 or 256 colors.

Background colorSelects background color from 16 or 256 colors.

Font sizeSelects the character size from "Normal" or "Large".

Word alignment.....Selects the character position from "Left", "Center", or "Right".

BlinkSelects Blink from "ON" or "OFF".

UnderlineSelects Underline from "ON" or "OFF".

Scroll.....Selects the scroll effect from "OFF", "Scroll in", "Scroll out", or "Scroll in&out".



If you select other than "OFF", select the scrolling direction from "Right to left", "Left to right", "Bottom to top", or "Top to bottom".

To set the ticker effect in succession, repeat step 4.


5 Finish setting

6 Press to select the end frame (End)

Press and hold  for at least one second to fast rewind and  to fast forward.

Press  to play back the moving or i-motion movie. Press  again to pause.



When no sufficient interval is between the start frame and end frame, you might not be able to select the end frame.

If you display the frame with another ticker set, the confirmation display for determining the end frame appears. Select "YES" and press  to fix the end frame; then you can create the ticker with no intermittence from another ticker.

7 (FUNC) Finish editing

To compose another ticker in succession, repeat step 2 to 6.

8 Press .

Press   to play back demo ticker so that you can confirm the edited moving or i-motion movie.

Press   to bring up the Ticker List and you can edit the composed ticker.

Information

The scrolling speed is automatically set to match the time the display scrolls from the start point to the end point.

When adding a ticker, make sure that the start point and the end point of tickers do not overlap.

If an i-motion movie obtained by Ir exchange or data transmission contains six or more tickers, the tickers after the sixth one are deleted. Also, the characters for ticker in excess of 20 full-pitch characters are deleted from and after the 21th character. Incompatible ticker effects are also deleted.

Ticker effects that do not support the FOMA P700i may be deleted or changed.

If you edit the ticker, you cannot set the edited data for the ring tone.

For "Edit"

1 i-motion Edit display ▶ (F) ▶ Edit ticker ▶ YES ▶ Edit

The stored tickers are displayed.



<Ticker List>

2 Select the ticker you want to edit ▶ (F) ▶

Change textChanges ticker text. (See step 3 of "Edit Ticker" on page 363)

Change effectChanges the ticker effect. (See steps 4 to 5 on page 364)

Change start po.Changes the start position of ticker. (See step 2 of "Edit Ticker" on page 363)

Change end pointChanges the end position of ticker. (See step 6 on page 364)

Add tickerAdds a ticker. (See "Add Ticker" on this page)

Delete tickerDeletes a ticker. Select "YES" and press (Y); then the ticker is deleted.

Select a ticker and press (Y); then you can check the details of the ticker. After checking, press (P).

To edit another ticker in succession, repeat step 2.

3 Press (F) from the Ticker List ▶ (Y)

Information

You cannot edit tickers if no ticker is stored.

Add Ticker

You can add tickers.

You can create up to the five tickers per moving or i-motion movie.

1 Ticker List ▶ (F) ▶ Add ticker

Regarding the top as the leading frame and the bottom as the trailing frame, the position you can add a ticker into is displayed.




2 <Available>

Go to steps 2 through 6 of "Edit Ticker" on page 363.



When you have created five tickers, the Ticker List returns. Press (F) (Finish); then press (Y).

When the tickers are four or less, go to steps 7 to 8 on page 364.


To pause

Press . Press  again to resume playback.

To fast rewind or fast forward

Press and hold  for at least one second to fast rewind, and press and hold  for at least one second to fast forward.

To rewind the frame back or to forward the frame

During pause, press  to rewind the frame back or press  to forward the frame.



To adjust the volume

Press  or .

Some of these items might not be available depending on the operation.

Function Menu while Demonstration Playback is in Pause or i-motion Movie is Edited

- 1** Demonstration playback is in pause/i-motion movie is under editing  ()
 Do the following operation.

Function menu	Operations
Normal play	You can play back at the normal speed.
Slow	You can play back at half the normal speed.
Fast	You can play back at double the normal speed.
Starting point	You can set the start frame for "Trim  motion" and "Trim for mail".
Ending point	You can set the end frame for "Trim  motion".
Determine	You can set the frame for "Trim for picture".
Stop	You can stop playing back the image.
Ticker start PNT	You can set the start frame for "Edit ticker".
Ticker end point	You can set the end frame for "Edit ticker".
Finish editing	You can finish "Edit ticker".

<Chara-den>

What is Chara-den?

Chara-den is an animation character representing yourself. You can send it as your image during video-phone calls.

You can use the Chara-den Player to play back Chara-den images and can shoot them.

Chara-den images stored at the time of purchase



<ヴァニラちゃん (Vanilla)>



<ラムちゃん (Ram)>



<ブンブン (Bunbun) [Dimo]
©BVI&G>

Operations of pre-installed Chara-den images

Key operation	ヴァニラちゃん・ラムちゃん (Vanilla/Ram)	ブンブン (Bunbun) [Dimo]	Key operation	ヴァニラちゃん・ラムちゃん (Vanilla/Ram)	ブンブン (Bunbun) [Dimo]
1 (P)	Happy	Delighted	6 (M)	—	Excuse me
2 (A)	Angry	Angry	7 (D)	—	No reactions
3 (E)	Weeping	Feeling sad	8 (V)	—	Bye-bye
4 (O)	Oh no!	Thanks	9 (S)	—	Surprised
5 (E)	Embarrassed	Love Love			

Parts actions are not prepared for the pre-installed Chara-den images.

Chara-den is displayed in nonreverse image.

You can delete these Chara-den images. You can also re-download them from the "P-SQUARE" site.

☰ Menu メニューリスト (Menu List) ケータイ電話メーカー (Mobile phone maker) P-SQUARE

<Chara-den Player>

Displaying/Operating Chara-den

You can display stored Chara-den images.

You can press keys to make the Chara-den image move or synchronize the mouth movement of the Chara-den image with your voice spoken into the microphone.

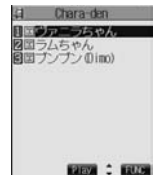
You can use the "Action list" to check the actions that you can operate.

1



Chara-den

"☰" is placed to the top of title of the Chara-den image downloaded from a site.



<Chara-den List>


























<Chara-den display>

2

Select the Chara-den image to be displayed ▶◎

Key assignment of operating Chara-den

Key operation	Details
 あ ~      あ ~     (Whole action mode)	Whole action
 あ  あ ~     (Parts action mode)	Parts action

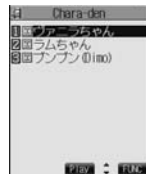
Key operation	Details
 	Pauses action midway.
 	Pauses entered action.
 	Displays "Action list".
	Switches action mode.

Information












The number of actions you can operate differs depending on the Chara-den image.

Function Menu of the Chara-den List

1 Chara-den List ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Do the following operation.



<Chara-den List>

Function menu	Operations
Video-phone dial	You can make a video-phone call. (See page 79)
Substitute image	You can set the Chara-den image as a substitutive image. (See page 80)
Rec. Chara-den	You can shoot the Chara-den image. (See page 370)
Edit title	▶ Enter the title ▶  You can enter the title in up to 18 full-pitch or 36 half-pitch characters. See page 482 for how to enter characters.
File property	You can display the title and file name of Chara-den image. Use  to scroll the display for confirmation. After checking, press  .
Memory info	You can display the unused space and memory capacity (estimate). After checking, press  .
Add desktop icon	You can paste the icon of the selected Chara-den image to the desktop. (See page 134)
Delete	▶ YES To cancel, select "NO" and press  .
Delete all	▶ Enter the Terminal Security Code ▶  ▶ YES Note that this operation also deletes the Chara-den images pre-installed at purchase. To cancel, select "NO" and press  .
Multiple-choice	You can delete multiple selected Chara-den images. ▶ Put check marks for the Chara-den images to be deleted ▶  (FUNC) ▶ Delete ▶ YES " <input type="checkbox"/> " and " <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> " switch each time you press  . To cancel, select "NO" and press  .
Set image disp.	You can set the displaying method for Chara-den image. Actual size .....Displays in the actual size. Fit in display .....Fits in the size of the FOMA phone's display. (Setting at purchase)
Reset title	You can reset the title to the default one. ▶ YES To cancel, select "NO" and press  .

Information

<File property>

"Rec. file restriction" denotes whether you restrict the operation such as attaching still images/moving images created by Chara-den image to mail, saving them to miniSD memory card, or editing them.

<Delete><Delete all><Multiple-choice>

If the Chara-den set for the substitutive image has been deleted, the "Pre-installed" substitutive image will be sent.



If the Chara-den image set as a substitutive image is contained, the message "Setting substitute image Delete?", "Setting substitute image Delete all?" or "Setting substitute image Delete selected Chara-den?" is displayed.

If the Chara-den image set for the Phonebook is contained, the message "Setting phonebook Delete?", "Setting phonebook Delete all?" or "Setting phonebook Delete selected Chara-den?" is displayed.

Function Menu of the Chara-den Display

1 Chara-den display ▶ (i) (FUNC) ▶ Do the following operation.







Function menu	Operations
Video-phone dial	You can make a video-phone call. (See page 79)
Substitute image	You can set the Chara-den image as a substitutive image. (See page 80)
Rec. Chara-den	You can shoot the Chara-den image. (See page 370)
Add desktop icon	You can paste the icon of the displayed Chara-den image to the desktop. (See page 134)
Action list	You can list actions that you can operate. Select an action and press (O): then you can run the action. Press (M) (Install) to check the action image for details. You can display Action List also by pressing (X) (Action List).
Change action	You can switch the action modes between Whole Action and Parts Action. Whole Action Mode makes an animation character express the action by whole aspect such as "laugh" or "weep". Parts Action Mode makes the animation character express the action by part aspect such as "raise right hand". Whole Action Mode (Setting at purchase) Parts Action Mode The action modes switch between Parts Action and Whole Action. You can switch modes also by pressing (M).
File property	You can display information. (See page 368)
Set image disp.	You can set the displaying method. (See page 368)

<Record Chara-den>

Recording Chara-den

You can shoot the displayed Chara-den as a still image or moving image.

- 1   Chara-den ▶ Select the Chara-den image to be shot
  (FUNC) ▶ Rec. Chara-den

You can select a Chara-den from the Function menu of the Chara-den List.






<Chara-den Recording display>

Shooting Still Images

- 1 Display “” on the Chara-den Recording display ▶ 

A still image of the displayed Chara-den image is shot.

Press  to display “” in Movie Mode.

- 2 Press .

The still image you have shot is saved to “Camera” folder.



Information


In Manner Mode or when “Phone” or “Mail” of “Ring volume” is set to “Silent”, the recording confirmation tone does not sound.
See page 160 for shooting still images.

Recording Moving Images


- 1 Display “” on Chara-den Recording display ▶ 

Recording of the displayed Chara-den image starts.

Press  to display the “” in Photo Mode.

- 2 Press .

Recording ends.

- 3 Press .

The recorded moving image is saved to the “Camera” folder.

Information

The image size is fixed to QCIF (176 x 144).


See page 166 for recording moving images.

In Manner Mode or when “Phone” or “Mail” of “Ring volume” is set to “Silent”, neither the recording start tone nor the recording end tone sounds.

When the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone set with switch (option) is connected, the sound is recorded via the Earphone.

Function Menu of the Chara-den Recording Display

- 1 Chara-den Recording display ▶  (FUNC) ▶ Do the following operation.

Function menu	Operations
Switch Chara-den	▶ Select the Chara-den image to be displayed ▶ 

Function menu	Operations
Substitute image	You can set the Chara-den image as a substitutive image. (See page 80)
Action list	You can display the Action List. (See page 369)
Change action	You can switch the action. (See page 369)
Set image disp.	You can set the displaying method. (See page 368)
Recording size	You can set the size of the image for recording and saving Chara-den still image. You can set only in Photo Mode. QCIF (176 x 144) -----Records Chara-den image at 176 x 144 dots. (Setting at purchase) Small (117 x 96) -----Records Chara-den image at 117 x 96 dots.
Recording type	You can set image and sound for recording and saving Chara-den moving image. You can set only in Movie Mode. Video + voice -----Records both images and sound. (Setting at purchase) Video -----Records images only.
Recording Qlty	You can set the quality for saving Chara-den moving image. You can set only in Movie Mode. Normal-----Records the moving image in standard quality and movement. (Setting at purchase) Prefer image quality-----Records the moving image laying stress on the quality. Prefer motion-----Records the moving image laying stress on the movement.

Information

<Switch chara-den>

If you switch the Chara-den image, the action mode switches to Whole Action Mode.

<Melody Player> ← 1 6 →

Playing Melodies

1 **Melody**

- i-mode -----Lists the downloaded melodies.
- Pre-installed -----List the pre-installed melodies.
- User folder -----Lists the melodies inside the user folder.
- Voice announce -----Lists the data recorded by "Voice announce".
- Playlist -----Plays back up to 10 melodies in succession.

The folder names differ after executing "Add folder" or "Edit folder name".



<Folder List>

2 **Select a melody**



<Melody List>



<Melody Playback display>

Operation while replaying melody

You can do the following operations from the Melody Playback display.

Operation	Key operation
Halt	Press (Stop), to , , , , , or .
Sound volume adjustment	Press or . Press and hold to adjust the volume sequentially.
Replay the following file	Press .
Replay the previous file	Press .

The file is replayed in the sorted order of the Melody List. You can replay melodies if they are selected from the Melody List.

About icons while the Melody List displayed

<File format>

File format	Description	Icon
SMF format	Melody without copyright and file restriction	
	Melody with copyright and file restriction	
MFi format	Melody without copyright and file restriction	
	Melody with copyright and file restriction	

<Acquired source>

Acquired source	Icon
Downloaded or acquired from mail attachment	
Acquired via Ir exchange or by data link software	

When selecting folders and melodies by another functions

Some folders or melodies may not be displayed depending on the function.

Melodies may be played back for confirmation while being selected, or you may at times be able to play back the melody by pressing

(Play).

The volume level for playing back the melody is the one set by "Phone" of "Ring volume". You cannot change the volume.

Information

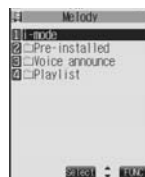
You cannot select other than "Pre-installed" during "PIM lock".

When a melody is played back, its volume is the one set by "Phone" of "Ring volume". If "Phone" is set to "Silent" or "Step", it is played back at "Level 2".

Even if you change the volume while playing, the volume set by "Phone" of "Ring volume" returns when you exit Melody Player.

Function Menu of the Folder List

1 Folder List (FUNC) Do the following operation.



<Folder List>

Function menu	Operations
Add folder	<p>You can create a user folder. You can create up to 20 folders.</p> <p> Enter the folder name </p> <p>You can enter up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters. See page 482 for how to enter characters.</p>
Edit folder name	<p> Edit the folder name </p> <p>You can enter up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters. See page 482 for how to enter characters.</p>

Function menu	Operations
Delete folder	<p>You can delete a folder. All melodies inside the folder are also deleted.</p> <p>▶ Enter the Terminal Security Code ▶ ▶ YES</p> <p>To cancel, select "NO" and press .</p> <p>See page 140 for the Terminal Security Code .</p>
Edit playlist	<p>You can select up to 10 files from among your favorite melodies, effect tones, and data items recorded by "Voice announce" to program them in the desired order. This is displayed while selecting "Playlist".</p> <p>▶ Select a program order <1st> to <10th> ▶ ▶ Select a folder ▶ ▶ Select a melody ▶ </p> <p>To release the melody already stored, select "Release this" and press . ("Release this" is displayed only when you select the melody already stored.)</p> <p>See page 371 for the Melody folder and list.</p> <p>▶ Repeat the operation and complete the playlist editing ▶ (Finish)</p>
Release playlist	<p>You can release all edited melodies from playlist. This is displayed while selecting "Playlist".</p> <p>▶ YES</p> <p>To cancel, select "NO" and press .</p>

Information

<Edit folder name>

You can edit the folder name of the user folder only.

<Delete folder>

You can delete the user folder only.

If the folder contains the melody set with the following functions, the confirmation display appears asking whether to delete the melody. Select "YES" or "NO" and press . If the melody is deleted, the default returns.

(When the melody is set to an alarm tone of "Schedule" or "ToDo", or to "Alarm", the melody switches to "Clock Alarm Tone".)

- Melody set for the ring tone by "Select ring tone"
- Melody set for "Sound setting" of "Chat"
- Melody set by "Utilities (Phonebook)"
- Melody set by "Utilities (group)"
- Melody set by "Call setting w/o ID"
- Melody set for an alarm tone of "Schedule" or "ToDo"
- Melody set by "Alarm"
- Melody set for "Playlist"

When the melody attached to mail is contained, the confirmation display appears asking whether to delete it. Select "YES" or "NO" and press . However, you cannot delete the melody attached to the mail you are composing.

<Edit playlist>

If you change or delete the file name, title, or contents stored in the playlist, the playlist is all canceled.

Playlist

You can repeatedly play back the melodies selected by "Edit playlist".

1 ▶ ▶ **Melody ▶ Playlist**

To stop playing back, press .

Function Menu of the Melody List

1 Melody List (FUNC) Do the following operation.



<Melody List>

Function menu	Operations
Edit title	<p> Edit the title </p> <p>You can enter up to 25 full-pitch or 50 half-pitch characters. See page 482 for how to enter characters.</p>
Edit file name	<p> Edit the file name </p> <p>You can enter up to 36 half-pitch alphanumeric characters (except extension). See page 482 for how to enter characters.</p>
Play melody	You can play back a melody. (See page 371)
Set as ring tone	<p>Phone .....Sets as the ring tone for incoming voice calls. Video-phone .....Sets as the ring tone for incoming video-phone calls. Mail .....Sets as the ring tone for incoming i-mode mail and Short Messages (SMS). Chat mail .....Sets as the ring tone for incoming chat mail messages. MessageR .....Sets as the ring tone for incoming Messages R (Request). MessageF .....Sets as the ring tone for incoming Messages F (Free). " " indicates the set item.</p>
File restriction	<p>You can set the file restriction on the selected melody. File unrestricted .....The file restriction is not set. File restricted .....Secondary distribution is disabled. See page 174 for the file restriction.</p>
Add desktop icon	You can paste the icon of the selected melody to the desktop. (See page 134)
Compose message	You can compose i-mode mail with the selected melody attached. Go to step 2 on page 235.
Send Ir data	You can send a single data using infrared rays. (See page 388)
Melody info	<p>You can display the melody title and file name. Use to scroll the display to check the information. After checking, press .</p>
Memory info	<p>You can display the unused space and memory capacity (estimate). After checking, press .</p>
Reset title	<p>You can reset the title to the default. YES To cancel, select "NO" and press .</p>
Delete (Delete this)	<p> Delete this YES To cancel, select "NO" and press .</p>
Delete (Delete selected)	<p> Delete selected Put check marks for the melodies to be deleted Finish YES " " and " " switch each time you press . You can check or uncheck all items by pressing (FUNC) and selecting "Select all/Release all". To cancel, select "NO" and press .</p>
Delete (Delete all)	<p>You can delete all melodies stored in the folder. Delete all Enter the Terminal Security Code YES To cancel, select "NO" and press .</p> <p>See page 140 for the Terminal Security Code.</p>

Function menu	Operations
Sort	<p>You can sort displayed order.</p> <p>Chronological .....Sorts by saving date and time from the most recent. (Setting at purchase)</p> <p>Chronological .....Sorts by saving date and time from the oldest.</p> <p>By title .....Sorts by title in ascending order.</p> <p>By title .....Sorts by title in descending order.</p> <p>By size .....Sorts by file size from the largest.</p> <p>By size .....Sorts by file size from the smallest.</p> <p>By source.....Sorts by acquired source.</p>
Move	<p>You can move the melody to another folder.</p> <p>▶ Select the destination folder ▶ ▶ Put check marks for the melodies to be moved</p> <p>▶ (FINISH) ▶ YES</p> <p>“<input type="checkbox"/>” and “<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>” switch each time you press . You can check or uncheck all items by pressing (FUNC) and selecting “Select all/Release all”.</p> <p>To cancel, select “NO” and press .</p>

Information

<Edit file name>

When the icon of the acquired source is “” and the icons such as “” or “” is displayed for that melody, you cannot change the file name.

When editing the file name, you cannot enter symbols or half-pitch “.”, “@”, “/”, “(”, “)”, “:”, “ ”, “_”, “.”, “~”, “&”, “?”, “!”, “¥”, “.ne.jp”, “.co.jp”, “.ac.jp”, “.www.”, “.com”, “.html”, “http://”, “https://”, and “@docomo.ne.jp”.

You cannot edit extension when editing file names. The extension conforming to file format is automatically added.

<File restriction>

You can set the file restriction only to the melody with the acquired source icon “”.

When the melody file exceeds 100 Kbytes by applying the restriction, you cannot set file restriction.

<Compose message>

You cannot attach the melody with the icon “” or “” to i-mode mail regardless of the acquired source or file restriction setting.

You cannot attach the melody with “” and the acquired source icon “” or the melody in excess of 10,000 bytes, either.

<Melody info>

You may not be able to attach to i-mode mail even when the file restriction for melody information is “File unrestricted”.

See page 343 for “Transfer for repair”.

<Delete>

If the melody set with the following functions is contained, the confirmation display appears asking whether to delete the melody.

Select “YES” or “NO” and press . If the melody is deleted, the default returns.

(When the melody is set to an alarm tone of “Schedule”, “ToDo”, or to “Alarm”, the melody switches to “Clock Alarm Tone”.)

- Melody set for the ring tone by “Select ring tone”
- Melody set for “Sound setting” of “Chat”
- Melody set by “Utilities (Phonebook)”
- Melody set by “Utilities (group)”
- Melody set by “Call setting w/o ID”
- Melody set for an alarm tone of “Schedule” or “ToDo”
- Melody set by “Alarm”
- Melody set for “Playlist”

When deleting the melody attached to mail, the confirmation display appears asking whether to delete it. Select “YES” or “NO” and press . However, you cannot delete the melody attached to the mail you are composing.

<Sort>

When you close the display after displaying the Melody List by sorting and display the Melody List again, “Chronological ” returns.

Function Menu of the Melody Playback Display

1 Melody Playback display ▶ ((FUNC)) ▶ Do the following operation.



<Melody Playback display>

Function menu	Operations
Set as ring tone	You can set as ring tone. (See page 374)
Add desktop icon	You can paste the icon of the selected melody to the desktop. (See page 134)
Compose message	You can compose i-mode mail. (See page 374)
Melody info	You can display the melody information. (See page 374)

Notes for Using miniSD Memory Card

You need to obtain a miniSD memory card separately to use the functions related to the miniSD memory card. The miniSD memory card is available at mass retailers for home electric appliances.


miniSD Memory Card

The miniSD memory card is an external memory card having a large storage capacity, compact, lightweight, and detachable. It is provided with the write protect function that prevents card data from being written or formatted, and also the copyright protect function that is applicable to the standard of SDMI (Secure Digital Music Initiative). It enables rewriting about 10 Mbytes per second, and it is expected to be a global standard of the next-generation memory card.

You can purchase the miniSD memory card adapter from a shop handling home electrical items.

The FOMA P700i is compatible with a miniSD memory card of up to 256 Mbytes. (as of January 2005)

Look up the following for the latest information:

i-mode:  Menu メニューリスト (Menu List) ケータイ電話メーカー (Mobile phone maker)
P-SQUARE 製品ガイド (Product Guide)

Personal computers: <http://panasonic.jp/mobile/p700i/minisd/index.html>

You may not be able to use the miniSD memory card you formatted using a personal computer and other devices. Be sure to use the miniSD memory card formatted with the FOMA P700i.

The miniSD memory card may be lost or deformed due to an accident or failure. It is advisable to back up important data.

Note that we may not take responsibility for direct or indirect damages or incidental guarantee due to the use of the miniSD memory card.

- Damages arising from missing opportunities of calls or transmission
- Damages caused by erasing the data you saved in the FOMA phone or miniSD memory card

When a label is attached to the miniSD memory card, do not peel it from the miniSD memory card. Peeling the label may damage the miniSD memory card or its data.

During processing of the card, the Call/Charging indicator lights and flickers. While the Call/Charging indicator is lighting on or flickering, never remove the miniSD memory card, or turn off the power of the FOMA phone. Confirm that the Call/Charging indicator goes off before turning off the power of the FOMA phone, and then remove the miniSD memory card.

When it takes time to record data such as moving images, we recommend that you use the AC adapter (option) to supply the power to the FOMA phone so that you do not fail to record owing to battery consumption.

The miniSD memory card has an operating life. If you use the miniSD memory card for a long time, you may not be able to write new data on it, or the card is disabled.

When inserting a miniSD memory card you have used with a personal computer or other devices into the FOMA P700i, the FOMA P700i creates files and folders.

Do not delete or move folders in the miniSD memory card using a personal computer. The FOMA P700i may fail to read the miniSD memory card.

The FOMA P700i cannot read incompatible data you have written on the miniSD memory card using a personal computer.

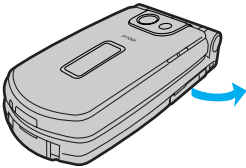
The FOMA P700i cannot set protection for the miniSD memory card. Pay enough attention for handling data.

Note that formatting the miniSD memory card deletes all data in the miniSD memory card.

Inserting/Removing miniSD Memory Card

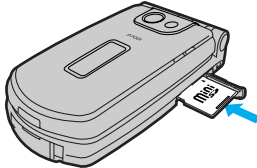
Inserting

1 Open the cover of the miniSD memory card slot.

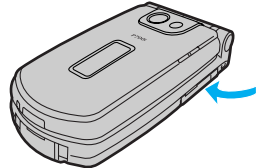


2 Face the front surface of the miniSD memory card upwards and insert the memory card.

Push it until it clicks.



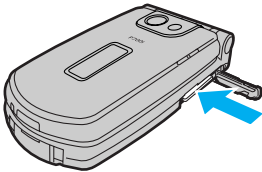
3 Close the cover of the miniSD memory card slot.



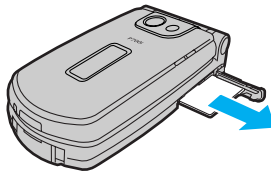
Removing

1 Open the cover following step 1 of “Inserting” and push the miniSD memory card until it stops.

Pushing the miniSD memory card inside pops up the card.



2 Remove the miniSD memory card.



Icons


The following icons appear when you install the miniSD memory card:



: You can save data to the miniSD memory card and read the data you saved.



: You cannot use the miniSD memory card. Remove the miniSD memory card and then install it again.

When “” is displayed even after you remove the miniSD memory card and insert it again, execute “miniSD format” or “Check miniSD”.

Information

Do not insert or remove the miniSD memory card with the FOMA phone turned on. It may damage the miniSD memory card or its data.

Note that miniSD memory card may pop out when you insert or remove it.

Confirm the direction of the miniSD memory card, and then insert or remove it straight. (If you obliquely insert the miniSD memory card into the slot, the memory card may be damaged.)

It may take longer to initially read or write data after attaching the miniSD memory card.

Folder Configuration on miniSD Memory Card

The FOMA phone creates the following folders within the miniSD memory card to save data files. When saving files from a personal computer to the miniSD memory card, you need to adopt the following folder configuration and file names:

- DCIMFolder for DCF standard still image
 - xxx_PANAFolder
 - Pxxx####.JPGStill image file (JPEG file)
- PRIVATE
 - DOCOMO
 - STILLFolder for non-DCF standard still image
 - SUDyyyFolder
 - STILzzzz.JPGStill image file (JPEG file)
 - STILzzzz.GIFStill image file (GIF file)
 - TABLEAdditional information folder
- SD_VIDEOFolder for moving images
 - PRL * * *Folder
 - MOL * * *.3GPMoving image file (3GP file)
 - MOL * * *.SDVMoving image file (SDV file)
 - MOL * * *.ASFMoving image file (ASF file)
 - MOL * * *.MP4Moving image file (MP4 file)
- SD_PIMFolder for Phonebook, Schedule, ToDo, Mail, Free Memo, and Bookmark
(This folder is created automatically when data is exported for the first time.)
 - PIM\$\$\$\$.VCFPhonebook file (vCard file)
 - PIM\$\$\$\$.VCSSchedule, ToDo file (vCalendar file)
 - PIM\$\$\$\$.VMGMail file (vMessage file)
 - PIM\$\$\$\$.VNTFree memo file (vNote file)
 - PIM\$\$\$\$.VBMBookmark file (vBookmark file)
- MISCDPOF folder
 - AUTPRINT.MRKDPOF file

"xxx" denotes three-digit half-pitch numeric as in 100 through 999 and "####" denotes four-digit half-pitch numeric from 0001 through 9999 and are used for saving. (Use the same half-pitch numerals for the file name "xxx" as that for the folder name "xxx".)

"yyy" denotes three-digit half-pitch numeric as in 001 through 999 and "zzzz" denotes four-digit half-pitch numeric from 0001 through 9999 and are used for saving.

"* * * *" denotes hexadecimal numbers as in 001 through FFF consisting of half-pitch numeric from 0 through 9 and half-pitch alphabets from A through F are used for saving.

The hexadecimal numbers are carried up every 16, unlike the way the decimal numbers are carried up every 10.

[Example]

001,002,...,009,00A,00B,00C,00D,00E,00F,010,011,...,019,01A,01B,01C,01D,01E,01F,020...

1F9,1FA,1FB,1FC,1FD,1FE,1FF,200...

For moving image files, you can display only the MP4 files with extensions "3GP", "SDV", "MP4" and ASF files with extension "ASF" on the display of the FOMA phone.

"\$\$\$\$\$" denotes five-digit half-pitch numeric as in 00001 through 65535 are used for saving.

Information

Folder and file names may be displayed in lowercase characters depending on the personal computer you use.

If you save the file edited with a personal computer to the miniSD memory card, the folder name or file name with different characters from those on page 378 may not be displayed or played back on the FOMA P700i.

If you do the power OFF, miniSD check disk, miniSD format, or miniSD memory card removal, the folder of storage location is set for the latest folder created in the FOMA phone. If the setting is changed, set the "Select storage" again.

When you create or edit the folder in the personal computer, the folder of storage location might be changed. If the setting is changed, set the "Select storage" again.

Do not use the personal computer to delete or move the folders inside the miniSD memory card. The miniSD memory card might not be read by the FOMA P700i.

If you save the FOMA P700i incompatible data on the miniSD memory card with the personal computer, the FOMA P700i cannot read it.

On the FOMA P700i, you might not be able to display or play data which was saved to the miniSD memory card from other devices; on other devices, you might not be able to display or play data which was saved to the miniSD memory card from the FOMA P700i.

To procure the Read Writer for the miniSD memory card and PC Card read adapter, inquire respective makers for the operation of miniSD memory card beforehand.

If you use the miniSD memory card formatted using devices other than the FOMA P700i, it might not work correctly.

The number of files and time that can be saved to the miniSD memory card

The number of files and time that can be saved to the miniSD memory card varies depending on the memory capacity of the miniSD memory card.

You can save more files by adding folders to export files to. However, you might not be able to save the maximum number of files depending on the file size.

File	Still image (DCF standard)	Moving image	Phonebook, Schedule, Mail, Free Memo, Bookmark
Folder	DCIM	SD_VIDEO	SD_PIM
Number of savable files and time	See page 162	See page 167	65535

You can check unused space and storage capacity of the miniSD memory card by "miniSD info". The usable memory space is smaller than that described on the miniSD memory card.

Using miniSD Memory Card

You can save the Phonebook entries, Schedule events, ToDo items, mail, free memos, and bookmarks from the FOMA phone to the miniSD memory card. You can also export the saved data to the FOMA phone.

You need to obtain a miniSD memory card separately to use the functions related to the miniSD memory card. The miniSD memory card is available at mass retailers for home electric appliances. (See page 376)

See page 379 for the number of data items that can be saved to the miniSD memory card.

See page 344 for exporting still images, moving images, or i-motion movies to the miniSD memory card.

See page 343 for importing still images, moving images, or i-motion movies from the miniSD memory card.



<Category List>

2 Select the category to be displayed

- PhonebookDisplays the Phonebook entries in the miniSD memory card.
- Schedule.....Displays the Schedule events and Todo items in the miniSD memory card.
- InboxDisplays received mail in the miniSD memory card.
- OutboxDisplays sent mail in the miniSD memory card.
- DraftDisplays draft mail in the miniSD memory card.
- Free memo.....Displays free memos in the miniSD memory card.
- BookmarkDisplays bookmarks in the miniSD memory card.



<miniSD File display>
For Phonebook

3 Select the file to be displayed from the miniSD memory card



<Data List >
For Phonebook

4 Select the data to be displayed



<Detailed data display>
For Phonebook

Information

You cannot operate while another function is working (while " / " or " / " is displayed at the upper right of the display). You cannot display data from the miniSD memory card during PIM Lock. You cannot also export data from each function. When you display Deco mail, the mail image before saved to the miniSD memory card cannot be displayed correctly.

1 Category List/miniSD File display/Data List/Detailed data display ▶ (i) (FUNC) ▶ Do the following operation.

Function menu	Operations
Edit title	▶ Enter the title ▶ (i) You can enter up to 15 full-pitch or 31 half-pitch characters. See page 482 for how to enter characters.
Import & add	You can execute "Import & add" from the miniSD memory card. (See page 382)
Import&overwrite	You can execute "Import & overwrite" from the miniSD memory card. (See page 382)
Import & add one	You can execute "Import & add one" from the miniSD memory card. (See this page)
Import & add all	You can execute "Import & add all" from the miniSD memory card. (See page 382)
Import & OW all	You can execute "Import & OW all" from the miniSD memory card. (See page 382)
Export from phone	You can export data items from the FOMA phone. (See page 383)
Delete this	▶ YES To cancel, select "NO" and press (i).
Delete all	You can delete all files in the currently displayed category. ▶ Enter the Terminal Security Code ▶ (i) ▶ YES To cancel, select "NO" and press (i). See page 140 for the Terminal Security Code.
miniSD info	You can display the memory capacity of the miniSD memory card. (See page 384)
miniSD format	You can format the miniSD memory card. (See page 383)
Check miniSD	You can check the miniSD memory card. (See page 384)

Information

<Delete this><Delete all>

When the access right is set only for read only by devices such as a personal computer, the confirmation display appears asking whether to delete the data. Select "YES" or "NO" and press (i).

Import

You can import the Phonebook entries, Schedule events, ToDo items, mail, free memos, and bookmarks from the miniSD memory card to the FOMA phone.

Import & add one

You can import the data selected on the Data List or displayed on the detailed data display.

1 Data List/Detailed data display ▶ (i) (FUNC) ▶ Import & add one ▶ YES

To cancel, select "NO" and press (i).

Import & add/Import & add all

You can import all data in the file selected on the miniSD File display or all data displayed on the Data List to the FOMA phone.

The imported data is additionally stored in the FOMA phone.

1 miniSD File display/Data List \blacktriangleright \downarrow (FUNC) \blacktriangleright Import & add/Import & add all
 \blacktriangleright Enter the Terminal Security Code \blacktriangleright \odot \blacktriangleright YES

To cancel, select "NO" and press \odot .

See page 140 for the Terminal Security Code.

Import & overwrite/Import & overwrite all

You can import all data in the file selected on the miniSD File display or all data displayed on the Data List to the FOMA phone.

Note that the data already stored in the FOMA phone is overwritten and deleted.

1 miniSD File display/Data List \blacktriangleright \downarrow (FUNC) \blacktriangleright Import&overwrite/Import & OW all
 \blacktriangleright Enter the Terminal Security Code \blacktriangleright \odot \blacktriangleright YES \blacktriangleright YES

To cancel, select "NO" and press \odot .

If you try to import all Phonebook entries, the confirmation display appears asking whether to set the first data for "Own number". Select "YES" and press \odot to set it to "Own number". If you select "NO" and press \odot , "Own number" is not set and data is all stored in the Phonebook instead.

See page 140 for the Terminal Security Code.

Information

If the memory capacity of the FOMA phone runs short during importing, importing is suspended midway; however, the data imported already is stored.

When you add and import a Phonebook entry, the Phonebook entry is stored in Group 00 if the group number or group name stored in the miniSD file differs from that stored in the FOMA phone.

When the Inbox is full and a single received message is imported, the message overwrites the unprotected, oldest, and read message.

When the Outbox is full and a single sent message is imported, the message overwrites the unprotected and oldest message.

When you execute "Import & add all", you cannot import the following data:

- Schedule items set for the same date and time
- Bookmarks of the same URL

While "Keypad dial lock" or "Restrict dialing" is activated, you cannot execute "Import & add", "Import & add all", "Import&overwrite" and "Import & OW all".

If the number of files stored in the miniSD memory card increases, it may take longer to read or write data.

While importing, the FOMA phone is placed in the same status as it is out of service area, so you cannot make calls, communicate using i-mode, or transfer data.

Export

You can copy the Phonebook entries, Schedule events, ToDo items, mail, free memos, and bookmarks from the FOMA phone to the miniSD memory card.

Export one

You can copy one data item from the FOMA phone to the miniSD memory card. A copied data item is saved as a single file.

You cannot copy the secret code stored in the Phonebook entry.

1 Display for the data to be copied \blacktriangleright \downarrow (FUNC) \blacktriangleright Export this or Export \blacktriangleright YES

Export all

You can copy the data items in the FOMA phone to the miniSD memory card by category. The copied data items are all saved as a single file.

You cannot copy secret codes stored in the Phonebook entries.

1 Category List/miniSD File display ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Export from phone

When you export all data in "Schedule" or "ToDo"

1. Category List/miniSD File display ▶ Schedule

2. (FUNC) ▶ Export from phone

ScheduleSaves all data items from Schedule to the miniSD memory card.

ToDoSaves all data items from ToDo to the miniSD memory card.

AllSaves all data items from Schedule and ToDo to the miniSD memory card.

2 Enter the Terminal Security Code ▶ YES

To cancel, select "NO" and press (OK).

See page 140 for the Terminal Security Code.

Information

If you copy mail containing links to launch i-appli, the information in that mail about launching i-appli is deleted.

When a single file stored as secret is exported, the file is copied as an ordinary file.

When all files are exported, the files stored as secret are also copied.

When all the Phonebook entries are exported, the contents of "Own number" are also copied.

For copying mail, some files attached to mail may be deleted depending on file format.

You cannot write data on the miniSD memory card protected using a personal computer or other devices.

While exporting, the FOMA phone is placed in the same status as it is out of service area, so you cannot make calls, communicate using i-mode, or transfer data.

<miniSD Format>

Formatting miniSD Memory Card

When you use the miniSD memory card for the first time, you need to format (initialize) it. Be sure to use the FOMA P700i for formatting. The miniSD memory card formatted using other devices such as personal computers may not be used properly.

* Note that formatting deletes all the contents of the miniSD memory card.

1 (←) ▶ SD-PIM ▶ (FUNC) ▶ miniSD format ▶ Enter the Terminal Security Code ▶ YES

To cancel formatting, select "NO" and press (OK).

See page 140 for the Terminal Security Code.

Information

Do not remove the miniSD memory card during formatting. Damages of the FOMA phone or miniSD memory card could result.

Data saved to the format-suspended miniSD memory card will be undefined.

You cannot format the protected or incompatible miniSD memory card.

The Call/Charging indicator flickers in green while formatting the miniSD memory card.

If you press (MAIL) or (CALL) during formatting or if you receive a voice call or video-phone call during formatting, formatting is canceled. Format again.

You cannot operate while another function is working (while " " or " " is displayed at the upper right of the display).

<miniSD Check>

Checking miniSD Memory Card

You can check and recover a system area or directory in the miniSD memory card.



Information

Do not remove the miniSD memory card during miniSD check. Damages of the FOMA phone or miniSD memory card could result. You cannot check the protected, unformatted or incompatible miniSD memory card.

When you execute "Check miniSD", it may not be recovered, the data saved before miniSD check may be deleted, or the miniSD memory card itself may be initialized.

The Call/Charging indicator flickers in green during miniSD check.

If you press (**DATA**) or during miniSD check or if you receive a voice call or video-phone call during miniSD check, miniSD check is canceled.

If you cancel miniSD check midway, data not recovered may remain. Try "Check miniSD" again.

It may take longer to check miniSD depending on the data volume stored in the miniSD memory card.

You cannot recover some miniSD memory cards.

You cannot operate while another function is working (while " " or " " is displayed at the upper right of the display).

<miniSD Information>

Displaying Capacity of miniSD Memory Card

You can display the unused space and storage capacity (estimate) in the miniSD memory card.

See page 338 for checking the memory capacity for the still image or moving image file.



Information

The usable memory space is smaller than that described on the miniSD memory card.

You can also display miniSD information by pressing (**FUNC**) from the following displays:

miniSD File display, Data List or detailed data display of SD-PIM

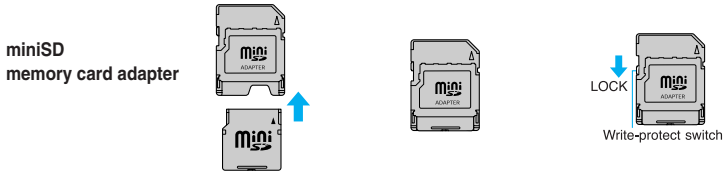
Using a miniSD Memory Card with a Personal Computer

By connecting the miniSD memory card to the miniSD memory card adapter, you can use the miniSD memory card on a personal computer, which supports SD memory card. You can display or print out still and moving images or back up the important data.

The miniSD memory card is available at mass retailers for home electric appliances.

Using a miniSD Memory Card Adapter

By using the miniSD memory card adapter, you can use the miniSD memory card on compatible devices.



Information

If the write-protect switch of the miniSD memory card adapter is at the "LOCK" side, the miniSD memory card is write-protected and you cannot write data to or format the card.

To protect important data, move the write-protect switch to the "LOCK" side. To write data to or format it, release "LOCK" for the write-protect switch.

Using as miniSD Reader Writer

Setting at purchase
Communication mode

With a miniSD memory card inserted, connect the FOMA phone to a personal computer; then you can read the data from or write the data into the miniSD memory card.



1 Other settings ▶ USB mode setting

Communication mode.....You can use the connector terminal for packet transmission, 64K data transmission, and data exchange (OBEX). The setting is completed. (See page 440)

miniSD mode.....You can use the connector terminal to read data from/write data into the miniSD memory card.

2 Connect the FOMA phone to a personal computer using a FOMA USB Cable (option). (See page 443)

The personal computer recognizes the miniSD memory card.

" " appears on the Stand-by display. Also, " " is displayed while the miniSD memory card is inserted.

The Call/Charging indicator flickers in green while accessing the miniSD memory card.

Information

If you format the miniSD memory card using a personal computer, the card might not be used on the FOMA phone. Make sure that you format the miniSD memory card using the FOMA phone.

Check if the FOMA phone and personal computer are correctly connected. If they are not correctly connected, you cannot send or receive data. You may also lose your data.

When the remaining battery level of the FOMA phone shows very low or goes flat, you cannot send or receive data. In addition, you may lose data. Check if the battery level shows full. Also, check the personal computer for the power source.

While data is being read or written, do not pull the FOMA USB Cable off. You cannot send or receive data. You may also lose your data.

While data is being read from or written into the miniSD memory card, you cannot set this function. (Resetting by "Reset settings" or "Initialized" is also disabled.)

While data is being read or written between the FOMA phone and the miniSD memory card, accessing from the personal computer to the miniSD memory card is disabled.

While data is being read or written between the personal computer and the miniSD memory card, accessing from the FOMA phone to the miniSD memory card is disabled.

To release "miniSD mode", remove the FOMA USB Cable and switch to "Communication mode".

To use the FOMA phone as a miniSD Reader-Writer, the following equipment is required.

Item	Description
Connector Cable	FOMA USB Cable (option)
PC	Personal computer having the USB port (Universal Serial Bus Specification Rev 1.1 conformant) that can be connected with the FOMA USB Cable (option)
Compatible Operating Systems	Windows® Me, Windows® 2000, Windows® XP (Japanese version in each)

Glossary of Terms

DCF

DCF is an abbreviation of Design rule for Camera File System that denotes the standard for file systems.

MPEG4

MPEG4 is an abbreviation of Moving Picture Experts Group Phase4 and denotes moving images optimized by encoding (data compression) method for mobile communications or the Internet.

About 3gp format

“3gp” is a format specified by 3GPP (3rd Generation Partnership Project).

About asf format

ASF is an abbreviation of Advanced Streaming Format that is appropriate for the streaming distribution that can contain the information about images, audio, or characters.

Setting of “Store in”	Store in	File format	Notes
Phone	FOMA phone	MP4 (3gp)	Exportable to a miniSD memory card
miniSD card	miniSD memory card	ASF (asf)	Importable to the FOMA phone

Infrared Data Exchange Mode

The FOMA phone conforms to IrMC version 1.1.

The FOMA phone can transfer the Phonebook entries or Schedule events to the devices supporting the Ir exchange function.

You might not be able to transfer some files depending on applications even if the external device is based on IrMC version 1.1.

* The Ir exchange to and from the FOMA P2101V is not available.

Also, you cannot send melody files, still image files, and moving image files to the FOMA P2102V from the FOMA P700i. (You can send them to the FOMA P700i from the FOMA P2102V.)

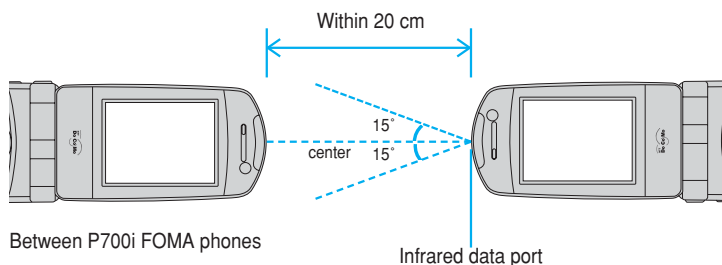
Ir exchange distance should be within 20 cm. Do not move the FOMA phone with the infrared data port pointed to the receiving end until data transfer ends.

Hold the FOMA phone with the hands securely so that it does not move.

If you expose the FOMA phone to direct sunlight or put it under fluorescent lights or near an infrared equipment, you may not be able to transmit infrared ray normally due to their influence.

First set the receiving end and begin sending data from the FOMA phone within 30 seconds.

Keep the angle of the infrared rays within 15° from the center.



Notes on Ir exchange

You cannot use Ir exchange during a call, i-mode transmission, packet transmission, 64K data transmission, Short Message (SMS) transfer, Self-mode, All Lock, or PIM Lock.

You cannot transmit while another function is working (while "///" or "///" is displayed at the upper right of the display).

Ir exchange places the FOMA phone in the same state as it is out of the service area, so you cannot make/receive calls, communicate using i-mode, or do data transmission.

You cannot send or receive the Phonebook entries with infrared rays during Keypad Dial Lock.

You cannot receive the Phonebook entries while Restrict Dialing is activated. At sending, you can send only Phonebook entries set with Restrict Dialing and data of Own Number.

List of data items you can transfer using infrared rays

Transfer terms	One item	All items
Transferable data		
Phonebook (Own Number)		Up to 700 items ¹
Schedule ²		Up to 100 items
ToDo		Up to 100 items
Received mail		Up to 1000 items
Sent mail		Up to 400 items
Draft mail		Up to 5 items
Free memo		Up to 10 items
Melody ^{3, 4}		×
Still image file ^{4, 5}		×
Moving image file ^{4, 6}		×
Bookmark ⁷		Up to 100 items

¹ The total number of items you can send from or receive into the Phonebook via Ir is 700, each for the phone number and mail address.

² You cannot send or receive holidays and anniversaries via Ir exchange.

³ You cannot send or receive some files.

⁴ The file is converted to the vnt file and sent or received.

⁵ You cannot send or receive original animations.

When sending or receiving a JPEG file in excess of VGA (640 x 480) size, the image may be shrunk to VGA (640 x 480) size.

⁶ You cannot send or receive ASF files.

⁷ When sending or receiving bookmarks, the folder configuration may not be reflected depending on the other end device.

Information

Still images, moving images, and melodies received with Ir exchange are saved to the "i-mode" folder.

For a title of a still image or moving image, you can send and receive up to 9 full-pitch or 18 half-pitch characters.

For a title of a melody, you can send and receive up to 25 full-pitch or 50 half-pitch characters.

If you fail in authenticating or when the file size exceeds the maximum volume, a warning message appears, disabling you to send or receive data.

During Ir exchange, the FOMA phone is placed in the same status as it is out of service area so you cannot receive incoming calls.

The caller hears an announcement that "Out of reach of radio wave or power off". When Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service is set to "Activate", the call is transferred to Voice Mail Service Center or forwarded to the forwarding destination.

It may take longer to forward data or you might not be able to receive data depending on the data size.

If you connect the FOMA USB Cable (option) to the FOMA phone, you may not perform Ir exchange.

Sending/Receiving Data Files One by One

You can send/receive the following data items one by one to and from the FOMA phone via Ir exchange: the Phonebook entries, data of Own Number, Schedule events, ToDo items, free memos, bookmarks, mail messages, melody files, still image files, and moving image files.

Sending One Data Item

Set the receiving end to "Receiving" and then start transmission within 30 seconds following the step below:

- 1 Display of the data to be sent ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Send Ir data

▶ Confirm "Receiving" at the receiving end ▶ YES

To cancel, select "NO" and press .

To cancel the transmission, press (QUIT) or .



Information

You cannot send still and moving images or melodies whose output from the FOMA phone is prohibited, the UIM Phonebook entries, and Short Messages (SMS) in the UIM.

When sending mail, the file attached to mail is also sent, however, some files attached to mail may not be sent depending on file format.

The mail containing the information of an undownloaded i-motion movie or the JPEG image in excess of 10,000 bytes, or the mail containing link information for launching i-appli is transmitted with the information deleted.

If transmission is interrupted and the confirmation display appears asking whether to continue the transmission, select "YES" and press ; then you can resume the transmission.

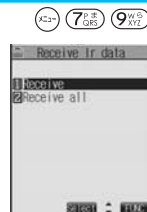
When sending one Phonebook entry, you cannot send the stored secret code.

In Secret Mode, you can send secret data. However, in Secret Only Mode, you can send only the secret data.

Receiving One Data Item

- 1 ▶ ▶ Receive Ir data

Select from the Shortcut menu and press ; then the display on the right is also brought up.



<Receive Ir Data Selection display>

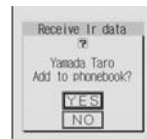


- 2 Receive

To cancel the transmission, press (QUIT) or .

3 YES

To cancel, select "NO" and press .



Information

When you have already downloaded the i-αppli software that supports the external devices using infrared rays and received a software start instruction message, the specified software starts up. If you have not put a check mark for "Ir αppli To" of "Set αppli To", the software does not start up automatically.

The phone number is stored in the Phonebook to the lowest empty memory numbers in 010 through 699. If all memory numbers 010 through 699 are occupied, the phone number is stored to the lowest empty memory numbers in 000 through 009 (two-touch dial). If you receive a Phonebook entry stored as secret in Secret Mode or Secret Only Mode, the Phonebook entry is stored as an ordinary one. Data of "Own number" you have received is stored as a Phonebook entry.

Received mail messages are saved to the Inbox folder in "Inbox Folder List". When the maximum number of storable messages (see page 542) is exceeded, the messages overwrite in the order of ① messages within the "Trash box" folder and ② received messages from the oldest one.

Sent mail overwrites the unprotected and oldest mail in the Outbox folder.

You cannot store still images in excess of 700 Kbytes, moving images in excess of 800 Kbytes, and melodies data in excess of 100 Kbytes.

Sending/Receiving All Data Items

You can send/receive the following data items all at once to and from the FOMA phone via Ir exchange: the Phonebook entries, Schedule events, ToDo items, free memos, bookmarks, and mail messages.

If you send/receive all data items

If you send all Phonebook entries, the "Own number" data is also sent.

All the data of "Own number" at the receiving end is overwritten except the own number. Mail address is also overwritten by sender's address, so restore it at the receiving end.

You can send or receive the protected incoming and outgoing messages.

Be sure to read the following before sending/receiving all data items

Receiving all data items deletes all data you have stored including the protected ones, and the received data overwrites the existing data. Confirm that no important data is stored before receiving all data items.

Receiving all data items in the Phonebook overwrites personal data (except phone number) stored in "Own number".

The Phonebook entries stored as secret data are also sent. The sent "Secret data" is stored as "Secret data" at the receiving end, too.

You cannot send/receive all Phonebook data if "PIM lock" or "Keypad dial lock" is set.

The group names in the Phonebook you have received are stored, so the data set in "Group setting" is also overwritten.

When you send/receive all data items, the bar indicating the transmission status appears to notify you of the number of sent data items (estimate). The bar may progress slowly or look different from that viewed from the receiving end even when the data has correctly been sent/received depending on the size of the sending/receiving data.

Sending All Data Items

To send all data items, enter a session number (any four-digit number). The receiving end needs to enter the same session number.

Perform the operation below to start sending within 30 seconds after displaying "Receiving" at the receiving end.

1 Display of the data to be sent  (**FUNC**)  Send all Ir data  Enter the Terminal Security Code 

See page 140 for Terminal Security Code.



2 Enter the session number

Enter any four-digit number as the session number.

3 Confirm "Receiving" at the receiving end ▶ YES

To cancel, select "NO" and press .




To cancel the transmission, press  (⊗) or .

Information

You cannot send the Phonebook entries and Short Messages (SMS) in the UIM.

Note that the schedule events at the receiving end are all deleted if you send all ToDo items to the phone that does not support ToDo. If you send all messages, the mail containing the information of the JPEG image in excess of 10,000 bytes, or the mail containing link information for launching i-appli is transmitted with the information deleted.

When sending mail, the file attached to mail is also sent, however, some files attached to the mail may not be sent depending on the file format.

If transmission is interrupted and the confirmation display appears asking whether to continue the transmission, select "YES" and press ; then you can resume the transmission.

All data items you selected are sent regardless of Secret Mode.

Receiving All Data Items



To receive all data items, you need to enter the same session number as that of sending end. Note that all data items including protected data are overwritten by the received data if you have received all. Data stored in Secret Mode is also deleted.

1 ▶ Receive Ir data

Select  from the Shortcut menu and press ; then the display on the right is also brought up.



<Receive Ir Data Selection display>

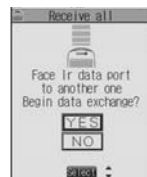
2 Receive all ▶ Enter the Terminal Security Code ▶

See page 140 for the Terminal Security Code.

3 Enter the same session number as that entered at the sending end


4 YES

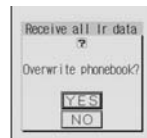
To cancel, select "NO" and press .



5 YES

Stored data is deleted, then reception starts.

To cancel, select "NO" and press .



To cancel, press  () or .



Information

When you receive a still image set for a Phonebook entry or a file attached to mail, and the same still image or file is already stored, only one image or file remains in the DATA BOX.

Function Menu of the Receive Ir Data Selection Display

1 Receive Ir Data Selection display  ()  Do the following operation.

Function menu	Operations
Add desktop icon	You can paste the icon of receiving Ir data to the desktop. (See page 134)

<Forwarding Image>

Transmission Setting

Setting at purchase
ON

For when you transfer the Phonebook entries using infrared rays, SD-PIM, or data link software, you can specify whether to transmit stored still images together.

1    Forwarding image

ON.....Transmits still images from the Phonebook together.

OFF.....Does not transmit still images from the Phonebook.



Other Useful Functions

Multiaccess	<Multiaccess>	394
Multitask.....	<Multitask>	397
Using Alarm	<Alarm>	399
Using Calendar to Manage Schedule.....	<Schedule>	402
Using ToDo to Manage Schedule.....	<ToDo>	409
Setting Operating Conditions of Alarm.....	<Alarm Setting>	412
Using Your Original Menu	<Private Menu>	412
Storing Your Name, Mail Address and Other Information.....	<Own Number>	413
Recording Voice during a Call or Standby as Voice Memo	<Voice Memo during a Call><Voice Memo during Standby>	415
Setting Call Time Display	<Call Time Display>	416
Checking Call Duration and Charge.....	<Call Duration/Charge>	416
Resetting Call Duration/Call Charge.....	<Reset Call Duration>	417
Using Calculator.....	<Calculator>	417
Making Free Memos	<Free Memo>	418
Copying/Deleting Data Items in FOMA Phone or UIM	<UIM Operation>	419
How to Use Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone Set with Switch.....		421
Answering a Call Automatically when Earphone is Connected	<Automatic Answer>	422
Setting Mobile Phone Carrier	<PLMN Setting>	423
Resetting Function Settings	<Reset Settings>	424
Deleting Stored Data All at Once	<Initialize>	424

<Multiaccess>

Multiaccess

You can use the Multiaccess function to do dual communications, namely, voice communications (phone) and packet transmission (i-mode, i-mode mail, and data transmission connecting to personal computers) simultaneously. Further, you can use Short Message (SMS) at the same time. See page 516 for details of combination of Multiaccess.

Functions Available for Concurrent Transmission

The FOMA phone can use the multiple lines (maximum three lines) simultaneously as follows:

Voice communications (phone)	Single line
i-mode, i-appli, i-mode mail, packet transmission connecting to PC	Single line
Short Message Service (SMS)	Single line

Information

You are charged fee for each line during Multiaccess.

You cannot use Multiaccess during a video-phone call or 64K data transmission. However, you can receive Short Message (SMS) simultaneously.

Major Multiaccess Operations

Major available operations in Multiaccess are as follows:

Transmissions added Current Transmission	Making/Taking calls (voice call)	Starting i-mode	Sending/Receiving i-mode mail	Packet transmission with PC
During a call (voice call)	x ¹			
During i-mode		x		x
During packet transmission with PC		x	x ²	x

: available

x : not available

1: If you subscribe to Call Waiting Service, this might be available depending on the combination.



2: You can send and receive Short Messages (SMS).

Access i-mode during a Voice Call

1 During a voice call Menu ENGLISH

The call stays connected.

See page 193 for connecting to sites.

To switch the display, press and hold  for at least one second; or press  and switch from the Task menu. (See page 398)





Send Mail during a Voice Call

1 During a voice call

The call stays connected.

See page 235 for composing/sending i-mode mail.

See page 301 for composing/sending Short Messages (SMS).

To switch the display, press and hold  for at least one second; or press  and switch from the Task menu. (See page 398)





Receive Mail during a Voice Call

1 When you receive mail, the Reception Result display is brought up.

The call stays connected.

See page 255 for how to read i-mode mail.

See page 304 for how to read Short Messages (SMS).

To switch the display, press and hold  for at least one second; or press  and switch from the Task menu. (See page 398)



Information

If you receive i-mode mail or Message R/F during a call, the ring tone does not sound and illumination does not flicker.



You can use "Receiving display" to set the FOMA phone not to bring up the Reception Result display for when you receive i-mode mail or Message R/F during a call.

Start Packet Transmission during a Voice Call

1 During a voice call ▶ Do dialing from a personal computer

The call stays connected.

See page 440 for packet transmission.

To switch the display, press and hold  for at least one second; or press  and switch from the Task menu. (See page 398)

Make a Voice Call during i-mode or during Packet Transmission

1 During i-mode or packet transmission ▶ Stand-by display

The Stand-by display appears.





In i-mode

2 Make a call.

i-mode or packet transmission stays connected.

If you make a video-phone call during i-mode, i-mode is disconnected and the video-phone call is made. After you finish the video-phone call, the i-mode display returns.

You cannot make a video-phone call during packet transmission.

To switch the display, press and hold  for at least one second; or press  and switch from the Task menu. (See page 398)



Receive a Voice Call during i-mode or during Packet Transmission



1 The Call Receiving display appears for an incoming call.





2 Press to answer the call.

i-mode or packet transmission stays connected.

You cannot receive a video-phone call.

To switch the display, press and hold  for at least one second; or press  and switch from the Task menu. (See page 398)

To return to the display for i-mode or packet transmission without answering the call, press and hold  for at least one second. Press and hold  for at least one second again to return to the Call Receiving display.

The message is not played back to the caller; ringing continues.



If a call comes in during a call

If you have subscribed to Call Waiting Service, the ring tone sounds and the message to the effect that you can end the call/transmission to answer the call is displayed when a call comes in during a call or 64K data transmission. You can transfer the call to the Voice Mail Center, forward to the forwarding end, or end to answer the new call.

To continue the current call:

1. Press  or .

If another voice call comes in during a voice call, the message to the effect that you can answer the call is not displayed.

Perform the operation in step 2 from the Call Receiving display.

2. Press  (**FUNC**).

Call rejectionYou can reject an incoming call and resume the current call.

Call forwardingYou can forward a call to the forwarding end and resume the current call.

Voice mailYou can connect an incoming call to the Voice Mail Center and resume the current call.

To answer an incoming call:

- When a video-phone call comes in during a video-phone call


When a voice phone call comes in during a voice call

When 64K data transmission is received during 64K data transmission

1. Press  or .






If another voice call comes in during a voice call, the message to the effect that you can answer the call is not displayed.

Perform the operation in step 2 from the Call Receiving display.


2. Press .


The current call ends and the Call Receiving display appears. Then, you can answer the incoming call.

- Other than combinations above:

1.  or    Select the communication to end 

To end the video-phone call, select "Connecting V-phone", to end the voice call, select "Talking", and to end 64K data transmission, select "Connected data", respectively.

You can select the communication to end also by pressing and holding  for at least one second to switch the task.

2. Press .

The current call ends and the Call Receiving display appears. Then, you can answer the incoming call.

Information

Incoming calls are rejected when a video-phone is connected, remote-control is activated, during call hold, or while Record Message is working. The "Missed call" icon will be displayed when the current call ends, and it will be stored in the Received Call Record. (The "Missed call" icon might not appear and the received call record might not be kept depending on the contracts and setting for Voice Mail, Call Waiting, and Call Forwarding Services.)

If a call comes in during a video-phone call, the moving image, i-motion movie and Flash movie set as the image for incoming calls are not displayed.

If a call comes in during a video-phone call, a "Pre-installed" substitute image is sent to the other party of the current call.

If a call comes in during a video-phone call, the vibrator does not work.

<Multitask>

Multitask

The FOMA phone supports “Multitask” that enables you to use multiple functions at the same time such as Menu function (see page 29).

By combining Multiaccess and Multitask, you can use following functions simultaneously (see page 517 for the combination pattern of Multitask):

You can use maximum three functions and a voice or video-phone call simultaneously.

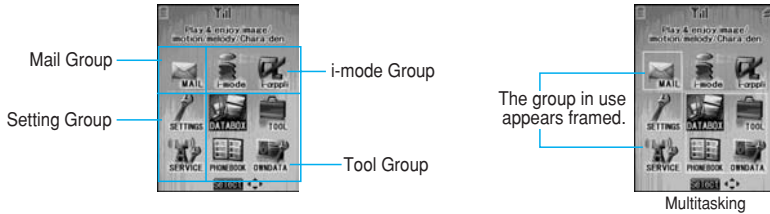
Mail Group (i-mode mail and Short Message (SMS) functions)

i-mode Group (Menu functions inside “i-mode group” of the Main menu)

Setting Group (Menu functions inside “Setting group” of the Main menu)

Tool Group (Menu functions inside “Tool group” of the Main menu)

Other functions not in the groups (Voice call, video-phone call, 64K data transmission, etc.)



Start Another Function

1 While a function is running ▶ ◀



While a function in the Tool group is running

2 Start another function.

To check usage status

To use icons

“”.....Displayed when a single function is used.

“”.....Displayed when multiple functions are used.

To use the Task menu

Press .

The menu list in use is displayed.

You can also use to select and press to switch the menu.



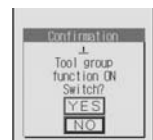
When you call up a menu function

If another menu function in the same group has already been called up, the display on the right appears.



Select “YES” to call up the new menu function and press . The current menu function will be closed.

If you try to start up another function when three functions have already been started up,

“Function cannot operate any more” is displayed.



Information

While the Stand-by display is displayed, you can press  to access the i-mode menu and  to access the mail menu.

You are charged call fee even when you are running other functions during a call.

If a call comes in while another function is working, the call might not be received correctly. In that case, "Record message" or "Call Forwarding Service" may start in a shorter time than the ringing time specified for them.

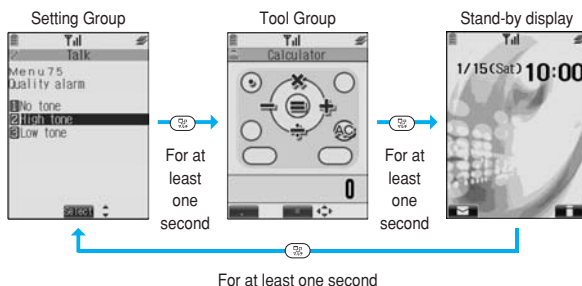
Multitask is not available to transfer data to and from the UIM, miniSD memory card, another FOMA phone, and a personal computer.


To access the data transfer function, make sure that you close other menu functions.

If you use Multitask to switch a function while executing another function whose load of processing is high, delay may occur in displaying operation, and so on.

Switch Displays


While multiple functions are working, you can switch the display by pressing and holding  for at least one second. The display switches from the latest one in descending order.




You can also switch displays from the Task menu by pressing . (See page 397)

The Stand-by display appears by pressing and holding  for at least one second from other than the Main menu.

Information

Even if you press  to switch the display, no menu function in use is closed nor the call is disconnected. Also, even when you switch the Character Entry display (see page 482) to another menu and use that menu for editing text, you can continue the previous text editing if you switch the task.




While the Main menu appears, you cannot switch the display even if you press and hold  for at least one second.

Exit a Function

Press  to close the menu function with the Menu Function display displayed.

When multiple functions are working, press and hold  for at least one second to switch the display and then press  to close the function one by one.

When multiple functions are working, repeat pressing ; then the functions are closed in the laid order of Task after closing the menu function being displayed.

Press  () from the Task menu, and select "YES" in the confirmation display and press  to close all menu functions and to return to the Stand-by display.

Information

If you turn off the power to the FOMA phone, all menu functions are closed.

If you call up menu functions such as "UIM operation" or "Color pattern" while other menu functions are working, a warning tone sounds and warning message is displayed. In this case, first close other menu functions and then call up the new menu function you want to start.

Using Alarm

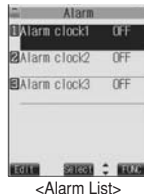
Setting at purchase
OFF

You can set Alarm to alert you at the specified time with an alarm tone and animation.
Set the date and time in “Set time” beforehand.

Store/Edit an Alarm

You can store up to three items of alarm.

1 Alarm




2 Select an alarm (Edit)

To set Alarm to “OFF”, press (FUNC), select “Release this” or “Release all” from the Function menu, then press .



3 Do the following operation.

Function menu	Operations
(Time setting)	<p>▶ Enter the time for sounding the alarm </p> <p>Enter the time in the 24-hour format. You cannot set the same time as the time set for the stored alarm.</p>
(Repeat)	<p>1 time .....Does not repeat (sounds just once). The setting for Repeat is completed. Daily .....Sets the alarm to sound every day. “D” is displayed on the detailed display. The setting for Repeat is completed. Select day .....Sets the alarm for the specified day of the week.</p> <p>▶ Put check marks for the day of the week to be set (Finish)</p> <p>“□” and “☑” switch each time you press .</p> <p>Select at least one day of the week. “W” is displayed on the detailed display.</p>
(Alarm tone)	<p>▶ Select a folder ▶ Select an alarm tone </p> <p>Not to sound the alarm tone, select “OFF” and press .</p> <p>See page 371 for the melody folder and list.</p>
(Volume)	<p>Step .....The alarm tone is silent for about three seconds, and then the volume steps up every about three seconds, from Level 1 through Level 6. Level 1 to 6 .....Level 1 is the softest volume and Level 6 is the loudest. Silent .....The alarm tone does not sound.</p>
(Snooze setting)	<p>ON .....After stopping the alarm tone by pressing any key, the alarm tone sounds up to six times every about five minutes until Snooze is released by pressing .</p> <p>The setting for Snooze is completed.</p> <p>OFF .....The alarm tone sounds just once. Set the time that the alarm tone is to continue playing.</p> <p>▶ Enter the ringing time (minutes)</p> <p>You can enter from “01” through “10” in two digits.</p>

Function menu	Operations
 (Auto power ON)	ON .....If the alarm time comes when the power is off, the power goes ON automatically to sound an alarm. OFF .....If the alarm time comes when the power is off, an alarm does not sound with the power remained OFF.

4 Press  (**Finish**).

Information

During PIM Lock, you cannot store or edit an alarm.

If you set some alarms to the same time, the priority is given in the following order; "Alarm" "ToDo" "Schedule". A missed schedule event or ToDo item is notified by displaying the "Missed alarm" icon on the desktop.

If the alarm tone sounds during a call, press any key to stop it. Once again press any key to end the alarm including Snooze; then the alarm message is cleared and the "Talking" display returns. If other party on the phone hangs up, an alarm including Snooze ends and the alarm message is cleared.

If a call comes in, or the Schedule or ToDo alarm sounds in Snooze status, Snooze is released.

To automatically turn on the power and play an alarm tone, the default "Alarm" will play if the alarm tone other than "Pre-installed", which is affected by the UIM restrictions, has been selected.



If you are near the electronic devices handling high precision controllers or weak signals, or when you are in an airplane or hospital where the use of mobile phones is prohibited, make sure that you set "Auto power on" to "OFF" and turn off the power to the FOMA phone.

Checking Alarm

1  **Alarm** ▶ **Select an alarm** ▶ 
 You can bring up the edit display by pressing  (**EDIT**). Go to step 3 on page 399.

Function Menu while Alarm is Displayed


1 While the alarm is displayed ▶  (**FUNC**) ▶ Do the following operation.


Function menu	Operations
Edit	Go to step 3 on page 399.
Display detail	You can display the detailed setting for the alarm.
Release this	▶ YES To cancel, select "NO" and press  .
Release all	▶ YES To cancel, select "NO" and press  .

Other Useful Functions

When you set an alarm for "Alarm", "Schedule", and "ToDo"


If you set an alarm for "Alarm", "Schedule", and "ToDo", the icons appear on the desktop.

""Displayed when an alarm is set for today (except the setting for past time).


""Displayed when an alarm is set for tomorrow or onward only.

If you set "Display" of "Main window clock" to "OFF", or set the stored schedule event/ToDo item to "OFF", the icons are not displayed.

When the time specified for "Alarm", "Schedule" or "ToDo" comes

When the specified time comes, the alarm tone sounds for about five minutes (In the case of "Alarm", the alarm tone sounds for specified time.), and the vibrator works as you set for "Phone" of "Vibrator". If you set "Snooze setting" of "Alarm" to "ON", the alarm tone sounds for about one minute at an interval of five minutes, up to six times, until Snooze is released by pressing . During a call, the alarm sounds from the earpiece three times repeatedly. The set alarm message and an animation linking to the selected icon appear on the display.

To clear alarm tone/alarm message and animation from the display

Press any key to stop the alarm tone but the animation turns to a still image and the alarm message remains displayed. Press any key again (press  when you set "Snooze setting" of "Alarm" to "ON") to clear the display. However, you cannot clear the alarm message for the schedule by pressing a side key, with the FOMA phone closed. When a call comes in, the alarm tone stops sounding and the alarm message and displayed animation are cleared.

During operations

You can set the way for notifying during operations by "Alarm setting". (See page 412)

"Operation preferred"Does not notify during operations.

"Alarm preferred"Always notifies.

When the power is turned off

<Alarm>

When "Auto-power ON" is set to "ON", the power automatically turns ON to make an alarm notification sound. When the auto-power setting is set to "OFF", an alarm does not sound with the power stayed OFF. Even after you turn the power ON, the "Missed alarm" icon does not appear.

<Schedule/ToDo>

Even when the specified time comes, the alarm tone does not sound. The "Missed alarm" icon is not displayed even after turning the power "ON".

In Manner Mode

<Alarm>

When the specified time comes, the vibrator works. However, the alarm tone sounds if you set the operations for Manner Mode to "Original" and set "Alarm vol." to other than "Silent" in that setting.

<Schedule/ToDo>

When the specified time comes, the vibrator works and a message is displayed. However, the alarm tone sounds if you set the operations for Manner Mode to "Original" and set "Phone vol." to other than "Silent" in that setting.

During All Lock and PIM lock

The alarm does not sound even when the specified time arrives regardless of whether "Alarm setting" is activated. After deactivating All Lock or PIM Lock, the "Missed alarm" icon appears on the desktop in the same way as when the alarm did not sound (See page 402).

<Alarm only>

While All Lock or PIM Lock is activated and when the power is turned off, the power does not turn on and the "Missed alarm" icon does not appear even after All Lock or PIM Lock is deactivated.

While exchanging to/from SD-PIM

The alarm tone does not sound even when the specified time comes, regardless of the setting for "Alarm setting".

After exchanging to/from SD-PIM, the "Missed alarm" icon is displayed.

While updating software program

The alarm tone does not sound even when the specified time comes, regardless of the setting for "Alarm setting".

The "Missed alarm" icon is not displayed, even after updating software program.

During Ir exchange

The alarm tone does not sound even when the specified time comes, regardless of the setting for "Alarm setting".

The "Missed alarm" icon is displayed after Ir exchange.



When "Alarm" did not work



When Alarm did not work, "Missed alarm" icon is displayed on the desktop. You can check that icon for the alarm contents (Missed alarm information).

The "Missed alarm" information displays the latest information that could not be notified.



1. Press  in the Stand-by display.

You are enabled to select a displayed icon.

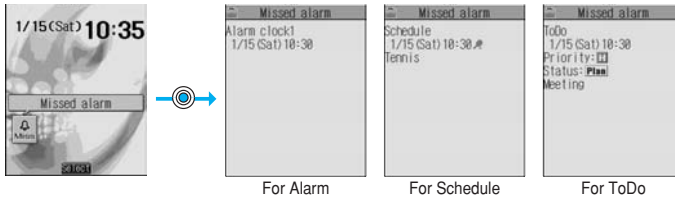
2. Select  and press .

On the Missed Alarm Information display for "Alarm", the date and time stored for the alarm appears. On the Missed Alarm Information display for "Schedule", the date and time, Schedule icon, summary or contents you have set when storing the schedule appears. On the Missed Alarm Information display for "ToDo", the date and time,  or , and the status icon you have set when storing the ToDo item appears.

If you set Alarm, Schedule, and ToDo for the same time and the alarm tone did not sound, the respective details are displayed.

Press  or  to return to the previous display.

Confirm the Missed Alarm Information display, and the "Missed alarm" icon is cleared.



Information

If you set "Alarm setting" to "Operation preferred", the alarm tone sounds only when the Stand-by display is shown at the specified time.

When "Alarm setting" is set to "Alarm preferred" and the alarm time has come while you are dialing, the alarm sounds after the other party is called up. When the alarm time has come while receiving a call, the alarm sounds after starting communication.

To clear the icon without confirming the details of the missed alarm information, press and hold  for at least one second.

You will not be able to confirm the details of that missed alarm information after you clear the icon.

<Schedule>



Using Calendar to Manage Schedule

You can display the Calendar by month or week to check the stored schedule events.

You can display or store from January 1, 2004 through to December 31, 2037.

Set the date and time in "Set time" beforehand.

See page 401 for how alarm works.

Store Schedule Events

When the specified date and time come, an alarm tone, entered alarm message (summary or contents of schedule) and an animation corresponding to the set icon notify you of the schedule.

You can store up to 100 schedule events. You can also store multiple events for the same day.

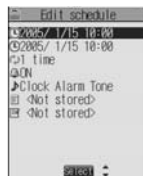
1






















Schedule



<Calendar display>



3 Do the following operation.

Function menu	Operations
 (Date setting (from))	▶ Enter the date and time for starting the schedule ▶  Enter the time in the 24-hour format.
 (Date setting (to))	Enter the same date/time as that for the start, or the date/time after that. ▶ Enter the date and time for ending the schedule ▶  Enter the time in the 24-hour format.
 (Repeat)	1 time .....Does not repeat (just once). The setting for Repeat is completed. Daily .....Sets the same schedule daily. The setting for Repeat is completed. Select day .....Sets the schedule for the specified day of the week. Every schedule set by repeat (Daily/Select day) is counted as one event. ▶ Put check marks for the days of the week you want to set ▶  (Finish) “ <input type="checkbox"/> ” and “ <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> ” switch each time you press  Select at least one day of the week.
 (Alarm)	ON .....An alarm tone alerts you at the specified time for the start date/time comes. The setting for alarm notification is completed. ON/Set time .....An alarm tone alerts you a few minutes before the specified time for the start date/time comes. OFF .....Does not alert. The setting for alarm notification is completed. ▶ Enter how many minutes before the due date to be alarmed. You can enter from “01” through “99” in two digits.
 (Alarm tone)	▶ Select a folder ▶  ▶ Select an alarm tone ▶  Not to sound the alarm tone, select “OFF” and press  See page 371 for the folder and the list of melodies.
 (Edit summary)	▶ Enter the summary of schedule ▶  You can enter up to 20 full-pitch or 40 half-pitch characters. See page 482 for how to enter characters.
 (Edit schedule)	▶ Enter schedule contents ▶  You can enter up to 256 full-pitch or 512 half-pitch characters. See page 482 for how to enter characters. ▶ Select an icon ▶  “  ” through “  ” is displayed if you set the user icon. When the alarm tone alerts you, an animation corresponding to the selected icon is displayed.


4 Press (Finish).

If you do not enter the schedule contents, “Finish” is not displayed; the schedule is not stored.

The following icons appear on the display depending on the repeat setting.

 : Alarm sounds.

 : Repeats daily.

 : Repeats on the select day of the week.



When you attempt to set two schedule events for the same date and time

When both two events are set to "Not repeat" (1 time) or "Repeat" (Daily/Select day), the display on the right appears.

To overwrite, select "YES" and press .

To cancel, select "NO" and press .



When one event is set to "Not repeat" (1 time) and the other is set to "Repeat" (Daily/Select day), the display on the right appears.

To set, select "YES" and press .

To cancel, select "NO" and press .



Information

The schedule events you can set for the same time are combination of "Repeat" (Daily/Select day) and "Not repeat" (1 time) only. In this case, the event set for "Not repeat" has priority.

Information

During PIM Lock, you cannot store or edit the schedule.

If you set a calendar for the Stand-by display, you can set the schedule from the calendar. (See page 121)

Schedule events that have passed the specified date and time are not automatically deleted.

Schedule events stored in "Secret mode" or "Secret only mode" are not displayed unless you activate those modes. For the alarm tones of the schedule events stored in "Secret mode" or "Secret only mode", an alarm message is not displayed in ordinary mode; animation for secret events is displayed instead.

When "Alarm setting" is set to "Alarm preferred" and the alarm time has come while you are dialing, the alarm sounds after the other party is called up. When the alarm time has come while receiving a call, the alarm sounds after starting communication.

During standby, the alarm tone sounds at the level set for "Phone" of "Ring volume". During a call, the alarm tone sounds at the level set for the earpiece volume.

If you set some alarms to the same time, the priority is given in the following order; "Alarm" "ToDo" "Schedule". A missed schedule event or ToDo item is notified by displaying the "Missed alarm" icon on the desktop.

If you set to "ON/Set time", you are alerted only at the time set in "ON/Set time" (01 to 99 minutes before the schedule). No alarm tone sounds at the date and time set for the schedule event.

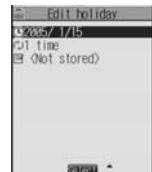
Important

The stored contents may be lost due to a malfunction, repair, or other mishandling of the FOMA phone. We cannot be held responsible for the loss of the stored contents. For just in case, you are well advised to take notes of the contents stored in the FOMA phone, or save them to the miniSD memory card (see page 376). If you have a personal computer, you can also save them to the personal computer by using the FOMA USB Cable (option) and the Data Link Software (see page 519).

Store Holidays/Anniversaries

You can store up to 100 Holidays and Anniversaries; one each for the same date.

1   **Schedule**  **(New)** **Holiday or Anniversary**



2 Do the following operation.

Function menu	Operations
(Date setting)	▶Enter the date▶
(Repeat)	1 time .....Does not repeat (just once). Annually .....Sets the same holiday/anniversary every year. The holiday or anniversary set for repeat (annual) is counted as one event.
(Edit holiday) (Edit anniversary)	▶Enter the contents of the holiday or anniversary▶ You can enter up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters. See page 482 for how to enter characters.

3 Press (Finish).

The holiday (☀) or anniversary (🎂) you set is stored.

: Repeats yearly.

When holidays or anniversary days have already been stored for the same date, the confirmation display appears asking whether to overwrite them. Select "YES" and press to overwrite. To cancel, select "NO" and press .



View Schedule Events

You can check the details of Schedule events, holidays, or anniversaries.

1 ▶▶Schedule

The Calendar display appears.

The selected date is highlighted.

For the date the schedule events are set for, " " (a.m.) and " " (p.m.) of the day are displayed.

Saturdays are displayed in blue and Sundays, national holidays, and set holidays are displayed in red.

Anniversaries are displayed circled red.

The number of schedule events set for a.m. and p.m. of the day and the stored icons are displayed.

The icon for a holiday and anniversary appears in the p.m. field but it is not counted as a number of storage.

The number of schedule events set for a.m. and p.m. of the day is displayed.

The icons and contents of schedule events, holiday, and anniversary set for the day are displayed.



Monthly display



Weekly display



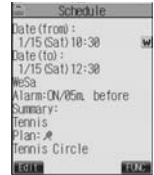
<Schedule List>

2 Select the date▶

The Schedule List for the selected date is displayed in time order.

3 Select the schedule event, holiday, or anniversary ▶

The detailed display for the schedule event, holiday, or anniversary is displayed.



<Detailed Schedule display>

Information

National holidays conform to "Law on national holidays" (Law no. 178, 1948) and the partially revised law enforced in that year. Spring Equinox Day and Autumn Equinox Day are announced on the official gazette of February 1 in the previous year, therefore, they may differ from the days on the calendar. (As of January 2005)






On the Calendar display, an underline is inserted under the current date.

Function Menu of the Calendar Display

1 Calendar display ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Do the following operation.



<Calendar display>

Function menu	Operations
New	<p>Schedule .....Go to step 3 on page 403.</p> <p>Holiday .....Go to step 2 of "Store Holidays/Anniversaries" on page 405.</p> <p>Anniversary....Go to step 2 of "Store Holidays/Anniversaries" on page 405.</p>
Monthly display/ Weekly display	<p>You can switch the display of a calendar.</p> <p>Monthly display .....Displays a month. (Setting at purchase)</p> <p>Weekly display .....Displays a week.</p>
Icon display	<p>▶Select the icon to be displayed▶  </p> <p>The Schedule Event List for the selected icon is displayed.</p> <p>Select a schedule event and press  to display the details.</p>
User icon settg.	You can set the user icon. (See page 407)
No. of schedules	<p>You can display the number of schedule events, holidays, and anniversaries. You can display the number of the schedule events stored as secret data during "Secret mode" or "Secret only mode".</p> <p>After checking, press .</p>
Send all Ir data	You can send all data using infrared rays. (See page 389)
Delete past	<p>The schedule events stored in up to the day selected from the Calendar are deleted.</p> <p>Schedule .....Schedule events are deleted.</p> <p>Holiday .....Set holidays are deleted.</p> <p>Anniversary....Anniversaries are deleted.</p> <p>All.....Schedule events, set holidays and anniversaries are deleted.</p> <p>▶YES</p> <p>To cancel, select "NO" and press .</p>

Function menu	Operations
Delete all	<p>▶ Enter the Terminal Security Code ▶ </p> <p>Schedule .....Schedule events are deleted.</p> <p>Holiday .....Set holidays are deleted. The setting for national holidays will be reset.</p> <p>Anniversary....Anniversaries are deleted.</p> <p>All.....Schedule events, set holidays and anniversaries are deleted. The setting for national holidays will be reset.</p> <p>▶ YES</p> <p>To cancel, select "NO" and press .</p> <p>See page 140 for the Terminal Security Code.</p>
Reset holiday	<p>You can restore the national holidays you deleted to its default. You cannot reset the holidays you have set.</p> <p>▶ YES</p> <p>To cancel, select "NO" and press .</p>

Information

<Icon display>

On the Icon display, the repeated schedule ("W" or "D") is displayed as a single event. For the date, the nearest date of the schedule event is displayed.

User Icon Setting

If you store still images or animations as user icons, those stored images are displayed to notify you of the schedule event.

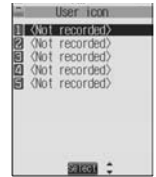
Up to five user icons can be stored and they are displayed as "👤" through "👤" on the Icon Selection display.

1 Calendar display/Schedule List/Detailed Schedule display

▶ (FUNC) ▶ User icon settg. ▶ <Not recorded>

When no still image or animation is stored, you cannot select "User icon settg."

To change, select the stored user icon. When the selected user icon is used for a schedule event, the confirmation display appears. Select "YES" and press ; then the icon of the schedule that has used the released icon changes to "👤".



2 Select a folder ▶ ▶ Select a still image or animation ▶

The selected image is displayed.

When the selected image is large, it is displayed at the position set by "Positioning".

You cannot select an image in excess of VGA (640 x 480) size or 100 Kbytes.

See page 334 for the still image folder and list.

To release the setting for all user icons

Select "Release all" from the display in step 1 on this page and press .

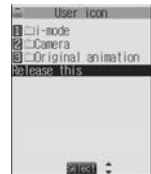
Select "YES" in the confirmation display for release and press .

The icon of the schedule that has used the released icon changes to "👤".



To release only a selected icon

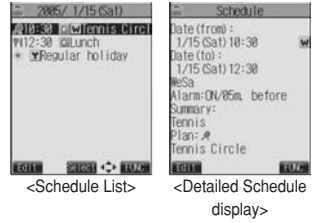
Select "Release this" in step 2 on this page and press .



Function Menu of the Schedule List/Detailed Schedule Display

1 Schedule List/Detailed Schedule display

▶ (i) (FUNC) ▶ Do the following operation.



Function menu	Operations
New	Schedule .....Go to step 3 on page 403. Holiday .....Go to step 2 of "Store Holidays/Anniversaries" on page 405. Anniversary .....Go to step 2 of "Store Holidays/Anniversaries" on page 405.
Edit	Go to step 3 on page 403 for the schedule event. Go to step 2 of "Store Holidays/Anniversaries" on page 405 for the holiday and anniversary. You can edit the schedule event also by pressing (✉) (Edit) on the Schedule List or on the detailed display. You cannot edit national holidays.
Copy	You can copy the schedule events and holidays or anniversaries and store them in other dates. ▶Enter the date and time you are pasting to▶ (🕒) Go to step 3 on page 403 for the schedule event. Go to step 2 of "Store Holidays/Anniversaries" on page 405 for the holiday and anniversary. Even if the source schedule event and holiday/anniversary is set to "Repeat (Daily/Weekly/Yearly)", the pasted ones is set to "1 time". You cannot copy national holidays.
Calendar display	You can return to the calendar display from the Icon display. You can operate this only while the Icon display is displayed.
Icon display	You can display schedule events by icon. (See page 406)
User icon settg.	You can set the user icon. (See page 407)
Release secret	You can change the secret schedule events to ordinary schedule events.
Compose message	You can compose a new message whose text contains the date and contents of the schedule event. Go to step 2 on page 235.
Send Ir data	You can send a single data item using infrared rays. (See page 388)
Send all Ir data	You can send all data using infrared rays. (See page 389)
Export this	You can export a single data item to the miniSD memory card. (See page 382)
Delete this	▶YES To cancel, select "NO" and press (🕒). If you try to delete a schedule event, holiday or anniversary set for repeat (Daily/Weekly/Yearly), the confirmation display appears asking whether to delete it. Select "YES" and press (🕒) to delete all data for repeat. You can delete national holidays by "Delete this" only.
Delete past	The schedule events stored up to the day before selected date are deleted. (See page 406)
Delete select	▶Put check marks for the schedules, holidays or anniversaries to be deleted▶ (✉) (Finish) ▶YES "☐" and "☑" switch each time you press (🕒). You can check or uncheck all items by pressing (i) (FUNC) and selecting "Select all/Release all". To cancel, select "NO" and press (🕒).
Delete all	You can delete all schedule events, holidays or anniversaries. You can operate this only while the Icon display is displayed. (See page 407)

Using ToDo to Manage Schedule

You can manage your schedule events in the list and make an alarm tone sound when the specified time comes. You can store up to 100 ToDo items to manage your schedule. Set the date and time in “Set time” beforehand. See page 401 for how alarm works.

Store ToDo Items

1 **ToDo**



2 Press (**New**).

If ToDo items are already stored, select “New” from the Function menu and press .

3 Do the following operation.

Function menu	Operations
(Edit ToDo)	<p>▶ Enter the text (ToDo contents) ▶ </p> <p>You can enter up to 100 full-pitch or 200 half-pitch characters. See page 482 for how to enter characters.</p>
(Due date)	<p>Enter date.....Enter the date (due date) directly using the numeric keys and press .</p> <p>Choose date.....As a calendar is displayed, select date (due date) by using and press . Check the date and press .</p> <p>No date .....Does not set the date (due date). The alarm does not work.</p>
(Priority)	<p>H.....Sets priority high. is displayed.</p> <p>L.....Sets priority low. is displayed.</p> <p>None .....Does not set priority.</p> <p>If you sort the items in date order, the items for the same date are displayed from the higher priority.</p>
(Category)	<p>None .....Does not set the category.</p> <p>Personal .....Sets the category to “Personal”.</p> <p>Holiday .....Sets the category to “Holiday”.</p> <p>Travel.....Sets the category to “Travel”.</p> <p>Business .....Sets the category to “Business”.</p> <p>Meeting.....Sets the category to “Meeting”.</p>
(Alarm)	<p>ON.....An alarm tone alerts you at the set time. The setting for alarm notification is completed.</p> <p>ON/Set time.....An alarm tone alerts you specified minutes before the due date.</p> <p>OFF.....Does not alert you. The setting for alarm notification is completed.</p> <p>▶ Enter how many minutes before the due date to be alarmed. You can enter from “01” through “99” in two digits.</p>
(Alarm tone)	<p>▶ Select a folder ▶ ▶ Select an alarm tone ▶ </p> <p>Not to sound the alarm tone, select “OFF” and press .</p> <p>See page 371 for the melody folder and the list.</p>

4 Press (Finish).

If you do not enter the text (ToDo contents), "Finish" is not displayed; then you cannot store the ToDo item.



Information

During PIM Lock, you cannot store or edit ToDo.

When "Alarm setting" is set to "Alarm preferred" and the alarm time has come while you are dialing, the alarm sounds after the other party is called up. When the alarm time has come while receiving a call, the alarm sounds after starting communication.

During standby, the alarm tone sounds at the level set for "Phone" of "Ring volume". During a call, the alarm tone sounds at the level set for the earpiece volume.

If you set some alarms to the same time, the priority is given in the following order; "Alarm" "ToDo" "Schedule". A missed schedule event or ToDo item is notified by displaying the "Missed alarm" icon on the desktop.

If you set to "ON/Set time", you are alerted only at the time set in "ON/Set time" (01 to 99 minutes before ToDo). No alarm tone sounds at the date and time set in the ToDo item.

Important

The stored contents may be lost due to a malfunction, repair, or other mishandling of the FOMA phone. We cannot be held responsible for the loss of the stored contents. For just in case, you are well advised to take notes of the contents stored in the FOMA phone, or save them to the miniSD memory card (see page 376). If you have a personal computer, you can also save them to the personal computer by using the FOMA USB Cable (option) and the Data Link Software (see page 519).

View ToDo Items

1 **ToDo**

The ToDo List is displayed.

The change status icons of ToDo (see page 411) items switch from white to pink after the due date.

 or  is displayed. If you set "Priority" to "None", no icon is displayed.






2 **Select a ToDo item**












The details of the selected item are displayed.



Function Menu while ToDo is Displayed

1 While ToDo is displayed (FUNC) **Do the following operation.**

Function menu	Operations
New	Go to step 3 on page 409.
Edit	Go to step 3 on page 409. From the ToDo List or the detailed display, you can also edit ToDo by pressing  (Edit). To edit "Completion date" of the ToDo item set with "Completion", select "  ", press  , and perform the same operation as "Due date" of step 3 on page 409.

Function menu	Operations
Change status	<p>The status icons are displayed in the ToDo List.</p> <p>Plan .....“Plan” is displayed.</p> <p>Acceptance .....“Acc” is displayed.</p> <p>Request .....“Request” is displayed.</p> <p>Provisional plan .....“P.Plan” is displayed.</p> <p>Confirmation .....“Confirm” is displayed.</p> <p>Denial .....“Denial” is displayed.</p> <p>Completion .....Perform the same operation as in “Due date” of step 3 on page 409.</p> <p>“Comp” is displayed.</p> <p>Substitution .....“Substit” is displayed.</p>
Category display	<p>All .....All the ToDo items are displayed.</p> <p>None .....The list for ToDo items for which categories are not set is displayed.</p> <p>Personal .....The list for ToDo items that are set to “Personal” is displayed.</p> <p>Holiday .....The list for ToDo items that are set to “Holiday” is displayed.</p> <p>Travel .....The list for ToDo items that are set to “Travel” is displayed.</p> <p>Business .....The list for ToDo items that are set to “Business” is displayed.</p> <p>Meeting .....The list for ToDo items that are set to “Meeting” is displayed.</p> <p>Select a ToDo item and press ; then the details are displayed.</p>
Sort/Filter	<p>You can sort ToDo items for display. You can also list them up by the specified status.</p> <p>By due date .....Displays ToDo items in the descending order of the due date.</p> <p>By completed .....Displays ToDo items in the descending order of the completed date.</p> <p>By entered time .....Displays ToDo items in ascending order of the stored date.</p> <p>Plan .....Displays only “Plan” ToDo items in ascending order of the stored date.</p> <p>Acceptance .....Displays only “Acceptance” ToDo items in ascending order of the stored date.</p> <p>Request .....Displays only “Request” ToDo items in ascending order of the stored date.</p> <p>Provisional plan .....Displays only “Provisional plan” ToDo items in ascending order of the stored date.</p> <p>Confirmation .....Displays only “Confirmation” ToDo items in ascending order of the stored date.</p> <p>Denial .....Displays only “Denial” ToDo items in ascending order of the stored date.</p> <p>Completion .....Displays only “Completion” ToDo items in ascending order of the stored date.</p> <p>Substitution .....Displays only “Substitution” ToDo items in ascending order of the stored date.</p>
Add desktop icon	You can paste the icon of the ToDo List to the desktop. (See page 134)
Send Ir data	You can send a single data item using infrared rays. (See page 388)
Send all Ir data	You can send all data using infrared rays. (See page 389)
Export this	You can export a single data item to the miniSD memory card. (See page 382)
Delete this	<p>▶ YES</p> <p>To cancel, select “NO” and press .</p>
Delete select	<p>▶ Put check marks for the ToDo items to be deleted ▶  (Finis!) ▶ YES</p> <p>“” and “” switch each time you press . You can check or uncheck all items by pressing  (FUNC) and selecting “Select all/Release all”.</p> <p>To cancel, select “NO” and press .</p>
Delete completed	<p>You can delete the “Completion” ToDo items.</p> <p>▶ YES</p> <p>To cancel, select “NO” and press .</p>
Delete all	<p>▶ Enter the Terminal Security Code ▶  ▶ YES</p> <p>To cancel, select “NO” and press .</p> <p>See page 140 for the Terminal Security Code.</p>

<Alarm Setting>

Setting Operating Conditions of Alarm

Setting at purchase
Alarm preferred

You can set whether to make an alarm notification of “Alarm”, “Schedule” and “ToDo”, while operating other functions.

1 ► Clock ► Alarm setting

Operation preferred...You are alerted only during the Stand-by display.

Alarm preferred.....You are alerted even while you are operating the FOMA phone or making a call.

Information

Even if you could not be alerted, the “Missed alarm” icon appears on the desktop.

<Private Menu>

Using Your Original Menu

You can store frequently used functions in “Private menu”.

You can store a total of 10 functions selected from the PHONEBOOK, SETTINGS, DATA BOX, TOOL, OWNDATA, SERVICE, i-mode, MAIL, and i-appli (see page 502).

Setting at purchase

Own number

Ring volume

Vibrator

Caller ID notification

Alarm



Open phone

Select a Function from Private Menu

1 Press twice.

Private Menu is displayed.

If you have not touched the key for at least 15 seconds, the Stand-by display returns.

When no private menu is stored, the confirmation display appears asking whether to store a new private menu. Select “YES” and press  to store. Go to “Add to menu” on page 413. To cancel, select “NO” and press .



<Private menu>

2 Select a function ►

The display for the selected function is displayed.

Display Private Menu List











1 ► Display ► Private menu



<Private Menu List>

Function Menu of the Private Menu List

1 Private Menu List (FUNC) Do the following operation.

Function menu	Operations
Add to menu	<p>You can store the frequently used functions in the Private menu.</p> <p>▶ Select a function to be stored  </p> <p>The storing display also appears by selecting the item from the Private Menu List and pressing .</p> <p>Press  to display the storable functions for every main menu item or sub-menu item. Press  to select the function you store.</p> <p>To store a private menu to the stored function newly, the confirmation display appears asking whether to overwrite the function.</p> <p>To overwrite, select "YES" and press .</p> <p>To cancel, select "NO" and press .</p>
Add desktop icon	You can paste the icon of the Private Menu List to the desktop. (See page 134)
Reset menu	<p>You can reset Private Menu to the default.</p> <p>▶ YES</p> <p>To cancel, select "NO" and press .</p>
Release this	<p>▶ YES</p> <p>To cancel, select "NO" and press .</p>
Release all	<p>▶ YES</p> <p>To cancel, select "NO" and press .</p>

Information

<Add to menu>

For "i-mode", "i-appli", and "Mail", you can store only the main menu items, and cannot store any sub-menu items.

You cannot store the same function as multiple items.

You cannot store while another function is working (while " / " or " / " is displayed at the upper right of the display).

<Own Number>



 

Storing Your Name, Mail Address and Other Information

In addition to the phone number (own number) you have signed up, you can store your personal information such as your name, reading of your name, phone numbers (up to three), mail addresses (up to three), a postal address, a birthday, memorandums, and a still image.

If you change the mail address or register a secret code, change the mail address in this function as well.

1 **Own number** (Edit)

You can send the dial data of own number in touch tone signals during a call by pressing  (FUNC) from the display on the right and pressing .



<Own Number display>



2 Enter the Terminal Security Code

Perform the operation in step 2 on page 93 to store personal information.

You cannot change or delete own number.

See page 140 for the Terminal Security Code.

If you have already entered the Terminal Security Code by operating "Display all data", the display for entering the Terminal Security Code does not appear.

3 Press (Finish).

Information

The items other than own number are displayed even if you use another UIM, because they are stored in the FOMA phone.

The mail address you can change using this function is limited to the mail address displayed by "Own number". You cannot change the actual mail address.

Function Menu of the Own Number Display

1 Own Number display (FUNC) Do the following operation.

Function menu	Operations
Edit	You can edit personal information. Go to step 2 on this page.
Display all data	You can display all stored phone numbers and mail addresses. ▶ Enter the Terminal Security Code Press to display each item. See page 140 for the Terminal Security Code.
Copy name	You can copy name. Copied text is memorized in the FOMA phone.
Copy phone number/ Copy mail add./ Copy address/Copy birthday/ Copy memorandums	You can copy each item. The items in the Function menu differ depending on the displayed items.
Send Ir data	You can send a single data item using infrared rays. (See page 388)
Export this	You can export a data item to the miniSD memory card. (See page 382)
Erase phone number/ Erase mail add./ Erase address/ Erase birthday/ Erase memorandums/ Delete image	You can delete each item. ▶ YES To cancel, select "NO" and press. When the entry display for the Terminal Security Code appears for deleting Mail address 1, enter the code and press. The items in the Function menu differ depending on the displayed items.
Reset	You can reset (erase) stored personal data such as phone number or mail address except own number. ▶ Enter the Terminal Security Code ▶ YES To cancel, select "NO" and press. See page 140 for the Terminal Security Code.

Information

<Erase mail add.><Reset>

When you have already entered the Terminal Security Code by operating "Display all data", the display for entering the Terminal Security Code does not appear.

Recording Voice during a Call or Standby as Voice Memo

Two types of Voice Memo are available: one is “Voice memo” (during a call) for recording other party’s voice during a call and the other is “Voice memo” (during standby) for recording your own voice during standby.


You can record one memo as either “Voice memo” (during a call) or “Voice memo” (during standby) for about 20 seconds.

See page 71 for playing/erasing “Voice memo” (during a call) or “Voice memo” (during standby).

Record Other Party’s Voice during a Call


1 During a call ▶ (for at least one second)


A beep sounds and recording starts.

For video-phone calls, “ REC” is displayed when recording starts.

For voice calls, you can also record “Voice memo” (during a call) following the steps below:

1. Press .

2. Select  and press .

3. Select “Voice memo” and press .

For video-phone calls, the still image set for “Voice memo” of “Select image” is displayed to the other party.

To suspend the recording midway, press and hold  or  (for at least one second). For voice calls, you can also press  to suspend the recording.


A beep sounds about five seconds before the recording time (for about 20 seconds) ends.

The beep sounds twice when the recording ends and the “Talking” display returns.

Information

If you record a voice memo when either “Voice memo” (during a call) or “Voice memo” (during standby) has already been saved, the recorded voice memo is overwritten regardless of whether it was played back or not.

You cannot record a voice memo while operating a function in the Function menu or while holding a call.

Press  to end the recording and the call.

Record your Voice during Standby

1 ▶ Voice memo ▶ YES

A beep sounds and recording starts. Speak into the microphone.

To cancel, select “NO” and press .

To suspend the recording midway, press ,  or .

A beep sounds about five seconds before the recording time (for about 20 seconds) ends.

The beep sounds twice when the recording ends and the former display returns.

Information

The recording is suspended when a call comes in, when an alarm for “Alarm”, “Schedule” or “ToDo” sounds, or when you switch the Multitask display.

Important


The saved contents may be lost due to a malfunction, repair, or other mishandling of the FOMA phone. We cannot be held responsible for loss of saved contents. For just in case, you are well advised to take notes of the contents saved to the FOMA phone.

Setting Call Time Display

Setting at purchase
ON

You can set whether to display the duration of calls.

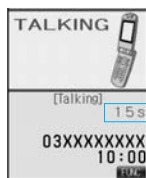
The displayed call time is an estimate and might differ from the actual call time.

1  **Call time/charge** **Call time display**

ON.....Displays a call time during a call.

OFF.....Does not display a call time during a call.

During a video-phone call, press  (**FUNC**) and select "Call time disp."



For voice calls



For video-phone calls

Information

The transmission time for i-mode and packet transmissions is not included.

When the call time exceeds "19 hours 59 minutes 59 seconds", "0 s" returns to count the time.

Checking Call Duration and Charge

You can confirm the last and accumulated call duration and charge for voice calls, video-phone calls and the like. You can check for calling charge from December 2004.

Displayed call duration and charge are for reference and might differ from the actual ones. In addition, the consumption tax is not included in the call charge.


Both the voice call duration and digital communications duration (video-phone call duration+64K data transmission duration) are displayed as the call duration and both incoming and outgoing calls are included in the duration.

Call charge is only for the dialed calls. However, "¥0" or "¥ * *" is displayed for charge free dialing.

Call charge is accumulated on the UIM. Therefore, when you replace the UIM, the charge accumulated on the UIM in use is displayed. (accumulation starts from December 2004)

Charge accumulated on the UIM is not displayed on the FOMA phones released before 901i series.

You can reset the displayed call duration and call charge.

1  **Call time/charge** **Call data**

Last call duration.....Displays the last call duration. You cannot identify the difference between the voice call and video-phone call.

Last charge.....Displays the last call charge.

All calls duration.....Displays the call duration from when resetting is done to the current time.

Charge.....Displays the call charge from when the charge was reset to the current call.

Calls reset.....Displays the previous date and time when "Reset call duration" was executed last time.

Charge reset.....Displays the previous date and time the charge was reset.

After checking, press .

Information

When the date and time are not set, or if "Reset call duration" has not been done after setting the date and time, the date and time when the duration was reset and when the cost was reset are not displayed.

When the "Last call duration" or "All calls duration" exceeds "199 hours 59 minutes 59 seconds", "0 s" returns to re-count the time.

The all calls duration for video-phone calls is displayed in "Digital" not in "Talk".

Call duration and charge for i-mode communications and packet transmission are not counted. For how to check i-mode bill, refer to "FOMA i-mode Operation Guide" which is supplied on your i-mode contract.

The duration for ringing and calling is not counted as call duration.

If you turn off the power or remove the UIM, "Last call duration" is reset to "0 s"; and "Last charge" is reset to "¥ * *".

Resetting Call Duration/Call Charge

Resetting Call Duration

You can reset Last Call Duration and All Calls Duration to "0s".

- 1 **Call time/charge** **Reset call duration** **Enter the Terminal Security Code** **Reset call duration** **YES**

See page 140 for the Terminal Security Code.
To cancel, select "NO" and press .

Resetting Call Charge

You can reset Last Call Charge and All Calls Charge to "¥0".

- 1 **Call time/charge** **Reset call duration** **Enter the Terminal Security Code** **Reset call charge** **YES**

See page 140 for the Terminal Security Code.
To cancel, select "NO" and press .

- 2 **Enter the PIN2 code (four to eight digits)**

If you enter the Terminal Security Code for the first time, enter "0000".
The entered PIN2 code is displayed as "_".
If you enter the wrong PIN2 code three times in succession, further entry will be locked. ("Reset" appears on the display to notify you of possible entering frequency.) Enter the correct PIN2 code; "Reset" will return to three times. See page 143 for how to release the PIN Lock.
See page 141 for PIN2 code.

Using Calculator

You can display Calculator to perform the four rules of calculation (+, -, x, ÷).

You can display up to 10 digits.

- 1 **Calculator**



- 2 **Follow the operation below to perform calculation.**

	+		C (Clear)
	-		Clears the numeral you have entered immediately before if you enter a wrong numeral. You can continue calculation entering numerals and the four rules of calculation.
	x		AC (All clear)
	÷		Numerals and the four rules of calculation are all cleared. Press "AC" (All clear) after clearing or clearing all to return to the display for selecting a tool function.
	=		
	.		

Calculation example (Calculate " - 15 + 20.7".)

$$- 15 + 20.7 = 5.7$$



Information

You cannot enter a minus sign while you are performing calculation. To perform calculation starting with the minus sign, press to enter "-" before entering numerals.

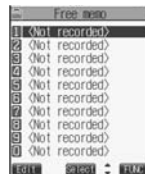
When the calculated result exceeds 10 digits or invalid calculation like "divided by 0" is performed, "E" is displayed.

Making Free Memos

You can store up to 10 free memos. You can also paste free memos to schedule events or to the text of new mail.

Store/Edit Free Memos

1 **Free memo** **Select <Not recorded>** (**Edit**)
To edit a free memo, select the stored free memo.



2 **Enter a free memo**
You can enter up to 256 full-pitch or 512 half-pitch characters.
See page 482 for how to enter characters.

Important
The stored contents may be lost due to a malfunction, repair, or other mishandling of the FOMA phone. We cannot be held responsible for the loss of the stored contents. For just in case, you are well advised to take notes of the contents stored in the FOMA phone, or save them to the miniSD memory card (see page 376). If you have a personal computer, you can also save them to the personal computer by using the FOMA USB Cable (option) and the Data Link Software (see page 519).








View Free Memos

1 **Free memo** **Select a free memo**
You can view a long free memo by scrolling the display with .
You can bring up the edit display by pressing (**Edit**). Go to step 2 on this page.

Function Menu while Free Memo is Displayed

1 **While Free Memo is displayed** (**FUNC**) **Do the following operation.**

Function menu	Operations
Edit	Go to step 2 on this page.
Compose message	You can compose a new message whose text contains the contents of a free memo. Go to step 2 on page 235.
Edit schedule	You can create a new schedule event containing the contents of a free memo. ▶ Schedule Go to step 3 on page 403.
Send Ir data	You can send a free memo using infrared rays. (See page 388)
Send all Ir data	You can send all free memos using infrared rays. (See page 389)
Export this	You can export a single data item to the miniSD memory card. (See page 382)
Free memo info	You can display the date and time when the free memo was created, the date and time of the latest update, and category. After checking, press .

Function menu	Operations
Category	You can classify free memos by category. None .....Sets the category to "None". Personal .....Sets the category to "Personal". Holiday .....Sets the category to "Holiday". Travel.....Sets the category to "Travel". Business .....Sets the category to "Business". Meeting.....Sets the category to "Meeting". If you do not set, the category is set to "None".
Delete this	▶ YES To cancel, select "NO" and press  .
Delete selected	▶ Put check marks for free memos to be deleted ▶  (Finish) ▶ YES "☐" and "☑" switch each time you press  . You can check or uncheck all items by pressing  (FUNC) and selecting "Select all/Release all". To cancel, select "NO" and press  .
Delete all	▶ Enter the Terminal Security Code ▶  ▶ YES See page 140 for the Terminal Security Code. To cancel, select "NO" and press  .


<UIM Operation>

Copying/Deleting Data Items in FOMA Phone or UIM

You can exchange data such as in the Phonebook or Short Message (SMS) between the FOMA phone and the UIM. You can also delete the Phonebook or Short Message (SMS) data memorized in the FOMA phone or the UIM.

You can save a total of 20 messages of received Short Messages (SMS) and sent Short Messages (SMS) to the UIM.

Copy/Delete Data Items

1   ▶ **UIM operation** ▶ **Enter the Terminal Security Code** ▶ 

If you enter the Terminal Security Code, "圏外" appears, and you can use no phone and mail functions.
 When a call comes in just before entering the code, UIM Operation ends.
 See page 140 for the Terminal Security Code.

2 Copy or Delete

- Copy**
- Phone UIM.....Copies the data in the FOMA phone to the UIM.
 - UIM Phone.....Copies the data in the UIM to the FOMA phone.
- Delete**
- PhoneDeletes the data in the FOMA phone.
 - UIMDeletes the data in the UIM.

3 Phonebook or SMS

- Phonebook**
- Search in the Phonebook to display the entries in a list.
 See page 99 for how to search the Phonebook entries.
- SMS**
- Inbox**Copies or deletes the data in the Inbox.
 - Outbox**Copies or deletes the data in the Outbox.
 - Search in the folders to display the data in a list.

4 Put check marks for the data to be copied or deleted ▶ (Finish) ▶ YES

“☐” and “☑” switch each time you press .
To cancel, select “NO” and press .

Information

You cannot operate while another function is working (while “” or “” is displayed at the upper right of the display).

Function Menu while the Phonebook List or Short Message (SMS) List is Displayed

1 Phonebook List or Short Message (SMS) List ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Do the following operation.

Function menu	Operations
Start copy/Start deletion	You can start copy or deletion.
Select this	You can select a single data item.
Select all	You can select all data items.
Release this	You can release the selection.
Release all	You can release all selections.
Detail	You can display the detailed Phonebook display or the detailed Short Message (SMS) display. After checking, press .

Copy using Function Menu of Phonebook

You can copy Phonebook entries to the FOMA phone or to the UIM.

1 Detailed Phonebook display ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Copy to UIM or Copy from UIM ▶ YES

See page 99 for how to search the Phonebook entries.

When copying a Phonebook entry in the FOMA phone, “Copy to UIM” is displayed. When copying a Phonebook entry in the UIM, “Copy from UIM” is displayed.

To cancel, select “NO” and press .

Move or Copy using Function Menu of Mail

You can move or copy the sent or received Short Messages (SMS) to the FOMA phone or to the UIM.

1 Outbox List/Detailed Sent Mail display/Inbox List/Detailed Received Mail display ▶ (FUNC) ▶ UIM operation

Move to UIM.....Moves a Short Message (SMS) from the FOMA phone to the UIM.

Copy to UIM.....Copies a Short Message (SMS) from the FOMA phone to the UIM.

Move from UIM.....Moves a Short Message (SMS) from the UIM to the FOMA phone.

Copy from UIM.....Copies a Short Message (SMS) from the UIM to the FOMA phone.

2 YES

“” indicates a Short Message (SMS) in the FOMA phone.

“” indicates a Short Message (SMS) in the UIM.

To cancel, select “NO” and press .

Information

When the UIM is not installed or has an abnormality, you cannot copy or delete data to/from the UIM.

You cannot either copy or delete data in the Phonebook by group.

The number of phone numbers/mail addresses you can store in a single Phonebook entry differs between the FOMA phone and the UIM. Therefore, you cannot copy phone numbers/mail addresses after the second ones stored in the FOMA phone to the UIM. You cannot copy the data that cannot be stored in the UIM such as a postal address, either.

The type of character fonts you can use differs between the FOMA phone and the UIM; therefore a pictograph is converted into space.

When copying Phonebook entries from the FOMA phone to the UIM, the name of up to 10 full-pitch characters or 21 half-pitch characters and the reading of up to 12 half-pitch characters are converted to full-pitch katakana and the rest characters are not copied. Phonebook entries stored as secret cannot be copied or deleted even in Secret Mode or Secret Only Mode.

If the same group name is set in the FOMA phone and the UIM, the group settings for the Phonebook will be retained.

If different group names are set in the FOMA phone and the UIM, the copied entry will be stored in Group 00.

You cannot either move or copy just only SMS report (Sending report).

You cannot move, copy or delete data of Short Message (SMS) by unit of the box or folder.

You cannot protect Short Messages (SMS) you have moved or copied to the UIM. If you copy or move protected Short Messages (SMS) to the UIM, Short Messages (SMS) in the UIM are unprotected. Also, the Reply and Forward symbols become the Read symbols.

If Short Messages (SMS) in the added folders, i-appli mail folder, "Chat" folder or the Trash box are moved or copied from the FOMA phone to the UIM, you can check them in the "Inbox" or "Outbox" folder.

When you move or copy Short Messages (SMS) from the UIM to the FOMA phone, they are moved or copied to the "Inbox" or "Outbox" folder.

If the folder to which you are going to move or copy data is full, you cannot operate.

When the maximum number of storable data items is exceeded in the storage location while copying data, the display appears telling that data has become full. Delete unnecessary data from stored (saved) data and re-copy the data you could not copy.

How to Use Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone Set with Switch

Open the cover for the Earphone/Microphone terminal (see page 23) and insert the connecting plug of the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone Set with Switch (option).


Making Calls Using Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone Set with Switch

- 1** Enter the phone number, or bring up the data of the Phonebook, Redial, Dialed Call Record or Received Call Record.
- 2** Press and hold the switch of the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone Set with Switch for at least one second ▶ You can start talking when the other party comes online
A beep sounds and you are connected.
You cannot make a video-phone call.
- 3** When you end talking, press and hold the switch of the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone Set with Switch for at least one second to disconnect.

A beep sounds twice and you are disconnected.

1 During ringing ▶ Press the switch of the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone Set with Switch

A beep sounds and you are connected.

With the video-phone call, a substitute image is sent to the other party. You can switch between the substitute image and the image through your camera by pressing  during a video-phone call.

You can use the Set with the FOMA phone closed.

You can take calls also by operating the FOMA phone.

When "Automatic answer" is set to "ON", a call is answered automatically after the ringing time elapsed.

2 When you end talking, press and hold the switch of the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone Set with Switch for at least one second to disconnect.

A beep sounds twice and you are disconnected.

Information


Use "Earphone" so that you can set the beep not to sound from the speaker when the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone Set with Switch is connected.

If you set "Ring volume" to "Silent" or during Manner Mode, the ring tone does not sound. However, if you set "Original" for Manner Mode and the ring volume specified by that mode is set to other than "Silent", the ring tone will sound.

Regardless of the setting for "Keypad sound", a tone for connecting and disconnecting the line sounds.



Note that you might be connected if you try to connect the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone Set with Switch after the ring tone sounds.

To release answer hold, press the switch of the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone Set with Switch. (When a video-phone call is placed in answer hold, a substitute image is sent and the video-phone call starts.)

You cannot press the switch of the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone Set with Switch instead of pressing  during a call. Note that you will be disconnected if you press and hold the switch for at least one second.

Do not press or release the switch of the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone Set with Switch in succession. You might be automatically connected.

If you have signed up for "Call Waiting Service" and "Multi calling" is displayed during a call, you can switch two calls by pressing and holding the switch of the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone Set with Switch for at least one second. You cannot, however, use the switch to end the call.

You can adjust the earpiece volume by pressing  (raise) or  (lower) during a call.

"Automatic answer" is enabled even if you disconnect the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone Set with Switch while ringing.

Whether sound comes out from the speaker or not when you switch to Hands-free while the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone Set with Switch is connected depends on the setting for "Earphone".

<Automatic Answer>



Answering a Call Automatically when Earphone is Connected

If a call comes in while the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone Set with Switch (option) is connected, you can automatically answer the call after the specified ringing time elapses.

Setting at purchase	
Automatic answer	.....OFF
Ringing time	.....6 seconds (when ON)


1 External option ▶ Automatic answer

ON.....Sets Automatic Answer.

OFF.....Does not set Automatic Answer. The setting is completed.

2 Enter a ringing time (seconds).

Enter from "001" through "120" in three digits.


Not to change the specified ringing time, press  without entering the ringing time.

You cannot set the same ringing (response) time for Remote Observation, Automatic Answer and Record Message. Set different times for each.

For video-phone

Video-phone communications will start automatically when a video-phone call comes in while the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone Set with Switch is connected and Automatic Answer is set to "ON".

1. A video-phone call comes in.
2. The video-phone communications start automatically after the ringing time specified in Automatic Answer elapses.

If you auto-answer the video-phone call, a substitute image is sent to the other party. You can switch between the substitute image and the image through your camera by pressing  during a video-phone call.



© BVIG

Information

If you want to set "Voice Mail Service" or "Call Forwarding Service" and Automatic Answer simultaneously and to let Automatic Answer have priority, set the ringing time for Automatic Answer shorter than that for "Voice Mail Service" or "Call Forwarding Service". When Mute Seconds set by "Ringing time" is longer than the ringing time set for Automatic Answer, the Automatic Answer function starts without ringing. To have the ringing action before Automatic Answer starts, set the longer ringing time for Automatic Answer than Mute Seconds.

Even if you connect the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone Set with Switch while ringing, Automatic Answer does not work. However, if you disconnect the Set while ringing, Automatic Answer works.

During 64K data transmission, Automatic Answer does not work.

<PLMN Setting>

Setting Mobile Phone Carrier

Setting at purchase
DoCoMo

You can select the PLMN (Public Land Mobile Network) that provides FOMA services you use.

As of January 2005, no other mobile phone carrier (PLMN) than DoCoMo is available.

1   **SETTINGS** ▶ **Other settings** ▶ **PLMN setting** ▶ **Manual** ▶ **Select a PLMN**
(communication carrier) ▶ 


Information

You cannot set while another function is working (while "  " or "  " is displayed at the upper right of the display).

Resetting Function Settings

You can reset the items indicated by of "Function List" to their default. (See page 502)

1  **Other settings** ▶ **Reset** ▶ **Enter the Terminal Security Code** ▶  ▶ **YES**

To cancel, select "NO" and press .
See page 140 for the Terminal Security Code.

Information

You cannot reset while another function is working (while "  " or "  " is displayed at the upper right of the display).
You cannot reset the settings during All Lock or PIM Lock.

Deleting Stored Data All at Once

You can delete the stored data and reset the setting contents of each function to the default.

See "Function List" for the setting at the time of purchase. (See page 502)

You cannot delete data stored at the time of purchase.

You cannot delete i-αppli stored at the time of purchase or data inside i-αppli stored at the time of purchase. The protected data is also deleted.


Even if you have deleted the pre-installed Deco mail templates and Chara-den images, they restore if you execute "Initialize".

Charge the battery full before initializing the FOMA phone. When the battery level is not enough, you may not be able to initialize the FOMA phone.

During initializing, never turn off the power of the FOMA phone.

You cannot use other functions during initialization. Also, you cannot receive calls or mail messages.

1  **Other settings** ▶ **Initialize** ▶ **Enter the Terminal Security Code** ▶  **YES** ▶ **YES**

When initializing ends, the power automatically goes off and the power turns on and the "Initial setting" display appears.
To cancel, select "NO" and press .
See page 140 for the Terminal Security Code.

Information

You cannot initialize while another function is working (while "  " or "  " is displayed at the upper right of the display).

You cannot initialize the FOMA phone during All Lock or PIM Lock.

You cannot delete the data saved, stored, or set in the UIM or the miniSD memory card.

You cannot delete the setting of data transmission set by a personal computer.

If you delete the pre-installed i-αppli, it does not restore even if you execute "Initialize". To restore, download it from the "P-SQUARE" site. For downloading, you are charged a separate transmission fee.

Initialization may take a while if the data to be deleted is bulky.

Network Service

Network Services Available from the FOMA Phone	426
Checking New Voice Mail.....<Check Messages>	426
Using Voice Mail Service.....<Voice Mail>	426
Using Call Waiting Service.....<Call Waiting>	429
Using Call Forwarding Service.....<Call Forwarding>	430
Using Nuisance Call Blocking Service.....<Bar Nuisance Call>	432
Notifying the Other Party's Phone of Your Phone Number.....<Caller ID Notification>	433
Using Caller ID Display Request Service.....<Caller ID Request>	433
Using Dual Network Service	<Dual Network> 434
Switching Guidance Language between Japanese and English	<English Guidance> 435
Using Service Dial	<Service Dial No.> 435
Selecting Response to Incoming Calls during a Call	<Arrival Call Act> 436
Activating/Deactivating Selected Action to Incoming Calls	<Set Arrival Act> 436
Setting Remote Access	<Remote Access> 436
Multi-Number (Unavailable service).....	436
Using Additional Services	<Additional Service> 437

Network Services Available from the FOMA Phone

The following are the DoCoMo Network Services available from the FOMA phone:
See the reference page in the table below for the outline and usage method of the services.

Service	Application	Monthly fee	Reference
Voice Mail Service	Required	Charged	this page
Call Waiting Service	Required	Charged	p.429
Call Forwarding Service	Required	Free	p.430
Nuisance Call Blocking Service	Required	Charged	p.432
Caller ID Notification Service	Not required	Free	p.433
Caller ID Display Request Service	Not required	Free	p.433
Dual Network Service	Required	Charged	p.434
English Guidance	Not required	Free	p.435
Service Dial	Not required	Free	p.435
Set Arrival Action	Not required	Free	p.436
Arrival Call Action	Not required	Free	p.436
Remote Access	Not required	Free	p.436
Additional Service	Not required	Free	p.437
Drive Mode	Not required	Free	p.67
Short Message (SMS)	Not required	Free	p.301
I-mode	Required	Charged	p.186

For services requiring subscription, make an inquiry at "DoCoMo Information Center" on the back page of this manual.

Information

Refer to "Network Services User's Guide" for more details. The Network Services are not available when you are out of the service area or radio waves do not reach. You can store services newly provided by DoCoMo Network Services in the menu. (See page 437)

<Check Messages>

Checking New Voice Mail

You can check the Voice Mail Service Center for if any message is held.



Information

Note that you might be disconnected midway or not be able to check new messages depending on radio waves conditions. You might not be able to check some messages held at the center after you checked messages, even if you perform "Check messages" again.

About checked results

If any message is held, the "Voice mail" icon (📞) and the Voice Mail icon such as "📞" appear to inform you of the held message. To erase the Voice Mail icon such as "📞", dial at the Voice Mail Service Center for saving or erasing the voice mail message or follow the operations of "Erase Icon".

The Voice Mail icons switch among 📞, 📞, 📞 and 📞 (10 or more messages) according to the number of the messages held at the Voice Mail Service Center.

The displayed number is the number of new messages you can play back by dialing at (1417). Saved messages are not counted.

If you set "Message notification", the ring tone sounds each time a message has been added.

See pages 427, 428 for how to play back Voice Mail messages.

When "📞" appears

You cannot check Voice Mail messages. Move to a place where "📞" is cleared.

<Voice Mail>

Using Voice Mail Service

If you are in a place where radio waves do not reach or the power is turned off, the center holds Voice Mail messages on behalf of you.

The caller hears an answer message and his/her message is held at the Voice Mail Service Center.

You can play back the Voice Mail message anywhere in Japan.

You need to apply Voice Mail Service to use it.

About Voice Mail Service

The recording time for a Voice Mail Message is about three minutes and up to 20 messages can be recorded.

Voice Mail Messages are held for up to 72 hours.

You can also set the Announcement Only function, which simply informs callers that you cannot take their call.

You can make or take calls as usual even if you set Voice Mail Service to "Activate".

When a call comes in while Voice Mail Service is set to "Activate", the ring tone (specified in "Select ring tone") will sound for about 10 seconds. (Your own setting is also enabled. See pages 427 and 428.)

If you answer the call within 10 seconds, you can start talking. If you did not answer, the call is connected to the Voice Mail Service Center. Further, the Voice Mail icon on the Stand-by display, "Voice mail" icon, and "Received calls" inform you of the missed call.

You can just press keys to connect an incoming call to the Voice Mail Service Center. You can also connect the call that comes in during a call to the center.

Voice Mail Service will be deactivated automatically if you set "Call forwarding" to "Activate".

You can use four-digit "Network Security Code" set at purchase to operate Voice Mail Service from touch-tone ordinary phones or payphones. (Follow the operations specified in the "Remote access" setting.)

If a "User unset" call comes in while "Caller ID request" is set to "Activate", the announcement requesting Caller ID will play. (Voice Mail Service is not available.)

You cannot operate Voice Mail Service if you are out of the service area or out of reach of radio waves.

Video-phone calls cannot be connected to the Voice Mail Service Center, even when Voice Mail has been activated; the operation of incoming video-phone calls continues.

Basic Flow of Voice Mail Service

Step 1: You set the service to "Activate".

Step 2: The caller leaves a message.

Step 3: You play back the message.

When in a hurry, the caller can skip playback of the answer message and record a message immediately by pressing "#" while the answer message is played back.

Charges for Voice Mail Service

To use Voice Mail Service, you are charged a call fee for playing back messages in addition to the monthly fee. Refer to "Network Services User's Guide" for more details.

Activate

You can start using Voice Mail Service.

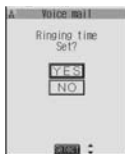
1 **Voice mail** **▶ Activate** **▶ YES**

To cancel, select "NO" and press .

You can bring up the YES/NO Confirmation display also by selecting "Activate" from the Function menu of the Voice Mail Setting Confirmation display, and pressing .

2 **YES**

To cancel, select "NO" and press .



3 **Enter a ringing time (seconds)**

Enter from "000" through "120" in three digits.

Deactivate

You can deactivate Voice Mail Service.

1 **Voice mail** **▶ Deactivate** **▶ YES**

To cancel, select "NO" and press .

You can bring up the YES/NO Confirmation display also by selecting "Deactivate" from the Function menu of the Voice Mail Setting Confirmation display, and pressing .

Set Ringing Time

You can set the ringing time until the call is connected to the Voice Mail Service Center. You can set the ringing time from 0 through 120 seconds.

1 **Voice mail** **▶ Set ringing time**

▶ Enter a ringing time (seconds)

Enter from "000" through "120" in three digits.

You can bring up the Ringing Time Entry display also by selecting "Set ringing time" from the Function menu of the Voice Mail Setting Confirmation display, and pressing .

Information

If you simultaneously activate "Record message" and want to let Voice Mail Service have priority over "Record message", set the ringing time for Voice Mail Service shorter than that for "Record message".

When Mute Seconds set for "Ringing time" is longer than the ringing time set for Voice Mail Service, the incoming call is connected to the Voice Mail Service Center without ringing. To have the ringing action before connecting to the Voice Mail Service Center, set the longer ringing time for Voice Mail Service than Mute Seconds.

Status Request

You can check the setting contents of Voice Mail Service.

1 **Voice mail**
▶ Status request



<Voice Mail Setting Confirmation display>

Function Menu of the Voice Mail Setting Confirmation Display

1 **Voice Mail Setting Confirmation display**
▶ (FUNC) ▶ Do the following operation.

Function menu	Operations
Activate	You can start the service. (See this page)
Deactivate	You can stop the service. (See this page)
Set ringing time	You can set a ringing time. (See this page)

Play Messages

You can play back messages recorded as the Voice Mail.

1 **Voice mail** **▶ Play messages** **▶ YES**
To cancel, select "NO" and press .

2 Operate following the voice guidance.

Information

You cannot do this operation during calls.

If you press through , , or following the voice guidance, you may not end the call by pressing ; press again.

Voice Mail Settings

You can switch the setting contents of Voice Mail Service.

1 **Voice mail** **▶ Setting** **▶ YES**
To cancel, select "NO" and press .

2 Operate following the voice guidance.

Information

You cannot do this operation during calls.
If you press (0) through (9) *, (*), or (##) following the voice guidance, you may not end the call by pressing (##) ; press (##) again.

Message Notification

Setting at purchase
YES

You can set the ring tone to sound when a new message is recorded.

- 1** (##) (SERVICE) ▶ Voice mail ▶ Message notification
YES Sounds the ring tone set for "Mail" of "Select ring tone" for about five seconds when a new message is recorded.
NO Does not sound the ring tone when a new message is recorded.

Erase Icon

You can erase the Voice Mail icons (such as (SERVICE)) from the Stand-by display.

- 1** (##) (SERVICE) ▶ Voice mail ▶ Erase icon ▶ YES
To cancel, select "NO" and press (##).

Information

Even if you erase the Voice Mail icons, the messages held at Voice Mail Service Center are not erased.

Activate Notice Call

When you are out of reach of radio waves or turn off the power, you are informed by Short Message (SMS) of the received call records.

- 1** (##) (SERVICE) ▶ Voice mail ▶ Activate notice call
All notice call Informs you of all received calls.
Notify caller ID only Informs you of the call only that notified the phone number.

- 2** YES
To cancel, select "NO" and press (##).

Information

Even when Voice Mail Service is set to "Deactivate", you can start notice call.

Deactivate Notice Call

You can stop the notice call.

- 1** (##) (SERVICE) ▶ Voice mail ▶ Deactivate notice call ▶ YES
To cancel, select "NO" and press (##).

Information

Even if you stop the notice call, the "Activate" and "Deactivate" setting does not change.

Notice Call Status

You can check the setting contents of notice call.

- 1** (##) (SERVICE) ▶ Voice mail ▶ Notice call status
After checking, press (##).

Forward an Incoming Call to Voice Mail Service Center during Ringing

You can connect an incoming call to the Voice Mail Service Center just by a simple key operation. Even if you do not set Voice Mail Service to "Activate", the Service will be available using this function.

- 1** During ringing ▶ (F) (FUNC) ▶ Voice mail
The incoming call is connected to the Voice Mail Service Center. You can connect the incoming call to the Voice Mail Service Center also by pressing (F) (FUNC), and pressing (H) (H) (H).

Information

This function is not available while you are dialing "110 (emergency call to police station)", "119 (emergency call to fire/ambulance station)", or "118 (emergency call when accident/affair occurs on the sea)".

To enable you to use this function, operate the FOMA phone inserted with your own UIM. You cannot remote-access this function from ordinary phones, payphones, or other mobile phones.

If you activate "PIM lock" while this function is set, all incoming calls are connected to the Voice Mail Service Center.

If a call comes in with the "Open phone" set to "Answer" and the FOMA phone closed, you cannot use this function.

You cannot use this function unless you subscribe to Voice Mail Service.

Voice Mail Service by Key Operations

You can press keys to use Voice Mail Service instead of using the menu function in the FOMA phone.

Play back a new voice mail message

(1) (4) (1) (7) (SERVICE) Main menu (1)
Playback

Play back saved voice mail message

(1) (4) (1) (6) (SERVICE) Main menu (1)
Playback

Switch the service contents

(1) (4) (1) (6) (SERVICE) Main menu (9) (1)

Change answer messages

(1) (4) (1) (6) (SERVICE) Main menu (9) (2)

Activate/deactivate Caller ID

(1) (4) (1) (6) (SERVICE) Main menu (9) (3)

Activate service

(1) (4) (1) (1) (SERVICE) (##)

Deactivate service

(1) (4) (1) (0) (SERVICE) (SERVICE) (##)

Set ringing time

(1) (4) (1) (9) (SERVICE) Set (H) (##)

Information

Refer to "Network Services User's Guide" for more detailed operations.

If you press (0) through (9) *, (*), or (##) following the voice guidance, you may not end the call by pressing (##) ; press (##) again.

Forward Specified Calls to the Voice Mail Center

You can automatically connect the calls coming from the phone numbers stored in the Phonebook to the Voice Mail Service Center regardless of the Activate/Deactivate setting for the Service. You can specify up to 20 phone numbers. This setting is valid only when the caller notifies his/her Caller ID. It is advisable to activate "Caller ID request" at the same time.

- Detailed Phonebook display** (FUNC)
 - Restrictions
 - Enter the Terminal Security Code
 - Voice mail

"Voice mail" is indicated by " ".

See page 99 for how to search the Phonebook.

See page 140 for the Terminal Security Code.

To release "Voice mail", perform the same operation.

Information

You cannot specify "Voice mail" and "Call forwarding" for the same number stored in the Phonebook.

When a call comes in from the phone number set with this function, the ring tone sounds for about one second and then the call is connected to Voice Mail Service Center. You will be notified of the call by the icons on the desktop (see pages 68, 135) and "Received calls". If you have not yet signed up for Voice Mail Service, the call will be a missed call.

You cannot specify "Voice mail" for the phone number of the Phonebook entry stored in "Secret mode" or "Secret only mode", or of the UIM Phonebook.

Note that this function is released if you change the phone number you have specified.

<Call Waiting>

Using Call Waiting Service

When you receive another call during a call, you can put the current call on hold to take the new call.

You can also make a new call putting the current call on hold.

You cannot use this function if you are out of the service area or in a place where radio waves do not reach.

You need to apply Call Waiting Service to use it.

About Call Waiting

When using Call Waiting, set "Arrival call act" to "Answer". If you select another setting, you cannot answer the incoming call during a call even if you activate Call Waiting.

If a "User unset" call comes in while "Caller ID request" is set to "Activate", the announcement requesting Caller ID will play. (Call Waiting is not available.)

Call Waiting does not work while the following are working:

- When dialing 110, 119, 118 or 104
- When dialing 117 (recorded as a missed call in Received Call Record)
- During a video-phone call (recorded as a missed call in Received Call Record)
- A video-phone call comes in during a voice call (recorded as a missed call in Received Call Record)
- When dialing out or calling the other party
- When dialing four-digit numbers such as 1411 (activating Voice Mail Service) or 1420 (deactivating Call Forwarding Service) to set each Network Service
- While the call is connected to the Voice Mail Service Center such as for playing back messages if signed up for Voice Mail Service

Charges for Call Waiting

To use Call Waiting, you are charged monthly fee. Refer to "Network Services User's Guide" for more details.

Activate

You can start using Call Waiting Service.

- SERVICE Call waiting Activate YES
To cancel, select "NO" and press .

Deactivate

You can stop using Call Waiting Service.

- SERVICE Call waiting Deactivate YES
To cancel, select "NO" and press .

Status Request

You can check the setting contents of Call Waiting Service.

- SERVICE Call waiting Status request
After checking, press .

Answer an Incoming Call during a Call

You can answer the second call putting the first call on hold.

- If another call comes in during the current call, press .

The current call is automatically put on hold so that you can receive a new call.

"Multi calling" is displayed when the other party is on hold.

Each time you press , you can switch the party you can talk with.



End a Call to Answer Another Call

You can answer a new call after finishing the current call.

- If another call comes in during a call, press .

The ring tone sounds. (If you have set an i-motion movie for the ring tone, the ring tone set at purchase sounds.)

- Press or . You can answer the call.


Hold a Call to Make a New Call

You can make a call to another party putting the current call on hold.

1 Enter another party's phone number during a call ▶

You can talk with the party you have dialed. The call with the first party is automatically put on hold.

You can also search the Phonebook to enter the phone number. (See page 99) "Multi calling" is displayed when the other party is on hold.

You can switch the party you talk with by pressing .



End a Call to Answer the Held Call

You can answer the held call after finishing the current call.


1 During Multi calling ▶

The ring tone sounds. (If you have set an i-motion movie for the ring tone, the ring tone set at purchase sounds.)



2 Press or .

You can answer the call.

When the other party you have been talking with ends the call Press  to talk with the party on hold.

End a Held Call

1 During Multi calling ▶ (FUNC) ▶ End held call

You finish talking with the party on hold.

Information

The caller continues to be charged call fee during call hold. You might hear beeps (Ring tone in call) sound during a call. If you sign up for any of Voice Mail Service, Call Waiting, or Call Forwarding Service and set the Service to "Activate", beeps (Ring tone in call) will sound for another incoming call, enabling you to do the following operations:

Voice Mail ServiceYou can send the another call to Voice Mail Service Center. (See page 428)

Call WaitingYou can put the current call on hold and answer another call. (See page 429)

Call Forwarding ServiceYou can forward another call to the registered destination. (See page 431)

You can make a call during call hold only when you have signed up for Call Waiting.

When a call comes in while current call is put on hold, the held call is released.

When another call comes in during Multi-calling, the message to the effect that you can answer the call after ending current call is displayed.

To take the new call, finish the current call or call on hold.

<Call Forwarding>

Using Call Forwarding Service

You can forward the incoming call the FOMA phone received to the forwarding destination you have registered such as your home or office.

You need to apply Call Forwarding Service to use it.

About Call Forwarding Service

You can register one phone number as a forwarding destination. Calls are forwarded automatically even when you are away from the FOMA phone, out of reach of radio waves, or the power is turned off.

You can make or take calls as usual even if you set Call Forwarding Service to "Activate".

When a call comes in while Call Forwarding Service is set to "Activate", the ring tone (specified in "Select ring tone") will sound for about seven seconds. (Your own setting is also enabled. See pages 431, 432.)

If you answer the call within seven seconds, you can start talking. The call you do not answer will be forwarded to the forwarding destination. Further, you are notified of the call by "Missed call" icon and "Received calls".

You can just press keys to forward incoming calls. You can also forward the call that comes in during a call.

Call Forwarding Service will be deactivated automatically if you set "Voice mail" to "Activate".

You can use four-digit "Network Security Code" set at purchase to operate Call Forwarding Service from touch-tone ordinary phones or payphones. (Follow the operations specified in the "Remote access" setting.)

If a "User unset" call comes in while "Caller ID request" is set to "Activate", the announcement requesting Caller ID will play. (Call Forwarding Service is not available.)

You cannot operate Call Forwarding Service if you are out of the service area or out of reach of radio waves.

You cannot connect the video-phone call to the forwarding destination unless you specify the video-phone conforming to 3G-324M as the forwarding destination even if you set "Call forwarding" to "Activate". Confirm the forwarding destination phone to do the forwarding setting. An announcement to the effect that the call is forwarded is not played to the caller. (When the caller uses the FOMA P700i, the message to the effect that the call is forwarded is displayed.)

Basic Flow of Call Forwarding Service

Step 1: Store the phone number of forwarding destination.

Step 2: Set Call Forwarding Service to "Activate".

Step 3: A call comes in to your FOMA phone.

Step 4: The call is automatically forwarded to the specified destination if you do not answer.

Charges for Call Forwarding Service

Monthly fee: Free

+

Call fee



Call fee from the area where the FOMA phone subscribed for the Service is located to the forwarding destination is charged for the subscriber.

Call fee required for storing the forwarding destination, activating/deactivating the service, and specifying the ringing time is free.




Information


Call fee from the area where the FOMA phone subscribed to the Service is located to the forwarding destination is charged for the subscriber. Note that the call fee for this function might be charged higher if you activate the Service out of your area and do not turn on the power.

For instance, you store the phone number of your company in Tokyo as the forwarding destination and are out to Osaka on business and set to "Activate" there. If you turn off the power once and keep it off after coming back to Tokyo, the forwarding fee will be charged for the distance from Osaka to your company in Tokyo. Turn on the power when you are back; then the location is automatically restored.

Activate

You can store the forwarding destination and start using the Service.

- 1   **Call forwarding** **Activate**
Register fwd number **Enter the phone number of forwarding destination** 

If you have stored the phone number of forwarding destination in the Phonebook, press  to bring up the Phonebook menu and enter the phone number. (See page 99)

- 2 **Set ringing time** **Enter a ringing time (seconds)** 

Enter from "000" through "120" in three digits.

- 3 **Activate** **YES**

To cancel, select "NO" and press .

Information

You cannot specify toll-free or three-digit phone numbers, such as 110 as the forwarding destination.

You can dial even while you activate Call Forwarding Service.

You cannot take a collect call if you activate Call Forwarding Service. If you answer the call while ringing, the call is not forwarded; you can talk.

If you are out of reach of radio waves or the power is not turned on, the ring tone does not sound and the call is automatically forwarded.

Note that in this case, the call fee from the forwarder to the forwarding destination is charged for the forwarder who has subscribed for the Service.

Note that call forwarding might be canceled if necessary owing to the offer from the forwarding destination.

Be careful that if you select PBX, pager, or facsimile as a forwarding destination, the caller might be given misunderstanding.

If you have already set the forwarding destination, you can omit to set "Register fwd number" and "Set ringing time".

If you activate "Call forwarding" together with "Record message" and want to let Call Forwarding Service have priority over "Record message", set the shorter ringing time for Call Forwarding Service than that for "Record message".

If you activate "Call forwarding" together with "Remote observation" and want to let Call Forwarding Service have priority over "Remote observation", set the shorter ringing time for Call Forwarding Service than that for "Remote monitor".

When Mute Seconds set for "Ringing time" is longer than the ringing time set for Call Forwarding Service, the incoming call is forwarded to the destination without ringing. To have the ringing action before forwarding the call, set the longer ringing time for Call Forwarding Service than Mute Seconds.



Deactivate

You can stop using Call Forwarding Service.

- 1   **Call forwarding** **Deactivate** **YES**
 To cancel, select "NO" and press .


Change Forwarding No

You can change the forwarding destination.

- 1   **Call forwarding** **Change forwarding No** **Enter the phone number of forwarding destination** 

Change No.Select when you are currently using the Service.


Change No.+Activate ...Select while call forwarding is suspended and when you want to activate the Service as soon as the forwarding destination is changed.

If you have stored the phone number of forwarding destination in the Phonebook, press  to bring up the Phonebook menu and enter the phone number. (See page 99)

At Forwarding Party Busy

You can set an incoming call to be connected to the Voice Mail Service Center when the forwarding destination is busy. You need to subscribe to "Voice Mail Service".

- 1   **Call forwarding** **At fwd party busy** **YES**

To cancel, select "NO" and press .

Status Request

You can check the phone number and ringing time of forwarding destination.

- 1   **Call forwarding** **Status request**
 After checking, press .

Forward an Incoming Call during Ringing

You can forward the incoming call to the phone number you specified as a "Forwarding number" by a simple key operation. Even when you do not set Call Forwarding Service to "Activate", the Service will be available using this function.

- 1 **During ringing**   **Call forwarding**
 The incoming call is forwarded.

Information

This function is not available while you are dialing "110 (emergency call to police station)", "119 (emergency call to fire/ambulance station)", or "118 (emergency call when accident/affair occurs on the sea)".

To enable you to use this function, operate the FOMA phone inserted with your own UIM. You cannot remote-access this function from ordinary phones, payphones, or other mobile phones.

If a call comes in with the "Open phone" set to "Answer" and the FOMA phone closed, you cannot use this function.

You cannot use this function unless you subscribe to Call Forwarding Service.

Call Forwarding Service by Key Operations

You can press a few keys to use Call Forwarding Service instead of using the menu function in the FOMA phone.

Register phone number of forwarding destination
 1 ¹ 4 ⁴ 2 ² 9 ⁹ 0 ⁰ 7 ⁷ 2 ² Main menu 3 ³ 0 ⁰ 7 ⁷ 2 ²
 Register forwarding No.

Activate Call Forwarding Service
 1 ¹ 4 ⁴ 2 ² 9 ⁹ 0 ⁰ 7 ⁷ 2 ² (1 ¹ , 0 ⁰ 7 ⁷ 2 ²)

Deactivate Call Forwarding Service
 1 ¹ 4 ⁴ 2 ² 9 ⁹ 0 ⁰ 7 ⁷ 2 ²

Set ringing time
 1 ¹ 4 ⁴ 2 ² 9 ⁹ 0 ⁰ 7 ⁷ 2 ² Main menu 1 ¹ 0 ⁰ 7 ⁷ 2 ²
 Set ringing time

Check settings
 1 ¹ 4 ⁴ 2 ² 9 ⁹ 0 ⁰ 7 ⁷ 2 ² Main menu 4 ⁴ 0 ⁰ 7 ⁷ 2 ²
 Check

When another call comes in during forwarding, or when forwarding destination is busy, press 1 ¹ to connect to Voice Mail Service Center, press 0 ⁰ 7 ⁷ 2 ² not to connect.

(Available for only when you have also subscribed to "Voice Mail Service".)

Information

Refer to "Network Services User's Guide" for more details. If you press 0 ⁰ 7 ⁷ 2 ² through 9 ⁹ 0 ⁰ 7 ⁷ 2 ², , or following the voice guidance, you may not end the call by pressing ; press again.

Forward Specified Calls to Specified Destination

You can automatically forward the calls from the specified phone numbers stored in the Phonebook, regardless of the Activate/Deactivate setting for Call Forwarding Service.

You can specify up to 20 phone numbers.

This setting is valid only when the caller notifies his/her Caller ID. It is advisable to activate "Caller ID request" at the same time.

1 Detailed Phonebook display (FUNC)

▶ Restrictions ▶ Enter the Terminal Security

Code ▶ ▶ Call forwarding

"Call forwarding" is indicated by " ".

See page 99 for how to search the Phonebook.

See page 140 for the Terminal Security Code.

To release "Call forwarding", perform the same operation.

Information

You cannot specify "Call forwarding" and "Voice mail" for the same phone number stored in the Phonebook.

When a call comes in from the phone number set with this function, the ring tone sounds for about one second and the call is forwarded. Further, you are notified of the call by "Received calls".

If you activate "PIM lock" while this function is set, all incoming calls are forwarded.

If you have not signed up for Call Forwarding Service or have not set the destination, the call will be a missed call.

You cannot specify "Call forwarding" for the phone number of the Phonebook entry stored in "Secret mode" or "Secret only mode" or of the UIM Phonebook.

Note that this function is released if you change the phone number you have specified.

<Bar Nuisance Call>

Using Nuisance Call Blocking Service

You can set the FOMA phone to block calls from specific phone numbers, such as mischievous call or vicious sales talk. You can register up to 30 phone numbers.

You cannot operate this function when you are out of service area or out of reach of radio waves.

You need to apply this Service to use it.

Relationship between each Service and incoming calls while Nuisance Call Blocking Service is activated

Service	Handling of incoming call from the caller rejected as Register Caller
Voice Mail Service	Call Rejection announcement plays. (Message is not held.)
Call Forwarding Service	Call Rejection announcement plays. (Not forwarded to forwarding destination.)
Call Waiting	Call Rejection announcement plays.
Caller ID Display Request Service	Call Rejection announcement plays.
Drive Mode	Call Rejection announcement plays. (Driving announcement does not play.)

Charges for Nuisance Call Blocking Service

To use Nuisance Call Blocking Service, you are charged monthly fee.

Refer to "Network Services User's Guide" for more details.

Register Caller

You can register the phone number of last incoming call to be rejected.

1 ▶ Nuisance call barring
 ▶ Register caller ▶ YES ▶ OK

To cancel, select "NO" and press .

Information

You cannot specify the phone number in advance. You can register the phone number of last incoming call only. You cannot register the phone number of the call you did not answer or dialing from you.

When you specify the phone number to be registered for rejecting, use the key operations. (See page 433)

You can reject/register the phone number that does not notify its Caller ID. (See pages 45, 433 for Caller ID)

You may not be able to reject/register the phone number for International Call.

You cannot check or inquire for the phone number you registered as a reject call. It is advisable that you take a memo of the call you registered.

The calls which were not received because of this setting are not memorized in "Received calls".

If you execute "Register caller" when you have already rejected/registered 30 phone numbers, the message "Entries is full Overwrite latest entry?" appears. Select "YES" and press ; then the oldest phone number is deleted and the new one is registered.

If a video-phone call comes in from the phone number registered as "Register caller", the announcement for rejection does not play, disconnecting the video-phone call.

Delete Recent Entry/Delete All Entries

- 1** **Nuisance call barring**
Delete recent entryThe phone number registered for rejection in the last only is deleted. (You cannot delete one before the last one.)
Delete all entriesThe phone numbers registered for rejection are all deleted.

- 2** YES OK
To cancel, select "NO" and press .

Nuisance Call Blocking Service by Key Operations

You can press a few keys to use the Nuisance Call Blocking Service instead of using menu functions in the FOMA phone.

Refer to "Network Services User's Guide" for more details.

- 1** Press .

An announcement for how to operate plays.

- 2** To register the phone number of last incoming call for rejection, press .

The phone number that came in the last is registered for rejection.

To register a specific phone number for rejection, press .

Enter the phone number following an announcement.

To delete the phone number last registered for rejection, press .

An announcement for confirming the deletion plays. To delete the phone number registered for rejection in the last, press . To cancel deleting, press .

To delete all phone numbers registered for rejection, press .

An announcement for confirming the deletion plays. To delete all phone numbers registered for rejection, press . To cancel deleting, press .

- 3** Press .

Information

If you press through , , or following the voice guidance, you may not end the call by pressing ; press again.

<Caller ID Notification>

Notifying the Other Party's Phone of Your Phone Number

The FOMA phone enables you to notify your phone number to the other party when dialing.

The Caller ID is important information, so pay enough attention for notifying your Caller ID.

This function is available when the other party's phone is the digital terminal such as the FOMA phones or other mobile phones that support Caller ID.

You cannot operate this function if you are out of service area or out of reach of radio waves.

Activate

You can select whether to notify your Caller ID and set the setting on the network.

- 1** **Caller ID notification** Activate
ONNotifies phone number.
OFFDoes not notify phone number.

- 2** Enter the NW security code
See page 140 for the Network Security Code.

Status Request

You can check the setting contents of "Activate".

- 1** **Caller ID notification**
 Status request
After checking, press .

Information

You can also select whether to notify or not notify your Caller ID each time you make a call. (See page 45)

When you dial out and hear a message requesting your Caller ID, set the FOMA phone to notify your Caller ID and redial.

<Caller ID Request>

Using Caller ID Display Request Service

The Caller ID Display Request Service responds to anonymous callers by the message asking them to redial notifying of their Caller IDs. You can thus prevent nuisance or wrong calls from incoming so that you will be able to use your FOMA phone with a sense of safety. You cannot operate this service if you are out of service area or out of reach of radio waves. You do not need to apply for this Service. Further, monthly fee is not charged.

Relationship between each Service and incoming calls while Caller ID Display Request Service is activated

Service	Handling incoming call from the caller who does not notify Caller ID
Voice Mail Service	Caller ID request announcement plays. (Message is not held.)
Call Forwarding Service	Caller ID request announcement plays. (Not forwarded to forwarding destination.)
Call Waiting Service	Caller ID request announcement plays.
Nuisance Call Blocking Service	Call rejection announcement plays for the call from the caller who is registered to be rejected.
Drive Mode	Caller ID request announcement plays. (Driving announcement does not play.)

Information

This service works only when the caller has selected "User unset" for "Reason for no Caller ID". ("Payphone" and "Not supported" are not included. However, if the caller is dialing from a payphone and prefix "184" to the head of the phone number, Caller ID request announcement will play.)

The call fee for the announcement is charged for the caller.

If you activate this service while you set "Call setting w/o ID" to "Reject", this service has priority.

You can set and confirm this setting from the FOMA phone with your own UIM inserted. You cannot remote-access the setting from ordinary phones, payphones, and other mobile phones. You are not charged call fee for activating, deactivating, or confirming this setting. If a "User unset" call comes in while this service is set to "Activate", the call is not stored in "Received calls" and the "Missed call" icon does not appear on the desktop.

A Caller ID request announcement does not play in the cases as follows:

- For incoming calls such as calls from NTT payphones or international calls that do not support Caller ID.
- When the caller uses "Rate display service" or "Rate meter".
- When a 64K data transmission is connected.
- For a video-phone call, a caller ID request announcement does not play but a message that it is not connected appears on the caller's display.

Activate

You can start using Caller ID Display Request Service.

- 1 **Caller ID request** **Activate** **YES** **OK**

To cancel, select "NO" and press .

Deactivate

You can stop using Caller ID Display Request Service.

- 1 **Caller ID request** **Deactivate** **YES** **OK**

To cancel, select "NO" and press .

Status Request

You can check the setting contents of Caller ID Display Request Service.

- 1 **Caller ID request** **Status request**

After checking, press .

Caller ID Display Request Service by Key Operations

You can press a few keys to use Caller ID Display Request Service instead of using the menu function in the FOMA phone. Refer to "Network Services User's Guide" for more details.

- 1 Press .

An announcement to the effect that the current setting is set to either "Activate" or "Deactivate" plays.

- 2 Press or .

.....**Activates service.**

.....**Deactivates service.**

An announcement to the effect that the changed setting will be to either "Activate" or "Deactivate" plays.

When the setting does not change, an announcement to the effect that the setting is being continued plays.

- 3 Press .

Information

After activating the service, an announcement asking to notify of the Caller ID plays to the caller who does not provide it.

If you press through , , or following the voice guidance, you may not end the call by pressing ; press again.

<Dual Network>

Using Dual Network Service

You can use the same phone number signed up for the FOMA with the mova by using "Dual Network Service". You can use the FOMA or the mova as you like according to the service area.

Even when you are out of the service area of the FOMA but it is the service area of the mova, you can make or receive calls from the mova. You can also check Voice Mail messages and i-mode mail.

However, you cannot use the FOMA and the mova at the same time.

You need to apply Dual Network Service to use it.

Charges for Dual Network Service

To use Dual Network Service, you are charged monthly fee.

Refer to "Network Services User's Guide" for more details.

Dual Network Switching

You can switch to the FOMA phone so that you can use it. Switch when the FOMA is in the FOMA service area.

- 1 **Dual network** **Dual network switching** **YES** **Enter the Network Security Code**

To cancel, select "NO" and press .

See page 140 for the Network Security Code.

Information

You can switch to the FOMA phone even while communicating using the mova. However, if you switch to the FOMA phone, the line is disconnected.

If you perform this operation while communicating using the FOMA phone, the line is forcibly disconnected.

If you activate this service when the dual network function is already working, the message "Service currently active" is displayed.

To switch to the mova so that you can use it, operate from the mova. You cannot operate from the FOMA phone.

Status Request

You can check the setting contents of Dual Network Service.

- 1 **Dual network ▶ Status request**
After checking, press .

Dual Network Service by Key Operations

You can press a few keys to use Dual Network Service instead of using the menu function in the FOMA phone.

To switch the phones (from the phone placed in unusable state)
1 5 4 0 Enter the Network Security Code
Announcement for switching

Check setting (from the phone you want to check)
1 5 4 6 Check

Information

Refer to "Network Services User's Guide" for more details.
If you press through , , or following the voice guidance, you may not end the call by pressing ; press again.

<English Guidance>

Switching Guidance Language between Japanese and English

You can switch the language of the announcement for outgoing or incoming calls, between Japanese and English. You can set separate languages for outgoing and incoming calls.

When the caller uses this service, the setting on the caller's end for dialing has priority over that on the receiver's end for receiving.

Guidance Setting

You can set the announcement. The announcements you can set for outgoing and incoming calls are as follows:

Outgoing (Announcement to your own)

Language	Description
Japanese	Announces in Japanese.
English	Announces in English.

Incoming (Announcement to the caller)

Language	Description
Japanese	Announces in Japanese.
Japanese+English	Announces first in Japanese and then in English.
English+Japanese	Announces first in English and then in Japanese.

- 1 **English guidance ▶ Guidance setting**

Outgoing+Incoming --Sets the announcement for outgoing and incoming calls at a time.

Outgoing call.....Sets the announcement for outgoing call.

Incoming callSets the announcement for incoming call.

2 Select the announcement language to be set

- ▶ ▶ **YES**

To cancel, select "NO" and press .

If you select "Outgoing+Incoming" in step 1, the outgoing announcement is set first; press to bring up the display for setting the incoming announcement.

Status Request

You can check the setting contents of the English announcement.

- 1 **English guidance ▶ Status request**
After checking, press .

Information

You can set and confirm this setting from the FOMA phone with your own UIM inserted. You cannot remote-access the setting from ordinary phones, payphones, and other mobile phones. You are not charged call fee for setting, or confirming this function.

<Service Dial No.>

Using Service Dial

You can make a call with ease at a DoCoMo repair counter (see the back page of this manual) and the DoCoMo Information Center (see the back page of this manual).

Dialing DoCoMo Repair Counter

- 1 **Service dialing number ▶ ドコモ故
障問合せ (DoCoMo repair counter) ▶**
Dialing 113 starts.

Dialing DoCoMo Information Center

- 1 **Service dialing number
▶ ドコモ総合案内・受付 (DoCoMo group) ▶**
Dialing 151 starts.

Information



You cannot use this function unless you have registered DoCoMo repair counter or DoCoMo Information Center in the UIM. The display or dialing number might be different depending on the UIM you use.

<Arrival Call Act>

Selecting Response to Incoming Calls during a Call

Setting at purchase
Answer

If you have signed up for "Voice Mail Service", "Call Forwarding Service", or "Call Waiting", you can select how to manage incoming calls while you are on the phone.

- 1**   **Arrival call act**
- Voice mail.....Connects incoming calls during a call to Voice Mail Service.
 - Call forwarding.....Forwards incoming calls during a call to the registered phone number.
 - Call rejection.....Reject incoming calls not to answer it.
 - Answer.....The phone rings. If you set Voice Mail Service, Call Waiting, or Call Forwarding Service to "Activate", the arrival call act follows each setting.

Information

You need to sign up to use Voice Mail Service (see page 426), Call Waiting (see page 429), and Call Forwarding Service (see page 430) in advance.

<Set Arrival Act>

Activating/Deactivating Selected Action to Incoming Calls

You can activate/deactivate or check the functions you selected in Arrival Call Act.




Activate

You can start using Arrival Call Act.

- 1**   **Set arrival act ▶ Activate ▶ YES**
To cancel, select "NO" and press .


Deactivate

You can stop using Arrival Call Act.

- 1**   **Set arrival act ▶ Deactivate ▶ YES**
To cancel, select "NO" and press .

Status Request

You can check the setting contents of Arrival Call Act.

- 1**   **Set arrival act ▶ Status request**
After checking, press .

Information

You can set and confirm this setting from the FOMA phone with your own UIM inserted. You cannot remote-access the setting from ordinary phones, payphones, and other mobile phones. You are not charged call fee for activating, deactivating, or confirming this setting. When you sign up for Voice Mail Service (see page 426) or Call Forwarding Service (see page 430), this function is set to "Activate".




<Remote Access>

Setting Remote Access

You can select whether to remote-access Voice Mail Service (see page 426) or Call Forwarding Service (see page 430) from other phones such as payphones in addition to the FOMA phone.




Activate

You can start using Remote Access Service.

- 1**   **Remote access ▶ Activate ▶ YES**
To cancel, select "NO" and press .




Deactivate

You can stop using Remote Access Service.

- 1**   **Remote access ▶ Deactivate ▶ YES**
To cancel, select "NO" and press .

Status Request

You can check the setting contents of Remote Access Service.

- 1**   **Remote access ▶ Status request**
After checking, press .

Information

You can set and confirm this setting from the FOMA phone with your own UIM inserted. You cannot remote-access the setting from ordinary phones, payphones, and other mobile phones. You are not charged call fee for activating, deactivating, or confirming this setting. When you sign up for Voice Mail Service (see page 426) or Call Forwarding Service (see page 430), this function is set to "Deactivate".

Multi-Number (Unavailable service)

Not available as of January 2005.


<Additional Service>

Using Additional Services

You can register up to 10 Network services if any of the new services are additionally provided by DoCoMo.

Add New Service

1 **Additional service**
 ▶ **Additional service**



<Additional Service List>

2 Select <Not stored> **Add new service**

3 Enter a service name

You can enter up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters.
See page 482 for how to enter characters.

4 Enter number or Enter USSD number

Select either "Enter number" or "Enter USSD number" according to the service contents you want to add.

5 Enter either a special number or a service code (USSD number) **YES**

To cancel, select "NO" and press .

Information

You need to check and enter "Special number" or "Service code" supplied by DoCoMo for using the services.
 Special numberNumber for connecting the Service Center.
 Service code (USSD number)With the FOMA phone, enter USSD. The code is for notifying to the Service Center.

Use Registered Service

1 **Additional service** ▶ **Additional service** ▶ **Select a service**

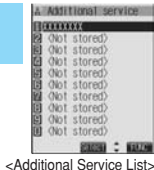
2 Press .

You are dialing the Service Center.



Function Menu of the Additional Service List

1 **Additional Service List**
 ▶ **Do the following operation.**



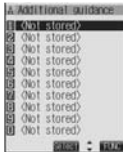
Function menu	Operations
Add new service	Register a service. (See "Add New Service" on this page)

Function menu	Operations
Edit	Go to step 3 of "Add New Service" on this page.
Delete this	▶ YES ▶OK To cancel, select "NO" and press .
Delete all	▶ YES ▶OK To cancel, select "NO" and press .

Register Additional Guidance

For when you execute the additional services, you can register up to 10 additional guidance which correspond to the codes (USSD) that are returned from the Service Center. The additional guidance is displayed when the registered code is returned as a reply.

1 **Additional service**
 ▶ **Additional guidance**



<Additional Guidance List>

2 Select <Not stored> **Add new guidance**

3 Enter a code (USSD)

Enter the code (USSD) provided by DoCoMo.

4 Enter an additional guidance

You can enter up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters.
See page 482 for how to enter characters.

5 **YES**

To cancel, select "NO" and press .

Function Menu of the Additional Guidance List

1 **Additional Guidance List**
 ▶ **Do the following operation.**



Function menu	Operations
Add new guidance	Register an additional guidance. (See "Register Additional Guidance" on this page)
Edit	Go to step 3 of "Register Additional Guidance" on this page.
Delete this	▶ YES ▶OK To cancel, select "NO" and press .
Delete all	▶ YES ▶OK To cancel, select "NO" and press .



Data Transmission

Data Transmission Available from the FOMA Phone	440
Preparation Flow for Data Transmission	443
Installing Transmission Setup Files	444
Transmission Setting by FOMA PC Setup Software	448
FOMA PC Setup Software	448
Installing FOMA PC Setup Software	448
Setting Transmission	451
Carrying Out Set Transmission	455
Uninstalling FOMA PC Setup Software	456
W-TCP Setup	457
APN Setting	458
Setting Dial-up Network	459
Connecting Dial-up	469
Using FirstPass PC Software	471
AT Command	472
AT Command List	473

Data Transmission Available from the FOMA Phone

The data transmission services you can use by connecting the FOMA phone to a personal computer are classified as follows; packet transmission, 64K data transmission, and data transfer (OBEX).

The FOMA phone is equipped with the adapter function for packet transmission.

Types of Transmission Available

For the data transmission, the following operating environment is necessary for your personal computer:

Item	Description
PC main unit	PC/AT compatible model, which allows the use of the CD-ROM drive When using the FOMA USB Cable (option): USB port (Conforms to Universal Serial Bus Specification Rev 1.1.) Display resolution 800 x 600 dots, high color 16 bits or more recommended.
OS	Microsoft® Windows® 98, Windows® 98SE, Windows® Me, Windows® 2000 Professional, Windows® XP Professional/Home Edition (Japanese version in each)
Memory requirements	Microsoft® Windows® 98, Windows® 98SE, Windows® Me: 32 Mbytes or more Windows® 2000 Professional: 64 Mbytes or more Windows® XP Professional/Home Edition: 128 Mbytes or more (Japanese version in each)
Hard disk space size	5 Mbytes or more

The memory requirements and hard disk space size may vary depending on system environment.

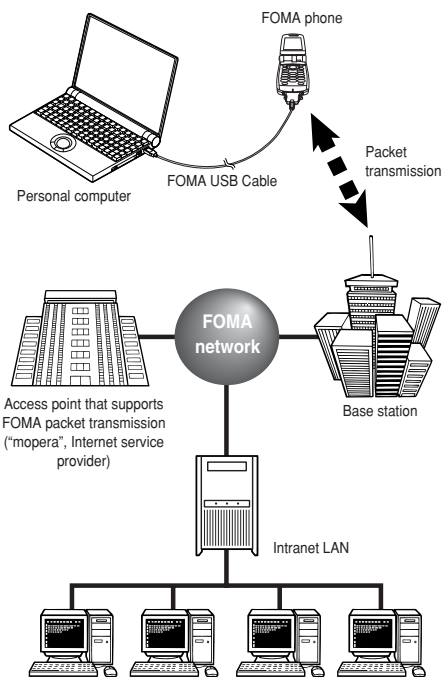
- Windows® Me is an abbreviation of Microsoft® Windows® Millennium Edition operating system.
- Windows® 98 is an abbreviation of Microsoft® Windows® 98 operating system.
- Windows® 98SE is an abbreviation of Microsoft® Windows® 98 operating system Second Edition.
- Windows® 2000 Professional is an abbreviation of Microsoft® Windows® 2000 Professional operating system.
- Windows® XP is an abbreviation of Microsoft® Windows® XP Professional operating system or Microsoft® Windows® XP Home Edition operating system.

Packet Transmission

This service requires a transmission fee according to the amount of data you sent and received. (Maximum download speed: 384 kbps, Maximum upload speed: 64 kbps) It uses an access point which supports FOMA packet transmission such as DoCoMo Internet access service "mopera".

To use this service, connect the FOMA phone to a personal computer via a FOMA USB Cable (option), and then carry out settings. The packet transmission is suitable for using applications through the high-speed transmission. If required, you can transfer data by accessing an Intranet LAN system connected to the FOMA network.

See pages 443 and after, for details on setting and connection.



Information

The packet transmission is charged according to the amount of data you sent and received. Note that a transmission fee becomes expensive if you transmit/retrieve a large amount of data such as by browsing web pages having many images, or by downloading the data.

Purchase a dedicated FOMA USB Cable. (The USB cable for personal computers cannot be used because the shape of the connector differs.)

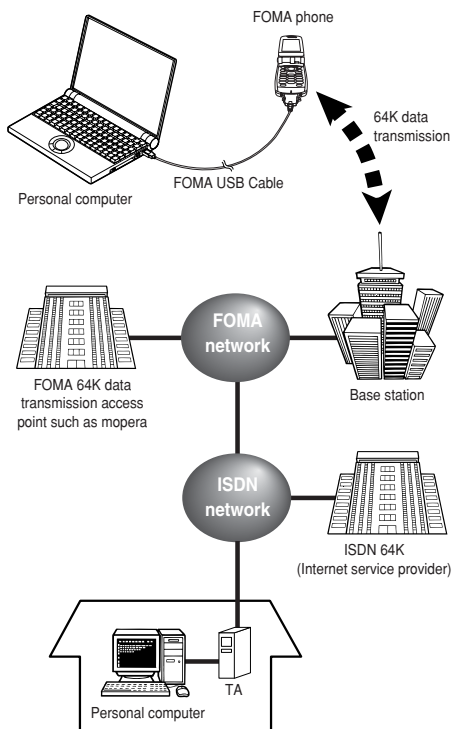
To use the FOMA phone for data communications by connecting with DoCoMo's PDA "sigmarion II" or "musea", update "sigmarion II" or "musea". See DoCoMo web page for how to update "musea" and details.

64K Data Transmission

This service requires a transmission fee according to the duration of connection. Using the FOMA USB Cable (option), you can execute 64 kbps transmission.

To use this service, connect to an access point which supports FOMA 64K data transmission such as DoCoMo Internet access service "mopera", or an ISDN synchronized 64K access point.

For details on setting and connection, see pages 443 and after.



Information

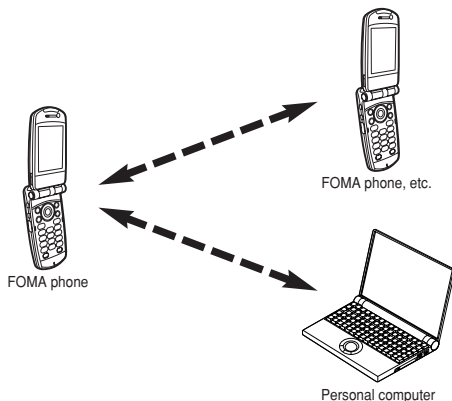
The 64K data transmission is charged according to the duration of connection. Note that a transmission fee may become expensive if you use this service for a long time.

You cannot use PHS services (32K data transmission and 64K data transmission) such as PIAFS from the FOMA phone. Purchase a dedicated FOMA USB Cable. (The USB cable for personal computers cannot be used because the shape of the connector differs.)

To use the FOMA phone for data communications by connecting with DoCoMo's PDA "sigmarion II" or "musea", update "sigmarion II" or "musea". See DoCoMo web page for how to update "musea" and details.

Data Transfer (OBEX)

This service transfers data using infrared rays or FOMA USB Cable (option). With the Ir exchange, you can transfer data to another FOMA phone or a device having Ir exchange function such as a personal computer. To perform data transfer (OBEX) between the FOMA phone and personal computer via the FOMA USB Cable, install the data link software (see page 519). When using the FOMA USB Cable, install the P700i transmission setup files (see pages 444 to 447).



Notes for Using Data Transmission

Charge of Internet service provider

To use Internet, you need to pay the charge for the Internet service provider you use. Besides the FOMA service fee, you need to directly pay the charge to the Internet service provider. For details on the charge, contact the Internet service provider you use. If using DoCoMo Internet connection service "mopera", you can use Internet with transmission charge only (application is not required).

Setting access point (Internet service provider, etc.)

The access point for the packet transmission and 64K data transmission differs. To use the packet transmission, connect to an access point for packet transmission. To use the 64K data transmission, connect to an access point which supports FOMA 64K data transmission or ISDN synchronized 64K.

You cannot use to the DoPa access point.

You cannot use to PHS 64K or 32K data transmission access point such as PIAFS.

About user authentication for accessing network

User certification (ID and password) may be required at connection to some access points. In this case, enter your ID and password on the transmission software (dial-up network). ID and password are specified by the Internet service provider or network administrator of the access point. For details, contact the provider or administrator.

About access authentication for using browser

If you connect to the site required access authentication by FirstPass (user certificate), FirstPass (user certificate) may be required. In that case, install the FirstPass PC software from the attached CD-ROM and do the setting. See "FirstPassManual" (PDF format) in the "FirstPassPCSoft" folder of the CD-ROM for details. Adobe Reader (version 6.0 or higher is recommended) is required to view "FirstPassManual (PDF format)". If it is not installed in your personal computer, you can download the latest version from the web page of Adobe Systems Incorporated (communication charge is applied separately). For details, see the web page of Adobe Systems Incorporated.

Conditions of packet transmission and 64K data transmission

To carry out the transmission using the FOMA phone, the following conditions are required:

- The personal computer to be used should support FOMA USB Cable (option).
- The PDA to be used should support FOMA packet transmission and 64K data transmission.
- Within the FOMA service area
- For packet transmission, the access point supports packet transmission of the FOMA.
- For 64K data transmission, the access point supports the FOMA 64K data transmission or ISDN synchronized 64K.

Even when these conditions are satisfied, if the base station is congested or the radio wave condition is bad, you may not carry out transmission.

Glossary of Terms

APN

The abbreviation of Access Point Name. Used to identify an Internet service provider or Intranet LAN system you access for packet transmission. For example, "mopera" is expressed with character string "mopera.ne.jp".

cid

The abbreviation of Context Identifier. A registration number of the APN that is registered in the FOMA phone in advance for packet transmission. In the FOMA phone, you can register up to 10 cid numbers (1 to 10).

Administrator right

Means the right with which the user can access all functions of Windows® 2000 Professional or Windows® XP system, in this manual. Generally, the user in the administrators group has this right. User without the administrator right can use only specific functions of the system; therefore, such users cannot install the transmission setup files (driver).

DNS

The abbreviation of Domain Name System, which converts a name easy-to-understand for human-being, for example, "ntdocomo.co.jp", into an address indicated by a number easy-to-manage for computer.

OBEX

The abbreviation of Object Exchange, which is the international data transmission protocol defined by IrDA (Infrared Data Association).

Using devices and software based on the OBEX protocol, you can transfer data among various devices such as mobile phone, personal computer, digital camera, and printer.

IrDA

The abbreviation of Infrared Data Association, which is the international organization that establishes and promotes a protocol of data transmission via infrared rays.

IrMC

The abbreviation of Ir Mobile Communications, which is the protocol defined by IrDA that provides how to exchange data such as phonebook, schedule, mail or free memo. It also provides that transmission between devices is based on the OBEX protocol.

QoS

The abbreviation of Quality of Service, which indicates the quality of network services. For the QoS setting of the FOMA phone, you can specify a connection at a free baud rate or only at the maximum baud rate (upload: 64 kbps, download: 384 kbps). (After connection, the baud rate is variable.)

For details, see page 478.

W-TCP

A TCP parameter used to maximize the TCP/IP transmission capability when carrying out the packet transmission in the FOMA network. To maximize the transmission performance of the FOMA phone under the "Wireless," "W-CDMA", or "Windows®" environment, you need to optimize the TCP parameter.

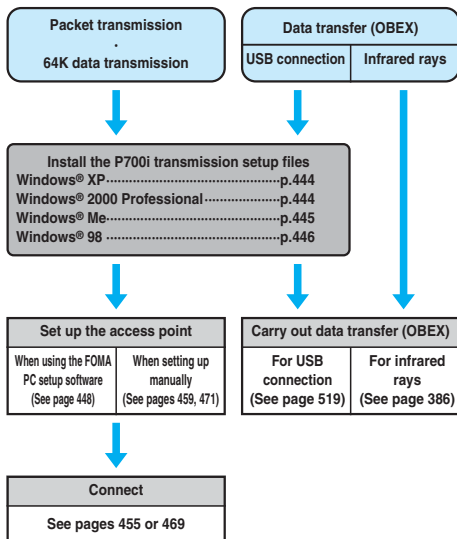
W-CDMA

One of the third-generation mobile phone transmission systems (IMT-2000) authorized as the global standards.

The FOMA phone conforms to the W-CDMA standard.

Preparation Flow for Data Transmission

The following outline shows a preparation flow for packet transmission, 64K data transmission, and data transfer (OBEX).



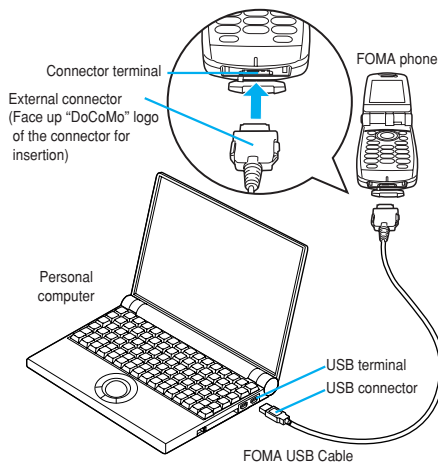
Attached "FOMA P700i CD-ROM"

When connecting the FOMA phone to your personal computer via the FOMA USB Cable (option) for packet transmission, install the "P700i transmission setup files (driver)" from the attached "FOMA P700i CD-ROM" into the personal computer. If possible, also install the "FOMA PC設定ソフト (FOMA PC setup software)". See pages 444 to 447 for details on how to install the "P700i transmission setup files (driver)". See page 448 for details on how to install the "FOMA PC設定ソフト (FOMA PC setup software)".

Connecting the FOMA Phone to a PC

The following operation explains how to connect the FOMA USB Cable (option).



- 1 Check the direction of the connector terminal of the FOMA phone, then straight insert the external connector of the FOMA USB Cable until it clicks.
- 2 Connect the USB connector of the FOMA USB Cable to the USB terminal of the personal computer.



Information

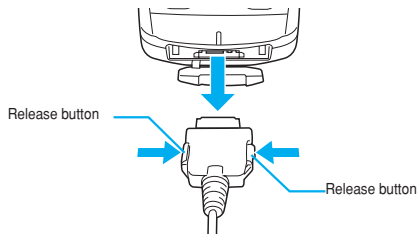
Do not forcibly insert the FOMA USB Cable. Insert each connector in the correct direction at the correct angle; otherwise, you will fail connection. When the direction and angle are correct, you can insert a connector smoothly without the strong force. If you fail to insert a connector, check its shape and direction once more without inserting a connector forcibly.

Purchase a dedicated FOMA USB Cable. (The USB cable for personal computers cannot be used because the shape of the connector differs.)

Symbol "  " appears on the FOMA phone when the FOMA phone recognizes the connection with the personal computer after you install the transmission setup files for packet transmission or 64K data transmission. Before you install the transmission setup files, the FOMA phone does not recognize the connection with the personal computer, and symbol "  " does not appear.

Removing

1. While holding down the release buttons of the external connector of the FOMA USB Cable, straight pull out the connector.
2. Pull out the FOMA USB Cable from the USB terminal of the personal computer.



Information

Do not disconnect the FOMA USB Cable forcibly. It may result in a failure.

Do not perform connection and disconnection of the FOMA USB Cable in succession.

Once you connect the cable, wait for a while, then perform disconnections and vice versa.

Installing Transmission Setup Files

Installing into Windows® XP

When installing the P700i transmission setup files (driver) under Windows® XP, be sure to use the administrator right of the personal computer; otherwise, an error will occur. For details on how to set administrator right of the personal computer, contact the manufacturer of your personal computer, or Microsoft Corporation.

1 Connect the FOMA phone and the FOMA USB Cable (option). (See page 443)

2 Start Windows®, then set the “FOMA P700i CD-ROM” into the personal computer.

3 Exit the launcher screen.

This screen automatically appears when you set “FOMA P700i CD-ROM” into the personal computer. It may not appear depending on settings of your personal computer. In this case, go to step 4.

If this screen appears during installation of the P700i transmission setup files, click “閉じる (Close)”.

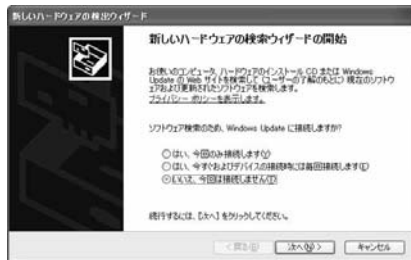
4 Turn on the power of the FOMA phone, then connect the FOMA USB Cable, which is already connected to the FOMA phone, to the personal computer.

5 Start installation.

Pop-up message “新しいハードウェアが見つかりました (New hardware was found)” is displayed for a few seconds, then the screen below appears.

Select “いいえ、今回は接続しません (No, do not connect now)” and click in “次へ (Next)”.

This display might not come up depending on the personal computer you use.



6 Select how to install.

Select “一覧または特定の場所からインストールする (詳細)” [Install from the list or a specific place (details)], then click “次へ (Next)”.



7 Select a driver.

Select “次の場所で最適なドライバを検索する (Search for the appropriate driver in the place below)”, and uncheck “リムーバブルメディア (フロッピー、CD-ROMなど)” を検索 [Search for the removable media (floppy disk, CD-ROM, etc.)]. Then check “次の場所を含める (Including the place below)”.

Click “参照 (Browse)”; specify “<CD-ROM drive-name>; ¥ USB Driver ¥ Win2k_XP”; then click “次へ (Next)”. (In <CD-ROM drive-name>, specify the CD-ROM drive name of your personal computer.)

The driver is common to Windows® 2000 Professional.



8 Click “完了 (Finish)”.

9 Then, install all the rest three P700i transmission setup files (driver) (see page 447) according to steps 5 to 8.

After you end the installation of all the P700i transmission setup files (driver), pop-up message “新しいハードウェアがインストールされ、使用準備ができました。 (New hardware was installed, and the system was ready.)” appears for a few seconds on the indicator of the task bar.

Then confirm that the P700i transmission setup files are installed normally. (See page 446)

Installing into Windows® 2000 Professional

When installing the P700i transmission setup files (driver) under Windows® 2000 Professional, be sure to use the administrator right. If user without the administrator right installs the P700i transmission setup files (driver), an error will occur. For administrator setting, contact the manufacturer of your personal computer, or Microsoft Corporation.

1 Connect the FOMA phone and the FOMA USB Cable (option). (See page 443)

2 Start Windows®, then set “FOMA P700i CD-ROM” into the personal computer.

3 Exit the launcher screen.

This screen automatically appears when you set “FOMA P700i CD-ROM” into the personal computer. It may not appear depending on settings of your personal computer. In this case, go to step 4.

If this screen appears during installation of the P700i transmission setup files, click “閉じる (Close)”.

4 Turn on the power of the FOMA phone, then connect the FOMA USB Cable, which is already connected to the FOMA phone, to the personal computer.

5 Start installation.

Click “次へ (Next)”.



6 Select “デバイスに最適なドライバを検索する (推奨) [Search for the appropriate driver for the device (recommended)]”, then click “次へ (Next)”.

Some personal computers display “USB DEVICE”.

7 Select “場所を指定 (Specify a place)”, then click “次へ (Next)”.

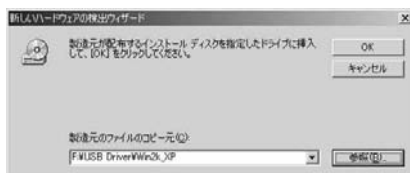
8 Specify a folder you want to search for.

The folder name is

“<CD-ROM drive-name>; ¥ USB Driver ¥ Win2k_XP”.

After specifying a folder you want to search for, click “OK”.

(In <CD-ROM drive-name>, specify the CD-ROM drive name of your personal computer.)



9 Confirm the driver name (see page 447), then click “次へ (Next)”.

“FOMA P700i” is displayed in this example.

Some personal computers display “USB DEVICE”.

10 Click “完了 (Finish)”.

11 Then, install all the rest three P700i transmission setup files (driver) (see page 447) according to steps 5 to 10.

Then confirm that the P700i transmission setup files are installed normally. (See page 446)

Installing into Windows® Me

1 Connect the FOMA phone and the FOMA USB Cable (option). (See page 443)

2 Start Windows®, then set “FOMA P700i CD-ROM” into the personal computer.

3 Exit the launcher screen.

This screen automatically appears when you set “FOMA P700i CD-ROM” into the personal computer. It may not appear depending on settings of your personal computer. In this case, go to step 4.

If this screen appears during installation of the P700i transmission setup files, click “閉じる (Close)”.

4 Turn on the power of the FOMA phone, then connect the FOMA USB Cable, which is already connected to the FOMA phone, to the personal computer.

5 Start installation.

Select “ドライバの場所を指定する (詳しい知識のある方向け) [Specify a driver place (for user familiar to computer)]”, then click “次へ (Next)”.



6 Select a driver.

Select “使用中のデバイスに最適なドライバを検索する (推奨) [Search for the appropriate driver for the device you are using (recommended)]”, and check “検索場所の指定 (Specify a search place)”.

Then click “参照 (Browse)”;

specify “<CD-ROM drive-name>; ¥ USB Driver ¥ Win98_Me”; then click “次へ (Next)”.

(In <CD-ROM drive-name>, specify the CD-ROM drive name of your personal computer.)

The driver is common to Windows® 98.



7 Confirm the driver name (see page 447), then click “次へ (Next)”.

“FOMA P700i” is displayed in this example.

8 Click “完了 (Finish)”.

9 Then, install all the rest six P700i transmission setup files (driver) (see page 447) according to steps 5 to 8.

Then confirm that the P700i transmission setup files are installed normally. (See page 446)

Installing into Windows® 98

1 Connect the FOMA phone and the FOMA USB Cable (option). (See page 443)

2 Start Windows®, then set “FOMA P700i CD-ROM” into the personal computer.

3 Exit the launcher screen.

This screen automatically appears when you set “FOMA P700i CD-ROM” into the personal computer. It may not appear depending on settings of your personal computer. In this case, go to step 4.

If this screen appears during installation of the P700i transmission setup files, click “閉じる (Close)”.

4 Turn on the power of the FOMA phone, then connect the FOMA USB Cable, which is already connected to the FOMA phone, to the personal computer.

5 Start installation.
Click “次へ (Next)”.



6 Select “使用中のデバイスに最適なドライバを検索する (推奨) [Search for the appropriate driver for the device you are using (recommended)]”, then click “次へ (Next)”.

7 Specify a folder to be searched for.

Select “検索場所の指定 (Specify a search place)”, then specify a folder name. The folder name is “<CD-ROM drive-name> ¥ USB Driver ¥ Win98_Me”.

After specifying a folder you want to search for, click “次へ(Next)”. (In <CD-ROM drive-name>, specify the CD-ROM drive name of your personal computer.)



8 Select “更新されたドライバ (推奨) [Updated driver (recommended)]”, then click “次へ (Next)”.

9 Confirm the driver name (see page 447), then click “次へ (Next)”.

“FOMA P700i” is displayed in this example.

10 Click “完了 (Finish)”.

11 Then, install all the rest six P700i transmission setup files (driver) (see page 447) according to steps 5 to 10.

Then confirm that the P700i transmission setup files are installed normally.

Confirming Installed Driver

You can confirm that the P700i transmission setup files (driver) are installed normally.

1 <For Windows® 98, Windows® Me, and Windows® 2000 Professional>
“スタート (Start)” ▶ “設定 (Setting)” ▶ Open “コントロールパネル (Control panel)” ▶ Open “システム (System)”

<For Windows® XP>

“スタート (Start)” ▶ Open “コントロールパネル (Control panel)” ▶ “パフォーマンスとメンテナンス (Performance and maintenance)” ▶ Click the “システム (System)” icon

2 <For Windows® 98 and Windows® Me>

Click the “デバイスマネージャ (Device manager)” tab

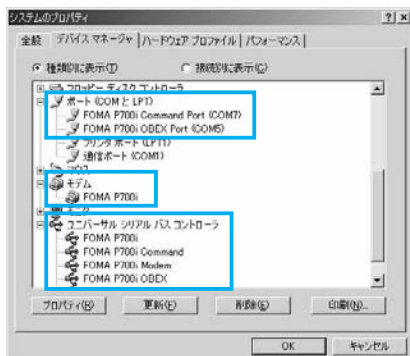
<For Windows® 2000 Professional and Windows® XP>

Click the “ハードウェア (Hardware)” tab ▶

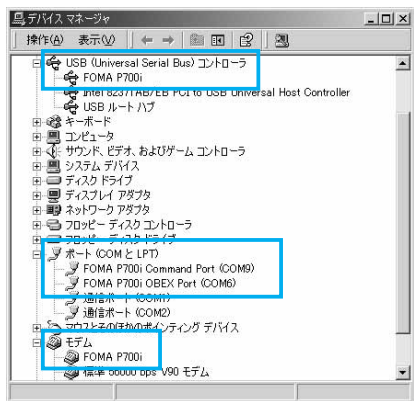
Click “デバイスマネージャ (Device manager)”

3 Click each device, then confirm the installed driver names.

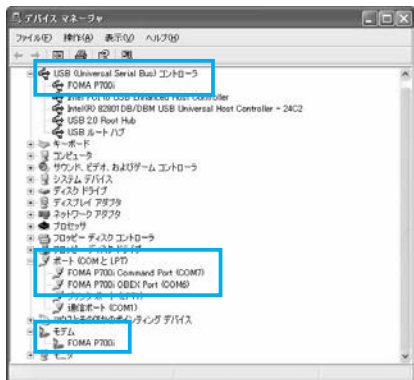
Confirm that all driver names are displayed under “ポート (Port) (COM/LPT)”, “モデム (Modem)”, and “ユニバーサルシリアルバスコントローラ (Universal serial bus controller)”.



For Windows® 98 and Windows® Me



For Windows® 2000 Professional



For Windows® XP

The COM port number varies depending on the personal computer you use.

The following drivers are installed by installation of the P700i transmission setup file:

Device name	P700i transmission setup file (driver) name
ポート (Port) (COM/LPT)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • FOMA P700i Command Port • FOMA P700i OBEX Port
モデム (Modem)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • FOMA P700i
ユニバーサルシリアルバスコントローラ、or USB (Universal Serial Bus) コントローラ (Universal Serial Bus controller)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • FOMA P700i • FOMA P700i OBEX • FOMA P700i Modem • FOMA P700i Command

Windows® Me or Windows® 98 only

- To set an access point with the FOMA PC setup software, see page 448.
- To set an access point without the FOMA PC setup software, see page 459.
- To perform the data transfer with the FOMA USB Cable (option), see page 519.

Information

Be sure to install all the P700i transmission setup files at one time. If you remove the FOMA USB Cable from the personal computer during installation or click the “キャンセル (Cancel)” button to stop installation, the P700i transmission setup files may not be installed normally. In this case, uninstall the P700i transmission setup files once, then install them again.

If you install the P700i transmission setup files of a different OS, the system will not run normally. In this case, uninstall the transmission setup files once, and then correctly install the files.

Uninstalling Transmission Setup Files

When uninstalling the P700i transmission setup files (driver) is necessary (such as when upgrading the version), perform the operation below. The description here shows how to uninstall the P700i transmission setup files under Windows® XP.

- 1** If the FOMA phone is connected to a personal computer via the FOMA USB Cable (option), disconnect the FOMA USB Cable.
- 2** Start Windows®, then set “FOMA P700i CD-ROM” into the personal computer.
- 3** Exit the launcher screen.
This screen automatically appears when you set “FOMA P700i CD-ROM” into the personal computer. It may not appear depending on settings of your personal computer. In this case, go to step 4.
- 4** From “マイコンピュータ (My computer)”, right-click the CD-ROM icon, then select “開く (Open)”.
- 5** Double-click the “USB Driver” folder in the CD-ROM.
- 6** Double-click the “UnInst” folder.
- 7** Double-click “p700i_un.exe”.
“p700i_un” may appear depending on the setting of your personal computer.
- 8** Click “OK”.
To cancel the uninstallation, click “キャンセル (Cancel)”.
- 9** Click “はい (Yes)” to restart Windows®.
Uninstallation is then completed.
If you click “いいえ (No)”, restart Windows® manually.



Transmission Setting by FOMA PC Setup Software

STEP1 Install Software

Install the "FOMA PC setup software".

See this page for installation.

If the old-version "W-TCP setup software" and old-version "APN setup software" are already installed in your personal computer, you cannot install the "FOMA PC setup software"; so, uninstall them. The "FOMA PC setup software" is applicable to all FOMA phones that support data transmission.

STEP2 Prepare for Setup

Prepare for setup.

Before setup, confirm that the FOMA phone is connected to your personal computer and normally recognized by the personal computer. See page 443 for connection of the FOMA USB Cable (option). If the FOMA phone is not normally recognized by the personal computer, you cannot perform settings and transmission. See page 446 for confirming whether the FOMA phone is normally recognized by the personal computer. See pages 444 to 447 for how to install the P700i transmission setup files.

STEP3 Setting Operation

Carry out the appropriate setting for the transmission you use.

See page 451 for setting the packet transmission from "Easy Setting".

When using "mopera" as an access pointpage 451

When using a provider other than "mopera" as

an access pointpage 452

See page 453 for setting the 64K data transmission from "Easy Setting".

When using "mopera" as an access pointpage 453

When using a provider other than "mopera" as

an access pointpage 454

See page 457 for optimizing the packet transmission performance using "W-TCP Setup".

See page 458 for setting "access point name (APN)".

STEP4 Connection

Connect to the Internet.

FOMA PC Setup Software

To connect the FOMA phone to a personal computer and perform the packet transmission or 64K data transmission, you need to define various settings related to the transmission. Using the FOMA PC setup software, you can easily carry out the settings below. If required, you can set the packet transmission and 64K data transmission without using the FOMA PC setup software. (See pages 459, 471)

The "FOMA PC setup software" is applicable to all FOMA phones that support data transmission.

Easy setting

You can "create dial-up setting for FOMA data transmission" according to the guide, and also automatically carry out "W-TCP setup" and so on.

W-TCP setup

Before using "FOMA packet transmission", optimize transmission settings in your personal computer.

To maximize the transmission performance, you need to optimize transmission settings using W-TCP setup.

Access point name (APN) setting

You can set an access point name (APN) required for packet transmission.

The FOMA packet transmission does not use an ordinary phone number as an access point unlike the 64K data transmission.

You need to register an access point name (APN) in the FOMA phone in advance, and specify the registration number (cid) in the access point number field for connection.

For "mopera", the access point names (APN) is registered in cid 1. To connect to the other providers or Intranet LAN system, newly register their access point names (APN).

"cid" is the abbreviation of "Context Identifier", the number for storing the packet transmission access point (APN) to the FOMA phone.

Installing FOMA PC Setup Software

To connect the FOMA phone to your personal computer and perform packet transmission or 64K data transmission, you need to define settings for the transmission.

Using the FOMA PC setup software, you can easily set up dial-up, W-TCP, and access point name (APN).

Notes for Installing FOMA PC Setup Software

Confirm the operating environment

Use the FOMA PC setup software under the following environment:

Item	Description
PC main unit	PC/AT compatible model When using FOMA USB Cable (option): USB port (Conforms to Universal Serial Bus Specification Rev 1.1)
OS	Microsoft® Windows® 98, Windows® 98SE, Windows® Me, Windows® 2000 Professional, Windows® XP (Japanese version in each)
Memory requirements	Microsoft® Windows® 98, Windows® 98SE, Windows® Me, Windows® 2000 Professional: 64 Mbytes or more Windows® XP: 128 Mbytes or more
Hard disk space size	5 Mbytes or more

The memory requirements and hard disk space size may vary depending on system environment.

Confirm whether the FOMA phone is normally recognized by your personal computer

Before installing the “FOMA PC setup software”, you need to connect the FOMA phone to your personal computer via the FOMA USB Cable (option) and normally register the P700i transmission setup files (see page 447) on the device of the personal computer. (See page 446)

When you first connect the FOMA phone to your personal computer

The Wizard shown below starts.

To use the FOMA data transmission, you need to register the FOMA phone in your personal computer as a “transmission device”.

See pages 444 to 447 for installation of the P700i transmission setup file.



Administrator right of personal computer

To install/uninstall the “FOMA PC setup software” on Windows® 2000 Professional or Windows® XP, user needs to get the administrator right of the personal computer. If user without the administrator right performs installation/uninstallation, an error will occur. For setting of the administrator right of personal computer, contact the manufacturer of your personal computer, or Microsoft Corporation.

Information

If the FOMA phone is recognized with a port number larger than COM20, you cannot retrieve or write the information of APN when setting APN.

Installing FOMA PC Setup Software

Explained here uses the displays for when install the FOMA PC setup software on Windows® 2000 Professional. The displayed screens are slightly different depending on the personal computer you use.

- 1 Set the attached “FOMA P700i CD-ROM” into your personal computer.
- 2 To install FOMA PC Setup Software, click “FOMA PC設定ソフト (FOMA PC Setup Software)”.

If the CD-ROM does not automatically play for any reason, select the CD-ROM from “マイコンピュータ (My Computer)”, then double-click “SETUP.EXE” in the “FOMA_PCSET” folder.



- 3 Click “次へ (Next)”.

Before starting setup, confirm that no other programs are currently running. If any program is running, click “キャンセル (Cancel)” to save and exit the program, then restart installation.

See page 450 if the screen appears to indicate that the old-version “W-TCP設定ソフト (W-TCP setup software)” and old-version “APN設定ソフト (APN setup software)” or “FOMA PC設定ソフト (FOMA PC setup Software)” are installed in the operating system.

- 4 Confirm the displayed contract contents. If you agree with the contents, click “はい (Yes)”.

If you click “いいえ (No)”, installation stops.

5 Select components.

After setup, you can select whether "W-TCP setup" resides on the task tray. If "W-TCP setup" is on the task tray, you can easily set or release "W-TCP transmission". If there is no problem specially, click "次へ (Next)" as "タスクトレイに常駐する (Reside on the task tray)" remains checked, then continue installation.

If you uncheck "タスクトレイに常駐する (Reside on the task tray)", you can select "メニュー (Menu)" "W-TCP設定をタスクトレイに常駐させる (Reside the W-TCP setup on the task tray)" on the FOMA PC setup software to modify settings.



The "W-TCP setup" icon appears on the task tray at the bottom right (ordinarily) of the desk top.



6 Confirm the installation destination, then click "次へ (Next)".

To change the installation destination, click "参照 (Browse)"; specify any installation destination; then click "次へ (Next)".

(You can install the FOMA PC setup software in a different drive due to the size of the hard disk space. In the ordinary operation, go to the next as it is.)



7 Confirm the program folder name, then click "次へ (Next)".

To change the program folder name, enter a new one, then click "次へ (Next)".



8 Click "完了 (Finish)".

After setup is completed, the "FOMA PC setup software" operation screen appears.

Screens displayed at installation of FOMA PC setup software

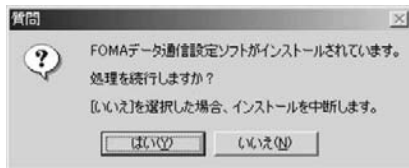
When the old-version "W-TCP設定ソフト (W-TCP setup software)" is installed



This screen appears when the old-version W-TCP environment setup software is installed in the system.

From "アプリケーションの追加と削除 (Add and delete application)", uninstall the old-version "W-TCP environment setup software".

When the old-version "APN設定ソフト (APN setup software)" is installed



This screen appears when the old-version "FOMA data transmission setup software" is installed in the system.

If you click "はい (Yes)", the system automatically uninstalls the old-version "APN setup software" and installs the "FOMA PC setup software".

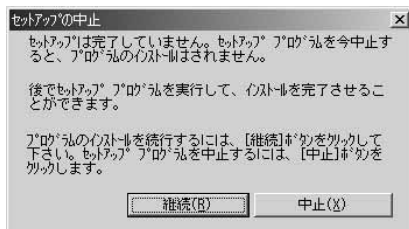
When "FOMA PC設定ソフト (FOMA PC setup software)" is already installed



This screen appears when "FOMA PC 設定ソフト (FOMA PC setup software)" is already installed in the system.

Click "はい (Yes)".

When you click "キャンセル (Cancel)" during installation



This screen appears when you click "キャンセル (Cancel)" or "いいえ (No)" during setup operation and instruct the system not to go the next. To continue installation, click "継続 (Continue)". To intentionally cancel installation, click "中止 (Abort)".

Setting Transmission

The operations below explain how to carry out various settings related to the packet transmission and 64K data transmission. There are two types of setting methods: "auto setting" for easy operation and "manual setting" for the user familiar to a personal computer. Before setting, confirm that the FOMA phone is connected to your personal computer.

1 "スタート (Start)" ▶ "プログラム (Programs)" ▶ Open "FOMA PC設定ソフト (FOMA PC setup software)"

<For Windows® XP>

Select "スタート (Start)" "すべてのプログラム (All programs)"
Open "FOMA PC設定ソフト (FOMA PC setup software)"

On the "FOMA PC setup software", you can easily create FOMA dial-up setting by answering (selecting and entering) questions according to the information of "connection method" and "connected provider" you selected.

- See this page for setting the packet transmission from "かんたん設定 (Easy Setting)".
- See page 453 for setting the 64K data transmission from "かんたん設定 (Easy Setting)".
- See page 457 for setting "W-TCP設定 (W-TCP setup)".
- See page 458 for setting "接続先(APN)設定 [access point name (APN setting)]".



Selecting Packet Transmission from かんたん設定 (Easy Setting)

Using "mopera" as an access point

The packet transmission is charged according to the amount of data you sent and received, regardless of the transmission time and distance. (Maximum download speed: 384 kbps, Maximum upload speed: 64 kbps) You do not need to apply for mopera. You can connect to the Internet by just paying transmission fee.

1 Click "かんたん設定 (Easy Setting)".



2 Select "パケット通信 (Packet transmission)", then click "次へ (Next)".

Confirm that "パケット通信 (Packet transmission)" is checked, then click "次へ (Next)".

3 Select "mopera接続 (Connect to mopera)", then click "次へ (Next)".

Confirm that "mopera接続 (Connect to mopera)" is checked, then click "次へ (Next)".

See page 452 to use a provider other than "mopera".

4 Click "OK".

The system obtains the access point name (APN) setting from the FOMA phone connected to the personal computer. Wait for a while.

5 Enter an access point name, then click "次へ (Next)".

You can specify any name for the currently created connection.

Enter a plain name in the "接続名 (Access point name)" field.

You cannot enter the following half-pitch symbols:

¥, /, :, *, ?, !, <, >, |, and " .



6 Click "次へ (Next)".

If the access point is "mopera", you can omit "ユーザー (User name)" and "パスワード (Password)". Click "次へ (Next)" as they remain blank.

For Windows® XP and Windows® 2000 Professional, select "すべてのユーザー (All users)" or "自分のみ (Only myself)".

If you do not know which you should select, select "すべてのユーザー (All users)". (Default)

For Windows® Me and Windows® 98, you do not need to specify the authorized user.

7 Select "最適化を行う (Optimize)", then click "次へ (Next)".

Confirm that "最適化を行う (Optimize)" is checked, then click "次へ (Next)".

If optimized already, the confirmation display to optimize does not appear.

8 Confirm the set information, then click "完了 (Finish)".

The set contents are listed on the screen. Confirm that there is no problem on the set contents, then click "完了 (Finish)".

To change the set contents, click "戻る (Back)".

If "デスクトップにダイヤルアップのショートカットを作成する (Create a dial-up shortcut on the desktop)" is checked, a dial-up shortcut will be created on the desktop.

9 Click “OK”.

Setting has been completed.

Open the dial-up shortcut icon automatically created on the desktop; the connection starts. After confirming that the connection starts, you can activate the Internet browser or mail browser for transmission. (See page 455)

To make the optimization valid, restart the personal computer.



Using the packet transmission

The high-speed packet transmission service is charged according to the amount of data you sent and received; so, you can carry out data transmission without taking care of the transmission time. This service enables the maximum download speed: 384 kbps and maximum upload speed: 64 kbps (except some models). These baud rates vary depending on the transmission environment and congestion state. Note that a transmission fee becomes expensive if you use a large amount of data, for example, you browse sites having many images or download data.

Using a provider other than “mopera” as an access point

The packet transmission is charged according to the amount of data you sent and received, regardless of the transmission time and distance. (Maximum download speed: 384 kbps, Maximum upload speed: 64 kbps) The operation below explains how to use a provider other than “mopera”. To use a provider other than “mopera”, you may need to separately apply a contract with the provider.

1 Click “かんたん設定 (Easy Setting)”.



2 Select “パケット通信 (Packet transmission)”, then click “次へ (Next)”.

Confirm that “パケット通信 (Packet transmission)” is checked, then click “次へ (Next)”.

3 Select “その他 (Others)”, then click “次へ (Next)”.

Confirm that “その他 (Others)” is checked, then click “次へ (Next)”.

4 Click “OK”.

The system obtains the access point name (APN) setting from the FOMA phone connected to the personal computer. Wait for a while.

5 Enter an access point name.

You can specify any name for the currently created connection. Enter a plain name in the “接続名 (Access point name)” field.

You cannot enter the following half-pitch symbols: ¥, /, ;, *, ?, !, <, >, |, and “.”.

In the “接続先 (APN) の選択 (Select an access point name (APN))” field, “mopera.ne.jp” is displayed as the default. Go to the “接続先 (APN) 設定 (Set an access point name (APN))” screen.



6 Click “接続先 (APN) 設定 (Set an access point name (APN))”.

In the “番号 (cid) 1 [Number (cid) 1]” field, “mopera.ne.jp” is specified as the default. Click “追加 (Add)”, then enter the correct access point name (APN) for FOMA packet transmission on the “接続先 (APN) の追加 [Add an access point name (APN)]” screen. Click “OK”.

For a provider access point name (APN), contact the relevant provider.

The “パケット通信設定 (Packet transmission setting)” screen returns. Select an access point name you specified newly. If it is good, click “OK”.



7 Click “詳細情報の設定 (Set detailed information)”.

The screen for specifying “IPアドレス (IP address)” and “ネームサーバー (name server)” appears. When entering dial-up information for the provider you have subscribed or Intranet LAN system, specify addresses according to the entry instruction messages, then click “OK”.

8 Click “次へ (Next)”.

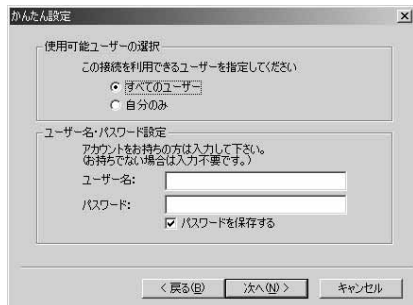
9 Specify “ユーザー名 (User name)” and “パスワード (Password)”, then click “次へ (Next)”.

To specify the user name and password, correctly enter the information supplied from your service provider, taking care of uppercase and lowercase letters and so on.

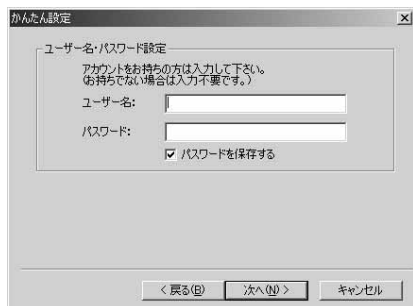
For Windows® XP and Windows® 2000 Professional, select “すべてのユーザー (All users)” or “自分のみ (Only myself)”.

If you do not know which you should select, select “すべてのユーザー (All users)”. (Default)

For Windows® Me and Windows® 98, you do not need to specify the authorized user.



For Windows® XP and Windows® 2000 Professional



For Windows® Me and Windows® 98

10 Select “最適化を行う (Optimize)”, then click “次へ (Next)”.

Confirm that “最適化を行う (Optimize)” is checked, then click “次へ (Next)”.

If optimized, the confirmation display to optimize does not appear.

11 Confirm the set information, then click “完了 (Finish)”.

The set contents are listed on the screen. Confirm that there is no problem on the set contents, then click “完了 (Finish)”.

To change the set contents, click “戻る (Back)”.

If “デスクトップにダイヤルアップのショートカットを作成する (Create a dial-up shortcut on the desktop)” is checked, a dial-up shortcut will be created on the desktop.

12 Click “OK”.

Setting has been completed.

Open the dial-up shortcut icon automatically created on the desktop; the connection starts. After confirming that the connection starts, you can activate the Internet browser or mail browser for transmission. (See page 455)

To make the optimization valid, restart the personal computer.



Using the packet transmission

The high-speed packet transmission service is charged according to the amount of data you sent and received; so, you can carry out data transmission without taking care of the transmission time. This service enables the maximum download speed: 384 kbps and maximum upload speed: 64 kbps (except some models). These baud rates vary depending on the transmission environment and congestion state. Note that a transmission fee becomes expensive if you use a large amount of data, for example, you browse sites having many images or download data.

Selecting 64K Data Transmission from かんたん設定 (Easy Setting)

Using “mopera” as an access point

The 64K data transmission is a transmission system you are charged fee according to the duration of connection. (Maximum transmission speed: 64 kbps) You do not need to apply for mopera. You can connect to the Internet by just paying transmission fee.

1 Click “かんたん設定 (Easy Setting)”.



2 Select “64Kデータ通信 (64K data transmission)”, then click “次へ (Next)”.

Confirm that “64Kデータ通信 (64K data transmission)” is checked, then click “次へ (Next)”.

3 Select “mopera接続 (Connect to mopera)”, then click “次へ (Next)”.

Confirm that “mopera接続 (Connect to mopera)” is checked, then click “次へ (Next)”.

See page 454 for using a provider other than “mopera”.

4 Enter an access point name, then click “次へ (Next)”.

You can specify any name for the currently created connection. Enter a plain name in the “接続名 (Access point name)” field. Confirm that “FOMA P700i” is displayed in the “モデムの選択 (Select a modem)” field.

You cannot enter the following half-pitch symbols:

¥, /, :, *, ?, !, <, >, |, and “.



5 Click “次へ (Next)”.

If the access point is “mopera”, you can omit “ユーザー名 (User name)” and “パスワード (Password)”. Click “次へ (Next)” as they remain blank.

For Windows® XP and Windows® 2000 Professional, select “すべてのユーザー (All users)” or “自分のみ (Only myself)”.
For Windows® Me and Windows® 98, you do not need to specify the authorized user.

6 Confirm the set information, then click “完了 (Finish)”.

The set contents are listed on the screen. Confirm that there is no problem on the set contents, then click “完了 (Finish)”.

To change the set contents, click “戻る (Back)”.

If “デスクトップにダイヤルアップのショートカットを作成する (Create a dial-up shortcut on the desktop)” is checked, a dial-up shortcut will be created on the desktop.

7 Click “OK”.

Setting has been completed.

Open the dial-up shortcut icon automatically created on the desktop; the connection starts. After confirming that the connection starts, you can activate the Internet browser or mail browser for transmission. (See page 455)



Using 64K data transmission

The 64K data transmission service is charged depending on the duration of connection. This service enables the comfortable Internet access at the stable baud rate, 64 kbps. Note that a transmission fee may become expensive if you use this service for a long time.

Using a provider other than “mopera” as an access point

The 64K data transmission is a transmission system you are charged fee according to the duration of connection. (Maximum transmission speed: 64 kbps)
To use a provider other than “mopera”, you may need to separately apply a contract with the provider.

1 Click “かんたん設定 (Easy Setting)”.



2 Select “64Kデータ通信 (64K data transmission)”, then click “次へ (Next)”.

Confirm that “64Kデータ通信 (64K data transmission)” is checked, then click “次へ (Next)”.

3 Select “その他 (Others)”, then click “次へ (Next)”.

Confirm that “その他 (Others)” is checked, then click “次へ (Next)”.

4 Enter dial-up information.

When connecting an ISDN synchronized provider other than “mopera”, register the following items at creation of dial-up information:

“接続名 (Access point name)” (arbitrary)
“モデムの選択 (Select a modem)” (FOMA P700i)
“電話番号 (Phone number of provider)”

Correctly enter these items according to the provider information.

You cannot enter the following half-pitch symbols in the “接続名 (Access point name)” field:
¥, /, ;, *, ?, /, !, <, >, |, and “.



5 Click “詳細情報の設定 (Set detailed information)”.

The screen for specifying “IPアドレス (IP address)” and “ネームサーバー (name server)” appears. When entering dial-up information for the provider you have subscribed or Intranet LAN system, specify addresses according to the entry instruction messages, then click “OK”.

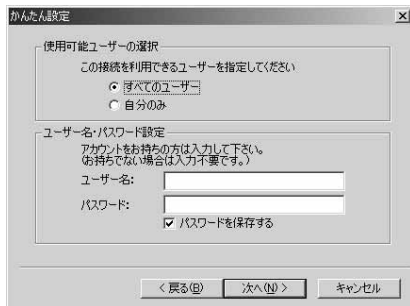
6 Click “次へ (Next)”.

7 Specify “ユーザー名 (User name)” and “パスワード (Password)”, then click “次へ (Next)”.

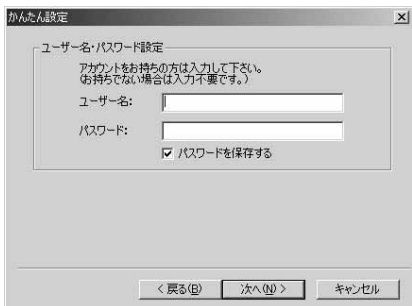
To specify the user name and password, correctly enter the information supplied from your service provider, taking care of uppercase and lowercase letters and so on.

For Windows® XP and Windows® 2000 Professional, select “すべてのユーザー (All users)” or “自分のみ (Only myself)”.

For Windows® Me and Windows® 98, you do not need to specify the authorized user.



For Windows® XP and Windows® 2000 Professional



For Windows® Me and Windows® 98

8 Confirm the set information, then click “完了 (Finish)”.

The set contents are listed on the screen. Confirm that there is no problem on the set contents, then click “完了 (Finish)”.

To change the set contents, click “戻る (Back)”.

If “デスクトップにダイヤルアップのショートカットを作成する (Create a dial-up shortcut on the desktop)” is checked, a dial-up shortcut will be created on the desktop.

9 Click “OK”.

Setting has been finished.

Open the dial-up shortcut icon automatically created on the desktop; the connection starts. After confirming that the connection starts, you can activate the Internet browser or mail browser for transmission. (See this page)



Using 64K data transmission

The 64K data transmission service is charged depending on the duration of connection. This service enables the comfortable Internet access at the stable baud rate, 64 kbps. Note that a transmission fee may become expensive if you use this service for a long time.

Carrying Out Set Transmission

The operation below explains how to carry out dial-up connection, giving Windows® 2000 Professional as an example. Perform the operation shown on page 443 to connect the FOMA phone to your personal computer.

1 Double-click the connection icon on the desktop.

Open the FOMA connection shortcut icon created at transmission setting; the connection for transmission starts, and the connection properties appear.

Displays the icon by the following operation if there is not the shortcut icon.

<Windows® XP>

“スタート (Start)” “すべてのプログラム (All programs)” “アクセサリ (Accessories)” “通信 (Transmissions)” “ネットワーク接続 (Network connection)”

<Windows® 2000 Professional>

“スタート (Start)” “プログラム (Program)” “アクセサリ (Accessories)” “通信 (Transmissions)” “ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続 (Dial up connection to Network)”

<Windows® 98, Windows® Me>

“スタート (Start)” “プログラム (Program)” “アクセサリ (Accessories)” “通信 (Transmissions)” “ダイヤルアップネットワーク (Dial up Network)”



2 Enter “ユーザー名 (User name)” and “パスワード (Password)”, then click “ダイヤル (Dial)”.

When selecting “mopera”, click “ダイヤル (Dial)” as “ユーザー名 (User name)” and “パスワード (Password)” remain blank.

If you put a check mark for “パスワードを保存する (Save the password)”, you do not need to enter the password from the next time.



3 Confirm that the connection is established, then click “OK”.

If you have previously checked set not to display the connection message, this screen does not appear.

You can start the browser software to browse web pages, use e-mail, and so on.



Information

Use only the FOMA phone set with the dial-up setting for dial-up connection. To connect other FOMA phone, you may need to reinstall a transmission setting file.

The FOMA phone does not support Remote Wake up.

The power consumption of the FOMA phone increases during transmission.

During packet transmission, the following icons appear according to the transmission state:



“→” (Transmitting, data sending)

“←” (Transmitting, data receiving)

“↔” (Transmitting, no data sending/receiving)

“↗” (Outgoing or disconnecting)

“↘” (Incoming or disconnecting)

Disconnecting

- 1 Double-click the dial-up icon on the task tray.



Dial-up icon

- 2 Click “切断 (Disconnect)”.

Information

The transmission line may not be disconnected by only exiting the browser software. To surely disconnect the transmission line, perform this operation.

The baud rate displayed on your personal computer may be different from the actual one.

Uninstalling FOMA PC Setup Software

Before Uninstalling

Before uninstalling the “FOMA PC setup software”, reset the contents modified for the FOMA phone to the default.

- 1 Make “W-TCP設定ソフト (W-TCP setup software)” not to reside on the task tray.

Right click “W-TCP設定ソフト (W-TCP setup software)” on the task tray at the bottom right of the screen, and select “常駐させない (Do not make reside)”.

Right-click

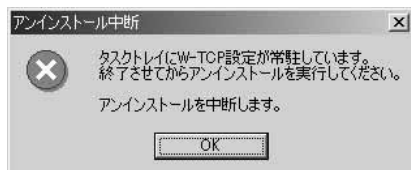
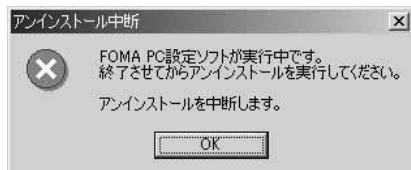


Left-click



- 2 Exit the currently running programs.

If you make an attempt to execute the uninstallation during running of the “FOMA PC setup software” or “W-TCP setup software”, the screen shown below appears. Stop the uninstallation processing, and exit those programs.



Uninstalling

Screen displays described here are for when you uninstall the software using Windows® 2000 Professional. Screen displays may differ depending on the personal computer you use.

- 1 “スタート (Start)” ▶ [“設定 (Setting)”] ▶ “コントロールパネル (Control panel)” ▶ Open “アプリケーションの追加と削除 (Add and delete applications)”²

1 Displayed for Windows® 98, Windows® Me, and Windows® 2000 Professional.

2 “プログラムの追加と削除 (Add and delete programs)” appears for Windows® XP.

- 2 Select “NTT DoCoMo FOMA PC設定ソフト (NTT DoCoMo FOMA PC setup software)”, then click “変更/削除 (Change/Delete)”.

“追加と削除 (Add and Delete)” is displayed for Windows® 98 and Windows® Me.

“変更と削除 (Change and Delete)” is displayed for Windows® XP.



- 3 Confirm the name of the program you want to delete, then click “はい (Yes)”.

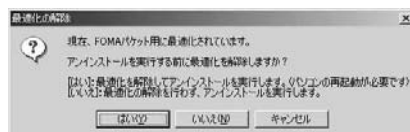
The uninstallation starts, and applications (programs) are deleted.

- 4 Click “OK”.

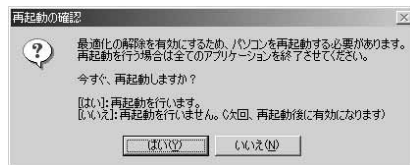
Uninstalling “FOMA PC setup software” is completed.

Releasing “W-TCP最適化 (W-TCP optimization)”

If W-TCP is optimized, the screen shown below appears. To release the optimization, click “はい (Yes)”.



To make the settings valid, restart the personal computer.



W-TCP Setup

Role of W-TCP

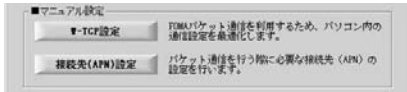
The “W-TCP設定ソフト (W-TCP setup software)” is a “TCP parameter setup” tool used to optimize the TCP/IP transmission capability at packet transmission via the FOMA network. To maximize the transmission performance of the FOMA phone, you need to optimize the transmission setting by this software. If you put a check mark for “最適化を行う (Optimize)” in “かんたん設定 (Easy Setting)” to create dial-up information, you do not need to carry out the optimization here.

Optimization Setting and its Deletion

For Windows® 98/Windows® Me/
Windows® 2000 Professional

1 <Operating from “FOMA PC設定ソフト (FOMA PC setup software)”>

Start the program, then click “W-TCP設定 (W-TCP setup)” in “マニュアル設定 (Manual setting)”.



<Operating from the task tray>
Click the “W-TCP icon”
on the task tray to start
the program.



2 <If not optimized>

Click “最適化を行う (Optimize)”.

<If optimized>

Click “最適化を解除する (Release optimization)”.

When releasing the setting to carry out transmission via a device other than the FOMA phone, release the optimization.

3 Click “OK”.

4 Click “はい (Yes)”.

To make the settings valid, restart the personal computer.

For Windows® XP

You can optimize the setting for each dial-up information for Windows® XP.

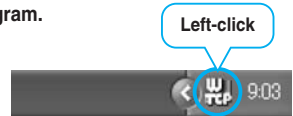
1 <Operating from “FOMA PC設定ソフト (FOMA PC setup software)”>

Start the program, then click “W-TCP設定 (W-TCP setup)” in “マニュアル設定 (Manual setup)”.



<Operating from the task tray>

Click the “W-TCP icon” on the task tray to
start the program.



2 <If the system setting is not optimized>

Click “最適化を行う (Optimize)”.

Select the dial-up information you want to optimize, then click “実行 (Execute)”; the system setting and dial-up setting are optimized.

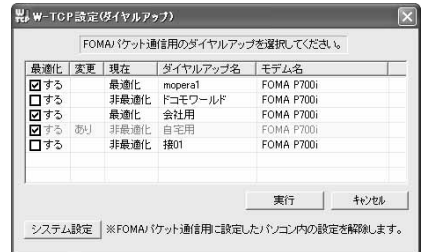
<If the system setting is optimized>

If required, modify the contents.

<Releasing the optimization>

Click “システム設定 (System setup)” ▶ Click
“最適化を解除する (Release optimization)”

When releasing the setting to carry out transmission via a device other than the FOMA phone, release the optimization.



3 Click “OK”.

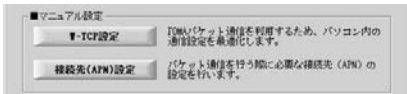
4 Click “はい (Yes)”.

To make the settings valid, restart the personal computer.

APN Setting

The operations below explains how to set an access point name (APN) for packet transmission. The FOMA packet transmission does not use an ordinary phone number as an access point unlike the 64K data transmission. For each access point, register an access point name (APN) in the FOMA phone beforehand, then specify the registration number (cid) in the access point phone number field for connection. At purchase cid1 already contains "mopera.ne.jp" that is access point (APN) of mopera. To specify cid, use numbers 2 to 10. "cid" is the abbreviation of "Context Identifier", the number for storing the packet transmission's access point (APN) in the FOMA phone.

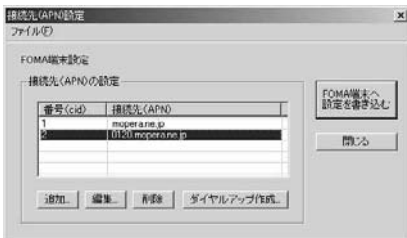
- 1 Start the program, then click "接続先 (APN) 設定 [Access point name (APN) setting]" in "マニュアル設定 (Manual setting)".



- 2 Click "OK".
Click "OK"; the system automatically accesses the FOMA phone connected to your personal computer, and reads the registered "access point name (APN) setting". You can also obtain the setting information from "ファイル (File)" "FOMA端末から設定を取得 (Obtain the setting from the FOMA phone)" on the menu in step 3.

- 3 Specify an access point name (APN).

If the FOMA phone is not connected to your personal computer, this screen does not appear.



Adding, editing, and deleting an access point name (APN)

- To add an access point name (APN), click "追加 (Add)".
- To edit (correct) a registered access point name (APN), click "編集 (Edit)".
- To delete a registered access point name (APN), select the target access point name (APN), then click "削除 (Delete)".
 - * You cannot delete the access point name (APN) registered in "cid1".

Saving data into a file

From the menu, select "ファイル (File)" "上書き保存 (Overwrite and save)" or "名前を付けて保存 (Rename and save)"; you can back up the access point name (APN) information registered in the FOMA phone and save the currently edited access point name (APN) information.

Reading data from a file

From the menu, select "ファイル (File)" "開く (Open)"; you can obtain the access point name (APN) saved in the personal computer.

Reading access point name (APN) information from the FOMA phone

Click "FOMA端末から設定を取得 (Obtain the setting from the FOMA phone)"; you can obtain the access point name (APN) information from the FOMA phone.

Writing access point name (APN) information to the FOMA phone

Click "FOMA端末へ設定を書き込む (Write the setting to the FOMA phone)"; you can write the access point name (APN) information to the FOMA phone.

Dial-up information creation function

Select an access point name you add or edit on the access point name (APN) setting screen, then click "ダイヤルアップ作成 (Create dial-up information)"; you can create dial-up information for packet transmission. The FOMA phone setting writing confirmation display then appears, then click "はい (Yes)". After writing ends, the "パケット通信ダイヤルアップ作成画面 (packet transmission dial-up information creation)" screen appears.

Enter any access point name, then click "アカウント・パスワードの設定 (Specify account and password)". (Not required for "mopera".)

Enter the user name and password (select the authorized user for Windows® 2000 Professional and Windows® XP), then click "OK". If your service provider asks you to specify IP and DNS information, click "詳細情報の設定 (Set detailed information)", and register the required information. Then click "OK".

After entering information, click "OK". Dial-up information is created. See page 451 for using "mopera".

See page 452 for using a provider other than "mopera".

Information

The access point name (APN) is information to be registered in the FOMA phone, so if you connect another FOMA phone, you need to register the access point name (APN) again.

To continue using the access point name (APN) of the personal computer, register the same cid number and the same access point name (APN) to the FOMA phone.

Setting Dial-up Network

Setting Packet Transmission

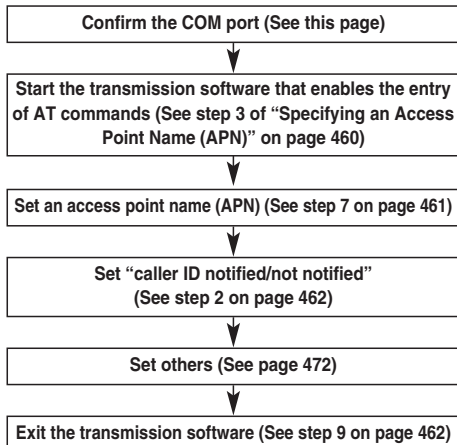
The operation below explains how to set a connection for packet transmission without using the “FOMA PC設定ソフト (FOMA PC setup software)”.

The packet transmission uses AT commands to carry out the settings from a personal computer. To specify settings, transmission software to enter AT command is required. This operation is explained using “hyper terminal”, which is attached to Windows® as the standard software.

When using DoCoMo Internet access service “mopera”, you do not need to specify an access point name (APN) (see page 460).

You can set “caller ID notified/not notified” (see page 462) as required. (You need to set “caller ID notified” when using “mopera”.)

<Packet transmission setting flow using AT commands>



AT commands

The AT commands are used to control a modem. The FOMA phone, which conforms to the AT commands, supports some extended commands and unique AT commands.

By entering AT commands, you can carry out detailed setting for packet transmission and FOMA phone, and confirm (display) the setting contents.

If the AT commands you enter do not appear on the screen, enter “ATE1 []”.

Confirming COM Port Number

To manually carry out the transmission setting, you need to specify a COM port number, which is assigned to the “FOMA P700i” modem embedded after you install the P700i transmission setup file. The confirmation method varies depending on the operating system of your personal computer.

When using DoCoMo Internet access service “mopera”, you need to specify no access point name (APN); therefore, you do not need to confirm the modem.

For Windows® 98 and Windows® Me

- 1 “スタート (Start)” ▶ “設定 (Setting)” ▶ Open “コントロールパネル (Control panel)”
- 2 Open “モデム (Modem)” in “コントロールパネル (Control panel)”.
If no “モデム (Modem)” appears on the control panel, click “すべてのコントロールパネルのオプションを表示する (Display all options of the control panel)”.
- 3 Confirm that “FOMA P700i” is set up, then click the “検出結果 (Search result)” tab.



- 4 Confirm the COM port assigned to the “FOMA P700i” modem, then click “OK”.

The COM port number you confirmed is used to specify an access point name (APN) (see page 460).

The contents displayed on the property display and COM port number vary depending on the personal computer you use.



For Windows® 2000 Professional

- 1 “スタート (Start)” ▶ “設定 (Setting)” ▶ Open “コントロールパネル (Control panel)”
- 2 Open “電話とモデムのオプション (Telephone and modem options)” in “コントロールパネル (Control panel)”.
- 3 If the “所在地情報 (Address information)” screen appears, enter “市外局番 (Area code)”, then click “OK”.
- 4 Select the “モデム (Modem)” tab, confirm the COM port in the “接続先 (Access point name)” field of the “FOMA P700i”, then click “OK”.

The COM port number you confirmed is used to specify an access point name (APN) (see this page).
The contents displayed on the property display and COM port number vary depending on the personal computer you use.



- 4 Select the “モデム (Modem)” tab, confirm the COM port in the “接続先 (Access point name)” field of the “FOMA P700i”, then click “OK”.

The COM port number you confirmed is used to specify an access point name (APN) (see this page).
The contents displayed on the property display and COM port number vary depending on the personal computer you use.



Specifying an Access Point Name (APN)

The operation below explains how to specify an access point name (APN) for packet transmission. You can register up to 10 access point names (APNs), which are managed with cid1 to cid10 (see page 462).
cid1 already contains “mopera”. To set cid, use cid2 to cid10.

When using “mopera”, you need to specify no access point name (APN). This operation shows an example where you specify “XXX.abc” as the access point name (APN) and use the FOMA USB Cable (option). For the actual access point name (APN), contact your Internet service provider or network administrator.

The setting here is the access point number for dial-up network setting (see page 463).

For Windows® XP

- 1 “スタート (Start)” ▶ Open “コントロールパネル (Control panel)”
- 2 From “プリンタとその他のハードウェア (Printer and the other hardware)” in “コントロールパネル (Control panel)”, open “電話とモデムのオプション (Telephone and modem options)”.
- 3 If the “所在地情報 (Address information)” screen appears, enter “市外局番/エリアコード (Area code)”, then click “OK”.

For Windows® XP

- 1 Connect the FOMA phone to the FOMA USB Cable (option).
- 2 Turn on the power of the FOMA phone, then connect the FOMA USB Cable, which is connected to the FOMA phone, to your personal computer.
- 3 Start the hyper terminal.
Select “スタート (Start)” “すべてのプログラム (All programs)” “アクセサリ (Accessories)” “通信 (Transmissions)” “ハイパーターミナル (Hyper Terminal)”.
For Windows® 2000 Professional, Windows® Me, Windows® 98, select “スタート (Start)” “プログラム (Programs)” “アクセサリ (Accessories)” “通信 (Transmissions)” “ハイパーターミナル (Hyper Terminal)”.
For Windows® 98, open “ハイパーターミナル (Hyper Terminal)”, then double-click “Hypertrm.exe”.

4 Enter any name in the “名前 (Name)” field, then click “OK”.

Here, “Sample” is entered as an example.



5 Select the connection method.

<When you can select the COM port of the “FOMA P700i”>

Select the COM port with which you install the “FOMA P700i” in the “接続方法 (Connection method)” field, then click “OK”.

Then, go to step 6.

Here, select “COM6” as an example. See page 459 for the COM port number of the “FOMA P700i” you should select actually in the “接続方法 (Connection method)” field.



<When you cannot select the COM port of the “FOMA P700i”>

Click “キャンセル (Cancel)” to close the “接続の設定 (Set a connection)” screen, then perform the following operation:

- (1) From the “ファイル (File)” menu, select “プロパティ (Properties)”.
- (2) Select “FOMA P700i” in the “接続方法 (Connection method)” field of the “接続の設定 (Set a connection)” tab on the “Sampleのプロパティ (Sample Properties)” screen.
- (3) Uncheck “国/地域番号と市外局番を使う (Use country/region code and area code)”.
- (4) Click “OK”.

Then, go to step 7.



6 The properties of the COM port appear on the display, then Click “OK”.

This display appears when you select a COM port in step 5.

7 Specify an access point name (APN).

Enter an access point name (APN) in the following format:

AT+CGDCONT = cid, “PPP”, “XXX”

cid: Enter any number from 2 to 10.

* If you have already specified cid, be careful that its contents are overwritten by the access point name you enter here. “APN”: Enclose an access point name (APN) in double quotation marks (“”).

“PPP”: Enter “PPP” as it is.

(Example: When specifying APN “XXX.abc” in cid2)

AT+CGDCONT=2,“PPP”,“XXX.abc”

Enter this character string, then press [Enter]. If “OK” appears, APN setting is completed.

To confirm the current APN setting, enter “AT+CGDCONT?” [Enter]. The set APNs are listed on the screen. (See page 462)



8 Confirm that “OK” appears on the display.



9 “ファイル (File)” menu ▶ Select “ハイパーターミナルの終了 (Exit Hyper Terminal)” to exit the Hyper Terminal

If message “現在、接続されています。切断してもよろしいですか?” (Currently connected. Do you want to disconnect this line?) appears, select “はい (Yes)”.
 Message “セッションXXXを保存しますか? (Do you want to save session XXX?)” then appears. You do not need to especially save that session.

Information

Displays may differ depending on the personal computer you use. The access point name (APN) is information to be registered in the FOMA phone, so if you connect another FOMA phone, you need to register the access point name (APN) again.
 To continue using the access point name (APN) of the personal computer, register the same cid number and the same access point name (APN) to the FOMA phone.
 If the entered AT command is not displayed, enter “ATE1”.

cid (Registration number)

The FOMA phone has registration numbers, cid1 to cid10. cid1 contains “mopera.ne.jp” as an access point name (APN). To connect a provider other than “mopera”, you need to specify an access point name (APN) supplied from your provider or network administrator in any of cid2 to cid10.

Default cid contents

Registration No. (cid)	Access point name (APN)
1	mopera.ne.jp
2 to 10	Not defined

“Phone number” for connecting to an access point name (APN) you register in cid

“*99* *<cid No.>#”
 (Example) When connecting to the access point name (APN) you register in cid2, enter the following:
 99 **2#

About resetting and confirming the access point name (APN) settings

You can use AT commands to reset and confirm the access point name (APN) settings.

Resetting access point name (APN)

If you reset access point name (APN), cid1 only remains as “mopera.ne.jp” (default), and cid2 to cid10 are reset to be not registered.

(Entry method)

AT+CGDCONT= (When resetting all the cid contents)

AT+CGDCONT=<cid> (When resetting only a specific cid)

Confirming access point name (APN)

The currently specified access point name appears on the screen.

(Entry method)

AT+CGDCONT?

Specifying “caller ID notified/not notified” in dial-up network

By dial-up network setting (see page 463), you can also add “186 (notified)” or “184 (not notified)” to each access point number. When you specify “186 (notified)” or “184 (not notified)” using both the *DGPIR command and dial-up network setting, the caller ID is set as follows:

Dial-up network setting (cid = 1)	“Caller ID notified / not notified” with *DGPIR command	Caller ID notified / not notified
99 **1#	Not set	Notified
	Not notified	Not notified
	Notified	Notified
184*99* **1#	Not set	Not notified
	Not notified	(“184” specified in the dial-up network has a priority)
	Notified	
186*99* **1#	Not set	Notified
	Not notified	(“186” specified in the dial-up network has a priority)
	Notified	

To connect to “mopera”, you need to notify the partner of your caller ID.

Setting Caller ID Notified/Not Notified

For packet transmission, you can specify whether you notify the other party of your caller ID (caller ID notified/not notified). The caller ID is your important information; so, take a great care to notify your caller ID.

You can use the AT command to specify “caller ID notified/not notified” before dial-up connection. You can specify “caller ID notified/not notified” with the *DGPIR command.

1 Start the transmission software such as “Hyper Terminal”.

See page 460 for details on how to operate “Hyper Terminal”.

2 Use the *DGPIR command (see page 474) to specify “caller ID notified/not notified”.

To automatically add “184 (not notified)” for outgoing or incoming call, enter

AT *DGPIR=1

To automatically add “186 (notified)” for outgoing or incoming call, enter


AT *DGPIR=2



3 Confirm that “OK” appears on the display.



Information

Displays may differ depending on the personal computer you use. When using DoCoMo Internet access service "mopera", you need to set your caller ID to "notified". If the entered AT command is not displayed, enter "ATE1" .

Setting Dial-up Network for Windows® XP

1 “スタート (Start)” ▶ “すべてのプログラム (All programs)” ▶ “アクセサリ (Accessories)” ▶ “通信 (Transmissions)” ▶ Open “新しい接続ウィザード (New connection wizard)”

2 When the “新しい接続ウィザード (New connection wizard)” screen appears, click “次へ (Next)”.



3 Select “インターネットに接続する (Connect to the Internet)”, then click “次へ (Next)”.

4 Select “接続を手動でセットアップする (Manually set up the connection)”, then click “次へ (Next)”.

5 Select “ダイヤルアップモデムを使用して接続する (Use a dial-up modem for connection)”, then click “次へ (Next)”.

6 If the “デバイスの選択 (Select a device)” screen appears, check “FOMA P700i”, then click “次へ (Next)”.

The “デバイスの選択 (Select a device)” screen appears only when you have registered two or more modems.



7 Enter any name in the “ISP 名 (ISP name)” field, then click “次へ (Next)”.

Here, “SAMPLE” is entered as an example.



8 Enter “*99** *1#” in the “電話番号 (Phone number)” field, then click “次へ (Next)”.

This example shows the phone number for connecting to “mopera”. Enter the phone number of the access point actually you use. See page 462 for an access point number other than “mopera”.



9 Enter the user name and password supplied from your Internet service provider or network administrator in the “ユーザー名 (User name)”, “パスワード (Password)” and “パスワードの確認入力 (Confirm the password)” fields. Then click “次へ (Next)”.

When connecting to “mopera”, you do not need to enter the user name and password.



10 “完了 (Finish)”.

11 “スタート (Start)” ▶ “すべてのプログラム (All programs)” ▶ “アクセサリ (Accessories)” ▶ “通信 (Transmissions)” ▶ Open “ネットワーク接続 (Connect to network)”

- 12** While selecting the dial-up icon, “ネットワークタスク (Network task)” ▶ Select “この接続の設定を変更する (Modify this connection setting)”
Here, click the icon of the name you entered in step 7.



- 13** Click the “全般 (General)” tab to confirm the setting contents.

When two or more modems are connected to your personal computer, confirm that “モデム (Modem) – FOMA P700” is checked in the “接続方法 (Connection method)” field. If it is not checked, check it. If two or more modems are checked, click the button to position the priority level of “モデム (Modem) – FOMA P700” to the top or uncheck modems other than “モデム (Modem) – FOMA P700”. When “ダイヤル情報を使う (Use dial information)” is checked, uncheck it.

The COM port allocated to “FOMA P700” varies depending on the personal computer you use.

This example shows the phone number for connecting to “mopera”. Enter the phone number of the access point actually you use. See page 462 for access point numbers other than “mopera”.



- 14** Click the “ネットワーク (Network)” tab, then carry out respective settings.

In the “呼び出すダイヤルアップサーバーの種類 (Type of calling dial-up server)” field, select “PPP: Windows 95/98/NT4/2000, Internet”.

In the “この接続は次の項目を使用します (Use the following items for this connection)” field, select “インターネットプロトコル (TCP/IP)” (Internet protocol (TCP/IP))”.

You cannot modify the setting of the “QoSパケットスケジューラ (QoS Packet Scheduler)” field; so use the default setting as it is. Next, click “設定 (Setting)”.



- 15** Uncheck all the items, then click “OK”.



- 16** Return to the display shown in step 14, then click “OK”.

Information

Displays may differ depending on the personal computer you use. Contact your Internet service provider or network administrator for details on contents of the connection settings. Specifying “*99***1#” as a phone number, you can connect to “mopera”. See page 462 for access points other than “mopera”.

Setting Dial-up Network for Windows® 2000 Professional

- 1 “スタート (Start)” ▶ “プログラム (Programs)” ▶ “アクセサリ (Accessories)” ▶ “通信 (Transmissions)” ▶ Open “ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続 (Dial-up connection with network)”
- 2 Double-click “新しい接続の作成 (Create a new connection)” in “ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続 (Network and dial-up connections)”.



新しい接続の作成

3 If the “所在地情報 (Address information)” screen appears, enter “市外局番 (Area code)”, then click “OK”.

The “所在地情報 (Address information)” screen appears only when you first start “新しい接続の作成 (Create a new connection)” in step 2.

At the second time or after, the “ネットワークの接続ウィザード (Network connection wizard)” screen appears instead of this screen. Go to step 5.

4 When “電話とモデムのオプション (Telephone and modem options)” appears, click “OK”.

5 When the “ネットワークの接続ウィザード (Network connection wizard)” screen appears, click “次へ (Next)”.



6 Select “インターネットにダイヤルアップ接続する (Dial-up connect to the Internet)”, then click “次へ (Next)”.

7 Select “インターネット接続を手動で設定するか、またはローカルエリアネットワーク (LAN) を使って接続します (Connect to Internet manually or via the local area network (LAN))”, then click “次へ (Next)”.

8 Select “電話回線とモデムを使ってインターネットに接続します (Connect to Internet via a phone line and modem)”, then click “次へ (Next)”.

9 Confirm that “FOMA P700i” is displayed in the “インターネットへの接続に使うモデムを選択する (Select a modem for connection to Internet)” field. Then click “次へ (Next)”.

If “FOMA P700i” is not selected in that field, select it.

The screen shown below may not appear depending on the operating environment of your personal computer. In this case, go to step 10.



10 Enter “*99* * * 1 #” in the “電話番号 (Phone number)” field.

Enter no phone number in the “市外局番 (Area code)” field. Uncheck “市外局番とダイヤル情報を使う (Use area code and dial information)”.

This example shows the phone number for connecting to “mopera”. Enter the phone number of the access point actually you use. See page 462 for access points other than “mopera”.



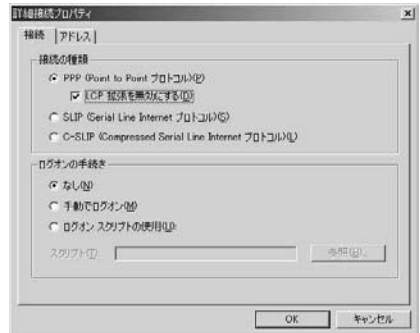
11 Click “詳細設定 (Detailed setting)”.

12 Specify the items in the “接続 (Connection)” tab.

Enter “接続の種類 (Connection type)” and “ログオンの手続き (Logon procedure)” according to the information supplied from your Internet service provider or network administrator.

Confirm the contents you entered, then click the “アドレス (Address)” tab.

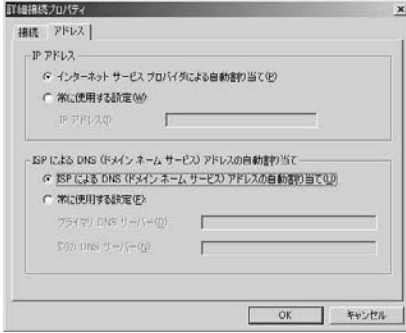
Contact your Internet service provider or network administrator for details on setting of “接続 (Connection)” tab.



13 Specify IP address and DNS (domain name service) address.

Enter "IPアドレス (IP address)" and "ISPによるDNS (ドメインネームサービス) アドレスの自動割り当て (Automatically allocate a DNS (domain name service) address by ISP)" according to the information supplied from your Internet service provider or network administrator. After you finish entering all the items, click "OK". The screen in step 10 returns; then click "次へ (Next)".

Contact your Internet service provider or network administrator for the contents of the settings of IP address and DNS address.



14 Enter the user name and password, which are supplied from your Internet service provider or network administrator, in the "ユーザー名 (User name)" and "パスワード (Password)" fields. Then click "次へ (Next)".

When connecting to "mopera", you do not need to enter the user name and password. In this case, two screens "ユーザー名を空白のままにしておきますか?" (Do you want to make the user name blank?) and "パスワードを空白のままにしておきますか?" (Do you want to make the password blank?) appear. Click "はい (Yes)" on the each screen. Then go to step 15.



15 Enter any name in the "接続名 (Connection name)" field, then click "次へ (Next)".

Here, "SAMPLE" is entered as an example.



16 Select "いいえ (No)", then click "次へ (Next)".

When setting the Internet mail, select "はい (Yes)". Contact your Internet service provider or network administrator for details on setting.

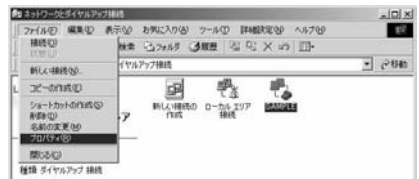
17 After this, carry out the "TCP/IP" setting.

If the display below appears, uncheck "今すぐインターネットを接続するには、ここを選び「完了」をクリックしてください (To connect to Internet just now, select here, then click "Finish"). Then click "完了 (Finish)".



18 "スタート (Start)" ▶ "プログラム (Programs)" ▶ "アクセサリ (Accessories)" ▶ "通信 (Transmissions)" ▶ Open "ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続 (Network and dial-up connection)"

19 While selecting the icon of the access point name you entered in step 15, "ファイル (File)" menu ▶ Select "プロパティ (Properties)"



20 Select the “全般 (General)” tab to confirm the setting contents.

When to two or more modems are connected to your personal computer, confirm that “モデム (Modem) – FOMA P700i” is checked in the “接続方法 (Connection method)” field. If it is not checked, check it.

Confirm that “ダイヤル情報を使う (Use dial information)” is unchecked. If that item is checked, uncheck it.

The COM port allocated to “FOMA P700i” varies depending on the personal computer you use.

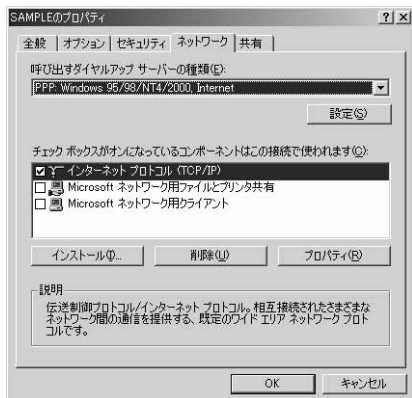
This example shows the phone number for connecting to “mopera”. Enter the phone number of the access point actually you use. See page 462 for access point numbers other than “mopera”.



21 Click the “ネットワーク (Network)” tab, then carry out various settings.

In the “呼び出すダイヤルアップサーバーの種類 (Type of calling dial-up server)” field, select “PPP: Windows 95/98/NT4/2000, Internet”.

For the component, check only “インターネットプロトコル (TCP/IP) [Internet protocol (TCP/IP)]”. Then click “設定 (Setting)”.



22 Uncheck all the items, then click “OK”.



23 Return to the screen in step 21, then click “OK”.

Information

Displays may differ depending on the personal computer you use. Contact your Internet service provider or network administrator for details on contents of the connection settings.

For Specifying “*99* * * 1#” as a phone number, you can connect to “mopera”. See page 462 for access points other than “mopera”.

Setting Dial-up Network for Windows® 98 and Windows® Me

The operation below explains using the display of Windows® Me as an example.

1 “スタート (Start)” ▶ “プログラム (Programs)” ▶ “アクセサリ (Accessories)” ▶ “通信 (Transmissions)” ▶ Open “ダイヤルアップネットワーク (Dial-up network)”

2 When the “ダイヤルアップネットワークへようこそ (Welcome to dial-up network)” screen appears, click “次へ (Next)”.

This screen appears only when you first start the dial-up network. Click “次へ (Next)”, then go to step 4. At the second time or after, the screen do not appear. In this case, go to step 3.



3 Double-click “新しい接続 (New connection)” in “ダイヤルアップネットワーク (Dial-up network)”.



4 Enter any access point name in the “接続名 (Access point name)” field, then click “次へ (Next)”.

Here, “SAMPLE” is entered as an example.

If “FOMA P700i” is not specified in the “モデムの選択 (Select a modem)” field, select “FOMA P700i”.



5 Enter “*99* **1#” in the “電話番号 (Phone number)” field, then click “次へ (Next)”.

Enter no phone number in the “市外局番 (Area code)” field. In the “国/地域番号 (Country/area code)” field, select “日本 (81) [Japan(81)]”. This example shows the phone number for connecting to “mopera”. Enter the phone number of the access point actually you use. See page 462 for access point numbers other than “mopera”.



6 Confirm any access point name, then click “完了 (Finish)”.

After this, carry out the “TCP/IP” setting.

7 “スタート (Start)” ▶ “プログラム (Programs)” ▶ “アクセサリ (Accessories)” ▶ “通信 (Transmissions)” ▶ Open “ダイヤルアップネットワーク (Dial-up network)”

8 While selecting the icon of the access point name you entered in step 4, then select “ファイル (File)” menu ▶ Select “プロパティ (Properties)”



9 Enter “電話番号 (Phone number)” in the “全般 (General)” tab, then confirm “接続方法 (Connection method)”.

Enter no phone number in the “市外局番 (Area code)” field. Uncheck “市外局番とダイヤルのプロパティを使う (Use the area code and dial properties)”. If “FOMA P700i” is not specified in the “接続方法 (Connection method)” field, select it. This example shows the phone number for connecting to “mopera”. Enter the phone number of the access point actually you use. See page 462 for access point numbers other than “mopera”.



10 <For Windows® 98> Click the “サーバーの種類 (Server type)” tab, then carry out respective settings.

Enter “ダイヤルアップサーバーの種類 (Type of dial-up server)”, “詳細オプション (Detailed options)”, and “使用できるネットワークプロトコル (Available network protocol)” according to the information supplied from your Internet service provider or network administrator.

The display position of the “サーバーの種類 (Server type)” tab varies depending on the personal computer you use.

Contact your Internet service provider or network administrator for the setting contents in the “サーバーの種類 (Server type)” tab.

Then go to step 12.



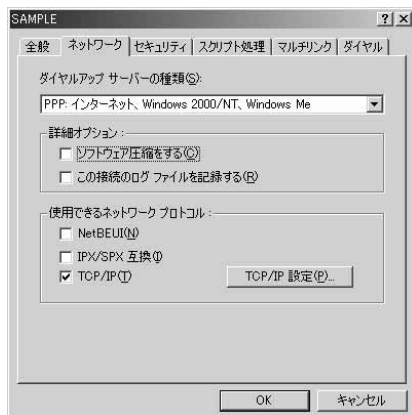
<For Windows® Me>

Click the “ネットワーク (Network)” tab, then carry out respective settings.

Enter “ダイヤルアップサーバーの種類 (Type of dial-up server)”, “詳細オプション (Detailed options)”, and “使用できるネットワークプロトコル (Available network protocol)” according to the information supplied from your Internet service provider or network administrator.

The display position of the “ネットワーク (Network)” tab varies depending on the personal computer you use.

Contact your Internet service provider or network administrator for the setting contents in the “ネットワーク (Network)” tab.

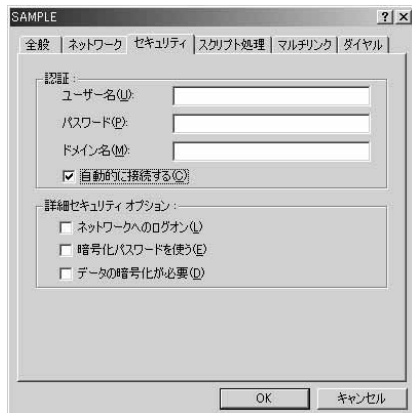


- 11 Click the “セキュリティ (Security)” tab, then enter the “ユーザー名 (user name)” and “パスワード (password)” supplied from your Internet service provider or network administrator.

If you check “自動的に接続する (Automatically connect)” in advance, the screen for confirming the user name and password does not appear at connection; so, you can immediately connect to network.

If you have changed the password, re-enter the password on this screen.

When connecting to “moper”, you do not need to enter the user name and password.



- 12 Click “OK”.

Information

Displays may differ depending on the personal computer you use. Contact your Internet service provider or network administrator for the setting contents of this connection.

Specifying “+99 * * * 1 #” as a phone number, you can connect to “moper”. See page 462 for when using a provider other than “moper”.

Connecting Dial-up

The operation below explains how to carry out dial-up connection using Windows® Me and Windows® XP as examples. Perform the operation shown on page 443 to connect the FOMA phone to your personal computer.

To perform a connection via packet transmission, it is recommended that you optimize the transmission performance by “W-TCP setup” (see page 457).

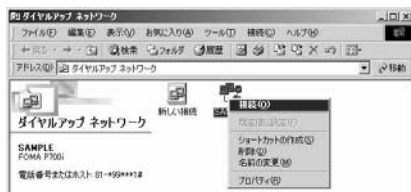
Optimizing data, you can maximize the high-speed transmission capability in the FOMA network. To execute the optimization, install the “FOMA PC setup software” (see page 448) in the system.

For Windows® Me

- 1 “スタート (Start)” ▶ “プログラム (Programs)” ▶ “アクセサリ (Accessories)” ▶ “通信 (Transmissions)” ▶ Open “ダイヤルアップ ネットワーク (Dial-up network)”

- 2 Open the access point name to be used.

While selecting the icon of the access point name (see page 467) you have specified in “Setting Dial-up Network”, select “接続 (Connect)” menu “接続 (Connect)”. Otherwise, double-click the icon of the access point name.



- 3 Confirm the contents and click “接続 (Connect)”.

If you check “自動的に接続する (Automatically connect)” in advance (see this page), the confirmation display does not appear.

When connecting to “moper”, you do not need to enter the user name and password.

- 4 The display appears to indicate the connecting state.

During this time, the system performs logon processing to confirm the user name and password.



- 5 The connection has been completed.

You can start the browser software to browse web pages, use e-mail and so on.

If the Connection Completion display does not appear, confirm the setting of the access point name. (This screen may not appear depending on the setting contents.)

1 “スタート (Start)” ▶ “すべてのプログラム (All programs)” ▶ “アクセサリ (Accessories)” ▶ “通信 (Transmissions)” ▶ Open “ネットワーク接続 (Network connection)”

2 Open the access point name to be used.

Select the icon of the ISP name (see page 463) you specify in “Setting Dial-up Network”, then select “ネットワークタスク (Network task)” “この接続を開始する (Start this connection)”. Otherwise, double-click the icon of the access point name.



3 Confirm the contents and click “ダイヤル (Dial)”.

When connecting to “mopera”, you do not need to enter the user name and password.

4 The display appears to indicate the connecting state.

During this time, the system performs logon processing to confirm the user name and password.

After the connection is completed, a pop-up message “(接続名)に接続しました [Connected to (access point name)]” appears from the indicator of the task bar.



5 The connection has been completed.

After the connection is completed, the message below appears from the indicator of the task bar for a few seconds.

You can start the browser software to browse web pages, use e-mail and so on.

If this message does not appear, confirm the setting of the access point name.



Information

Use only the FOMA phone set with the dial-up setting for dial-up connection. To connect another FOMA phone, you may need to reinstall a transmission setting file.

The FOMA phone does not support Remote Wakeup.

The power consumption of the FOMA phone increases during transmission.

During packet transmission, the following icons appear according to the transmission state:



“→” (Transmitting, data sending)

“←” (Transmitting, data receiving)

“↔” (Transmitting, no data transfer)

“✋” (Outgoing or disconnecting)

“✋” (Incoming or disconnecting)

The operation below explains how to carry out disconnection, giving Windows® Me as an example.

1 Double-click the dial-up icon on the task tray.



Dial-up icon

2 Click “切断 (Disconnect)”.

Information

Displays may differ depending on the personal computer you use.

The transmission line may not be disconnected by only exiting the browser software. To surely disconnect the transmission line, perform this operation.

The baud rate displayed on your personal computer may be different from the actual one.

If You Fail to Connect to Network

If you fail to connect to network (if you fail a dial-up connection), confirm the following items:

If this error occurs	Take the action below
Your personal computer cannot recognize “FOMA P700i”	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Confirm whether your personal computer satisfies the operating environment (see page 440). • Confirm whether the P700i transmission setup file is installed in your personal computer. • Confirm whether the FOMA phone is connected to your personal computer and powered on. • Confirm whether the FOMA USB Cable (option) is securely connected to the FOMA phone and your personal computer.
You cannot connect to the access point	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Confirm whether the ID (user name) and password are correct. • When you need to notify the access point of your caller ID such as when using “mopera”, make sure “184” is not prefixed to the phone number. • Confirm that “フロー制御を使う (Use the flow control)” is checked in the modem properties. • If you cannot connect to the access point even after confirming above, consult your Internet service provider or network administrator about the setting method.

Setting 64K Data Transmission

The operation below explains how to set the 64K data transmission without using the “FOMA PC setup software”.

Setting Dial-up Connection and TCP/IP

The setting of dial-up connection and TCP/IP for the 64K data transmission is the same way as for the packet transmission (see page 459).

Take care of the following points:

In the 64K data transmission, you do not need to specify an access point name (APN). For the access point of the dial-up connection, enter the phone number of the access point specified by your Internet service provider or network administrator. (When connecting to “mopera”, enter “* 9601” in the phone number field.) Specify “Specify caller ID notified/not notified” and “Other settings” as required.

(When connecting to “mopera”, you need to notify the access point of your caller ID.)

Contact your Internet service provider or network administrator for details on the setting contents.

How to Connect and Disconnect

You can connect and disconnect the 64K data transmission in the same way as for the packet transmission. Perform the operations shown on pages 455, 469.

Using FirstPass PC Software

The FirstPass PC Software is to access the FirstPass site from your personal computer browser using the user certificate downloaded from the FOMA phone supporting FirstPass.

Notes for Installing FirstPass PC Software

Confirm the operating environment

Use the FirstPass PC software under the following environment:

Item	Required environment
PC main unit	PC/AT compatible model
OS	Microsoft® Windows® 98SE, Windows® Me, Windows® 2000 Professional, Windows® XP (Japanese version in each) (Not supported Windows® 98)
Memory requirements	Microsoft® Windows® 98SE, Windows® Me Windows® 2000 Professional: 32 Mbytes or more Windows® XP: 128 Mbytes or more
Hard disk space size	10 Mbytes or more
Browser	Microsoft® Internet Explorer 5.5 or more Microsoft® Internet Explorer 6.0 or more when using Windows® XP

The memory requirements and hard disk space size may vary depending on system environment.

Before installing

See “FirstPassManual” (PDF format) in the “FirstPassPCSoft” folder of the CD-ROM before installing FirstPassPC Software. Adobe Reader (version 6.0 or higher is recommended) is required to view “FirstPassManual (PDF format)”. If it is not installed in your personal computer, you can download the latest version from the web page of Adobe Systems Incorporated (communication charge is applied separately). For details, see the web page of Adobe Systems Incorporated.

Installing FirstPass PC Software

Explained here uses the displays for when installing the FirstPass PC Software on Windows® 2000 Professional. The displays vary in some degree depending on the personal computer you use.

- 1 Set the attached “FOMA P700i CD-ROM” into your personal computer.
- 2 To install FirstPass PC Software, click “FirstPass PCソフト (FirstPass PC Software)”.

Then, perform the operations described in “FirstPassManual” (PDF format) within the “FirstPassPCSoft” folder of the CD-ROM.



AT Command

AT commands are used to specify and modify the functions of the FOMA phone on the personal computer.


* The following abbreviations are used in the AT command list:


[AT]:	Commands which are available at the FOMA P700i Command Port
[M]:	Commands which are available in the FOMA P700i (modem)
[&F]:	Commands which are initialized with the AT&F command
[&W]:	Commands which are saved with the AT&W command; used to recall a set value with the ATZ command.

Entry Format of AT Command

To enter an AT command, use the terminal mode display of the transmission software. Be sure to enter half-size alphanumeric characters.

Entry example

ATD * 99 * * * 1 # 




RETURN mark

Parameter

Command

You need to enter an AT command on one line, including parameters (composed of digits and symbols) following the AT command.

On the terminal mode screen of the transmission software, the range from the first character to the character just before RETURN  is assumed to be "one line". You can enter up to 160 characters (including "AT") on "one line".

Information

The terminal mode enables the system to operate a personal computer as one transmission terminal. Using this mode, you can send characters you have entered from the keyboard to a line connected to the transmission port.

Switching between Online Data Mode and Online Command Mode



There are following two methods of switching the FOMA phone between the online data mode and online command mode:

- Enter the "+++" command or enter the code specified in the "S2" register.
- Set the ER signal of the RS-232C off when "AT&D1" is set.

To switch the online command mode to the online data mode, enter "ATO 

The RS-232C signal line, which is emulated via the USB interface, is controlled by a transmission application.

Saving the setting contents

Please be careful that the setting contents with AT commands are initialized when the FOMA phone is powered off and on, except for the access point name (APN) setting with the AT+CGDCONT command, QoS setting with the AT+CGEQMIN or AT+CGEQREQ command, incoming call accepted/rejected setting with the AT * DGAPL, AT * DGARL, or AT * DGANSM command, phone number notified/not notified setting (for packet transmission) with the AT * DGPIR command. For commands with [&W], you can enter "AT&W  (after setting) to save the setting contents and other set values with [&W] at the same time. If necessary, you can restore these set values by entering in "ATZ  even after the power is turned off and on.

AT Command List

AT command	Outline	Parameter/Explanation	Command execution example
A/ [M]	Re-executes the last executed command. No carriage return required.	—	A/ OK
AT%V [M]	Displays the version of the FOMA phone.	-	AT%V Ver1.00 OK
AT&Cn [M] [&F][&W]	Selects operating conditions of the circuit CD signal to the DTE.	n=0: CD is always ON. n=1: CD varies depending on the carrier of the other party's modem. (initial value)	AT&C1 OK
AT&Dn [M] [&F][&W]	Selects an operation to be performed when the circuit ER signal received from the DTE transits between ON and OFF.	n=0: Ignores the ER status. (Always assumed to be ON.) n=1: Sets the online command state when the ER changes from ON to OFF. n=2: Sets the offline command state when the ER changes from ON to OFF. (initial value)	AT&D1 OK
AT&En [M] [&F][&W]	Selects the speed display for connection.	n=0: Displays transmission speed between radio wave blocks. n=1: Displays DTE serial transmission speed. (Initial value)	AT&E0 OK
AT&Fn [AT][M]	Returns all registers to the set values defined at shipment. Performs line disconnection processing if you enter this command during transmission.	n=0: only specifiable. (can be omitted)	-
AT&Sn [M] [&F][&W]	Specifies the control of the data set ready signal to be output to the DTE.	n=0: DR is always ON. (initial value) n=1: DR is set to on at connection of the line (at establishment of a transmission call).	AT&S0 OK
AT&Wn [M]	Stores the current set values.	n=0 only specifiable. (can be omitted)	-
AT * DANTE [AT][M]	Shows the number of antenna bars. (0 to 3)	=0: Antenna is out of service area =1: A single antenna =2: Two antennas =3: Three antennas	AT * DANTE * DANTE:3 OK AT * DANTE=? * DANTE:(0-3) OK
AT * DGANSM=n [M]	Sets rejected/accepted mode for the packet incoming call. The setting with this command is valid for incoming calls in packet transmission after you enter the setting command.	n=0: Invalidates the incoming call rejected/accepted setting. (initial value) n=1: Validates the incoming call rejected setting (AT * DGARL). n=2: Validates the incoming call accepted setting (AT * DGAPL). AT * DGANSM?: Displays the current setting.	AT * DGANSM=0 OK AT * DGANSM? * DGANSM:0 OK
AT * DGAPL=n [.cid] [M]	Sets the APN of which packet incoming call is to be accepted. To specify the APN, use the <cid> parameter defined in AT+CGDCONT.	n=0: Adds the APN defined by <cid> to the incoming call accepted list. n=1: Deletes the APN defined by <cid> from the incoming call accepted list. Applied to all the cid contents if <cid> is omitted. AT * DGAPL?: Displays the incoming call accepted list.	AT * DGAPL=0,1 OK AT * DGAPL? * DGAPL:1 OK AT * DGAPL=1 OK AT * DGAPL? OK
AT * DGARL=n [.cid] [M]	Sets the APN of which packet incoming call is to be rejected. To specify the APN, use the <cid> parameter defined in +CGDCONT.	n=0: Adds the APN defined by <cid> to the incoming call rejected list. n=1: Deletes the APN defined by <cid> from the incoming call rejected list. Applied to all the cid contents if <cid> is omitted. AT * DGARL?: Displays the incoming call rejected list.	AT * DGARL=0,1 OK AT * DGARL? * DGARL:1 OK AT * DGARL=1 OK AT * DGARL? OK

AT command	Outline	Parameter/Explanation	Command execution example
AT * DGPIR= <i>n</i> [M]	This command is valid at outgoing and incoming calls. In the dial-up network setting, you can add "186" (notified) or "184" (not notified) to the phone number of the access point. (See page 462)	<i>n</i> =0: Uses the APN as it is. (initial value) <i>n</i> =1: Adds "184" to the APN. (always not notified.) <i>n</i> =2: Adds "186" to the APN. (always notified.) AT * DGPIR?: Displays the current setting.	AT * DGPIR=0 OK AT * DGPIR? * DGPIR:0 OK
AT * DRPW [AT][M] +++	Displays the output power index for receiving. (0: Minimum value to 75: Maximum value)	-	AT * DRPW * DRPW:0 OK
AT+CEER [M]	Changes to the online command state without disconnecting the line when the escape sequence is executed in the online mode.	-	-
AT+CEER [M]	Displays the reason why the preceding call is disconnected.	<report> Disconnection reason list (See page 478)	AT+CEER +CEER:36 OK
AT+CGDCONT [M]	Sets the APN at packet transmission.	See page 478	See page 478
AT+CGEQMIN [M]	Registers the reference value to decide whether the system permits QoS (Quality of Service) reported from the network at establishment of PPP packet transmission.	AT+CGEQMIN=[parameter] See page 478 AT+CGEQMIN=? Lists the settable values. AT+CGEQMIN? Displays the current setting.	See page 478
AT+CGEQREQ [M]	Sets QoS (Quality of Service) to be requested to the network at issuance of the PPP packet transmission.	AT+CGEQREQ=[parameter] See page 478 AT+CGEQREQ=? Lists the settable values. AT+CGEQREQ? Displays the current setting.	See page 478
AT+CGMR [M]	Displays the version of the FOMA phone.	-	AT+CGMR 1234512345123456 OK
AT+CGREG= <i>n</i> [M] [&F]&W]	Sets whether the network registration state is to be notified. Displays whether you are inside or outside the service area depending on the returned notification.	<i>n</i> =0: Not notified. (initial value) <i>n</i> =1: Notified at switching between the inside and outside of the service area. (Inquiry) AT+CGREG? +CGREG: < <i>n</i> >,<stat> <i>n</i> : Set value stat: 0: Outside packet area 1: Inside packet area 4: Unknown 5: Inside packet area (during roaming)	AT+CGREG=1 OK (set to "Notified") AT+CGREG? +CGREG:1,0 OK (means the outside of the service area) (at moving from the outside to the inside of the service area) +CGREG: 1
AT+CGSN [M]	Displays the serial number of the FOMA phone.	-	AT+CGSN 123456789012345 OK
AT+CLIP= <i>n</i> [AT][M] [&F]&W]	Enables to display the caller's ID on the personal computer during 64K data transmission or video-phone calls.	<i>n</i> =0: Does not notify. (initial value) <i>n</i> =1: Notifies. result: +CLIP: < <i>n</i> >,< <i>m</i> > <i>m</i> =0: NW setting not to notify caller ID at calling <i>m</i> =1: NW setting to notify caller ID at calling <i>m</i> =2: Unknown	AT+CLIP=0 OK AT+CLIP? +CLIP:0, 1 OK

AT command	Outline	Parameter/Explanation	Command execution example
AT+CLIR= <i>n</i> [M]	Sets whether to notify the caller ID to do 64K data transmission or to make video-phone calls.	<i>n</i> =0: Caller ID is notified (not notified) according to CLIR service. <i>n</i> =1: Does not notify Caller ID. <i>n</i> =2: Notifies Caller ID. (initial value) Result: +CLIR: < <i>n</i> >,< <i>m</i> > <i>m</i> =0: CLIR is not launched. (always notified) <i>m</i> =1: CLIR is launched. (always not notified) <i>m</i> =2: Unknown <i>m</i> =3: CLIR temporal mode (no Caller ID default) <i>m</i> =4: CLIR temporal mode (Caller ID default) The CLIR setting has priority when #31# or *31# is not added.	AT+CLIR=0 OK AT+CLIR? +CLIR:0,1 OK AT+CLIR=? +CLIR:(0-2) OK
AT+CMEE= <i>n</i> [M] [&F]&W]	Sets whether the FOMA phone has an error report.	<i>n</i> =0: Uses the ordinary ERROR result. (initial value) <i>n</i> =1: +CME ERROR: Uses the <err> result code. <err> indicates a numeric value. <i>n</i> =2: +CME ERROR: Uses the <err> result code. <err> indicates an alphanumeric value. AT+CMEE?: Displays the current setting. Command execution example at right is when the FOMA phone or connection has abnormality. Below listed are the +CME ERROR result codes. 1: no connection to phone 10: SIM not inserted 15: SIM wrong 16: incorrect password 100: unknown	AT+CMEE=0 OK AT+CNUM ERROR AT+CMEE=1 OK AT+CNUM +CME ERROR: 10 AT+CMEE=2 OK AT+CNUM +CME ERROR: SIM not inserted
AT+CNUM [AT][M] [&F]&W]	Displays the own phone number of the FOMA phone.	number: Phone number type: 129 or 145 129: Does not include the international access code (+). 145: Includes the international access code (+).	AT+CNUM +CNUM: "+8190123 45678",145 OK
AT+CR= <i>n</i> [M] [&F]&W]	Displays the bearer service type before the CONNECT result code appears at connection of the line.	<i>n</i> =0: Not displayed. (initial value) <i>n</i> =1: Displayed. <serv>: Displays only "GPRS" that means packet transmission. (displays "SYNC", "AV32K", or "AV64K", depending on the line type.) AT+CR?: Displays the current setting.	AT+CR=1 OK ATD *99 * * *1# +CR: GPRS CONNECT
AT+CRING= <i>n</i> [AT][M] [&F]&W]	Sets whether the extended result code is to be used at incoming call.	<i>n</i> =0: Does not use +CRING. (initial value) <i>n</i> =1: Uses +CRING.<type>. AT+CRING?: Displays the current setting. The +CRING format is as follows: +CRING: <type> During PPP packet ringing +CRING: GPRS "PPP",...,<APN>	AT+CRING=0 OK AT+CRING? +CRING: 0 OK
AT+CREG= <i>n</i> [AT][M] [&F]&W]	Sets whether the result is to be displayed about the inside and outside of the service area. (May not be set depending on OS.)	<i>n</i> =0: Not notified. (initial value) <i>n</i> =1: Notified at switching between the inside and outside of the service area. (Inquiry) AT+CREG? +CREG: < <i>n</i> >,<stat> <i>n</i> : Set value stat: 0: Outside voice call area 1: Inside voice call area 4: Unknown 5: Inside voice call area (during roaming)	AT+CREG=1 OK (set to "Notified") AT+CREG? +CREG: 1,0 OK (means the outside of the service area) (at moving from the outside to the inside) +CREG: 1
AT+GMI [M]	Displays the manufacturer name (Panasonic).	—	AT+GMI Panasonic OK
AT+GMM [M]	Displays the product name (FOMA P700i) of the FOMA phone.	—	AT+GMM FOMA P700i OK

AT command	Outline	Parameter/Explanation	Command execution example
AT+GMR [M]	Displays the version of the FOMA phone.	—	AT+GMR Ver1.00 OK
AT+IFC= <i>n,m</i> [M] [&F]&W]	Selects the flow control method.	<i>n</i> : DCE by DTE <i>m</i> : DTE by DCE 0: No flow control 1: XON/XOFF flow control 2: RS/CS (RTS/CTS) flow control Initial value: <i>n</i> , <i>m</i> = 2.2 AT+IFC?: Inquires the set value.	AT+IFC=2,2 OK
AT+WS46= <i>n</i> [M] [&F]&W]	Selects the wireless transmission network of the FOMA phone.	<i>n</i> =22: W-CDMA (Wideband CDMA) only specifiable. (initial value)	AT+WS46=22 OK
ATA [M]	Processes an incoming call in the mode in which the FOMA phone received the incoming call.	—	RING ATA CONNECT
ATD [M]	Executes the automatic outgoing processing for the FOMA phone according to the contents specified in the parameter and dial parameter.	<cid>: 1 to 10 Displays the APN defined by +CGDCONT. When calling cid1, you can omit the phone number like "ATD *99 * * *#."	ATD *99 * * * 1# CONNECT
ATE <i>n</i> [M] [&F]&W]	Sets whether echo-back is issued to the DTE in the command mode.	<i>n</i> =0: Issues no echo-back. <i>n</i> =1: Issues echo-back. (initial value)	ATE1 OK
ATH <i>n</i> [M]	Places the FOMA phone into the on-hook state.	<i>n</i> =0: Disconnects the line. (can be omitted)	(During packet transmission) +++ ATH NO CARRIER
ATI <i>n</i> [AT][M]	Displays the ID code.	<i>n</i> =0: Displays "NTT DoCoMo". <i>n</i> =1: Displays the product name. (same as +GMM) <i>n</i> =2: Displays the version of the PPP packet function. (same as +GMR)	ATI0 NTT DoCoMo OK ATI1 FOMA P700i OK
ATO <i>n</i> [M]	Returns from the online command mode to the online data mode during transmission.	<i>n</i> =0: Returns from the online command mode to the online data mode. (can be omitted.)	ATO CONNECT
ATQ <i>n</i> [M] [&F]&W]	Sets whether the result code is to be displayed for the DTE.	<i>n</i> =0: Displays the result code. (initial value) <i>n</i> =1: Does not display the result code.	ATQ0 OK ATQ1 ("OK" is not returned at this time.)
ATS0= <i>n</i> [M] [&F]&W]	Sets the number of rings required until the FOMA phone automatically receives an incoming call.	<i>n</i> =0: Does not automatically receive an incoming call. (initial value) <i>n</i> =1 to 255: Automatically receives an incoming call with the specified number of rings. (when <i>n</i> = 0, does not automatically receive for a packet (PPP) incoming call, then the line is disconnected about 30 seconds after.) ATS0?: Inquires the set value.	ATS0=0 OK ATS0? 000 OK
ATS2= <i>n</i> [M] [&F]	Sets the escape character.	<i>n</i> =43: Initial value <i>n</i> =127: Makes escape processing invalid. ATS2?: Inquires the set value.	ATS2=43 OK ATS2? 043 OK
ATS3= <i>n</i> [M] [&F]	Sets the carriage return (CR) character.	<i>n</i> =13: Initial value (<i>n</i> =13 only specifiable.) ATS3?: Inquires the set value.	ATS3=13 OK ATS3? 013 OK
ATS4= <i>n</i> [M] [&F]	Sets the line feed (LF) character.	<i>n</i> =10: Initial value (<i>n</i> =10 only specifiable.) ATS4?: Inquires the set value.	ATS4=10 OK ATS4? 010 OK
ATS5= <i>n</i> [M] [&F]	Sets the back space (BS) character.	<i>n</i> =8: Initial value (<i>n</i> =8 only specifiable.) ATS5?: Inquires the set value.	ATS5=8 OK ATS5? 008 OK

AT command	Outline	Parameter/Explanation	Command execution example
ATS7= <i>n</i> [M] [&F][&W]	Sets standby duration until connection is complete. Disconnects the line if an outgoing call is not connected within the specified time.	<i>n</i> =1 to 120 (Initial value=60) (unit: second) 121 to 255 are assumed to be 120 if specified. ATS7?: Inquires the set value.	ATS7=60 OK ATS7? 060 OK
ATS30= <i>n</i> [M][&F]	Sets the inactive timer. When no user data is sent or received, the connection is cut in more than set time. This command is for only 64K data transmission. When 0 is set, the inactive timer turns to OFF.	<i>n</i> =0 to 255 (initial value=0) (unit: minute)	ATS30=0 OK
ATS103= <i>n</i> [M][&F]	Selects characters to pause for incoming subaddress.	<i>n</i> =0: *(asterisk) <i>n</i> =1: / (Slash) (initial value) <i>n</i> =2: ¥ or back slash	ATS103=0 OK
ATS104= <i>n</i> [M][&F]	Selects characters to pause for outgoing subaddress.	<i>n</i> =0: # (sharp) <i>n</i> =1: % (percentage) (initial value) <i>n</i> =2: & (and)	ATS104=0 OK
ATV <i>n</i> [M] [&F][&W]	Sets all the result codes in the numeric or alphabetical notation.	<i>n</i> =0: Returns the result code with a numeric value. <i>n</i> =1: Returns the result code in alphabetical characters. (Initial value)	ATV1 OK
ATX <i>n</i> [M] [&F][&W]	Sets whether the speed is to be indicated in CONNECT at connection. Detects busy tone and dial tone.	<i>n</i> =0: Dial tone not detected; busy tone not detected; speed not displayed. <i>n</i> =1: Dial tone not detected; busy tone not detected; speed displayed. <i>n</i> =2: Dial tone detected; busy tone not detected; speed displayed. <i>n</i> =3: Dial tone not detected; busy tone detected; speed displayed. <i>n</i> =4: Dial tone detected; busy tone detected; speed displayed. (initial value)	ATX1 OK
ATZ [M]	Resets the setting to the contents of the nonvolatile memory. If this command is entered during transmission, the line is disconnected.	-	(In online) ATZ NO CARRIER (In offline) ATZ OK
AT¥S [M]	Displays the contents of the each command and S register currently set.	-	AT¥S E1 Q0 V1 X4 &C1 &D2 &S0 ¥V0 S000=000 S002=043 S003=013 S004=010 S005=008 S006=005 S007=060 S008=003 S010=001 S030=000 S103=000 S104=000 OK
AT¥V <i>n</i> [M] [&F][&W]	Selects the response code specifications at connection.	<i>n</i> =0: Does not use the extended result code. (initial value) <i>n</i> =1: Uses the extended result code.	AT¥V0 OK

The following commands do not result in an error even if specified; however, they do not function as commands.

- AT (AT only entered.)
- ATP (Pulse setting)
- ATSS (Setting the pause time by comma dialing)
- ATT (Tone setting)
- ATS6 (Setting the pause time taken for dialing)
- ATS10 (Setting the automatic disconnection delay time)

Supplementary Explanation of AT Commands

- Command name: +CGDCONT [M]
- Outline
This command sets an access point name (APN) at packet transmission.
 - Format
+CGDCONT=[<cid>[,"PPP"[,<APN>]]]
 - Explanation of parameters
You set the connecting end (APN) for packet transmission. See the example below for command instructions.
<cid> : 1 to 10
<APN> : Arbitrary
<cid> is a number used to manage an access point name (APN) for packet transmission, which is registered in the FOMA phone. You can register 1 to 10 in the FOMA phone. <cid>=1 contains "mopera.ne.jp" as the default. If necessary, you can rewrite it. <APN> indicates any character string for each access point name.
 - Operation at omission of parameters
+CGDCONT= : Sets all the <cid> contents to the initial value.
+CGDCONT=<cid> : Sets the specified <cid> to the initial value.
+CGDCONT=? : Lists the specifiable values.
+CGDCONT? : Displays the current setting.
 - Command execution example
AT+CGDCONT=3,"PPP","abc"
OK

The command used to register an APN name, abc (at cid=3) <cid>=1 contains the initial value; if required, you can rewrite it. This command, which is a setting command, is not stored in the nonvolatile memory written by [&W], and also is not reset by [&F] and [Z].

- Command name: +CGEQMIN=[parameter] [M]
- Outline
This command registers the reference value to decide whether you accept QoS (Quality of Service) reported from the network at establishment of the PPP packet transmission. You can specify four setting patterns described in the command execution example below.
 - Format
+CGEQMIN=[<cid>[,<Maximum bitrate UL>[,<Maximum bitrate DL>]]]
 - Explanation of parameters
<cid> : 1 to 10
<Maximum bitrate UL> : None (initial value) or 64
<Maximum bitrate DL> : None (initial value) or 384
<cid> is a number used to manage an access point name (APN) for packet transmission, which is registered in the FOMA phone. You can register 1 to 10 in the FOMA phone.
<Maximum bitrate UL> and <Maximum bitrate DL> are used to specify the minimum baud rates (kbps) for upload and download between the FOMA phone and base station. None (initial value) accepts all baud rates; however, 64 and 384 do not permit a baud rate other than 64 kbps and 384 kbps. If you specify 64 and 384, you may not establish packet transmission.
 - Operation at omission of parameters
+CGEQMIN= : Sets all the <cid> contents to the initial value.
+CGEQMIN=<cid> : Sets the specified <cid> to the initial value.
 - Command execution example
You can specify only the following four setting patterns:
[The setting described in item (1) is defined in each cid as the initial value.]
(1) Command that allows all the baud rates for both upload and download (cid=2)
AT+CGEQMIN=2
OK
(2) Command that allows 64 kbps for upload and 384 kbps for download (cid=3)
AT+CGEQMIN=3,64,384
OK

- (3) Command that allows 64 kbps for upload and all baud rates for download (cid=4)
AT+CGEQMIN=4,,64
OK
(4) Command that allows all baud rates for upload and 384 kbps for download (cid=5)
AT+CGEQMIN=5,,,384
OK
This command, which is a setting command, is not stored in the nonvolatile memory written by [&W], and also is not reset by [&F] and [Z].

- Command name: +CGEQREQ=[parameter] [M]
- Outline
This command sets QoS (Quality of Service) requested to the network at issuance of the PPP packet transmission. You can specify only one setting pattern described in the command execution example below, which is set as the initial value.
 - Format
+CGEQREQ=[<cid>]
 - Explanation of parameter
<cid> : 1 to 10
<cid> is a number used to manage an access point name (APN) for packet transmission, which is registered in the FOMA phone. You can register 1 to 10 in the FOMA phone.
 - Operation at omission of parameter
+CGEQREQ= : Sets all the <cid> contents to the initial value.
+CGEQREQ=<cid> : Sets the specified <cid> to the initial value.
 - Command execution example
You can specify only the following one pattern.
(This setting is defined in each cid as the initial value.)
(1) Command that requests a connection at 64 kbps for upload and 384 kbps for download (cid=3)
AT+CGEQREQ=3
OK
This command, which is a setting command, is not stored in the nonvolatile memory written by [&W], and also is not reset by [&F] and [Z].

- Command name: +CLIP
- Outline
The result for "AT+CLIP=1" is displayed in the following format:
+CLIP: <number><type>
 - Command execution example
AT+CLIP=1
OK
RING
+CLIP: "09012345678",49

Disconnection Reason List

64K Data Transmission

Value	Reason
1	The specified phone number does not exist.
16	Disconnected normally.
17	Cannot communicate because the other party is communicating.
18	Dialed but no response has come in within the specified duration.
19	Cannot communicate because the other party is dialing.
21	Other party rejected to receive the call.
63	Network service and option are not valid.
65	Specified transmission performance not provided.
88	Dialed to or received the call from the phone with different property.

Packet Transmission

Value	Reason
27	No APN was found; or an invalid APN was specified.
30	The line was disconnected from the network.
33	You do not apply the service option you requested.
36	The line was normally disconnected.

Result Codes

Result Code List

Numeric notation	Character notation	Meaning
0	OK	Processing has been executed normally
1	CONNECT	The line has been connected to the other party
2	RING	An incoming call has arrived
3	NO CARRIER	The line has been disconnected
4	ERROR	The system can receive no command
6	NO DIALTONE	The system can detect no dial tone
7	BUSY	The system is detecting the busy tone
8	NO ANSWER	Connection completed; timeout
100	RESTRICTION	The network is restricted
101	DELAYED	Within restricted redialing time

Extended Result Code List

For &E0

Connection speed between the FOMA phone and wireless base station is displayed.

Numeric notation	Character notation	Connection speed
121	CONNECT 32000	32000 bps
122	CONNECT 64000	64000 bps
125	CONNECT 384000	384000 bps

For &E1

Numeric notation	Character notation	Connection speed
5	CONNECT 1200	1200 bps
10	CONNECT 2400	2400 bps
11	CONNECT 4800	4800 bps
13	CONNECT 7200	7200 bps
12	CONNECT 9600	9600 bps
15	CONNECT 14400	14400 bps
16	CONNECT 19200	19200 bps
17	CONNECT 38400	38400 bps
18	CONNECT 57600	57600 bps
19	CONNECT 115200	115200 bps
20	CONNECT 230400	230400 bps
21	CONNECT 460800	460800 bps

Information

Result codes are displayed in the character notation (initial value) when the $ATVn$ command (see page 477) is set to $n=1$ and displayed in the numeric notation when it is set to $n=0$.

The baud rate is displayed to keep the compatibility with a modem connected via the conventional RS-232C. The FOMA phone and personal computer are however connected via the FOMA USB Cable (option); so, the baud rate is different from the actual transmission speed.

"RESTRICTION" (numeric code: 100) means that the transmission network is congested. If this result code appears, wait for a while, then connect the line again.

Transmission Protocol Result Code List

Numeric notation	Character notation	Meaning
1	PPPOverUD	Connected by 64K data transmission
2	AV32K	Connected by 32K video-phone
3	AV64K	Connected by 64K video-phone
5	PACKET	Connected by packet transmission

Result Code Display Examples

When ATX0 is set:

CONNECT only appears at completion of the connection, regardless of the contents specified in the $AT\%V$ command (see page 477).

Example in character notation: $ATD * 99 * * * 1\#$
CONNECT

Example in numeric notation: $ATD * 99 * * * 1\#$
1

When ATX1 is set :

• If ATX1 and $AT\%V0$ are set (initial value):

A result code appears in the following format at completion of the connection: "CONNECT<baud rate between the FOMA phone and PC>"

Example in character notation: $ATD * 99 * * * 1\#$
CONNECT 460800

Example in numeric notation: $ATD * 99 * * * 1\#$
1 21

• If ATX1 and $AT\%V1$ are set :

A result code appears in the following format at completion of the connection: "CONNECT<baud rate between the FOMA phone and PC> PACKET <access point name(APN)> / <maximum baud rate for upload (the FOMA phone wireless base station) > / <maximum baud rate for download (the FOMA phone wireless base station)>"

Example in character notation: $ATD * 99 * * * 1\#$
CONNECT 460800 PACKET
mopera.ne.jp /64/384
(Indicates that maximum 64 kbps for upload and maximum 384 kbps for download are connected to mopera.ne.jp.)

Example in numeric notation: $ATD * 99 * * * 1\#$
1215

If you specify ATX1 and $AT\%V1$ at the same time, you may not normally carry out the dial-up connection.

In this case, you should use only $AT\%V0$.



Entering Characters

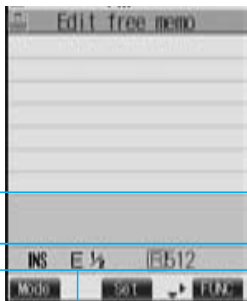
Entering Characters	<Character Entries>	482
Using Common Phrases.....	<Common Phrases>	496
Cutting/Copying/Pasting Characters		497
Kuten Code.....		498
Storing Words in Own Dictionary.....	<Own Dictionary>	499
Resetting Learning Dictionary.....	<Clear Learned>	500
Using Downloaded Dictionary	<Download Dictionary>	500

Entering Characters

With the FOMA phone, you can use the keys to enter characters.

Character Entry Display

On the Character Entry (Edit) display, information or guidance for the current input mode is displayed as follows: You can set the guidance not to be displayed. (See page 490)



Guidance

- CHG : Displayed when you can convert characters by pressing . (See page 491)
- All Find : Displayed on the Phonebook Search display when you can search for entries by pressing . (See page 99)
- Area : Displayed when you copy (cut) characters. (See page 498)
- L / U : You can switch between uppercase and lowercase by pressing . (See page 493)
- LONG CR : Press for at least one second to start a new line. (See page 494)
- Fix mode Fix END : Displayed in Mode 3 (T9 input), when you can switch between T9 input and Fix mode by pressing . (See page 489)
- Back : Displayed in Mode 1 (5-touch) when you can scroll back an entered character by pressing .

Information display

- 2/T9/FIX : Displayed in Mode 2 (2-touch) (see page 485), Mode 3 (T9) (See page 486), and Fix mode (see page 489).
- INS/OVR : Displays Insert/Overwrite mode. (See page 494)
- 漢/加/E/123/区 : Displays the character entry mode. (See pages 484, 498)
- 1 / 1 / 1 / 2 : Displays full/half-pitch character. (See page 493)
- Sm : Displayed in lowercase mode. (See page 493)
- R : Displays remaining number of characters you can enter in bytes.
- In : Displays the number of entered characters in unit of the number of characters when you are storing entry to the UIM Phonebook or entering the main text for Short Message (SMS).

Information

When entering the text of i-mode mail, you can press numeric keys to bring up the Character Entry (Edit) display. From that display, you can use the function of the Kuten code, Prediction, or CHG Input Method.

About the remaining number of characters and the number of characters that can be entered

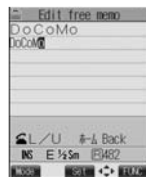
The number of characters in the Character Entry (Edit) display is counted according to the following rules.
In the Character Entry (Edit) display for each function, " " (End mark) is inserted to the end of characters that you can enter for that function, so let the end mark be an estimate for entering.

One half-pitch character is counted as one byte and one full-pitch character as two bytes.

One full-pitch character applies to two half-pitch characters.

Full-pitch: あいうえお 5 characters (counted as 10 bytes)

Half-pitch: アイウエオカキク 10 characters (counted as 10 bytes)



About the combination of characters

Pay attention to the combination of characters when entering characters.

<Example> When you are entering "トコ" in half-pitch katakana mode and "の携帯電話" in Kanji/Hiragana mode



ト コ の 携 帯 電 話 (9 characters appearing in the display)

1 1 1 1 2 2 2 2 2 (Counted as 14 bytes, 14 half-pitch characters)

" " and " " for half-pitch character are counted as one character.

One full-pitch character is counted as two half-pitch characters.

About scrolling

In the Character Entry (Edit) display, use  to scroll line by line and  to scroll page by page.

In the Kanji Conversion Candidate List, use  to scroll line by line and  to scroll page by page.

Select Input Method



Setting at purchase

Input ModeAll checked
Prior modeMode 1 (5-touch)

The following three input methods are available:

Mode 1 (5-touch) (See page 484)



Multiple characters are assigned for a key and each time you press the key, these characters are switched.

Mode 2 (2-touch) (See page 485)

Input method that you enter characters by pairs of digits.

Mode 3 (T9) (See page 486)

Each time you press a key, the character candidates assigned for that key are displayed so that you can select the character you want.

1   Other settings ▶ Character input method ▶ Input mode
▶ Put check marks for the modes to be used ▶  (Finish)

"

Select two modes at least.

2 Select a mode to be used with priority 


You cannot select the mode you did not select in step 1.

How to switch in the Character Entry (Edit) display

In the Character Entry (Edit) display, you can switch mode in the following two methods:


Press and hold  (Mode) for at least one second.

Each time you press it, the mode switches to the mode selected in step 1 in the order of mode1 mode2 mode3 mode1 in sequence.

From the Character Entry (Edit) display, press  (FUNC) to select "CHG input method" from the Function menu, then you can select the mode. (See page 495)

Switch Entry Mode in Mode 1 (5-touch)

1 Character Entry (Edit) display (Mode)

Each time you press  (Mode), the input mode switches among "Alphabet" (E $\frac{1}{2}$), "Numerals" (123 $\frac{1}{2}$), "Kanji/Hiragana" (漢 $\frac{1}{4}$), and "Katakana" (カ $\frac{1}{2}$) in sequence.

To switch between full-pitch and half-pitch characters, press  (FUNCTION) to select "Full pitch" or "Half pitch" from the Function menu and press .

There are characters that you can enter only as full-pitch character and those that you can enter as both full-pitch and half-pitch character.


Full-pitch character only

Hiragana, Kanji, Pictograph













Both full-pitch and half-pitch characters




Katakana, Alphabet, Numeral, Symbol

Characters that you can enter in Mode 1

<Example> To enter "う", select "Kanji hiragana input mode" and press  three times.

To enter "B", select "Alphabet input mode" and press  twice.

Key	Kanji/hiragana input mode	Katakana input mode	Alphabet input mode	Numeral input mode
	あいうえおあいうえお	アイウエオアイウエオ	? ! . / ¥ & * () # ' ° ♥ ☎ ¹	1
	かきくけこ	カキクケコ	A B C a b c	2
	さしすせそ	サシスセソ	D E F d e f	3
	たちつてと	タチツテト	G H I g h i	4
	なにぬねの	ナニヌネノ	J K L j k l	5
	はひふへほ	ハヒフヘホ	M N O m n o	6
	まみむめも	マミムメモ	P Q R S p q r s	7
	やゆよやゆよ	ヤユヨヤユヨ	T U V t u v	8
	らりるれろ	ラリルレロ	W X Y Z w x y z	9
	わをんーわ	ワラソーンワ ²	-	0
	- ³	-	.ne.jp .co.jp .ac.jp ⁴ www. .com .html http:// https:// @docomo.ne.jp	* .ne.jp .co.jp .ac.jp ⁴ www. .com .html http:// https:// @docomo.ne.jp
	° ° `、。・! ? ⁵	° ° `、。・! ? ⁵	./!/?(), ._:!~ ⁶ &¥	#.@/!/?(), ._:!~ ⁶ &¥

- Valid only when entering the main text for SMS. "♥" and "☎" are always displayed as full-pitch characters and others are displayed as half-pitch characters.
 - You can enter reduced size of "ワ" in full-pitch only.
 - If you press  in "Kanji hiragana input mode", it is switched to "Kuten code input mode".
 - If switched to full-pitch, these letters are not displayed. (Except "*" for Numeral input mode)
 - With "Kanji hiragana input mode" and full-pitch "Katakana input mode", "°" or "°" is displayed only when the character to which "°" or "°" can be added is displayed. You cannot enter "、", "、", "、", "、", "!", and " ? " for entering the reading of "Own dictionary" and the reading for Phonebook entries in the UIM.
 - In full-pitch mode, this is displayed as " ` ".
- : You can enter lowercase in the following two methods.
Enter uppercase first and press  to convert it to lowercase.
Switch to "Lower case" and enter characters.

Information

See pages 493 and 494 for entering symbols and pictographs.

Switch Entry Mode in Mode 2 (2-touch)

1 Character Entry (Edit) display ▶ (Mode)

Each time you press (Mode), "Full pitch 1/1" and "Half pitch 1/2" switch.

You can also switch Full pitch/Half pitch by pressing (FUNC), selecting "Full pitch" or "Half pitch" from the Function menu and pressing (OK).

There are characters that you can enter only as full-pitch character and those that you can enter as both full-pitch and half-pitch character.

Full-pitch character only

Hiragana, Kanji, Pictograph

Both full-pitch and half-pitch characters

Katakana, Alphabet, Numeral, Symbol

Characters that you can enter in Mode 2

<Example> To enter "う", select "Full-pitch input mode" and press (1^{DEF}) and (3^{DEF}).

To enter full-pitch "B", select "Full-pitch input mode" and press (1^{DEF}) and (7^{DEF}).

To enter half-pitch "B", select "Half-pitch input mode" and press (1^{DEF}) and (7^{DEF}).

Full-pitch input mode

Key	Second column										
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	
First column	1	あ	い	う	え	お	A	B	C	D	E
		あ	い	う	え	お	a	b	c	d	e
	2	か	き	く	け	こ	F	G	H	I	J
						f	g	h	i	j	
	3	さ	し	す	せ	そ	K	L	M	N	O
						k	l	m	n	o	
	4	た	ち	つ	て	と	P	Q	R	S	T
				っ			p	q	r	s	t
	5	な	に	ぬ	ね	の	U	V	W	X	Y
							u	v	w	x	y
6	は	ひ	ふ	へ	ほ	Z	?	!	-	/	
					z						
7	ま	み	む	め	も	¥	&				
8	や	(	ゆ	)	よ	*	#			
	や		ゆ		よ						
9	ら	り	る	れ	ろ	1	2	3	4	5	
0	わ	を	ん	*	*	6	7	8	9	0	
	わ										

Half-pitch input mode

Key	Second column										
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	
First column	1	ア	イ	ウ	エ	オ	A	B	C	D	E
		ア	イ	ウ	エ	オ	a	b	c	d	e
	2	カ	キ	ク	ケ	コ	F	G	H	I	J
						f	g	h	i	j	
	3	サ	シ	ス	セ	ソ	K	L	M	N	O
						k	l	m	n	o	
	4	タ	チ	ツ	テ	ト	P	Q	R	S	T
				ッ			p	q	r	s	t
	5	ナ	ニ	ヌ	ネ	ノ	U	V	W	X	Y
							u	v	w	x	y
6	ハ	ヒ	フ	ヘ	ホ	Z	?	!	-	/	
					z						
7	マ	ミ	ム	メ	モ	¥	&				
8	ヤ	(	ユ	)	ヨ	*	#			
	ヤ		ユ		ヨ						
9	ラ	リ	ル	レ	ロ	1	2	3	4	5	
	@	/	-	_	:	.ne.jp	.co.jp	.ac.jp	@docomo.ne.jp		
0	ワ	ヲ	ン	*	*	6	7	8	9	0	
	ワ					www.	.com	.html	http://	https://	

A blank field indicates that a space is entered.

1: Press (8^{DEF}) and (0^{DEF}) to switch between uppercase input mode (upper row) and lowercase input mode (lower row).

You can also switch to lowercase by pressing (8^{DEF}), after entering uppercase.

2: You can use only when you are able to select "Pictograph" such as when registering "Free memo" or "Common phrases".

(☎) and (♥) are always displayed as full-pitch characters.

You cannot select "Pictograph" for entering the main text for SMS but you can enter "(☎)" and "(♥)".

3: With "full-pitch input mode", "*" and "*" are displayed only for the characters that you can attach "*" and "*". If you enter "*" and "*" for other characters, a space is displayed.

Information

When entering reading for the UIM Phonebook, you can enter full-pitch katakana instead of hiragana.

You may not be able to enter some characters in Mode 2. Switch to Mode 1 if this happens.

See pages 493 and 494 for entering symbols and pictographs.

Switch Entry Mode in Mode 3 (T9)

You can enter characters by pressing fewer keys in this mode.

To enter the reading of “あした” in Mode 1 (5-touch), for instance, you need to press (1st) once, (3rd) twice, and (4th) once. In Mode 3 (T9), however, you can enter the reading by one press each of (1st) (3rd) (4th), the keys of the syllabary columns you want to enter.

All characters on a column are assigned to a single key (see page 487), and each time you press the key, candidates for the reading are displayed. You can then select and enter the candidate for reading.

“Yomi edit mode” and “Fix mode” are for assisting you to input in Mode 3.

You use “Yomi edit mode” for editing the entered candidate. You use “Fix mode” for directly entering the reading you want to enter. Further, you can skip entering operations if you link Mode 3 (T9) with word prediction (see page 490).

Each time you press (Mode), input mode switches among “Alphabet”, “Numeral”, “Kanji/hiragana”, and “Katakana”, in sequence; however only “Kanji/Hiragana” mode and “Katakana” mode are effective in Mode 3 (T9). Mode 1 (5-touch) is automatically set for “Alphabet” mode and “Numeral” mode.

Example: Entering “遠藤”

1 Character Entry (Edit) display ▶ (1st)

Candidates for あ column is displayed inside the guidance.

Press (Fix) to switch to Fix mode with no candidates displayed. (See page 489)

To switch between full-pitch and half-pitch characters, press (Func) to select “Full pitch” or “Half pitch” from the Function menu and press (Enter).

There are characters that you can enter only as full-pitch character and those that you can enter as both full-pitch and half-pitch character.

Full-pitch character only

Hiragana, Kanji, Pictograph

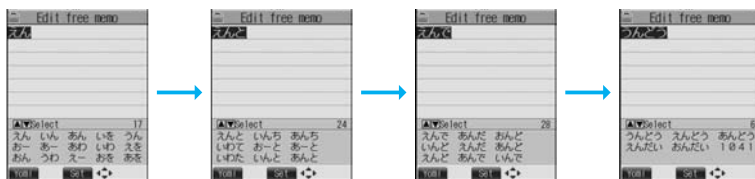
Both full-pitch and half-pitch character

Katakana, Alphabet, Numeral, Symbol



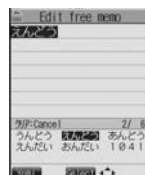
2 (0^{DEA}) ▶ (4^{col}) ▶ (##) ▶ (1st)

Each time you press a key, candidates of character combination are displayed.

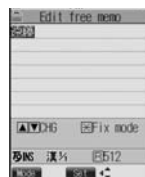


3 (Enter) ▶ Select “えんどう” ▶ (Enter)

If you press (Enter) in katakana mode, the entered characters are fixed.



4 Use (Enter) to convert “えんどう” to Kanji ▶ (Enter)



Characters you can enter in Mode 3

Key	Kanji/Hiragana input mode	Katakana input mode
	あいうえおあいうえお 1	アイウエオアイウエオ 1
	かきくけこ 2	カキクケコ 2
	さしすせそ 3	サシスセソ 3
	たちつてとっ 4	タチツテトッ 4
	なにぬねの 5	ナニヌネノ 5
	はひふへほ 6	ハヒフヘホ 6
	まみむめも 7	マミムメモ 7
	やゆよやゆよ 8	ヤユヨヤユヨ 8
	らりるれろ 9	ラリルレロ 9
	わをんわー 0	ワヲンワ ¹ ー 0
	2	2
	* ° ` 〃 ・ ! ? 3	* ° ` 〃 ・ ! ? 3

1: "ワ (reduced size)" can be entered in full-pitch only.

2: Press to switch to "Yomi edit mode" or "Fix mode". (See pages 488, 489)

3: "° ° " and "° ° " are displayed only for characters that you can enter "° ° " and "° ° ".

Information

See page 494 for entering symbols and pictographs.

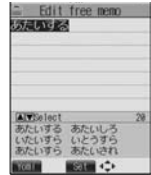
To enter Kuten codes, press () and select "Kuten code" from the Function menu.

Yomi edit mode

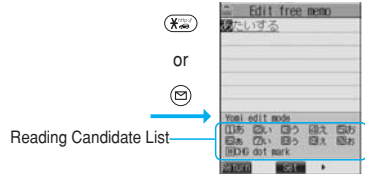
Press X_{del} or Yomi while the Reading Candidate List is displayed to edit the candidate.

Example: To convert the reading candidate “あたいする” to “いどうする”

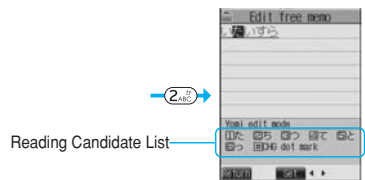
1. Enter the reading candidate “あたいする” in Mode 3 (T9). (See page 486)
(Press 1^{R} 4_{ch} 1^{R} 3_{del} $\text{9}_{\text{X}_{\text{del}}}$.)



2. Press X_{del} or Yomi .
The cursor moves to the head of the candidate.

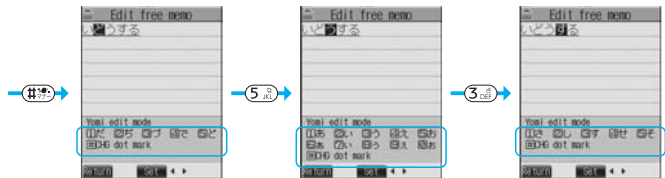


3. Use C to select the character you want to edit and press the number for the reading you want to enter from the Reading Candidate List.
When you select the character you want to edit, the reading number for the column of the selected character is displayed.
(Press 2_{ABC} here, to convert “あ” to “い”.)



4. Press H_{SP} to enter “ ” and “ ”. You edit the reading candidate in the same way.
(Press H_{SP} and 5_{JK} here, to enter “ど” and press 3_{del} to enter “う”.)

To cancel editing the reading candidate, press X_{del} or Yomi . You can then focus the reading candidate by fixing the entered character.



5. To end editing reading, press C .
Press C to convert the reading to kanji, hiragana, or katakana.
In the katakana input mode, characters are defined according to the reading you edited.

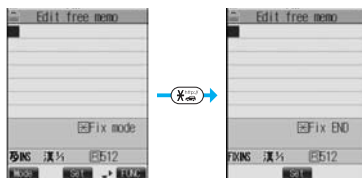


Fix mode

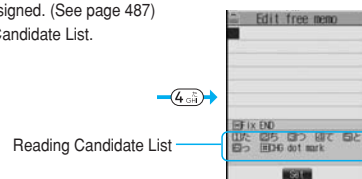
Press X_{fix} to switch to Fix mode from the Character Entry (Edit) display with no candidates displayed. You can enter characters one by one.

Example: To enter the reading “だて”

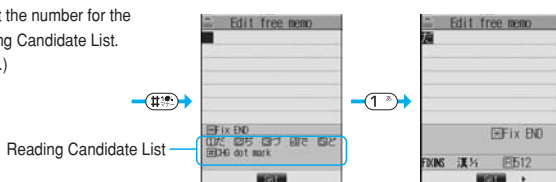
- From the Character Entry (Edit) display in Mode 3 (T9), press X_{fix} .



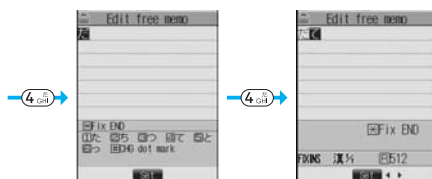
- Press the number for the column of the character you want to enter is assigned. (See page 487)
The number for the readings of that column is displayed in the Reading Candidate List.



- To enter “ ” and “ ”, press H_{fix} . Select the number for the character you want to select from the Reading Candidate List. (Press H_{fix} and 1_{oh} here, to enter “だ”.)



- Edit the reading candidate in the same way.
(Press 4_{oh} and 4_{oh} here, to enter “て”.)
Press X_{fix} to end Fix mode.



- Press C_{end} to end editing reading.

Press C_{end} to convert the reading to kanji, hiragana, or katakana.

In the katakana input mode, characters are defined according to the reading you edited.



Use Prediction

3 DEF 5 JLT


Setting at purchase
ON

Once you enter characters, those characters are automatically memorized, and if you enter the same characters having the same reading again, you can select the candidate from the memorized character strings or common phrases.




1 Other settings ▶ Character input method ▶ Prediction

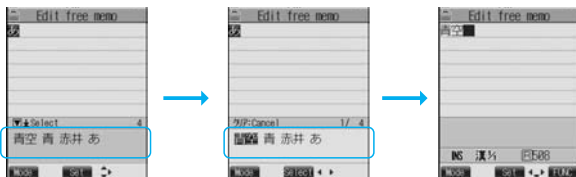
ON.....Performs word prediction.

OFF.....Does not perform word prediction.

From the Character Entry (Edit) display, you can set the prediction ON/OFF by pressing  (FUNCTION) to bring up the Function menu and selecting "Prediction ON" or "Prediction OFF".

Example of using the prediction

1. Enter "あ".
Candidates are displayed in the guidance.
2. Press and hold  for at least one second.
The cursor moves to a candidate.
3. Press  to select a candidate and press .



Display Guidance

3 DEF 5 JLT

Setting at purchase
ON

You can set whether to display the guidance (see page 482) in the Character Entry (Edit) display.

1 Other settings ▶ Character input method ▶ Guidance

ON.....Displays the guidance.

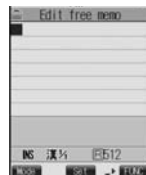
OFF.....Does not display the guidance.

Enter Characters

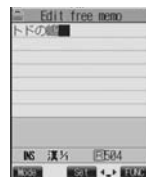
Example: Entering "トドの嶋" into a free memo

1 Free memo

2 Press (Edit) to bring up the Character Entry (Edit) display.



6 Fix the rest characters in the same way.



About Own dictionary

The FOMA phone comes with "Own dictionary", enabling you to register up to 100 words that can be converted by your favorite reading. By making full use of "Own dictionary", you can enter text with ease.

Information

The FOMA phone enables you to convert plural paragraphs at a time. You can enter up to 20 hiragana characters for a conversion and to convert up to six paragraphs at a time.

If you cannot convert to two or more kanji characters at a time, convert them one by one.

Kanji that you can convert is limited, so you cannot convert some kanji characters. Use Kuten code to enter kanji characters that you cannot convert (see page 498). You can enter 6355 characters defined in JIS 1st level kanji and JIS 2nd level kanji.

Some complicated kanji characters are deformed or omitted.

To enter hiragana, select from the conversion candidate or press before converting to kanji.

When the number of characters after conversion has exceeded that of characters you can enter, the confirmation display appears asking whether you fix the number of characters by the maximum number of characters you have entered.

Select "YES" and press ; then the maximum number of characters that you can enter is defined.

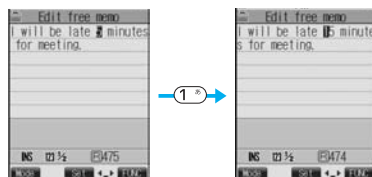
Select "NO" and press ; then characters are not entered and the former Character Entry display returns.

Correcting/deleting characters

To insert a character

In Insert mode, press to place the cursor on the character (just) to the right of the position you want to insert that character and enter it.

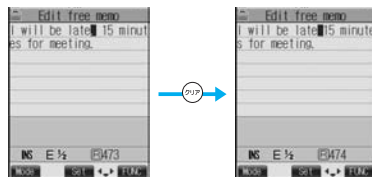
The character is inserted into the cursor position.



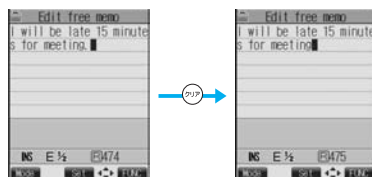
To delete a character

Press to place the cursor on the character you want to delete and press .

The character on the cursor is deleted.



When no character exists after the cursor, the one character to the left of the cursor is deleted.



Information

When some characters are after the cursor, press and hold for at least one second to delete all characters on and after the cursor.


When no character are after the cursor, press and hold for at least one second to delete all characters to the left of the cursor.

About data while entering/editing

When the battery runs empty

If the battery level runs short while you are editing text for functions such as "Free memo" or new mail, the text editing ends automatically and the battery alarm will sound. The data you are editing is automatically fixed and saved, so charge the battery or replace it with the charged battery pack; then you can be back to editing work. However, you cannot save the character you are converting if it is not fixed yet.


If you press

If you press  while you are editing a Phonebook entry or a Schedule event, composing new mail, and so on, the confirmation display appears asking whether to end editing.

To end by discarding the editing contents

Select "YES" and press .


The editing data is discarded and the display before editing or the Stand-by display returns.

* Even if you press , the data is discarded and the display before editing or the Stand-by display returns.

To continue editing

Select "NO" and press .

The editing data is retained and the former display returns.

* Even if you press , the former display returns.

* If you are not editing the data, the confirmation display does not appear.

When you used the Multi-task function

If you use the Multi-task function to switch the display to another the Character Entry (Edit) display, the Existing display is retained with the editing routine midway saved. Switch the task to do the existing editing work.










When a call or mail is received

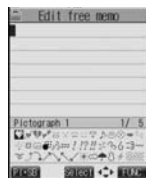
Even if a call or mail is received while you are editing text, you can respond to the incoming call or mail with the editing data retained owing to the Multi-task function.


Function Menu while Entering (Editing) Text



1 While entering (editing) text (**FUNC**) Do the following operation.

See page 239 for the Function menu on the Message Entry display.

Function menu	Operations
PI-SB input mode	<p>You can enter pictographs or symbols while displaying them on the Character Entry (Edit) display.</p> <p> Select a pictograph or symbol </p> <p>The selected pictograph or symbol is entered. You can enter other pictographs and symbols by repeating above operation.</p> <p>Press  (PI-SB) to switch between the Pictograph List and Symbol List. See page 511 for the Pictograph List or the Symbol List.</p> <p> </p> <p>The Character Entry display returns.</p>
Upper case/Lower case	<p>You can also switch by pressing  after entering characters.</p> <p>In Mode 2, you can also switch by pressing  .</p>
Full pitch/Half pitch	<p>In Mode 2, you can also switch by pressing  (Mode).</p>
Copy	You can copy characters. (See page 497)
Cut	You can cut out characters. (See page 497)
Paste	You can paste cut or copied characters. (See page 498)



Function menu	Operations
Common phrases	<p>▶ Select a folder ▶ ▶ Select a common phrase ▶ </p> <p>Fixed common phrases are already stored in Folder 1 and Folder 2. Folders 3 to 5 are not displayed when no common phrase is stored.</p> <p>▶ </p> <p>See page 496 for the Common Phrase List.</p> 
Space	<p>A full-pitch space is entered in full-pitch mode and half-pitch space in half-pitch mode.</p>
Line feed	<p>You can enter “” (Line feed) to start a new line text. You can also press and hold for at least one second to enter “”.</p>
Symbols	<p>▶ Select a symbol ▶ </p> <p>See page 511 for the Symbol List.</p>
Pictograph	<p>▶ Select a pictograph ▶ </p> <p>See page 511 for the Pictograph List.</p>
Kuten code	<p>You can enter characters using the Kuten code. (See page 498)</p>
Insert/Overwrite	<p>You can switch “Insert (INS)” that you can insert newly entered characters between the characters that you have already entered and “Overwrite (OVR)” that you can replace the characters you have already entered by newly entered characters.</p> <p>When you finish with the Character Entry (Edit) display in Overwrite mode and then bring up the display again, Insert mode will return. Switch to Overwrite mode each time you want to use.</p>
Quote phonebook	<p>From the Character Entry (Edit) display, you can access a Phonebook entry and quote its contents of up to 328 full-pitch or 657 half-pitch characters. The following are the items you can quote: <Phonebook stored in the FOMA phone> Name, reading, phone number 1 to 4, mail address 1 to 3, postal address, birthday, memorandums <Phonebook stored in the UIM> Name, reading, phone number, mail address</p> <p>▶ Group search or Column search</p> <p>In “Quote phonebook”, you can search the Phonebook only by “Group search” or “Column search”. See page 99 for search in the Phonebook.</p> <p>▶ Select a Phonebook entry ▶ ▶ Put check marks for the items to be quoted ▶ (Finish)</p> <p>“” and “” switch each time you press .</p> <p>When the number of characters exceeds the maximum, the confirmation display “Some characters will be deleted OK?” appears. Select “YES” and press to paste characters to the allowable range. Select “NO” not to quote and the former Character Entry display returns.</p>
Quote own number	<p>From the Character Entry (Edit) display, you can access your personal data and quote its contents of up to 328 full-pitch or 657 half-pitch characters. The following are the items you can quote: Name, reading, phone number 1 to 4, mail address 1 to 3, postal address, birthday, memorandums</p> <p>▶ Enter the Terminal Security Code ▶ ▶ Put check marks for the quoting item ▶ (Finish)</p> <p>“” and “” switch each time you press .</p> <p>See page 140 for the Terminal Security Code.</p> <p>When the number of characters exceeds the maximum, the confirmation display “Some characters will be deleted OK?” appears. Select “YES” and press to paste characters to the allowable range. Select “NO” not to quote and then the former Character Entry display returns.</p>
Bar code reader	<p>You can start up Bar Code Reader. (See page 176)</p>
Prediction ON/ Prediction OFF	<p>You can set Prediction ON/OFF. (See page 490)</p>

Function menu	Operations
CHG input method	<p>▶ Select a mode ▶ </p> <p>If you press and hold  for at least one second on the Character Entry (Edit) display, you can also switch to the input mode selected by "Input method" in the following order; "Mode 1" "Mode 2" "Mode 3" "Mode 1" in sequence.</p>
Jump	<p>You can move the cursor to the head or end of text.</p> <p>▶ To beginning or To end</p> <p>"end" does not indicates " " (End mark). It indicates the trailing end of characters (including space and line feed mark) while entering characters.</p>

Information

<Common phrases>

You can access and enter common phrases when editing text as follows:


- Wake-up display of "Display setting"
- "Schedule"
- "ToDo"
- "Free memo"
- Edit display for common phrases/Edit display for common phrase folder name
- i-mode Text Box Edit display
- Text editing for i-appli
- Edit display for subject, main text, header, signature, quotation, subject sorting, and subject search of i-mode mail

The accessed contents of common phrase (expression) differ depending on the input mode.

- Mode 1 and 3In Kanji-hiragana mode, accessed in Kanji-hiragana expression.
In other than Kanji-hiragana mode, accessed in half-pitch katakana expression.
- Mode 2In full-pitch input mode, accessed in Kanji-hiragana expression.
In half-pitch input mode, accessed half-pitch katakana expression.

You can access own composed common phrases in stored expression regardless of the input mode.

When the number of storable characters exceeds the maximum in text editing when you enter a common phrase, the confirmation display "Some characters will be deleted OK?" appears.

Select "YES" and press ; then characters are pasted and the characters exceeding the number of storable characters are deleted starting from the end (right end).

If you select "NO", common phrases are not entered and the former Character Entry display returns.

<Line feed>

You can delete or overwrite " ↓ " in the same way as for other characters.

" ↓ " is counted as one full-pitch character.

You might not be able to enter the line feed mark for editing i-mode text box.

<Symbols>

Half-pitch symbols only are displayed when you can enter half-pitch only. The only available symbols are displayed in text entry (edit) display such as for registering mail addresses, searching by addresses, entering mail address, entering URL, or for the name of connecting end specified in "Host selection".

<Pictograph>

You can enter pictographs while you are editing text such as storing "Free memo" or "Common phrases" or creating "i-mode mail".

<Quote phonebook>

You cannot quote during PIM Lock.

You cannot quote "〒" or "▲" for quoting postal address.

When you cannot enter quoted characters, "Unavailable characters are replaced by blanks" is displayed and they are displayed converted to half-pitch spaces.

<Quote own number>

You cannot quote during PIM Lock.

You cannot quote "〒" or "▲" for quoting postal address.

When you cannot enter quoted characters, "Unavailable characters are replaced by blanks" is displayed and they are displayed converted to half-pitch spaces.

Using Common Phrases

You can access and enter common phrases when editing text as follows:

- Wake-up display of “Display setting”
- “Schedule”
- “ToDo”
- “Free Memo”
- i-mode Text Box Edit display
- Text editing for i-appli
- Edit display for subject, main text, header, signature, quotation, subject sorting, and subject search of i-mode mail

Further, you can access common phrases from the Common Phrase Edit display and Folder Name Edit display for common phrases.

Common phrases are split into five folders. 10 fixed common phrases each are stored in Folder 1 and Folder 2. You can store 10 own common phrases each in Folders 3 through 5.

You can edit fixed common phrases. You can store up to 50 own common phrases including edited fixed common phrases.

Display Common Phrases

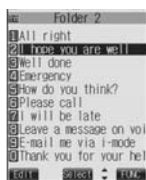
1 Common phrases

- Folder 1 and 2Confirm or edit the pre-installed fixed common phrases.
- Folder 3 to 5Store your own common phrases.



<Common Phrase Folder List>

2 Select a common phrase



<Common Phrase List>



<Common Phrase display>

Folder 1 (Fixed common phrases)

No.	Expressions
1	Sorry
2	Thank you
3	Congratulations!
4	It's time
5	Wait a minute
6	Just arrived
7	Schedule change
8	Where are you?
9	Do your best
0	What are you doing?

Folder 2 (Fixed common phrases)

No.	Expressions
1	All right
2	I hope you are well
3	Well done
4	Emergency
5	How do you think?
6	Please call
7	I will be late
8	Leave a message on voice mail
9	E-mail me via i-mode
0	Thank you for your help

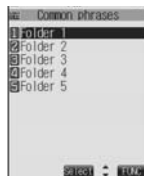
Information

Do not use “Half-pitch katakana” and “Pictographs” for composing own common phrases to be used in mail subject, main text, header, signature, and quotation. They might not be displayed correctly. (You can use pictographs for i-mode mail.)

If Select Language is set to “日本語 (Japanese)”, fixed common phrases are called up in “Kanji/Hiragana expression” when character input method (see page 483) is “Kanji-hiragana input mode” of Mode 1 (5-touch) or Mode 3 (T9) or in “Full-pitch input mode” of Mode 2 (2-touch). Otherwise, common phrases are called up in “Half-pitch katakana expression”.

Function Menu of the Common Phrase Folder List

- 1** Common Phrase Folder List ▶ ⓘ (FUNC) ▶ Do the following operation.

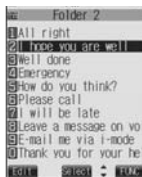


<Common Phrase Folder List>

Function menu	Operations
Edit folder name	▶ Enter the folder name ▶ ⓘ You can enter up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters. See page 482 for how to enter characters. If you delete all folder names, the default folder names will return.
Reset name	You can reset the folder name to the default one. ▶ YES To cancel, select "NO" and press ⓘ.

Function Menu of the Common Phrase List/Common Phrase Display

- 1** Common Phrase List/Common Phrase display ▶ ⓘ (FUNC) ▶ Do the following operation.



<Common Phrase List>



<Common Phrase display>

Function menu	Operations
Edit	▶ Enter the common phrases ▶ ⓘ You can enter up to 64 full-pitch or 128 half-pitch characters. See page 482 for how to enter characters. You can also edit common phrases by pressing ⓘ (Edit) from the Common Phrase List/Common Phrase display. If you delete all fixed common phrases, those are reset to the default ones.
Delete this	▶ YES To cancel, select "NO" and press ⓘ. If you delete fixed common phrases you edited, those are reset to the default ones.
Delete all	You can delete all common phrases inside the folders. ▶ Enter the Terminal Security Code ▶ ⓘ ▶ YES To cancel, select "NO" and press ⓘ. See page 140 for the Terminal Security Code. The fixed common phrases you edited (in Folder 1 or Folder 2) are reset to the default ones.

Cutting/Coping/Pasting Characters

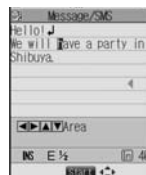
Cut/Copy

You can cut or copy up to 5000 full-pitch or 10000 half-pitch characters.

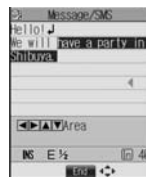
- 1** Character Entry (Edit) display ▶ ⓘ (FUNC) ▶ Cut or Copy

2 Select a start point ▶

When you cut or copy the main text of mail, press  (All); then select "YES" and press  to cut or copy all characters.



3 Select an end point ▶



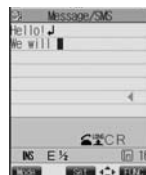
Information

Only one "Cut" item or "Copy" item can be memorized. If you do "Cut" or "Copy" newly, the memorized characters are overwritten. If you copy/cut and paste the Deco mail text while composing, the information about the decoration is also copied.

Paste

You can paste a copied or cut string of up to 5000 full-pitch or 10000 half-pitch characters.

1 Character Entry (Edit) display ▶ Move the cursor to the start position for pasting



2 (FUNC) ▶ Paste

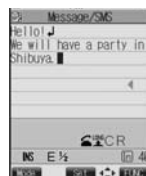
In the overwrite mode, the characters entered after the cursor is overwritten by the pasted characters. (See page 494)

When the number of characters that you are pasting exceeds the maximum, the confirmation display "Some characters will be deleted OK?" appears.

Select "YES" and press  to paste characters to the allowable range.

Select "NO" not to paste and then the former Character Entry display returns.

If you cannot paste some characters to a pasting position, the message "Unavailable characters paste as blank" is displayed, replacing the characters with half-pitch spaces.




Kuten Code

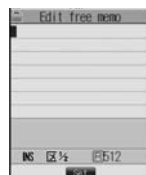
You can enter characters, numerals, and symbols listed in the Kuten Code List (see page 512).

Example: entering "携" (Kuten code 2340)

1 Character Entry (Edit) display ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Kuten code

The display switches to Kuten input mode and "区" appears on the lower left side of the display.

With the Kanji/Hiragana mode in "Mode 1" and the full-pitch mode in "Mode 2", you can also switch to Kuten code input mode by pressing .



Resetting Learning Dictionary




You can reset the Learning Dictionary function that automatically memorizes the entered characters as the conversion candidates.

- 1  **Other settings**  **Character input method**  **Clear learned**  **Enter the Terminal Security Code** 

T9/Expect wordsResets the Learning Dictionary function accumulated by "Mode 3 (T9 Input)", and "Prediction".
 Kana/Kanji change.....Resets the Learning Dictionary function accumulated by kana/kanji conversion.
 See page 140 for the Terminal Security Code.


Using Downloaded Dictionary










You can make dictionaries downloaded (see page 211) from sites valid. If you select a dictionary already validated, it is made invalid. You can store up to five dictionaries and can make two of them valid.

- 1  **DL dictionary**  **Select a downloaded dictionary** 
- The downloaded dictionary you have selected is validated and " " is indicated.
 To invalidate downloaded dictionary, perform the same operation.



Function Menu while Download Dictionary is Displayed

- 1 While a downloaded dictionary is displayed  **(FUNC)**  **Do the following operation.**

Function menu	Operations
Edit title	 Enter the title  You can enter up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters. See page 482 for how to enter characters.
Set dictionary	You can validate the dictionary.
Dictionary info	You can display the dictionary title, version, and creator. After checking, press  .
Delete this	 YES To cancel, select "NO" and press  .
Delete all	 Enter the Terminal Security Code   YES To cancel, select "NO" and press  .




Information

<Edit title>
 If you delete all titles and press , the default titles will return.






Appendix




Function List	502
Data Stored at the Time of Purchase	508
Symbol Conversion List.....	510
Emoticon Conversion List	510
Symbol List.....	511
Pictograph List.....	511
Kuten Code List	512
Multiaccess Combination Patterns	516
Multitask Combination Patterns	517
Services Available with FOMA Phones.....	518
Introduction of Options and Related Equipment	519
Introduction of Data Link Software	519
Links with AV Equipment.....	520
Troubleshooting	
Troubleshooting.....	520
Error Messages	521
Warranty and Maintenance Services	532
Updating Software.....<Software Update>	533
Protecting the FOMA Phone from Data Causing Trouble	<Scanning Function> 537
SAR Certification Information.....	540
Specifications.....	541
Number of Savable/Storable/Protectable Items in FOMA Phone	542

Function List

Execute “Reset settings (all reset)” (see page 424) for the items indicated by , “Reset settings (mail)” (See page 291) for the items indicated by , and “Reset settings (i-mode)” (see page 214) for the items indicated by  to return to the respective defaults. If you execute “Initialize” (see page 424), all items return to the settings at the time of purchase.




Even if you do the initial settings, the pre-installed i-appli you have deleted does not resume.



Menu	Function name	Setting at purchase	Reference	
	Inbox		No messages (except inside the UIM)	P.264
		User created folder	None	
	Outbox		No messages (except inside the UIM)	P.264
		User created folder	None	
	Draft		No messages (except inside the UIM)	P.265
	Compose message		-	P.235
	Chat mail	Chat member	Not recorded	P.293
	Compose SMS		-	P.301
	Check new message		-	P.258
	Receive option		-	P.257
	Check new SMS		-	P.304
	Template		Pre-installed data only	P.288
	Mail settings ¹	Scroll	1 line	P.290
		Character size	Standard	P.290
		Mail list disp.	2 lines	P.291
		Message display	Standard	P.291
		Auto melody play	ON	P.291
		Header/Signature	Header: Blank (Automatically Inserted) Signature: Blank (Automatically Inserted) Quotation marks: >	P.292
		Mail security	All unchecked	P.150
		Receiving display	Alarm preferred	P.291
Receive option setting		OFF	P.258	
Attached file		All checked	P.291	
Photo auto display		ON	P.291	
Kirari Mail		All checked	P.257	
Chat		Sound setting: Pattern1 Chat image: ON User setting: Own (Name) Elephant (Image)	P.298	
SMS report request		OFF	P.305	
SMS validity period	3 days	P.305		
SMS input character	Japanese (70char.)	P.306		
	 Menu	-	P.193	
	Bookmark	User created folder	P.203	
	Screen memo		Not stored	P.206
	Last URL ²		 Menu	P.199
	Go to location	URL history	No histories	P.201
	Message		No messages	P.218
	Check new message		-	P.258
	Client certificate		-	P.224
	i-mode settings ²	Scroll	1 line	P.214
		Character size	Standard	P.214
		Set image display	ON	P.214
		 motion setting	Automatic replay: ON	P.330
Message auto display		MessageR preferred	P.217	
Auto melody play		ON	P.217	


	Menu	Function name	Setting at purchase	Reference		
			Use saved data	YES	P.214	
			Home URL	Setting: Invalid Home URL: http://	P.202	
			Sound effect setting	ON	P.214	
		Software list		Pre-installed i-αppli only	P.312	
		Auto start set		OFF	P.324	
		α appli info		No information and histories	P.324	
		Incoming call				
	50	Ring volume		Level 4	P.65	
	13	Select ring tone	Phone		Pattern 1	P.110
			Video-phone		Pattern 1	
			Mail		Pattern 2	
			Chat mail		Pattern 2	
			MessageR		Pattern 3	
			MessageF		Pattern 3	
	54	Vibrator		OFF	P.113	
	89	Illumination	Phone		Color 5	P.130
			Video-phone		Color 5	
			Mail		Color 1	
			Chat mail		Color 3	
			MessageR		Color 1	
			MessageF		Color 1	
			Set pattern		Standard	
			Adjust color		Default	
	20	Manner mode set			Manner mode	P.119
			Record msg.		OFF (when "Original" is set)	
			Vibrator		ON (when "Original" is set)	
			Phone vol.		Silent (when "Original" is set)	
			Mail vol.		Silent (when "Original" is set)	
			Alarm vol.		Silent (when "Original" is set)	
			VM tone		ON (when "Original" is set)	
			Keypad sound		OFF (when "Original" is set)	
			Mic sensitiv.		Up (when "Original" is set)	
			LVA tone		OFF (when "Original" is set)	
		Disp. phonebook image		ON	P.124	
	58	Answer setting		Any key answer	P.61	
	18	Fold setting		End the call	P.62	
	68	Mail/Msg. ring time		ON	P.117	
			Ring time			5 seconds
	90	Ringing time	Set mute seconds		0 second	P.153
			Missed calls display		Display	
	65	Info notice setting		ON	P.133	
		Open phone		Keep ringing	P.62	
	Talk					
76	Noise reduction		ON	P.59		
75	Quality alarm		High tone	P.116		
77	Reconnect control		No tone	P.58		
	Illumination in talk		OFF	P.133		
	Call response setting	On hold tone		Tone 1	P.67	
		Holding tone		JESU JOY OF MEN'S DESIRING		
	Video-phone					
	Moving image quality		Normal	P.85		
	Camera image sending		ON	P.85		
	Select image	On hold		Pre-installed	P.85	
		Holding		Pre-installed		
		Substitutive image		Chara-den		
		Record message		Pre-installed		
		Preparing		Pre-installed		
		Voice memo		Pre-installed		



Menu	Function name	Setting at purchase		Reference
	Voice call auto switch		OFF	P.87
	Remote observation	Other ID	Not recorded	P.87
		Ringing time	5 seconds (when "Remote observation" is set to "ON")	
		Set	OFF	
	Disp. setting V-phone	Main display	Other image	P.90
		Display screen size	Fit in display	
	Display			
56	Display setting	Stand-by display	Air	P.121
		Wake-up display	Wake up	
		Dialing	Hairline silver	
		Calling	Hairline silver	
		VP Dialing	Hairline silver	
		VP Calling	Hairline silver	
		Mail sending	Hairline silver	
		Mail receiving	Hairline silver	
		Check new message	Hairline silver	
		Power saver mode	ON	
70	Display light	Lighting	ON	P.127
		Power saver mode	ON	
		Light time	5 minutes	
		Charging	Standard	
		Area	LCD+Keys	
		Brightness	Level 2	
86	Color pattern		Pattern 1	P.128
93	Private window	Display setting	Standard	P.125
		Contrast	Level 5	
		Orientation	Pattern 1	
		Clock	Pattern 1	
		Called	ON	
		Mail	OFF	
		Animation	ON (Display light OFF)	
66	Font	Type	Font 1	P.137
		Thickness	Medium	
63	Desktop icon		None	P.137
15	Select language		Japanese (日本語)	P.43
52	Private menu		Own number	P.412
			Ring volume	
			Vibrator	
			Caller ID notification	
			Alarm	
57	Menu display set	Guidance	ON	P.129
		Menu display	Detail	
		Menu icon	Pattern1	
	Viewer settings		Picture	P.347
47	Automatic display		OFF	P.127
36	Icons		-	P.26
	Call time/charge			
61	Call data	Last call duration/All calls duration	0 seconds	P.416
		Last Charge/Charge	¥0	
		Calls reset/Charge reset	--/-- --:--	
60	Reset call duration		-	P.417
48	Call time display		ON	P.416
	Clock			
31	Set time		----/-- --:--	P.45
39	Main window clock	Display	ON	P.138
		Size	Big	
	Alarm setting		Alarm preferred	P.412
	Lock/Security			

Menu	Function name	Setting at purchase	Reference	
	All lock	Released	P.144	
	PIM lock	Released	P.147	
	Self mode	Released	P.146	
	Keypad dial lock	Released	P.147	
		Reject unknown	Accept	P.153
	10	Call setting w/o ID	All accept/Same as ring tone	P.152
	29	Change security code	0000	P.141
		PIN setting	-	P.142
	40	Secret mode	Released	P.149
	41	Secret only mode	Released	P.149
		Scanning function	Scan function	ON
	99	Remote all lock		OFF
			Accept phone No.	Not recorded
			Monitoring	3 minutes (when "Remote all lock" is set to "ON")
			Received calls	5 times (when "Remote all lock" is set to "ON")
	Connection setting			
		Set connection timeout	60 seconds	P.215
		Set check new message	All checked	P.259
	81	Host selection	i-mode	P.215
		SMS center selection	DoCoMo	P.306
		Certificate	All Valid	P.222
		Certificate host		DoCoMo
			User created connecting end	Not recorded
	 alpha settings			
		Display software info	Not display	P.311
		alpha Display light	Depend on system	P.326
		alpha Vibrator	Depend on system	P.326
		End stand-by display	-	P.326
	External option			
	51	Earphone	Earphone+Speaker	P.117
	94	Automatic answer		OFF
			Ringing time	6 seconds (when "Automatic answer" is set to "ON")
	Other settings			
	30	Keypad sound	ON	P.116
		Charge sound	ON	P.116
	71	Battery level	-	P.42
		Side keys guard	OFF	P.148
	35	Character input method	Input mode	All checked
			Prior mode	Mode 1 (5-touch)
			Prediction	ON
			Guidance	ON
		Record display set	Received calls	ON
			Redial/Dialed calls	ON
	84	Pause dial	Not recorded	P.55
		Sub-address	ON	P.58
		Prefix setting	WORLD CALL (009130010)	P.57
		Int'l dial setting	Auto assist setting	Auto
IDD Prefix setting			WORLD CALL (009130010)	
Country Code setting			アメリカ (1)	
	PLMN setting	Manual	P.423	
	USB mode setting	Communication mode	P.385	
23	Reset	-	P.424	
	Initialize	-	P.424	
	Software update	-	P.533	
	46	My picture	Pre-installed data only	
		User created folder	None	
		Character stamp	Character color: 16 color, Black Font : Gothic style Character size : Standard size	

	Menu	Function name	Setting at purchase	Reference		
			Original animation	Not stored	P.352	
			Set display	All released	P.342	
			Positioning	Center	P.337	
			Clipping area	Center	P.337	
			Sort	Chronological	P.338	
			Picture/Title name	Picture	P.345	
			Set image disp.	Normal	P.347	
		motion			Pre-installed data only	P.353
				User created folder	None	
				Edit playlist	Not stored	P.356
				Set as ring tone	All released	P.356
				Stand-by display	Released	P.358
				Sort	Chronological	P.338
				Listing	Title + Image	P.359
	16	Melody			Pre-installed data only	P.371
				User created folder	None	
				Edit playlist	Not stored	P.373
				Set as ring tone	All released	P.374
		Chara-den			Pre-installed data only	P.367
				Camera mode	Photo mode	P.370
				Set image disp.	Fit in display	P.368
				Recording size	QCIF (176 x 144)	P.371
				Recording type	Video + voice	P.371
				Recording Qlty	Normal	P.371
				Substitute image	ブンブン (Dimo)	P.80
		Camera			Outside camera	P.171
				Format setting	CIF (352 x 288)	P.171
				Shot interval	1.0 second	P.171
				Shot number	4 shots	P.171
				File size setting	Mail restrict'n(S)	P.172
				Storage setting	Normal	P.172
				White balance	Auto	P.172
				Image tuning	Auto	P.172
				Auto save set	OFF	P.172
				Store in	Phone	P.173
				Shutter sound	Sound 1	P.173
				File restriction	File unrestricted	P.174
				Display size	Actual size	P.173
		79	Receive Ir data		-	P.388
			Guide		-	P.35
			Bar code reader	Saved data	None	P.176
			Text reader	Saved data	None	P.181
		SD-PIM		-	P.380	
45		Schedule			Not stored	P.402
				Monthly display/Weekly display	Monthly display	P.406
	User icon settg.			Not recorded	P.407	
44	Alarm			Not recorded	P.399	
				OFF		
85	Calculator		-	P.417		
95	ToDo		Not stored	P.409		
42	Free memo			Not recorded	P.418	
			Play/Erase msg.	-	P.71	
55	Record message			Not recorded	P.69	
				OFF		
			Answer message	Japanese 1 (when "Record message" is set to "ON")		
			Ringing time	8 seconds (when "Record message" is set to "ON")		
43	Voice memo during standby			Not recorded	P.415	
				Not recorded	P.415	

	Menu	Function name	Setting at purchase	Reference	
	91	Voice announce	Not recorded	P.115	
		Forwarding image	ON	P.391	
		UIM operation	-	P.419	
	25	Check messages	-	P.426	
	17	Caller ID notification	-	P.433	
		Voice mail	Message notification	YES	P.426
		Call waiting	-	P.429	
		Call forwarding	-	P.430	
		Nuisance call barring	-	P.432	
		Caller ID request	-	P.433	
		Arrival call act	Answer	P.436	
		Set arrival act	-	P.436	
		Remote access	-	P.436	
		Dual network	-	P.434	
		English guidance	-	P.435	
		Additional service		Not stored	P.437
			Additional guidance	Not stored	
		Service dialing number		-	P.435
		Multi number			P.436
			Add to phonebook		Not stored (except inside the UIM)	P.93
		Search phonebook	Search method	Reading search	P.99
22		No. of phonebook		-	P.104
62		Utilities		All released	P.106
12		Restrictions		All released	P.151
26		Group setting	Group name	Group 01 to 19	P.98
0		Own number		Not stored (except Own number)	P.413
	24	Received calls		No records	P.63
			Received address	No records	P.283
		Dialed calls		No records	P.53
			Sent address	No records	P.281
				No records	P.286
	97	Mail member		Not stored	P.286
			Member name	Mail member 1 to 20	
		Chat group		Not stored	P.299
			Group name	Group 1 to 5	
	38	Common phrases	Fixed common phrase	Default	P.496
			Original common phrase	Not stored	
	82	Own dictionary		Not stored	P.499
DL dictionary				Not stored	P.500
Other		Video-phone	Brightness	0	P.83
			White balance	Automatic	P.83
			Display light	Constant light	P.84
		Photo-sending	Format setting	QCIF (176 x 144)	P.171
		Earpiece volume		Level 4	P.65
		Manner mode		Released	P.118
		Driving mode		Released	P.67
	Redial		No histories	P.53	

Data Stored at the Time of Purchase

Frame



Stamp



Information

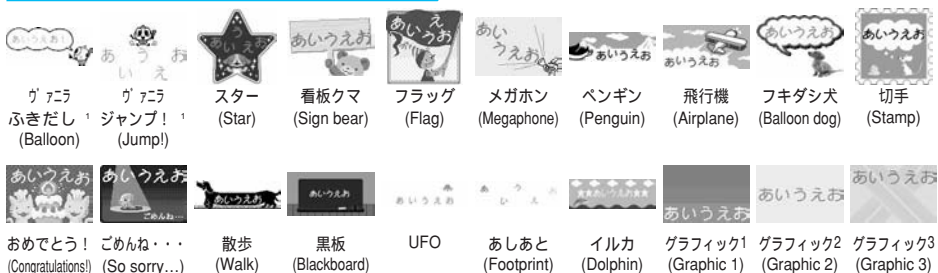
The marks that can be selected from Cushy Mark are from “マジック ネコ耳 (Cushy cat's ears)” through “マジック 居眠り (Cushy snooze)”.

Decomail-picture





Moving Font Effect



Template



Symbol Conversion List

On the Character Entry (Edit) display, enter “きごう” to convert it to bring up symbol candidates. Further, you can enter characters listed below to convert them into respective symbols.

Character	Symbol
あっと あっとまーく	@
いこーる	=
えん	¥
おす	
おなじ	々
おなじく	〃
おんぶ	
かける	×
かっこ	() [] { } < > ' ‚ „ † ‡ § ¶ ‘ ’ “ ” () [] { } ;

Character	Symbol
から	~
こめ	
ころん	:
こんま	,
さんかく	
しゃせん	/ \
しかく	
たす	+
どう	、 、 、 、 、 # 々
ぱーせんと	%

Character	Symbol
ひく	-
ひしがた	
ほし	
まる	
むげん	
めす	
やじるし	
ゆうびん	〒
るーと	
わる	÷

Emoticon Conversion List

In the Character Entry (Edit) display, enter “かお” or “かおもじ” to convert them to bring up emoticon candidates. Further, you can enter characters listed below to convert them into respective emoticons.

Character	Emoticons
ありがと ありがとう	m(_ _)m
ばんざい	\(^0^)/
わーい	(^0^)
おーい	(^0^)/
ぶい	(^^)v
ぎやはは	(^Q^)/^
あは	(o^o^o)
にこ	(^_^)
にこ	(*^_^*)
ちゅ	(^3^)/
ちゅ	(^ ^)- Chu!!
わくわく	o(^.^)o
ういんく	(^_-)
さよなら	(^_^)/~
がんば	p(^^^)q
ね	(^.^)b

Character	Emoticons
ぼりぼり	(^^ゞ
ひやあせ	(^o^;
あせあせ	(;^_^^
びくっ	(*_**)
どき	(. . ;)
え	(@_@;)
めがてん	(. . ;)
はてな	(. . ?)
きらーん	(. .)
しくしく	(T_T)
さよなら	(T_T)/~
いたた	(>_<)
えーん	(;_;
なぜ	(?_?)
がーん	(;)!!
えへん	(^)
む	(- _ - メ)

Character	Emoticons
いかり	(` `)
むか	(;_:_+)
こそこそ	( . _ |)
じーっ	(. _ .)
きこえない	|( . _ .)|
こまったもんだ	(~)
ぶたー	)^o^(
こあら	(- Q -)
いっぶく	(^!^)/y~
いっぶく	(^ . ^)/y.~^^
ほし	≡
ねてる	(. _ .)zZ
ねむい	\(^o^)/
めも	(. .)
うん	(' ^ X, _)
かんばい	(^^)/ \(^^)
ども	\(^_^ X ^_^)/

Symbol List

The symbols shown in <Half pitch (5/5)> below are entered in half pitch but other symbols are counted as full pitch. If you select “Symbols” from the Function menu of character input mode that allows you to enter only half-pitch characters, you can display half-pitch symbols (5/5) only. See pages 493, 494 for how to enter symbols.



<Full pitch 1 (1/5)>



<Full pitch 1 (2/5)>



<Full pitch 1 (3/5)>



<Full pitch 2 (4/5)>



<Half pitch (5/5)>

Pictograph List

Entered pictographs are all counted as full pitch characters. See pages 493, 494 for how to enter pictographs.



<Pictograph 1 (1/3)>



<Pictograph 1 (2/3)>



<Pictograph 2 (3/3)>


Information

Pictographs are not correctly displayed if they are sent to devices other than i-mode compatible mobile phones or personal computers. Further, pictographs on the “<Pictograph 2 (3/3)>” display are not correctly displayed on i-mode mobile phones that do not support them.

Multiaccess Combination Patterns

Transmission event \ Transmission status	Voice call		Video-phone call		i-mode	i-mode mail		Short Message (SMS)	
	Outgoing	Incoming	Outgoing	Incoming	Connecting	Outgoing	Incoming	Outgoing	Incoming
Voice call			x	x ¹					
Video-phone call	-	x ¹	-	x ¹	-	-	x	-	
i-mode				x	-				
i-mode mail				x	-	-	x	-	²
Short Message (SMS)						-	²	-	
i-αppli ³	x		x	x	-	x		x	
i-αppli software running				x	-				
Packet transmission (data transmission)			-	x	x	x	-		
64K data transmission	x	x ¹	x	x ¹	x	x	x		⁴

Transmission event \ Transmission status	i-αppli	i-αppli software running	Packet transmission (Data transmission)		64K data transmission	
	Outgoing	Outgoing	Outgoing	Incoming	Outgoing	Incoming
Voice call	x	x			x	x ¹
Video-phone call	-	-	x	x	x	x ¹
i-mode	-	-	x	-	x	x
i-mode mail	-	-	x	-	x	x
Short Message (SMS)						
i-αppli ³	-	-	x	-	x	x
i-αppli software running	-	-	x	-	x	x
Packet transmission (data transmission)	x	x	-	-	-	-
64K data transmission	x	x	-	-	-	x ¹

- : You can proceed the started transmission event while the current transmission continues (the new event works in the same way as it works by itself).
- x : The started transmission event is rejected and the current transmission continues.
- : A combination that cannot be realized as a function.
- : If you have signed up for Call Waiting Service, you can make another voice call with the current voice call put on hold.
- : In the condition of the maximum number of voice line+1, you can activate Voice mail, Call waiting, or Call forwarding. (See pages 426, 429, 430)
- : After switching the menu function (see page 398), you can make a voice call from the Stand-by display.
- : Menu switches and the Call Receiving display (Mail Receiving display) appears.
- : After switching the menu function (see page 398), you can transmit from respective applications.
- : "  " appears on the display for incoming mail.
- : You can disconnect i-αppli and make calls by switching the menu function (see page 398).
- : When you make a video-phone call (including the Phone To/AV Phone To function), i-mode transmission is cut off.
- 1: If you have signed up for Call Waiting Service, you can answer an incoming call after finishing a call or transmission.
- 2: For i-mode mail and Short Message (SMS), you can use a single line each at a time.
- 3: This is the case for when you are updating or downloading i-αppli software.
- 4: The ring tone does not sound.

Multitask Combination Patterns

When the functions in the same group (□ part in the table) conflict, the display for switching the running function appears. But depending on the operation, it might not be displayed.

Started function Function in operation	Voice call	Video-phone call	Mail	i-mode group		Setting group		Tool group				Private menu/ Shortcut menu
				i-mode	i-appli	Settings	Service	Data BOX	Tool ₁	Phonebook	Own data	
Voice call	-	×			×	²	³	×	⁴	⁵	⁶	
Video-phone call	×	-	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×
Mail			-			²					⁵	
i-mode				-	×	²					⁵	
i-appli				×	-	²					⁵	
Settings						-	×				⁵	
Service						×	-				⁵	
Data BOX ⁷						²		-	×	×	×	
Tool ¹	⁸	⁸	⁹			²		×	-	×	×	
Phonebook						²		×	×	-	×	
Own data						²		×	×	×	-	

- : A combination that cannot be realized as a function.

□ : Can be activated.

×

1 : You cannot use Multitask to start up "Voice announce", "Receive Ir data", "SD-PIM", and "UIM operation".

2 : You cannot use it depending on the function.

3 : You cannot start up "Caller ID notification" during a call.

4 : Tool functions you can start up during calls are limited to "Camera (still image shot only)", "使いいかたナビ (Guide)", "Bar code reader", "Text reader", "Schedule", "ToDo", "Free memo", "Calculator", and "Voice memo" (during a call).

5 : You cannot start up "Restrictions".

6 : Own data you can start up during calls are limited to "Own number", "Received calls", "Dialed calls", "Mail member", and "Chat group".

7 : If you use Multitask to switch any of the functions for Picture Viewer (miniSD memory card), i-motion Player, Melody Player, or Chara-den Player, playing or displaying ends.

You cannot switch the functions while you are editing an i-motion movie.

8 : If a call comes in while you are playing a memo or recording "Voice memo" (during standby), playing back or recording stops. When a call comes in while you are reading data using "Bar code reader" or "Text reader", the reading data is discarded.

9 : If you set "Receiving display" to "Alarm preferred" and a message comes in while you are reading data using "Bar code reader" or "Text reader", the reading data is discarded.

Services Available with FOMA Phones

Available services	Phone number
Collect call (calls charged to the receiver)	(No prefix) 106
Directory assistance for ordinary phones and DoCoMo mobile phones (Charges apply.) (Unlisted phone numbers cannot be given.)	(No prefix) 104
Telegrams (Telegram charges apply.) 8 a.m. to 10 p.m.	(No prefix) 115
Time check (Charges apply.)	(No prefix) 117
Weather forecast (Charges apply.)	Area code + 177
Emergency calls to police	(No prefix) 110
Emergency calls to fire station and ambulance	(No prefix) 119
Emergency calls for accidents at sea	(No prefix) 118
Disaster messaging service (Charges apply.)	(No prefix) 171

Information

When using collect call (106), the destination user is charged call fee and a handling fee ¥90 (¥94.5 with tax) for each call. (As of January 2005)

When using the Directory Assistance Service (104), you are charged a guidance fee ¥100 (¥105 with tax) plus call fee. For whom having weak eyesight or handicapped arms, the guidance is available charge free. For more details, dial 116 (NTT inquiry counter) from ordinary phones. (As of January 2005)

When you dial 110/119/118 from the FOMA phone, you cannot be located. Tell the stuff at the police/fire station that you are calling from a mobile phone and then notify your phone number and a correct description of your current location so that they can call you back to confirm. Further, remain still while talking to prevent your call from being disconnected. Do not turn off the power immediately after the call, but instead make sure that your phone can receive calls for at least 10 minutes.

You might not be connected to regional police/fire station depending on the area from where you call. If this happens, use payphones or ordinary phones.

If you use "Call Forwarding Service" or "Voice Warp" for the ordinary phone and specify mobile phone as the forwarding destination, callers may hear ringing tone even when the mobile phone is busy, out of service area, or the power is turned off depending on the settings of the ordinary phone/mobile phone.

Note that the FOMA phone is not available to 116 (NTT inquiry counter), Dial Q2, Message Dial, and credit call services. (You can use auto credit call to the FOMA phone from ordinary phones or payphones.)

Introduction of Options and Related Equipment

Combining various options with the FOMA phone, you can realize more versatile use from personal purpose to business purposes. Some products may not be dealt in depending on the area. Consult a DoCoMo Shop Counter for details. Refer to the user's manuals of respective options and related equipment for how to operate them.

- Battery Pack P06
 - Rear Cover P04
 - FOMA AC Adapter 01
 - FOMA AC Adapter 01 for both overseas and domestic usage
 - FOMA DC Adapter 01
 - Desktop Holder P07
 - In-Car Holder P07
 - Carry Case P019
 - Arm Stand
 - FOMA USB Cable
 - Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone Set with Switch P01/P02
 - Flat-plug Stereo Earphone Set P01
 - Earphone/Microphone Set with Switch P001/P002
 - Stereo Earphone Set P001
- The Earphone Plug Adapter P001 is required.

Introduction of Data Link Software

Using "FOMA P700i data link software", you can connect the FOMA phone to your personal computer via the FOMA USB Cable (option) and transfer Phonebook entries, schedule events, mail messages and bookmarks in both the upload and download ways.

Importing the data link software into your personal computer, you can edit and back up the data.

Download URL

You can download the "FOMA P700i data link software" from the web site. Before installing this software in your system, confirm the approval of use.

<http://panasonic.jp/mobile/p700i/datalink/index.html>

See the above URL for how to download the data link software, transferable data, operating environments, operating method, and restrictions.

Information

For download, a personal computer connected to the Internet is required.

For download, you are charged a separate transmission fee.

On the FOMA P700i, use "FOMA P700i data link software" downloaded from the URL described above. Note that you cannot use other Data Link Software.

Compatible Operating Systems

Microsoft® Windows® 98, Windows® 98SE, Windows® Me, Windows® 2000 Professional, Windows® XP Professional/Home Edition (Japanese version in each)

PC-AT compatible machines on which the above Operating Systems run.

Liability

Panasonic Mobile Communications Co., Ltd. shall not be liable for any defects or failures in the "FOMA P700i data link software". Panasonic Mobile Communications Co., Ltd. shall not also guarantee the "FOMA P700i data link software" and the related documents. User shall be liable for solving problems that may arise on the "FOMA P700i data link software" and the related documents in the self-pay burden.

For the "FOMA P700i data link software", contact

Panasonic Software Support Desk

Phone number: ☎ 0120-568-721

Business hour: 9:00 a.m. to 5:00 p.m.

(Excluding Saturdays, Sundays, national holidays, and specified holidays)

Can be called from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHSs.

Make sure that you dial the correct number.

Links with AV Equipment

On the FOMA phone, you can play some moving images in ASF format, which are imported from other AV equipment to the miniSD memory card. You can also play some moving images recorded with the FOMA phone on other AV equipment. For information about links with compatible AV equipment, see from the following URL:
<http://panasonic.jp/mobile/p700i/minisd/index.html>

Inquiry Center for Links with Compatible AV Equipment

Panasonic Mobile Communications Customer Service Center

Business hour: 9:00 a.m. to 5:00 p.m.

(Excluding Saturdays, Sundays, national holidays, and specified days)

Make sure that you dial the correct number.

From ordinary phones: ☎ 0120-15-8729

From mobile phones or PHSs: 045-938-4023

Troubleshooting

Problem	Check point	Reference
The FOMA phone does not turn on. (Cannot use)	Make sure the battery is attached to the phone correctly. Make sure the battery is fully charged. If the mova is usable in Dual Network Service, some services might not be available for the FOMA phone. Is the FOMA phone usable? Refer to "Network Services User's Guide" for details.	p.39 p.42 p.434
Cannot dial by pressing keys.	Make sure Keypad Dial Lock is deactivated. Make sure Restrict Dialing is deactivated. Make sure All Lock is deactivated. Make sure Self Mode is deactivated.	p.147 p.150 p.144 p.146
Dial but cannot connect; busy tone sounds.	Make sure the phone number contains an area code. Enter the phone number after you hear the dial tone. If "圏外" appears, move to a place where it disappears.	p.48 p.43
"圏外" appears and busy tone sounds.	You may be outside the service area or weak radio waves are being received.	p.43
"🔒" and "All lock" are displayed and pressing keys null.	This may be because All Lock is activated.	p.144
Pressing the side keys does not work when the FOMA phone is closed.	This may be because "Side keys guard" is set to "ON".	p.148
Alert beeps.	The battery runs short. You need to charge.	p.40
Cannot charge. (Call/Charging indicator does not light.)	Make sure the battery is attached to the FOMA phone correctly. Make sure the power plug of the adapter is securely inserted into outlet. Make sure the adapter and the FOMA phone is firmly connected. For AC adapter (option), make sure its connector is firmly connected to the FOMA phone or a desktop holder (option).	p.39 p.41
The display grows dark, showing nothing.	Make sure "Power saver mode" is deactivated.	p.43, 123
Different ring tones sound for incoming mail.	This may be the mail from a party whose mail ring tone is set by Utilities per mail address. This may be the mail from a party stored in a group and set with a mail ring tone in Group Setting.	p.111 p.112
Images or melodies selected in functions do not play; they play at the default.	Make sure the UIM that was inserted when you downloaded images or melodies is inserted.	p.37
Cannot count All Calls Charge.	Make sure All Calls Charge on the UIM does not exceed the limit (about ¥16,770,000). Reset All Calls Charge to return to ¥0.	p.417

Error Messages




Message	Description	Reference
A data can not be update un-setting	The Clock is not set, so data cannot be updated. Set the Clock and try again.	P.45
Abnormal end	An error occurred, so scanning could not be done.	—
Activate ringing time 001~120 sec	Set a ringing time for Automatic Answer to 1 through 120 seconds.	P.422
Activate ringing time 01~30 sec	Set a ringing time for mail/message to 1 through 30 seconds.	P.117
Activating	Receive Option Setting is set to "OFF". Switch the setting to "ON" and try again.	P.258
Activating keypad dial lock	Keypad Dial Lock is activated. Release Keypad Dial Lock and try again.	P.147
Activating PIM lock	PIM Lock is set. Release the lock and try again.	P.147
Activating record display OFF	Record Display Set is set to "OFF". Switch the setting to "ON" and try again.	P.148
Activating restrict dialing	Restrict Dialing has been set. Release Restrict Dialing and try again.	P.151
Activating self mode	Self Mode is set. Release Self Mode and try again.	P.146
Address is not valid (451)	Could not send messages correctly. Check address and try again.	P.280
All protected Cannot delete	All data items are protected, so cannot delete. Release protection and try again.	P.207, 220, 274
Already activate 2 files	Two downloaded dictionaries have been set. Delete unnecessary downloaded dictionaries and try again.	P.500
Already downloaded	Software with the same version has already been downloaded.	—
Already read	All received mail messages are read.	—
Already receive	Already received, so cannot be received.	—
Already saved	The same data has already been saved.	—
Already set	Already has been pasted to the desktop. Check from the Stand-by display.	P.135
	Already has been set, so cannot set.	—
	Already has been stored, so cannot store.	—
	i-ϕpli auto-start has already been set to the same time. Set the different time for each i-ϕpli.	P.324
Already stored at same time	The alarm has already been set to the same time. Set the different time for each alarm.	P.399
Attached file is deleted	An attached file is deleted when replying/sending or editing messages attached with the file.	—
Authentication failed	Authentication error occurred.	—
Authentication of PIN1 code failed	Three times erroneous entry of the PIN1 code activates PIN Lock. Enter the PUK (PIN unblock code).	P.143
Authentication of PIN2 code failed	Three times erroneous entry of the PIN2 code activates PIN Lock. Enter the PUK (PIN unblock code).	P.143
Authentication of PUK code failed	Ten times erroneous entry of the PUK (PIN unblock code) blocks the code. Contact a DoCoMo shop counter.	Back page
Authentication type is not supported (401)	Incompatible authentication type, so cannot connect.	—
Auto start already 3 software set	Three software programs that can be auto-launched have already been set. Cancel the software programs and try again.	P.324
Bar code reader Cannot operate	An error occurred, so could not start Bar Code Reader.	—
Bar nuisance call service denied	You have not subscribed to Nuisance Call Blocking Service. Subscribe to the service and try again.	Back page
Battery is low Cannot start	The battery level goes short, so cannot start. Charge the battery and try again.	P.40
Battery level shortage	The battery level goes short, so cannot operate. Charge the battery and try again.	
Battery level shortage Please charge		P.40
Battery shortage light cannot be turned on	The battery level goes short, so cannot light. Charge the battery and try again.	P.40
Bookmark is full	The maximum number of data items is bookmarked, so cannot bookmark any more. Delete unnecessary bookmarks.	P.205
Call forwarding denied	You have not subscribed to Call Forwarding Service. Subscribe to the service and try again.	Back page
Call waiting denied	You have not subscribed to Call Waiting. Subscribe to the service and try again.	Back page
Calling now Cannot start	Could not start during transmission. End the transmission and try again.	—
Cannot activate 0000	"0000" cannot be used for the secret code. Enter the four-digit code other than "0000".	P.106
Cannot activate six or more	Up to six members including yourself can be stored as chat mail members.	—
Cannot activate the ringing time	Cannot set the same ringing time for Remote Observation, Automatic Answer, and Record Message. Set different seconds for each.	P.69, 88, 422

Message	Description	Reference
Cannot activate this anniversary	Received anniversary and already stored data are set to the same date, so cannot store.	—
Cannot activate this holiday	Received holiday and already stored data are set to the same date, so cannot store.	—
Cannot all delete	Country codes set by Auto Assist Setting cannot be deleted. Change/cancel the setting and try again.	P.50
Cannot be recognized	The text could not be scanned. Change Recognition Mode or NEGA/POSI Mode, and try again.	P.183
Cannot compose because too large data	The size of the recorded moving image is too large to attach to i-mode mail. Select "Trim for mail" or "Compose message" to trim the moving image for attaching.	P.357, 362
	The size of the shot image is too large to attach to i-mode mail. Select "size for mail" or "Compose message" to change the image size for attaching.	P.336, 337
Cannot delete	Country codes set by Auto Assist Setting cannot be deleted. Change/cancel the setting and try again.	P.50
Cannot delete because use mail folder	Corresponding software is running. End the software and try again.	P.313
Cannot dial	An error occurred so could not dial.	—
Cannot display	Corresponding software is running. End the software and try again.	—
Cannot download because use mail folder		P.313
Cannot edit message	Attached file reaches 10 Kbytes (10,000 bytes), so cannot enter the text of message.	—
Cannot execute because of other tasks	The function cannot be simultaneously launched by Multitask. End the functions not in use and try again.	P.398
Cannot filter or search mail	Filtering is done the maximum number of times, so no more filtering can be done.	—
Cannot overwrite	The same memory number of secret Phonebook entry or of Phonebook entry with "Automatic answer" exists, so cannot store. Store in different memory number.	P.94
Cannot play audio data	Not supported data, so the sound cannot be played back.	—
Cannot play audio text data	Not supported data, so the sound or ticker cannot be played back.	—
Cannot play image data	Not supported data, so the image cannot be played back.	—
Cannot play picture data		—
Cannot play text data	Not supported data, so the ticker cannot be played back.	—
Cannot play video audio data	Not supported data, so the video image or sound cannot be played back.	—
Cannot play video data	Not supported data, so the video image cannot be played back.	—
Cannot play video text data	Not supported data, so the video image or ticker cannot be played back.	—
Cannot resend	The address is impropriety or the text exceeds the size that can be entered, so cannot be sent. Edit the text again and send.	P.280
Send after edit		—
Cannot save	The output-prohibited-image from the FOMA phone is inserted, so cannot be saved as a template.	—
Cannot save attached file	Full of images, so data other than images was stored.	—
	Full of images/moving images, so part of them could not be stored.	—
	Received message whose attached file cannot be stored.	—
	The Phonebook is full of images, so data other than images was stored.	—
Cannot save because data size is over	The file size exceeds the maximum storable size by setting "File restriction", so could not be set.	—
	The file size exceeds the maximum storable size per file, so cannot store.	—
Cannot save blank mail	Cannot save if nothing is entered into the address, text and subject field, or no file is attached to messages.	—
Cannot save blank SMS	Cannot save if nothing is entered into the address and text field.	—
Cannot save some attached files	Full of images, so part of images could not be stored into the Phonebook.	—
Cannot save template	Could not save the mail as a template.	—
Cannot set holiday and anniversary	Received holiday/anniversary and already stored data are set to the same date, so cannot store.	—
Cannot set this schedule	Received schedule and already stored data are set to the same date and time, so cannot store.	—
Cannot set this word	Characters that cannot be stored are used, so cannot store in Own Dictionary.	—
Cannot start	An error occurred, so could not start Bar Code Reader.	—
	Could not start the i-αppli.	—
Cannot start because use mail folder	Corresponding software is running. End the software and try again.	P.313
Cannot use network transmission	"Network set" is set to "OFF". Set it to "ON" and try again.	P.315
Certificate is rejected (tampered)	Received altered SSL certificate, so could not connect.	—
Chara. replay error		—
Send original substitutive image	An error occurred with the Chara-den image set for the substitutive image, so a pre-installed substitutive image is sent.	—
Characters are full		—
Cannot input	The number of characters that can be entered is exceeded, so cannot enter.	—
Characters are too long to enter		—
Check failed	Failed to download mail.	—
Check new message is set all OFF	No check marks are placed to the items for "Check new message". Put check marks for the items to be checked and try again.	P.259

Message	Description	Reference
Common phrase is not saved	No data is stored. Store data and try again.	—
Common phrase is not stored		—
Connected packet Cannot connect	Could not connect during packet transmission. End the packet transmission and try again.	P.456, 470
Connected packet Cannot dial	Could not dial during packet transmission. End the packet transmission and try again.	P.456, 470
Connecting now Cannot import	Could not import during transmission. End the transmission and try again.	—
Connecting now Cannot operate	Could not operate during transmission. End the transmission and try again.	—
Connection failed	Could not connect because of network trouble. Wait a while and try again.	—
	Signal is weak, so cannot connect. Move to where signal is strong enough and try again.	—
	The destination address set by Host Selection is wrong, so cannot connect. Check the setting of Host Selection and try again.	P.215
	The user certificate is being operated, so cannot connect. End operating the user certificate and try again.	—
	The video-phone cannot be connected because the other party activates Caller ID Display Request Service. Set the Caller ID Notification to "ON" and redial.	P.45, 433
Connection failed (403)	Cannot connect to site or the Internet web page.	—
Connection failed (562)	Could not connect because of network trouble. Wait a while and try again.	—
	The video-phone cannot be connected because the other party activates Caller ID Display Request Service. Set the Caller ID Notification to "ON" and redial.	P.45, 433
Connection interrupted	Disconnected from the personal computer during data transmission.	—
	The line is busy or transmission error occurred, so connection was suspended. Wait a while and try again.	—
Connection is not valid	The destination address set by "Host selection" is not compatible, so cannot operate. Check the setting and try again.	P.215
	The user certificate is being operated, so you cannot connect. Complete operating the user certificate and try again.	—
Connection suspended	An error occurred, so processing was suspended.	—
Connection task cannot end by task menu	Cannot end a single menu function from Task menu. End the transmission and try again.	—
Connection task is now on Cannot end all	Cannot end all menu functions from Task menu. End the transmission and try again.	—
Content length exceeds maximum size for i motion	Data size exceeded its maximum, so could not download.	—
Content length exceeds replayable size for i motion		—
Could not match	Could not concatenate read data. Read data up to now is discarded.	—
Could not scan	Failed to read.	—
Data is full	100 data items have been already stored. Delete unnecessary data items and try again.	—
	Anniversaries are stored to the maximum. Delete unnecessary ones and try again.	P.408
	Holidays are stored to the maximum. Delete unnecessary ones and try again.	P.408
	Holidays/anniversaries are stored to the maximum. Delete unnecessary ones and try again.	P.408
	The maximum number of data items is bookmarked, so cannot bookmark any more. Delete unnecessary bookmarks.	P.205
	The maximum number of free memos is stored in the FOMA phone, so could not receive any more. Delete unnecessary items and try again.	P.419
	The maximum number of i-motion movies is stored, so cannot store any more. Delete unnecessary i-motion movies.	P.357
	The maximum number of image files is stored, so cannot store any more. Delete unnecessary image files.	P.338
	The maximum number of melodies is stored in the FOMA phone. Delete unnecessary melodies and try again.	P.374
	The maximum number of Phonebook entries is stored in the FOMA phone. Delete unnecessary Phonebook entries and try again.	P.103
	The maximum number of schedule events is stored in the FOMA phone, so could not receive. Delete unnecessary schedule events and try again.	P.406, 407, 408
	The maximum number of ToDo items is stored in the FOMA phone, so could not receive. Delete unnecessary ToDo items and try again.	P.411
	The maximum received mail messages are stored in the FOMA phone, so could not receive new message. Delete unnecessary messages, read messages, or release protection, and try again.	P.264, 274, 275
	The maximum sent mail messages are stored in the FOMA phone, so could not receive new message. Delete unnecessary messages, or release protection, and try again.	P.280
The UIM is full of data. Delete unnecessary data items and try again.	P.419	
Data is too long A part is deleted	Characters for one (or plural) of address, subject, and text of message exceeded the maximum, so part of them was deleted.	—

Message	Description	Reference
Data is too long Please delete message	The text exceeds 10,000 bytes, so cannot set. Shorten the text or delete the attached file and try again.	P.235, 250
Data size is too big to save	The file size exceeds the maximum storable size by setting "File restriction", so could not set. The file size exceeds the maximum storable size per file, so cannot store.	—
Desktop icon is full	15 desktop icons have been stored. Delete unnecessary desktop icons and try again.	P.137
Don't accept	"Use saved data" is set to "NO", so the information from the FOMA phone was not sent.	P.214
Download failed	Other functions are running or an error occurred, so cannot download.	—
Downloading interrupted	An error occurred, so downloading was suspended.	—
	Other functions are running or an error occurred, so cannot download.	—
Draft mail is full	The number of saved messages exceeds five, so cannot compose a message. Delete or send saved messages and try again.	P.265, 281
Dual network service denied	You have not subscribed to Dual Network Service, so the service is not available. Subscribe to the service and try again.	Back page
Editing now Cannot delete	Being used for another function, so cannot delete. End another function and try again.	—
End whether holding call or talking call to answer	Another call comes in during multi-calling. To take the call, end the current call or the call on hold.	P.429, 430
Enter "+" in right position	"+" is wrongly positioned. Enter it to the begging of the phone number or after "×31#" or "#31#".	P.50
Enter correct network security code	Entered Network Security Code is wrong. Enter the correct one.	P.140
Entering PIN2 code Cannot input	Cannot operate because the PIN2 code is being entered. Try again after entering the PIN2 code.	P.142
Error	An error occurred, so could not operate.	—
Error in image Does not work correctly	Memory space is short or an error occurred, so does not run correctly.	—
Exchange failed	An error occurred, so could not transmit.	—
Exchanging now Cannot operate	64K data transmission is being done, so cannot switch. End the 64K data transmission and try again.	P.456, 470
	Could not set during data transmission. End the data transmission and try again.	P.456, 470
Exit from Camera-mode	During recording of moving images, the memory of the miniSD memory card became full, so recording has ended.	—
Export one? Failed	Memory is full, so cannot export. Delete unnecessary files and try again.	P.338, 381
Failed to attach	An error occurred, so could not import.	—
Failed to attach to mail	Failed to trim image, so could not attach.	—
Failed to copy	Could not attach the shot image to i-mode mail.	—
Failed to create folder	An error occurred, so could not copy.	—
Failed to dial	An error occurred, so could not create folders.	—
Failed to edit	An error occurred, so could not dial.	—
Failed to export	An error occurred, so could not edit.	—
Failed to export all	An error occurred, so could not export.	—
Failed to export one	An error occurred, so could not export all data items.	—
Failed to import all	An error occurred, so could not export a single data item.	—
Failed to import one	An error occurred, so could not import all data items.	—
Failed to insert	An error occurred, so could not import a single data item.	—
Failed to move	Failed to insert an image into the text of i-mode mail.	—
Failed to read file Quitting	An error occurred, so could not move.	—
	An error occurred when playing back moving images.	—
Failed to receive	The miniSD memory card was removed while reading the information on it. Insert the miniSD memory card and try again.	P.377
Failed to remove	Failed to download mail.	—
Failed to save	The folder contains files that cannot be deleted, so the folder could not be deleted.	—
	An error occurred, so could not save.	—
	Could not save the shot image.	—
Failed to scan	An error occurred, so could not scan.	—
Failed to set	An error occurred, so could not set.	—
Failed to set as Stand-by display	An error occurred, so could not paste to the desktop.	—
Failed to set stand-by display		—
Folder using same software exists Unable to download	The same mail-linked i-appli has already been downloaded.	—
Format miniSD for your phone	The format of miniSD memory card is incompatible with the FOMA P700i. Use the FOMA P700i to format it.	P.383
Forwarding number is not set	The forwarding destination phone number is not specified. Store the destination phone number and try again.	P.431


Message	Description	Reference
Function cannot operate any more	The maximum number of functions is already running using Multitask. End the function not in use and try again.	P.398
i-appli stand-by display terminated due to security error	i-appli DX has forcibly been ended.	—
"i-appli To" function is not set	A check mark is not put for "i-appli To", so cannot launch i-appli. Insert the check mark and try again.	P.315
Image in message will be deleted	The output-prohibited-image from the FOMA phone is attached to the mail text, so deleted.	—
i-mode mail service is busy Please try again later (553)	The line is very busy. Wait a while and try again.	—
i-mode mail service is busy Please try again later (555)	The line facility has trouble or line is very busy. Wait a while and try again.	—
Inbox is full Cannot operate	The received messages in the FOMA phone are stored to the maximum, so could not start. Delete unnecessary messages, read unopened messages, or release protection and try again.	P.264, 274, 275
Input error (205)	Entered contents are wrong. Check the contents and try again.	—
Insert miniSD	The miniSD memory card is not inserted correctly. Insert it correctly and try again.	P.377
Insert UIM	The UIM is not inserted. Insert it and try again.	P.36
Invalid address	Address is incorrect. Enter the correct address and send.	P.235, 296, 301
Invalid attached file cannot resend	The output-prohibited-file from the FOMA phone is attached to the mail, so it could not be re-sent.	—
Invalid Cannot send	The address is illegal or the text size exceeds the maximum, so cannot be re-sent.	—
Invalid code	Entered USSD is incorrect. Enter the correct one.	P.437
Invalid data	The data contains illegal parts.	—
Invalid file (493)	A downloaded file is damaged, so it cannot be opened.	—
Invalid func in this UIM	Functions cannot be operated from the inserted UIM.	—
Invalid UIM auto start not possible	Cannot start i-appli software because of the UIM restrictions. Insert the UIM which had been inserted when i-appli software was downloaded and try again.	P.36
Invalid UIM requested service not available	Cannot operate because of the UIM restrictions. Insert the UIM which had been inserted when data or file was downloaded and try again.	P.36
Invalid UIM requested software can't start	Cannot start i-appli software because of the UIM restrictions. Insert the UIM which had been inserted when data or file was downloaded and try again.	P.36
Invalid URL	"http://" or "https://" for URL is not entered. Enter those correctly and try again.	P.200
Memory full	Memory space is full, so cannot operate.	—
	Memory space is not enough, so "File restriction" and "DPOF setting" cannot be set, or the title cannot be changed. Delete unnecessary files and try again.	P.338, 357, 374
	The miniSD memory card is full.	—
	There is no unused space, so cannot import. Delete unnecessary files and try again.	P.338, 357
Memory full Unable to change title	Memory space is not enough, so cannot edit the title. Delete unnecessary files and try again.	P.338, 357, 374
Memory full Unable to move	Memory space is not enough, so cannot move the file. Delete unnecessary files and try again.	P.338, 357, 374
Memory full Unable to create	Memory space is not enough, so cannot create folders. Delete unnecessary files and try again.	P.338, 357, 374
Memory function active Cannot operate	The miniSD memory card is in use, so cannot set.	—
Memory is full Cannot activate	Messages in the FOMA phone are stored to the maximum, so could not start. Delete unnecessary messages, read unopened messages, or release protection and try again.	P.264, 274, 275
Memory is full Cannot receive	Messages in the FOMA phone are stored to the maximum. Delete unnecessary messages, read unopened messages, or release protection and try again.	P.264, 274, 275
Memory is full Cannot receive any more	Received messages in the FOMA phone are stored to the maximum. Delete unnecessary messages, read unopened mail messages, or release protection and try again.	P.264, 274, 275
	Messages in the FOMA phone and in the UIM are stored to the maximum. Delete unnecessary messages, read unopened mail messages, or release protection, and then inquire.	P.264, 274, 275
Memory is full Cannot receive no more	Received messages in the FOMA phone are stored to the maximum. Delete unnecessary messages, read unopened mail messages, or release protection and try again.	P.264, 274, 275
	Messages in the FOMA phone and in the UIM are stored to the maximum. Delete unnecessary messages, read unopened mail messages, or release protection, and then inquire.	P.264, 274, 275
Memory is full Receiving failed	Messages in the FOMA phone are stored to the maximum. Delete unnecessary messages, read unopened messages, or release protection and try again.	P.264, 274, 275

Message	Description	Reference
Memory shortage	Memory space is not enough, so processing is suspended.	
Memory shortage Failed to create font effect		—
Memory shortage Return to i-mode menu		
Message too long to add header	Mail size exceeds 10,000 bytes by pasting header, so cannot paste. Make the text of message short or delete attached data and try again.	P.235, 250
Message too long to add header & signature	Mail size exceeds 10,000 bytes by pasting header/signature, so cannot paste. Make the text of message short or delete attached data and try again.	P.235, 250
Message too long to add signature	Mail size exceeds 10,000 bytes by pasting signature, so cannot paste. Make the text of message short or delete attached data and try again.	P.235, 250
Messages except protected are deleted	All messages except protected ones are deleted.	—
miniSD is ejected	The miniSD memory card is pulled out while it is being operated. Insert the miniSD memory card and try again.	P.377
miniSD is locked	Cannot write the miniSD memory card because it is write-protected. Use external devices to unlock the write-protected and try again.	—
Monitoring Cannot set	Cannot set because "Remote all lock" is activated. Switch the setting to "OFF" and try again.	P.145
No action list	Chara-den does not contain the Action List.	—
No address	There is no corresponding Phonebook entry.	—
No Chara-den	No Chara-den images are stored.	—
No chara-den file Send original substitutive image	The Chara-den image set for a substitutive image is not found in the FOMA phone, so a pre-installed substitutive image is sent.	—
No content is available (204)	Site or the Internet web page contains no displayed data, so cannot connect.	—
No cushy marks	No cushy marks are stored.	—
No data	No data is stored. No saved data is found. There is no corresponding data.	— — —
No data in phonebook Cannot operate	The Phone number and mail address of the other party are not stored. Store them and try again.	P.93, 96
No data to set	There are no settable images. Store image and try again. There is no settable data. Store data and try again.	— —
No image	No frames to fit the size are found. There are no settable images. Store image and try again.	— —
No  motion	No  motion movies are stored.	—
No melody	No melody is stored.	—
No messages	Voice Memo or Record Message is not recorded. After recording Voice Memo or after Record Message is recorded, try again.	P.69, 415
No messages Cannot delete	There is no sent mail, so could not delete. There is no received mail in the Inbox, so cannot delete.	— —
No pictures	No images are stored. There are no settable images. Store image and try again.	— —
No protected message	There is no protected mail.	—
No read messages Cannot delete	There is no read mail, so cannot delete.	—
No received calls	There are no received call records.	—
No requested Chara-den	The FOMA phone has no Chara-den image to start.	—
No requested file (492)	There is no selected file in the FOMA phone.	—
No requested group	There is no selected group in the FOMA phone.	—
No requested  motion	There is no i-motion movie to play back in the FOMA phone.	—
No requested image	There is no image to display in the FOMA phone.	—
No requested melody	There is no melody to play back in the FOMA phone.	—
No requested software	There is no i-αpli started from site, mail, or Ir in the FOMA phone.	—
No response	Ir exchange does not work correctly for connecting to the communicating end. Aim the infrared port at that of the communicating end and try again.	P.386
No response (408)	No response from the site or the Internet web page, so could not connect. Try again.	—
No SD-PIM	The miniSD memory card does not contain the Phonebook entries or Schedule events.	—
No set mail address	There is no set mail address.	—
No set melody	Displayed when trying to play program with the playlist unedited. Finish editing the playlist and play program.	P.373
No set phone No.	There is no set phone number.	—
No SMS report Cannot delete	There are no SMS reports, so could not delete.	—

Message	Description	Reference
No template	There are no templates.	—
Not allowed because not support file exists	Incompatible data is contained, so cannot delete.	—
Not complete This motion is not valid	The i-motion movie file is not downloaded to the last, so cannot be saved.	—
Not enough memory Cannot save	Memory space in the miniSD memory card is not enough, so cannot save. Delete unnecessary file and try again.	P.338, 357
Not notify phone No. Cannot operate	Could not start because the Caller ID was not notified.	—
Not registered	An error occurred so could not store.	—
Not saved	Data is not stored. Store data and try again.	—
Not set	There is no set data.	—
Not supported code Cannot scan	Incompatible code, so cannot read.	—
Not supported code Could not scan	—	—
Not supported contents exist	Data that the FOMA phone does not support is contained.	—
Not supported data exists	Incompatible data is contained.	—
Number of mail folders is full Unable to download	The maximum number of folders has been added, so cannot download mail-linked i-appli. Delete unnecessary folders and try again.	P.272
Operate failed	An error occurred, so could not set.	—
Operation failed	An error occurred, so could not operate.	—
Original animation is not set	No data is stored. Store data and try again.	—
Other function active Cannot operate	The function is not available simultaneously in Multitask. End the functions not in use and try again.	P.398
Other function is running Unable to receiving	Another function is running, so cannot download. Close the function and try again.	P.398
Out of range	The number of shots is out of settable range.	P.171
Out of service area	Signal is not received. Move to where the signal is strong enough and try again.	—
Page is not found (404)	Site or the Internet web page does not exist, or wrong URL. Check the URL and try again.	P.200
Pattern definitions are up-to-date	The latest pattern data, so no update is required.	—
Phonebook is full	700 Phonebook entries have been stored in the Phonebook. Delete unnecessary Phonebook entries and try again.	P.103
	700 phone numbers or mail addresses have been stored in the Phonebook. Delete unnecessary phone numbers or mail addresses and try again.	P.103
	The UIM Phonebook entries are stored to the maximum. Delete unnecessary Phonebook entries and try again.	P.103, 419
PIN1 code blocked	Three times erroneous entry of the PIN1 code blocks the code. Enter the PUK (PIN unblock code).	P.143
PIN1 code blocked Enter PUK code	Three times erroneous entry of the PIN1 code blocks the code. Enter the PUK (PIN unblock code).	P.143
PIN1 code is 4 to 8 digits	Entered PIN1 Code is wrong. Enter the correct one.	P.143
PIN2 code is 4 to 8 digits	Entered PIN2 Code is wrong. Enter the correct one.	P.142
Please activate "To type" receiver	No address is in the "To" field. Fill the "To" field and try again.	P.235
Please input address	Address is not entered. Enter address and try again.	P.235, 296, 301
Please set time to obtain data	The Clock is not set, so data cannot be downloaded. Set the date and time and try again.	P.45
Please wait	The line facility has trouble or the line is very busy. Wait a while and try again.	—
Protected is full	The maximum number of data is protected, so cannot protect any more. Release the protection for other data and try again.	P.207, 220, 274
Protected mail in folder Cannot delete	Protected messages exist within the folder, so cannot delete the folder. Release protection and try again.	P.274
	Protected messages exist within the folder for i-appli mail, so cannot delete the folder. Release protection and try again.	P.274
PUK code blocked	Ten times erroneous entry of the PUK (PIN unblock code) blocks the code. Contact a DoCoMo shop counter.	Back page
Read error	An error occurred while reading information in the miniSD memory card.	—
	The i-motion movie is illegal, so cannot play back.	—
Reading miniSD information	The miniSD memory card is reading information, so cannot operate it. After insertion, wait a while and then operate.	—
Reading UIM Cannot operate	Reading the UIM, so cannot operate. Wait a while and try again.	—
Receive option is activate to ON Cannot activate	Receive Option Setting is set to "ON", so cannot start. Switch to "OFF" and try again.	P.258
Receiver cannot save data	The receiver blocks data.	—

Message	Description	Reference
Receiver's data is full	The receiver can receive no more data.	—
Receiving data exceeds maximum size for i motion	Data size exceeds the maximum, so could not download.	—
Receiving data exceeds replayable size for i motion		—
Receiving failed	Failed to download mail.	—
	The destination address set by Host Selection is wrong, so cannot connect. Check the setting and try again.	P.215
Receiving failed Messages are left in server	Received messages in the FOMA phone are stored to the maximum, so could not receive some of messages. Delete unnecessary messages, read unopened messages, or release protection, and try again.	P.264, 274, 275
Receiving large size data Cannot operate	Cannot operate because a JPEG image file in excess of 10,000 bytes is being received.	—
Record error	An error occurred when recording, so cannot record.	—
Recording failed	An error occurred, so fail to shoot.	—
	An error occurred, so could not shoot.	—
Recording stopped because of error	An error occurred when recording, so could not record.	—
Registration is in progress (504)	Cannot operate because the user is being registered. Wait a while and try again.	—
Register the forwarding number	The forwarding destination phone number is not specified. Store the destination phone number and try again.	P.431
Remote accessible services denied	Not available because you did not sign up for remote-access services such as Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service. Subscribe to the service and operate.	Back page
Replace with a new one or check the disk	The miniSD memory card formatting is abnormal. Execute "Check miniSD".	P.384
Replay error Quitting	An error occurred, so the playing back is finished.	—
Replay period has expired	Playable limit is expired, so cannot play back.	—
Replay period has expired Cannot play	Playable limit or playable period is expired, so cannot play back an i-motion movie.	—
Replay period has not yet started	Playable date has not come yet, so cannot play back an i-motion movie.	—
Requested software unavailable	Could not start the i-appli in the FOMA phone from site, mail, or lr.	—
	Cannot start the i-appli in the FOMA phone from site, mail, or lr.	—
Root certificate is not valid	SSL certificate of that server is set to "Invalid". Set to "Valid" and try again.	P.222
Same member already saved Cannot register	The member with the same mail address has been stored.	—
Scanned data may not be complete	Read data is illegal.	—
Secret data	You have not switched to Secret Mode or Secret Only Mode, so cannot access. Switch to Secret Mode or Secret Only Mode and try again.	P.149
Security code is 4 to 8 digits	Entered Terminal Security Code is wrong. Enter the correct one.	P.140
Select on for Call ID Notification	The phone number is not notified. Notify the caller ID and try again.	P.45, 433
Server is busy	The line facility has trouble or the line is very busy. Wait a while and try again.	—
	The line is busy. Wait a while and try again.	—
Server is full (551)	The receiver can receive no more messages.	—
Service is not registered	You have not signed up for i-mode. You need to subscribe to i-mode. If you start using i-mode midway, turn the FOMA phone off and turn it on.	P.43 Back page
Service unavailable	An error occurred, so could not operate.	—
	The function cannot be operated with the inserted UIM.	—
Set light time 02-20 min	Set a light time for Display light from 2 to 20 minutes.	P.127
Set monitoring (min) 01-10 min	Set a monitoring time for Remote All Lock to 1 through 10 minutes.	P.145
Set recv.calls 03-10 times	Set the number of calls for Remote All Lock to 3 through 10.	P.145
Set ringing time 000-120 sec	Set a ringing time for Record Message, Voice Mail, and Call Forwarding to 0 through 120 seconds.	P.69, 427, 431
Set ringing time 003-120 sec	Set a response time for Remote Observation to 3 through 120 seconds.	P.88
Set the other ID.	"Other ID" is not stored, so could not operate. Store "Other ID" and try again.	P.87
Set time	The Clock is not set, so cannot operate. Set the date and time by "Set time" and try again.	P.45
Setting all lock	All Lock is set. Release All Lock and try again.	P.144
Setting manner mode Cannot play	Manner Mode is set, so cannot play back. Release Manner Mode and try again.	P.118
Setting miniSD mode Cannot operate	USB Mode Setting is set to "miniSD mode". Switch to "Communication mode" and try again.	P.385
Setting PIM lock Send original substitutive image	During PIM Lock, a "Pre-installed" substitutive image is sent.	—
Setting receive option. Cannot start chat mail	Receive Option Setting is set to "ON", so cannot start Chat Mail. Switch the setting to "OFF" and try again.	P.258

Message	Description	Reference
Setting USB exchanging mode	The miniSD memory card is in use, so cannot operate. Finish using the card and try again.	—
Size of data is not supported	Data size exceeded the maximum, so could not download normally.	—
Size of page is not supported	The size of site or the Internet web page is large, so downloading is suspended, and only downloaded portion is displayed.	—
Size of this page is not supported		—
SMS center is not set	The Short Message Center is not specified by SMS Center Selection. Specify the Short Message Center and try again.	P.306
Cannot send		
SMS in UIM filled	Short Messages (SMS) in the UIM are stored to the maximum. Delete unnecessary Short Messages (SMS) and try again.	P.275, 419
Software downloading now	Could not start during downloading. After downloading, try again.	—
Cannot start		
Software failed	Failed to start i-appli DX.	—
Software for this folder deleted	Corresponding mail-linked i-appli has been deleted.	—
Refer to Open folder		—
Software for this folder exists	Corresponding mail-linked i-appli is contained, so cannot delete.	—
Cannot delete		—
Software is stopped because of error	An error occurred while starting or running i-appli.	—
Software terminated due to security error	i-appli DX has forcibly been ended.	—
Software update active	The function is not available during updating the software. After the software update is completed, try again.	—
Cannot operate		—
Software upgraded	Target software is not updated, so cannot start.	—
Some attached file will be deleted	Cannot forward the output-prohibited files from the FOMA phone.	—
Some characters will be deleted	The number of readable characters was exceeded, so the excess characters are discarded.	—
Some data cannot be read	Unreadable data is found in the miniSD memory card.	—
Some data could not be saved	An error occurred, so some could not be saved.	—
Some images cannot save	An error occurred, so some images cannot be saved.	—
Some images in message will be deleted	Cannot forward the output-prohibited files from the FOMA phone.	—
Some mail not sent	Could not send messages to some members of simultaneous mail. Some addresses are incorrect. Enter addresses correctly and send.	P.280
Sort is full cannot activate	The maximum number of settings is set. Release unnecessary settings and try again.	P.286
Sort is full cannot set		
SSL session cannot be established	Either altered SSL certificate was received or SSL error occurred, so cannot connect.	—
SSL session failed	Certificate error occurred at the server, so cannot connect.	—
Switching failed -Other phone busy	The mova is connecting, so cannot switch. End the connection and try again.	—
Syntax error	Received data has an error, so it cannot be displayed. The received data is discarded.	—
Syntax error (XXX)	Received data has an error, so cannot be displayed. The received data is discarded. Three-digit numerals are inserted into (xxx).	—
Talking now	Could not dial during a call. End the call and try again.	P.48, 60, 75, 78
Cannot dial		
Talking now	Could not operate during a call. End the call and try again.	P.48, 60, 75, 78
Cannot operate	Could not start during a call. End the call and try again.	P.48, 60, 75, 78
Text reader	An error occurred, so could not start Text Reader.	—
Cannot operate		—
The data may not be replayed	The i-motion data is illegal, so it might not be played back.	—
The link with attached file is disconnected	When a JPEG image file in excess of 10,000 bytes in the miniSD memory card was attached to i-mode mail, and sent or saved, the link information about the file was released.	—
There is invalid data	Incompatible data is found, so cannot be displayed/played back.	—
This character is not valid	Characters that cannot be stored are used, so cannot store.	—
Cannot store		—
This data can no longer be replayed	Number of playbacks is expired, so cannot play back.	—
This data cannot be saved	The data downloaded from site is illegal, so cannot save.	—
This data finish to be played	The i-motion movie file has not been downloaded to the last.	—
This data is not supported by this phone	Incompatible i-motion movies, so cannot download. Incompatible i-motion movies, so cannot play back.	—
This data is not valid	You are trying to paste characters that cannot be used. Check characters to paste and try again.	P.497
This data is over editable size	The mail text exceeds 10000 bytes. Shorten the text or delete the attached file and try again.	P.235, 250
Trim away less than 10000 bytes		

Message	Description	Reference
This dictionary is not valid	The downloaded dictionary is illegal, so cannot save.	—
This file is not attachable Cannot resend	Output prohibited-file from the FOMA phone is attached to the mail, so could not be re-sent.	—
This file is not valid	The file is incompatible, so cannot be displayed.	—
This folder is used for editing mail Cannot delete	The data file in this folder is attached to the mail being edited, so cannot be deleted.	—
This  motion is not valid	The i-motion movie is illegal, so cannot play back. The i-motion movie is illegal, so cannot save.	— —
This image is not available for frame stamp	The image cannot be used for frames or marks.	—
This image is not valid	The image could not be displayed normally, so cannot save. Even if normally displayed, may not be saved depending on the file format. The image data is illegal, so cannot display. The image cannot be attached to i-mode mail.	— — P.249
This mail is broken Cannot resend	The size of the mail text is too large or the attachment information about the text is damaged, so could not be re-sent.	—
This melody is not valid	An error occurred, so could not play back the melody. The melody is illegal, so cannot play back.	— —
This picture cannot be saved	The image data is illegal, so cannot save.	—
This software contains an error This software contains an error Unable to download	The software contains illegal data, so cannot be downloaded or upgraded.	—
This software is not supported by this phone	The software to be downloaded or upgraded does not support the FOMA phone.	—
This software contains an error Upgrade canceled	The software contains illegal data, so upgrading was suspended.	—
This UIM cannot be recognized	An error occurred in the UIM or the PUK (PIN unblock code) is blocked. Contact a DoCoMo shop counter. Check to see if the correct UIM is inserted.	Back page P.36
This UIM cannot read	An error occurred, so could not read the information in the UIM.	—
Time out	Could not connect within the time specified by Set Connection Timeout. Change the setting or try again.	P.215
Too many files	The maximum number of files is saved, so cannot import any more. Delete unnecessary files and try again. The maximum number of files is saved, so cannot save any more. Delete unnecessary files and try again.	P.338, 357 P.338, 357, 374
Too many files Unable to move	The maximum number of files is saved, so cannot move any more. Delete unnecessary files and try again.	P.338, 357, 374
Too much data was entered	Too many entered characters to send. Decrease characters and send again.	P.200
Transmission failed (552)	Could not send messages correctly.	—
Transmission failed (XXX)		—
Transmission failed		—
Unable to add bookmark	An error occurred, so could not bookmark.	—
Unable to add to phonebook	Scanned data is illegal, so cannot store.	—
Unable to compose message	An error occurred, so could not compose a message. Could not attach i-motion movie to the message.	— —
Unable to copy icon and contents	Cannot copy images or melodies.	—
Unable to delete	An error occurred, so could not delete a single data item from the miniSD memory card.	—
Unable to delete all	An error occurred, so could not delete all data items.	—
Unable to display because of Memory shortage	Memory space is not enough, so processing is suspended.	—
Unable to display version info	An error occurred, so the version could not be displayed.	—
Unable to download	Other functions are running or an error occurred, so cannot download.	—
Unable to download Data exceeds maximum size (452)	The FOMA phone was to receive data exceeding the maximum size, so could not receive.	—
Unable to edit file name	Cannot change the file name starting with a period or containing prohibited characters except half-pitch alphanumeric. Enter the correct file name and try again.	P.337
Unable to exchange	An error occurred, so could not execute Ir Exchange.	—
Unable to obtain data due to replay restriction data error	Playable restrictions data for an i-motion movie has an error, so cannot download.	—
Unable to read	An error occurred while reading information from the miniSD memory card.	—
Unable to receive	The i-motion movie is illegal, so cannot download.	—
Unable to retrieve the requested URL (504)	No response from the server, so cannot connect.	—
Unable to scan Please wait	Scanning was under way with another function, so scanning could not be performed. Try again after scanning with the function is finished.	—

Message	Description	Reference
Unable to select any more	The number of files that can be selected by multiple choices exceeds the maximum.	—
Unable to set	An error occurred, so could not set.	—
Unable to set display	Incompatible file size or file format, so cannot paste.	—
Unable to set for storage	There are no unoccupied memory numbers within the folder, so cannot set.	—
Unable to support this card	The inserted memory card cannot be used on the FOMA P700i. Use the miniSD memory card.	P.376
Unable to update pattern definitions	An error occurred, so could not update.	—
Unable to upgrade	An error occurred, so could not upgrade.	—
Unable to view file	The number of times you can access exceeds the maximum, so could not be displayed.	—
Access to URL is limited (491)		
Unable to write	Cannot write the miniSD memory card because it is write-protected. Use external devices to unlock the write-protected and try again.	—
Upgrade interrupted	An error occurred, so upgrading was suspended.	—
URL is too long	The URL of the site was too long to connect.	—
URL is too long to add	The number of characters for the URL of site exceeds 256, so cannot paste.	—
URL is too long to register	The number of characters for the URL of site exceeds 256, so cannot register.	—
Using miniSD	The miniSD memory card is in use, so you cannot operate. Try again after you finish operating miniSD memory card.	—
Cannot operate	The miniSD memory card is in use, so you cannot set. Try again after you finish operating miniSD memory card.	—
Voice mail denied	You have not subscribed to Voice Mail Service, so not available. Subscribe to the service and try again.	Back page
Voice mail or call forwarding denied	You have not subscribed to Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service, so not available. Subscribe to the service and try again.	Back page
Wrong new PIN1 code	Entered PIN1 Code is wrong. Enter the correct one.	P.143
Enter again		
Wrong new PIN2 code	Entered PIN2 Code is wrong. Enter the correct one.	P.142
Enter again		
Wrong PIN1 code	Entered PIN1 Code is wrong. Enter the correct one.	P.143
Wrong PIN2 code	Entered PIN2 Code is wrong. Enter the correct one.	P.142
Wrong PUK code	Entered PUK (PIN unblock code) is wrong. Enter the correct one.	P.143
Wrong security code	Entered Terminal Security Code is wrong. Enter the correct one.	P.140
Wrong security code		
Quit		
64K connected	Cannot dial during 64K data transmission. End the 64K data transmission and try again.	P.456, 470
Cannot connect	Cannot operate during 64K data transmission. End the 64K data transmission and try again.	P.456, 470
64K connected	Could not operate during data transmission. End the data transmission and try again.	P.456, 470
Cannot operate	Cannot start during 64K data transmission. End the 64K data transmission and try again.	P.456, 470
64K connected	Cannot start during 64K data transmission. End the 64K data transmission and try again.	P.456, 470
Cannot start		

Numerals in error messages are the code sent from i-mode Center for discriminating the error.

Warranty and Maintenance Services

Warranty

Make sure that you have received a warranty card provided at the time of purchase. After checking the contents of the warranty card as well as "Shop name and date of purchase", keep the warranty card in a safe place. If you notice that you have not filled in necessary items of the warranty card, immediately contact the shop from where you purchased the FOMA phone. The term of the warranty is one year from the date of purchase.

All or part of this product including the accessories may be modified for improvement without notice.

Data stored in the FOMA phone such as the Phonebook entries may be modified or lost owing to malfunction, repairs, or other mishandling of the FOMA phone. You are advised to take a note of Phonebook data for just in case. If you have a personal computer (Microsoft® Windows® 98, Windows® 98SE, Windows® Me, Windows® 2000 Professional, or Windows® XP Professional/Home Edition), you can transfer and save the data stored in the Phonebook to your computer using the dedicated data link software (see page 519). Also, when the FOMA phone is under repairs, the files you downloaded using i-mode and i-appli cannot be transferred to the new FOMA phone except some files, based on the Copyright Law.

Maintenance Services

When there is a problem with the FOMA phone

Before asking repairs, check "Troubleshooting" in this manual.

If the problem remains unsolved, contact "Repairs" listed on the back page of this manual for malfunction.

* For details, check "全国サービスステーション一覧 (Service Station List)" provided with the FOMA phone.

* When repairs are necessitated as a result of consultation:

Bring your FOMA phone to the repair counter specified by DoCoMo. Note that your phone is accepted for repair during the repair counter's business hours. Also, make sure that you will bring the warranty card with you to the counter.

In warranty period

- Your FOMA phone is repaired charge free in accordance with the terms of warranty.
- Make sure that you bring the warranty card to the counter for the repair. If you do not show the warranty card, or when troubles or damages are regarded to be caused by your mishandling, the repair cost is charged even within the warranty period.
- The cost for troubles caused by the use of devices and consumables other than those specified by DoCoMo is charged even within the warranty period.

Repairs may not be performed in the following cases:

When wet-detecting sticker is colored; when corrosion due to soaking, dew condensation, or perspiration was found by the test; when the internal parts are damaged or deformed, repair may not be feasible. Even if repair is feasible, repair due to the reasons above is not covered by the warranty, so the repair cost is charged.

After the warranty period

We will repair your phone on request (charges will apply).

Spare parts availability period

The minimum storage period of the performance parts (parts required for maintaining performance) for repairing the FOMA phone is six years after production comes to an end. The FOMA phone can be repaired during this period. Even after the warranty period, the FOMA phone may be repaired depending on the troubled portions. Contact "Repairs" listed on the back page of this manual.

Other points to note

- Make sure not to modify the FOMA phone or its accessories.
- Catching fire, giving injury, or causing damages may result.
- To avoid radio wave interference or Network troubles, a technological standard for the FOMA phone and the UIM is specified by the law; you cannot use the FOMA phone and the UIM that do not satisfy the technological standard.
- If you make modifications (parts replacement, modification, modification, paints), we can repair the FOMA phone only when you restore the modified portions to their previous status before the modifications (to the DoCoMo genuine product). We may refuse repairing depending on the modifications.
- Repairs of troubles or damages resulting from the modifications are charged even within the warranty period.

Do not peel the name plate off the FOMA phone. The name plate is a certificate for ensuring the technological standard. If someone intentionally peel off the name plate or replace it, the contents described in the name plate cannot be checked, as we cannot verify the conformity of the product to the technical standard. Note that we may refuse repair for some malfunctions in this case.

The function settings such as ON/OFF might be reset depending on troubles or repairs, or the way you handle the FOMA phone. Set the settings again.

The earpiece or speaker of the FOMA phone uses the parts generating magnetic field. Note that if you put a card such as cash card liable to be influenced by magnetic field close to them, the card might be adversely affected.

If the FOMA phone gets wet or humid, immediately turn the power off and remove the battery pack; then visit the repair counter. The phone may not be repaired depending on its condition.

Memory dial (Phonebook function) and downloaded information

- It is recommended to take a note about the information you have stored in the FOMA phone. We are not responsible for any change in or loss of information.
- When replacing or repairing your mobile phone, the data you created or the data you downloaded from external devices may be changed or lost. We may replace your mobile phone with a new one instead of repairing, for our convenience sake, but we cannot export data to your new mobile phone except some. We cannot take any responsibility for exporting data.

Updating Software

This function is to check whether you need to update the software in the FOMA phone, and if necessary, download a part of the software for updating using packet transmission.

* You are not charged for packet transmission fee for updating the software.

If you need to update the software, the DoCoMo web page and “お知らせ&ヘルプ (News & Help)” in  Menu let you know about it.

“Update now” and “Reserve Update” are available for updating the software.

[Update now] : If you want to, immediately update.

[Reserve Update] : Reserve the date and time for updating the software, and the software is automatically updated at the reserved date and time.

You can update the software even when you set “Host selection” to a user designated destination.

Fully charge the battery before updating the software.

You cannot update the software in the following cases:

- When the FOMA phone is turned off
- When date and time are not set
- During a call
- Out of service area
- While entering PIN1 code
- During PIN1 lock
- During All Lock
- During PIM Lock
- During Self Mode
- While using other functions
- When the UIM is not inserted
- While connecting to external devices such as personal computer

It may take time to update (download or rewrite) the software.

If you execute software update while the PIN1 code entry setting is set to “ON”, the display for entering the PIN1 code appears at auto-restart after the software rewriting is finished. You cannot make or receive calls, or operate communications functions unless you enter the correct PIN1 code.

You cannot use other functions while updating the software. (You can receive voice calls, forward messages or operate Record Message during download.)

When updating, the FOMA phone is connected to the server (DoCoMo site) using SSL transmission. You need to validate the SSL certificate. (Setting at purchase: Valid See page 222 for how to set.)

It is recommended to update the software when radio wave is strong enough with the three antennas displayed and while you are not moving.

* If radio wave conditions get worse while downloading the software, or download is suspended, move to a place with good radio wave conditions and try again to update the software.

If you check software update for the software already updated, the message “No update is needed Please continue to use as before” is displayed.



After software update, the displayed icon denoting the accumulated number of messages at the i-mode Center disappears. When “Receive option” is set to “ON” and mail comes in during software update, the display for notifying you of the arrival of mail may not be displayed after software update is completed.


When updating the software, the information about your mobile phone (model name or serial number) is automatically sent to the server (DoCoMo managed server dedicated to software update). DoCoMo never use the information you sent for other purposes than for updating the software.

“Notification icon” is cleared when reloading for software update. (Data items such as missed call records are not cleared.)

The icons indicating that messages are held at Voice Mail Service Center or the icons indicating that i-mode mail or Messages R/F are held at the i-mode Center (see page 24) are cleared when reloading for software update. (The data at the Center is not cleared.)

When “Recv. option set'ng” is set to “ON” and even if mail comes in during software update, the display for notifying you of the arrival of mail may not be displayed at times when reloading for software update.

If Software Update is completed without your confirmation, the “Notification icon” of  (Update is complete) appears on the Stand-by display. If there is any of contents you need to confirm, the  icon (Check update result) appears.

Select  and enter the Terminal Security Code; then the contents of update result are displayed.

Never remove the battery pack while updating the software. You may fail to update.

You can update the software with the Phonebook entries, images shot by the camera, or downloaded data retained in the FOMA phone; however note that data may not be protected depending on the conditions (such as malfunction, damage, or drench) your FOMA phone is placed in. You are advised to backup important data. (Note that data such as downloaded ones might not be backed up.)

If you fail to update the software, “Rewrite failed” is displayed and you cannot do all the operations. In that case, you are kindly requested to come to the DoCoMo specified repair counter.

Activate Software Update

1 Other settings ▶ Software update ▶ Enter the Terminal Security Code ▶

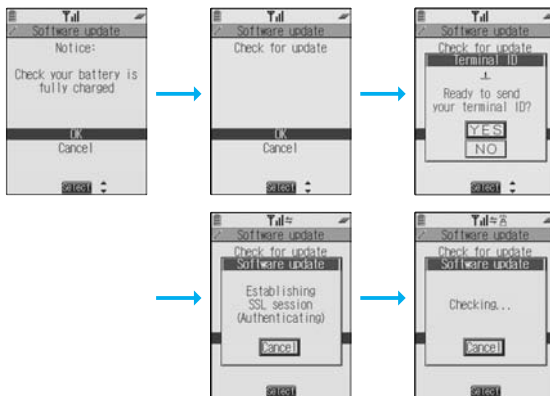
The display for entering four-to eight-digit Terminal Security Code appears.

The entered Terminal Security Code is displayed as “_____”.

The Terminal Security Code has been set to “0000” as the default.



2 Confirm the notice, then check whether the software needs to be updated.

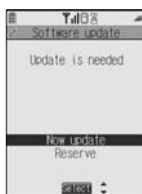


Information

You can answer voice phone calls during check.

3 When updating is not necessary, “No update is needed” is displayed. Use the FOMA phone as it is. When updating is necessary, “Update is needed” is displayed.

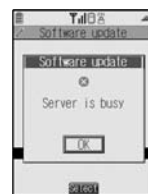
You can select either “Now update” or “Reserve”.



<Software Update display>



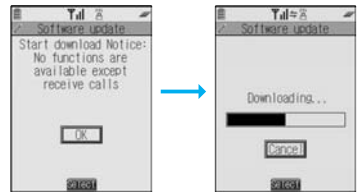
When updating is not necessary.



The display on which only “Reserve” is available because of the server congestion. (Use reservation update.)

Update Software Now (Update Now)

- 1 When you select “Now update”, “Start download” is displayed and downloading starts after a while. (Select “OK” to start downloading right now.)



Information

You can answer voice phone calls during download.

If you suspend downloading midway, the data downloaded up to that point is deleted.

Once downloading starts, updating proceeds automatically; you do not need to select menus.

- 2 When downloading is completed, rewriting the software starts. (Select “OK” to start rewriting right now.) When rewriting is completed, the software automatically reloads.



While rewriting the software, all key operations are disabled. You cannot even stop updating.

Also, charging temporarily stops even if the AC adapter (option) is connected.

Information

It may take a while to start rewriting.

You cannot even answer calls while rewriting.

- 3 After restart, your FOMA phone starts to communicate again with the server, so wait for a while. After confirming the update completion, select “OK”.



When downloading takes time or the server is busy, you can set in advance the date and time for starting up the software update by communicating with the server.

1 Select “Reserve” on the display for selecting update method (<Software Update display> of page 534).

The date and time which can be reserved are displayed.



Information

The server's time table appears for the Software update reservation.

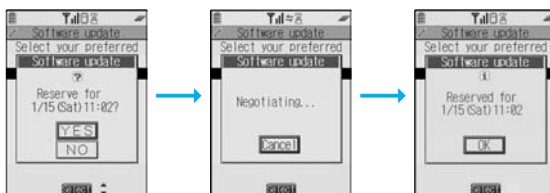
When you select “Others”.

After communicating with the server, you can select the date and time you want. The availability of each time zone is displayed on the time selection display.

○ : Available, ◐ : Almost full, ✕ : Not available

When you select one time zone you want, you can communicate with the server again to display candidates for reserving time.

2 Confirm the date and time you selected. Select “YES”. Your FOMA phone communicates with the server again and then the reservation is completed.



When the reserved time comes, the display on the right appears and software update starts automatically. Before the reserved time, charge the battery pack full, place the FOMA phone in the Stand-by display in a place within reach of radio wave.

During a call, All Lock, or PIM Lock, the message to the effect that software update starts is not displayed and software update does not launch. Follow step 1 on page 534 to display the reason for the failure to launch software update.



Information

Be careful that software update might not start at the reserved time if another function is working.

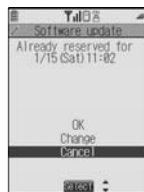
Software update may not start if an alarm is activated.

If you execute “Initialize” after completing the reservation (see page 424), software update does not start even when the reserved time arrives. Make a reservation for software update again.

Checking reservation

Select “Software update” from the setting menu and enter the Terminal Security Code; then you can confirm the reserved time.

You can change or cancel the reserved date and time from the display for checking reservation. To change, select “Change”. To cancel, select “Cancel”.




Ending software update

If you select “NO” or “Cancel” from each display, the display for ending the operation appears.

Select “YES” and press ; then software update is completed and the Stand-by display returns.

To return to the previous display, select “NO” and press .

Information

If the battery level points “” during operation, software download or rewriting is not done and the operation is finished.

<Scanning Function>

Protecting the FOMA Phone from Data Causing Trouble

First of all, update the pattern data to make it the latest.

Regarding data and programs downloaded or acquired from sites or i-mode mail messages to the FOMA phone, you can detect data that might cause trouble, can delete it, and can stop launching an application program.

Use the pattern data for checking. Update the pattern data, because it is updated each time new trouble is found. (See page 538)

The scan function is for filtering out the data that causes troubles to mobile phones at the time of browsing web pages or receiving messages. Note that this function works only when the pattern data has been downloaded to your mobile phone and when the pattern data for each trouble is found.

The data contained in the pattern data vary depending on the mobile phone model. Therefore, note that we may stop distributing the pattern data to mobile phones that have been on the market for three years or more.

Setting Scan Function <Scan Function>

Set at purchase
ON

If you set the scan function to “ON”, data or program is automatically checked when you try to run it.

1   **Lock/Security** ▶ **Scanning function** ▶ **Scan function**



2 **ON** ▶ **YES**

To cancel, select “NO” and press .

When the scan function is set, an alert is shown by five levels if data that might cause trouble is detected. (See page 539)


Information

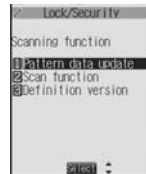
You cannot set while another function is working (while “” or “” is displayed at the upper right of the display).

Updating Pattern Data <Pattern Data Update>

You can update the pattern data.

- 1  Lock/Security ▶ Scanning function
▶ Pattern data update ▶ YES ▶ YES

To cancel, select "NO" or "Cancel" and press .



- 2 OK

When pattern data update is not necessary, "Pattern definitions are up-to-date" is displayed. Use the pattern data as is.



Information

When updating the pattern data, the proper information about your FOMA phone (model name or serial number) are automatically sent to the server (DoCoMo-managed scan dedicated server). We at DoCoMo never use the information for other purposes than for scanning.

Set the date (year/month/date) correctly.


The pattern data is not updated in the following cases:

- When the date/time is not set
- When the UIM (FOMA card) is not inserted
- When connecting to external devices such as personal computers
- During a call
- During All Lock
- While Self mode is activated
- Out of service area
- While another function is working

If you suspend downloading in midway, the data downloaded up to that point is deleted.

Alert Display for Scanning Result






About Alert display for scanned problem elements

An Alert display appears when problematic data is found. Select "Detail" from the Alert display and press  to bring up the name of the problem element.

When six or more problem elements are found, the sixth and later problem elements are ignored.



Alert Display for Scanning Result

Alert level 0	Alert level 1	Alert level 2	Alert level 3	Alert level 4
				
OK .....Continues movement.	YES.....Stops movement and ends the operation. NO .....Continues movement.	OK.....Stops movement and ends the operation.	YES.....Deletes the data and ends the operation. NO .....Stops movement and returns to the previous display.	OK .....Deletes the data and ends the operation.

Checking Pattern Data Version <Definition Version>

You can check the version of pattern data.

1  **Lock/Security ▶ Scanning function ▶ Definition version**
After checking, press .



Information

You cannot set while another function is working (while " / " or " / " is displayed at the upper right of the display).

SAR Certification Information

This model phone FOMA P700i meets the MIC's* technical regulation for exposure to radio waves.

The technical regulation established permitted levels of radio frequency energy, based on standards that were developed by independent scientific organizations through periodic and thorough evaluation of scientific studies. The regulation employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR. The SAR limit is 2 watts/kilogram (W/kg)** averaged over ten grams of tissue. The limit includes a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and health. The value of the limit is equal to the international guidelines recommended by ICNIRP***.

All phone models should be confirmed to comply with the regulation, before they are available for sale to the public. The highest SAR value for this model phone is 1.06 W/kg. It was taken by the Telecom Engineering Center (TELEC), a Registered Certification Agency on the Radio Law. The test for SAR was conducted in accordance with the MIC testing procedure using standard operating positions with the phone transmitting at its highest permitted power level in all tested frequency bands. While there may be differences between the SAR levels of various phones and at various positions, they all meet the MIC's technical regulation. Although the SAR is determined at the highest certified power level, the actual SAR of the phone during operation can be well below the maximum value.

For further information about SAR, please see the following websites:

World Health Organization (WHO) :

<http://www.who.int/peh-emf/>

ICNIRP :

<http://www.icnirp.de/>

MIC :

<http://www.soumu.go.jp/english/index.html>

TELEC :

http://www.telec.or.jp/ENG/Index_e.htm

NTT DoCoMo :

<http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/> (Japanese only)

Panasonic Mobile Communications Co., Ltd. :

<http://panasonic.jp/mobile/p700i/sar.html> (Japanese only)

* Ministry of Internal Affairs and Communications

** The technical regulation is provided in Article 14-2 of the Ministry Ordinance Regulating Radio Equipment.

*** International Commission on Non-ionizing Radiation Protection

Specifications

Model		FOMA P700i		
Dimensions (H × W × D) (when closed)		H: Approx. 102 mm W: Approx. 49 mm D: Approx. 22 mm		
Weight (with battery attached)		Approx. 102 g		
LCD	Color	Display : TFT 65,536 colors		
		Private Window : STN monochrome		
	Size	Display : 2.2 inches		
		Private Window : 0.9 inches		
Number of pixels	Display : 76,800 pixels (240 × 320)			
		Private Window : 2,400 pixels (96 × 25)		
Continuous standby time		Standstill : Approx. 460 hours In motion : Approx. 350 hours		
Continuous call time		Voice call : Approx. 140 minutes Video-phone call : Approx. 90 minutes		
Maximum output power		0.25 W		
Battery pack type		Lithium ion battery		
Power voltage		3.7 V		
Battery capacity		830 mAh		
AC Adapter charging time		Approx. 130 minutes		
DC Adapter charging time		Approx. 130 minutes		
Image pickup device	Type	Inside camera : CMOS		
		Outside camera : Maicovicon		
	Size	Inside camera : 1/7 inches		
		Outside camera : 1/4 inches		
Camera	Number of effective pixels	Inside camera : 100,000 pixels		
		Outside camera : 1,250,000 pixels		
	Pixels (maximum)	Inside camera : 100,000 pixels		
		Outside camera : 1,230,000 pixels		
	Digital zooming	Inside camera : Approx. 2.7 times max. (approx. 2.0 times max. for video-phone)		
		Outside camera : Approx. 10 times max. (approx. 2.1 times max. for video-phone)		
Recording	Still image	Photo size	1,280 × 960 (SXGA) 240 × 320 (Stand-by)	
			640 × 480 (VGA) 176 × 144 (QCIF)	
			352 × 288 (CIF) 128 × 96 (Sub-QCIF)	
		File format	JPEG	
	Movie	Recording size	320 × 240 (QVGA) 128 × 96 (Sub-QCIF)	
			176 × 144 (QCIF)	
File format		FOMA phone : MP4 miniSD memory card : ASF		
	Frame rate	Maximum 15 fps		

The continuous call time is an estimate of available time for calls with normal radio wave transmission enabled.

The continuous standby time is an estimate of time for when radio wave can be received normally. The continuous standby time may be reduced by half depending on the battery level, function settings, ambient temperature, or radio wave conditions (weak radio wave or out of reach of radio wave).

If you perform i-mode communications, the call (transmission) and standby time will be shorter. Also, if you compose i-mode mail or start up the downloaded i-appli or the i-appli Stand-by display, the call (transmission) and standby time will be shorter.

The continuous standby time during standstill is an average usage time for when the FOMA phone is closed with radio wave received normally.

The continuous standby time in motion is an average usage time for when the FOMA phone is closed and "Still", "Move", and "Out of service area" are combined with radio wave received normally.

The charging time is an estimate for when the empty battery is charged after the FOMA phone is turned off. If you charge the battery with the FOMA phone turned on, the charging time will be longer.

Maicovicon is the abbreviation for New Matsushita Advanced Image Converter for Vision Construction, the image sensor of next generation with high-performance and low power consumption.

Number of Savable/Storable/Protectable Items in FOMA Phone

The following table shows the maximum numbers of items that can be saved, stored and protected in FOMA phone: (For details about each function, see the pages listed in the table.)

		Number of savable/storable items	Number of protectable items	Reference page
Phonebook		700 max. ^{1, 2}	–	p.92
Schedule	Schedule	100	–	p.402
	Holiday	100	–	P.404
	Anniversary	100	–	P.404
ToDo		100	–	p.409
Free Memo		10	–	p.418
Mail (total of Short Messages (SMS) and i-mode mail)	Received mail	1,000 max. ^{2, 3, 4}	500 max. ²	p.264
	Sent mail	400 max. ^{2, 4, 5}	200 max. ²	p.264
	Draft mail ⁶	5	–	p.265
	User added folder (Inbox)	22	–	p.271
	User added folder (Outbox)	22	–	p.278
Template		45 ⁷	–	p.210
Message	R (Request)	100 max. ²	50 max. ²	p.218
	F (Free)	100 max. ²	50 max. ²	p.218
Bookmark	Bookmark	100	–	p.203
	Bookmark folder	10 (incl. "Bookmark")	–	p.204
Screen memo		100 max. ²	50 max. ²	p.206
i-αppli		200 max. ²	–	p.310
	Mail-linked i-αppli	5	–	p.311
Chara-den		10 ⁷	–	p.211
Moving/i-motion movie		100 max. ^{2, 8}	–	p.166, 263, 329
	User added folder	20	–	p.356
Melody		400 max. ²	–	p.209, 261
	User added folder	20	–	p.372
Image		560 max. ^{2, 8}	–	p.160, 208, 262
	User added folder	20	–	p.335

1: Up to 50 phonebook entries can be stored in UIM.

2: The number of savable, storable, or protect-enabled items may decrease depending on the data size.

3: Includes mail in "Chat" folder, "Trash box" folder and the i-αppli mail folder.

4: In addition, up to 20 Short Messages (SMS), as a total of received and sent items, can be saved to the UIM (FOMA card).
(See page 419)

5: Includes mail in "Chat" folder and the i-αppli mail folder.

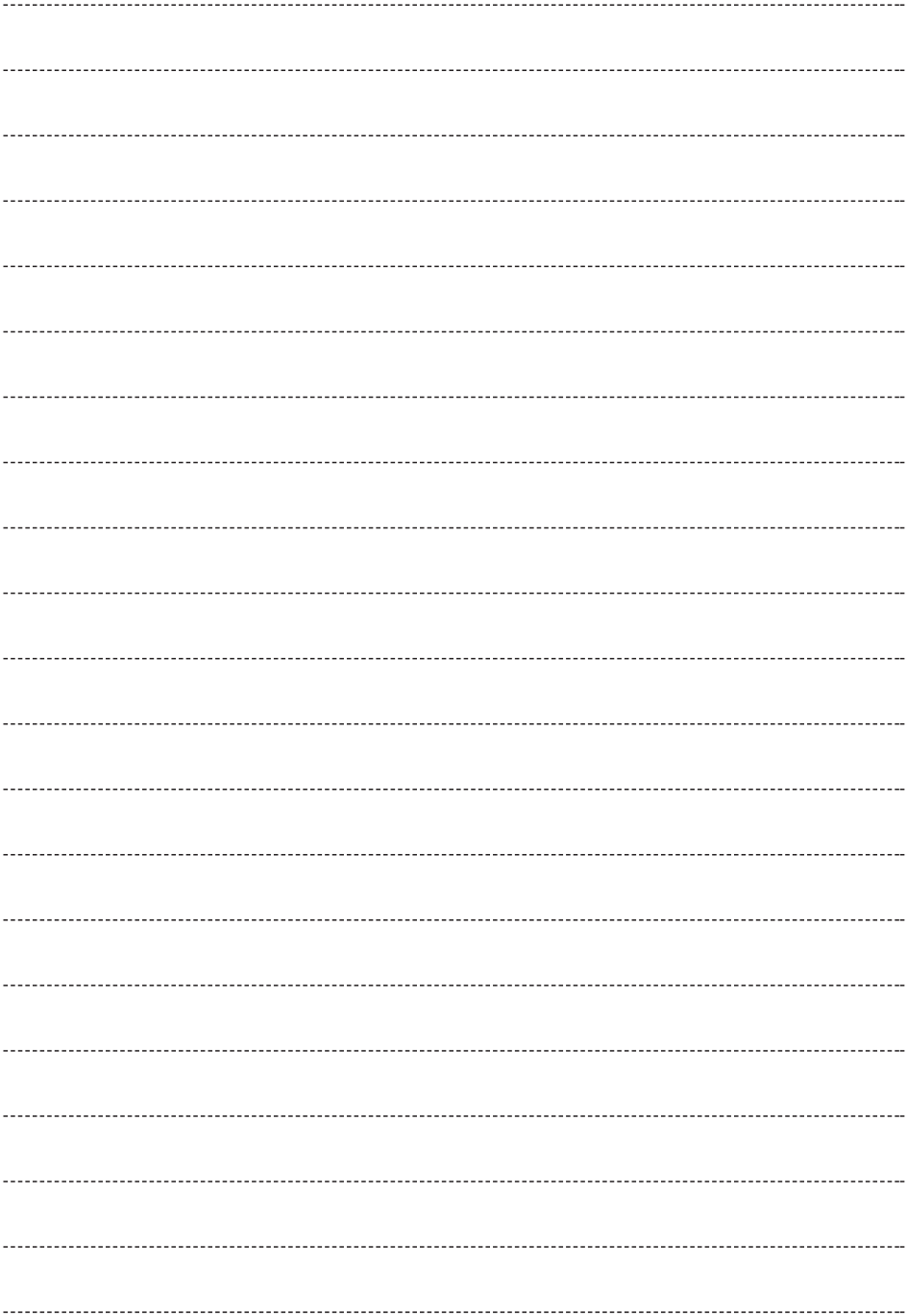
6: Can save unsent mail you are composing.

7: Includes data stored at the time of purchase.

8: Does not include data stored at the time of purchase.

Important

The saved/stored contents may be lost due to a malfunction, repair, or other mishandling of the FOMA phone. We cannot be held responsible for the loss of the saved/stored contents. For just in case, you are well advised to take notes of the contents saved/stored in the FOMA phone, or save them to the miniSD memory card (see page 376). If you have a personal computer, you can also save them to the personal computer by using the FOMA USB Cable (option) and the Data Link Software (see page 519).



A series of 20 horizontal dashed lines spanning the width of the page, providing a template for handwriting practice.




Index/Quick Manual

Index.....	550
How To Use Quick Manual.....	556
Quick Manual.....	The end of this volume

Numerics

184	46
186	46
32K auto switch	76
3gp	386
64K data transmission	441

A

αDisplay light	326
αVibrator	326
AC adapter	41
Accept phone number list	145
Access authentication	442
Accessories	20
Action list	81, 369
Add desktop icon	134
Add folder (i-motion player)	356
Add folder (Melody player)	372
Add folder (My picture)	335
Add picture to phonebook	97
Add to a phonebook entry	97
Add to phonebook	93, 97
Phone	93
UIM	96
Additional guidance list	437
Additional service	437
Additional guidance	437
Additional service list	437
Alarm	399
Alarm list	399
Alarm setting	412
All calls duration	416
All lock	144
Animation	196
Answer setting	61
Any key answer	60, 61
Arrival call act	436
asf	386
AT command	472
AT command list	473
Attach  -motion	250
Attach image	249
Attach melody	249
Attach/remove batteries	39
Attached file	291
Attachments	249
Auto assist setting	50
Auto continuous mode	161
Auto melody play	217, 291
Auto save set	172
Auto start info	324
Auto start info display	324
Auto start set	324

Auto start time	324
Auto timer	175
Auto-redialing	76
Auto-sort	284
Auto-sort menu display	284
Auto-sort setting display	284
Automatic answer	422
Automatic display	127
AV Phone to function	212

B

Bar code reader	176
Bar code reader list	180
Bar code reader selection display	176
Batteries	39
Battery level	42
Battery usable time	40
Be observed by video-phone	89
Bookmark	203
Bookmark folder list	203
Bookmark list	204
Brightness	83, 172
Brightness (Display)	128
Brightness (Picture edit display)	351

C

Cache	192
Calculator	417
Calendar	121, 402
Calendar display	402
Call acceptance	150
Call data	416
Call forwarding	430
At forwarding party busy	431
Set ringing time	431
Call rejection	61, 79
Call setting without ID	152
Call time display	416
Call waiting	429
Answer an incoming call during a call	429
End a call to answer another call	429
End a call to answer the held call	430
End a held call	430
Hold a call to make a new call	430
Call/Charging indicator	23
Caller ID notification	433
Caller ID request	433
Camera	156
Number of savable still images	162
Recordable time	167
Specifications for moving image shot	159
Specifications for still image shot	159
Camera image sending	85
Camera menu	160, 161, 166
Category list	380
Certificate	222

Certificate host	226
Certificate host display	226
Change action	81, 369
Change camera-mode	171
Change i-mode password	200
Change input method	483, 495
Change mail address	230
Change security code	141
Change size	350
Changing PIN1 code	142
Changing PIN2 code	142
Chara-den	79, 189, 367
Chara-den display	367
Chara-den list	367
Chara-den player	367
Chara-den recording display	370
Chara-den setup	84
Character entry	482
Bar code reader	176
Change input method	495
Common phrases	494
Copy	497
Cut	497
Full pitch	493
Guidance	482, 490
Half pitch	493
Insert	494
Jump	495
Kuten code	498
Line feed	494
Lower case	493
Overwrite	494
Paste	498
Pictograph	494
Pictograph symbol input mode	493
Prediction	490
Quote own number	494
Quote phonebook	494
Space	494
Symbols	494
Upper case	493
Character entry display	482
Character size	214, 290
Character stamp	349
Charge	416
Charge sound	116
Charging	40
Charging battery	40
Charging battery time	40
Charging time	40
Chat	298
Chat image	298
Sound setting	298
User setting	298
Chat group	299
Member setting	301

Chat group list	299
Chat mail	293
Chat mail display	293, 294
Chat member	296
Chat member list	296
Check box	195
Check messages	426
Check new message	258
Check new SMS	304
Check settings (Mail)	291
Check settings (i-mode)	214
Clear learned	500
Client certification	223
Clipping area	337
Close-up	170
Close-up lever	23, 170
Color mode set	84, 172
Color pattern	128
Command Navigation key	26
Common phrase display	496
Common phrase folder list	496
Common phrase list	496
Common phrases	496
Composite image	339
Confirm mail address	230
Confirm settings (Mail)	230
Confirmation display of read text	182
Connector terminal	23
Continuous mode	161
Continuous scroll	30
Continuous shooting	161
Copy	497
Copyrights	18, 156
Correcting/deleting characters	492
Count characters	483
Country code setting	51
Cursor	26
Cushy mark	350
Cut	497


D

Data link software	519
Data list	380
Data stored at the time of purchase	508
Data transfer (OBEX)	441
Data transmission	440
Data while entering/editing	493
DC adapter	41
DCF	386
Deco mail (Decoration mail)	240
Background color	245
Blink	244
Edit decoration	243
Font color	244
Font size	246
Insert image	245

Insert line	248
Moving font effect	246
Swing	248
Template	210, 288
Ticker	247
Undo	248
Word alignment	247
Delete attached file	250, 277
Delete phonebook entries	103
Desktop	134
Desktop holder	41
Desktop icon	136
Desktop icon list	137
Detailed data display	380
Detailed dialed call display	53
Detailed display	161
Detailed Message R/F display	218, 219
Detailed phonebook display	101
Detailed received address display	283
Detailed received calls display	63
Detailed received mail display	264, 266
Detailed redial display	53
Detailed schedule display	406
Detailed screen memo display	206
Detailed sent address display	281
Detailed sent mail display	265, 268
Detailed template display	288
Dialed call list	53
Dialed call record	53
Dialing speed	76, 77
Differences of UIM (FOMA card)	38
Direct selection	32
Display	24, 25
Display during dialing	49
Display during video-phone calls	74
Display for incoming calls	61
Display home	202
Display light	84, 127
Display phonebook image	124
Display screen size	90
Display setting	121
Display size	163, 168, 173
Display SMS report	280
Display software info	311
Displayed characters and functions of the keys	484, 485, 487
DoCoMo certificate	222
Download completion display	209, 210, 211, 328
Download dictionary	211, 500
Download i-motion movie	263
DPOF setting	338
Draft	265
Draft list	265, 270
Drive mode	67
DTMF tone OFF	84

Dual network	434
--------------	-----

E

Earphone	117
Earphone/Microphone set	421
Earphone/Microphone terminal	23
Earpiece volume	65
Edit folder name (i-motion player)	356
Edit folder name (Melody player)	372
Edit folder name (My picture)	335
Edit  motion	361
Edit phonebook	102
Edit picture	347
Edit playlist	356, 373
Edit ticker	363
Effector display	164
Emoticon conversion list	510
Empty battery alarm	42
End Stand-by display	326
End Stand-by information	326
English guidance	435
English indication	43
Enter URL	200
Entering PIN1 code	143
Error messages	521
Export	344, 382

F

File restriction	174, 337
File size setting	172
Finder display	158, 160, 161, 166, 251
FirstPass center	223
FirstPass PC software	471
Fix mode	489
Flash function	190, 196
Flat-plug earphone/microphone set with switch	421
Fold setting	62
Folder list	334, 354, 371
Folder configuration (on miniSD memory card)	378
Folder configuration (on the FOMA phone)	333
FOMA P700i data link software	519
FOMA PC setup software	448
APN setting	458
Easy setting	451
Install	448
Operating transmission	455
Setting transmission	451
Uninstall	456
W-TCP setup	457
Font	137
Format setting	171
Forwarding image	391
Frame	164, 349

Free memo	418
Full-pitch character	483
Function list	502
Function menu display	32
Functions restricted by UIM (FOMA card) 37,	190
Funny transform	349

G

Group setting	98
Group setting display	98
Guide	35

H

Half-pitch character	483
Hands-free	59
Header/Signature	292
Holding (during a call)	66
Home URL	202
Host selection	215
Host selection display	215
How to see finder display	158

I

i-appli	188, 308
Automatic start setting	324
Download	310
End	313
Launch	312
Run	312
Software description	315
Upgrade	315
i-appli DX	189, 308
i-appli mail	311
i-appli stand-by display	121, 188, 309, 325
i-appli to function	213
i-animation	190
i-melody	190, 209
i-mode	186
i-mode checking	259
i-mode mail	229
Compose	235
Forward	260
Receive	254, 258
Reply	259
Reply with quote	259
Save	237
Send	235
i-mode menu display	193
i-mode password	141, 191
i-mode settings	214
i-motion	188, 328
i-motion auto play	330
i-motion download	328
i-motion edit display	361
i-motion info	358

i-motion mail	233, 250, 263
i-motion player	353
i-motion setting	330
Icon	24, 26, 28, 134
Icon/Background selection display	130
Icon descriptions	26
IDD Prefix setting	51
Illumination	130
Illumination in talk	133
Image display/File name display	262
Image list	334
Image quality	172
Image selection display	85
Image tuning	172
i-menu	187, 193
i-menu in English	194
Import	343, 381
Inbox	264
Inbox folder list	264, 266
Inbox list	264, 266
Info notice setting	133
Infrared data port	23
Initial setting	44
Initialize	424
Input method	483
Mode 1 (5-touch)	484
Mode 2 (2-touch)	485
Mode 3 (T9)	486
Inside camera	23, 157
Intellectual property rights	18
International dial	50, 52
Internet access	191, 200
Interval/Number	171
Ir exchange	189, 386
Receiving all data items	390
Receiving one data item	388
Sending all data items	389
Sending one data item	388
Ir remote-controller	309, 323
ISP connection communication	215

J

JAN code	176
Japanese display	43

K

Keypad dial lock	147
Keypad sound	116
Kirari Mail	256
Kirari Mail pictographs list	257
Kirari Mail setting	257
Kuten code list	512

L

Last URL	199
Limit mail size	230
Line feed	494
Link	192
Links with AV equipment	520
List setting (Mail)	274
Listing (i-motion)	359
Look-up address	236

M

Mail	228
Mail address confirmation display	288, 299
Mail address list	288, 299
Mail auto-receive	254
Mail list display	291
Mail member	286
Mail member list	286
Mail receive option	230, 257
Mail security	150, 272
Mail settings	230, 290
Mail to function	213
Mail-linked i-appli	309
Mail/Message ringing time	117
Main display	90
Main menu	28
i-mode group	397
Mail group	397
Setting group	397
Tool group	397
Main window clock	138
Maintenance services	532
Making calls	48
Making video-phone calls	75
Manner mode	118, 119
Manner mode set	119
Manual continuous mode	161
Marker stamp	349
Melody list	371
Melody playback display	371
Melody player	371
Memory info	173, 338, 374
Menu display set	129
Menu function	29
Menu icon	28, 129
Menu number selection	32
Message R/F	216
Display	218
Message R/F list	218, 219
Message auto display	217
Message composition display	235
Message display	291
Message entry display	235
Message services	191
miniSD check disk	384

UIM operation	419
UIM restrictions	190
URL history	201
URL history list	201
Usage time	40
USB Hands-free	59
USB mode setting	385
Use saved data	214
User authentication	442
User certificate	223
Downloading	225
Requesting issue	224
Requesting revocation	225
User icon	407
Utilities	99
Utilities (Phonebook)	105, 106
Utilities display	106

V

"V" indication	113
Vibrator	113
Video-phone	74
Video-phone display settings	90
Video-phone settings	83
Viewer settings	347
Visual preference	83
Voice announce	115
Voice call auto switch	76, 87
Voice mail	426
Erase icon	428
Message notification	428
Notice call	428
Set ringing time	427
"Voice mail" icon	426
Voice mail setting confirmation display	427
Voice memo	415
Voice memo during a call	415
Voice memo during standby	415
Volume adjustment display	65

W

W-TCP setup	457
Wake-up	122
Warranty	532
Web to function	213
White balance	83, 172
WORLD CALL	50
WORLD WING	38
Yomi edit mode	488
Zoom	83, 169

How To Use Quick Manual

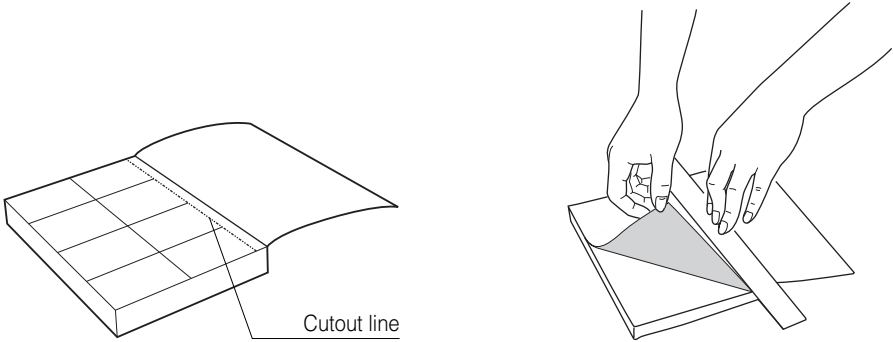
Cut out the Quick Manual bound to this manual along the cutout line and fold as illustrated below.

How to cut

Cut out the Quick Manual along the cutout line.

You can place a scale on the cutoff line and cut as illustrated below.

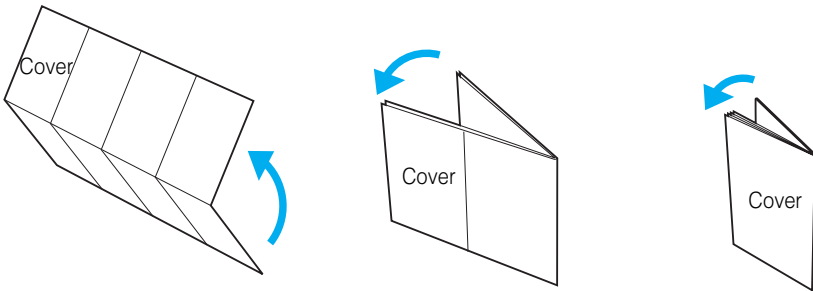
Be careful not to cut yourself when using scissors.



How to fold

Fold the Quick Manual along the perforated line so that the cover faces upwards as illustrated below.

Fold the second sheet of Quick Manual so that "Function List" (page 16) will be the cover.



Quick Manual

General Inquiries <DoCoMo Information Center>

From DoCoMo mobile phones and PHSs

(No prefix) 151 (In Japanese, toll-free) * Cannot be called from ordinary phones.

From ordinary phones

☎ 0120-005-250 (In English, toll-free)

☎ 0120-800-000 (In Japanese, toll-free)

* Can be called from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHSs.

Make sure that you dial the correct number.

Repairs

From DoCoMo mobile phones and PHSs

(No prefix) 113 (In Japanese, toll-free) * Cannot be called from ordinary phones.

From ordinary phones

☎ 0120-800-000 (In Japanese, toll-free)

* Can be called from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHSs.

Make sure that you dial the correct number.

Confirm the 全国サービスセンター一覧 (Service Station List) provided with the FOMA phone for more details.

Entering Characters

Character Entry Display



Character Entry Mode

E..... Alphabets

123..... Numerals

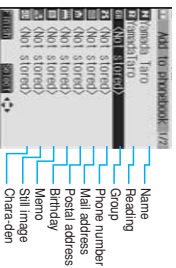
漢..... Kanji/Hiragana

カ..... Katakana

☒..... Kuten code

4

Storing in Phonebook (FOMA Phone)



Selecting Type of the Phonebook

☑ Add to phonebook Phone

Entering Name

Enter the name ☑ Check the

reading of the name

Selecting a group

☒ <Not stored> Select a group ☑

1

Selecting Input Method

☑ Other settings

Character input method Input mode

☑ Put a check mark for Mode 1 (5-touch)

☑ Put a check mark for Mode 2 (2-touch)

☑ Put a check mark for Mode 3 (T9 Input)

☑ Select the mode you use with

priority ☑

Entering " " " " " " and " "

Press (☑) several times.

Switching "Alphabet" (E), "Numerals"

(123), "Kanji/Hiragana" (漢), and

"Katakana" (カ),

Press (☑) several times.

Entering Pictograph

☑ Pictograph Select a pictograph ☑

5

Entering Phone Numbers (up to four)

☑ <Not stored> Enter the phone

number ☑ Select an icon ☑

Entering Mail Addresses (up to three)

☑ <Not stored> Enter the mail address

☑ Select an icon ☑

Entering Postal Address

☑ <Not stored> Enter the zip code

☑ Enter the postal address ☑

Entering Birthday

☑ <Not stored> Enter the birthday ☑

Entering a Memo

☑ <Not stored> Enter the memo ☑

Storing a Still Image

☑ <Not stored> Select image Select

a folder ☑ Select a still image ☑

2

Entering Symbols

☑ Symbols Select a symbol ☑

Pi-SB Input Mode

☑ Pi-SB input mode Select either a

pictograph or symbol ☑ When you

finish entering, press (☑)

Deleting Characters

Press (☑) to place the cursor on the

character you want to delete (☑)

Entering Space

☑ Space

Switching to Upper case/Lower case

☑ Upper case or Lower case ☑

6

Storing a Chara-den Image

☑ <Not stored> Select Chara-den

Select a Chara-den image ☑

Saving to a Memory Number

☑ Enter a three-digit memory number ☑

☑

Storing Data from Redial, Dialed Call Record, or Received Call Record

Adding Data in the FOMA phone

Bring up the data of Redial, Dialed Call Record or

Received Call Record ☑ Add to phonebook

Phone Add Select a search method

Search the Phonebook Select a Phonebook entry

to store ☑ ☑ ☑ ☑ YES

Editing Phonebook Entries

Bring up the detailed Phonebook display

☑ Select the item to be edited ☑

Edit the contents (☑) YES

3

Entering "卜 F D 端" into a Free Memo

Bringing up the Character Entry (Edit)

display

☑ Free memo ☑

Entering Hiragana <Mode 1>

☑ Press (4.2) five times and ☑ once

☑ Press (4.2) five times and ☑ once

☑ Press (5.2) five times

☑ Press (3.2) twice

☑ Press (7.2) once

Converting the Character

Use ☑ to convert the character

Use ☑ to fix the character Fix the rest

characters in the same way

7

Camera

Shooting Still Images

- Camera Photo mode
- YES Select the folder to which you want to save

Continuous shooting

- Camera Photo mode or Movie mode
- Auto/Manual Select a still image
- YES Select the folder to which you want to save

8

Shooting Moving Images

- Camera Movie mode
- YES Enter the title
- Select the folder to which you want to save

9

i-mode Mail

Composing and Sending i-mode Mail



Bringing up the Message Composition Display

- Compose message
- Entering an Address
- Select the address field Enter the address

12

Viewer/Player

Playing Still Images

- My picture Select a type
- Select a still image

Playing Moving Images

- motion Select a type
- Select a moving image

Playing Melodies

- Melody Select a type
- Select a melody

10

Making and Receiving a Video-phone Call

Making a Video-phone Call

Enter the other party's phone number (090, 080, 070-XXXX-XXXX) Press to end the call

Receiving a Video-phone Call

The ring tone sounds and the Call/Charging indicator and Command Navigation key flicker or Press to end the call

If you answer by pressing , the image through your camera is sent to the other party. If you answer by pressing , the substitutive image is sent to the other party.

Switching to Hands-free

During a call

11

Attaching Files

Entering the Subject

- Select the subject field Enter the subject
- Entering the Message
- Select the field for the message
- Enter the message
- Sending Mail
- After sending, press

13

Receiving i-mode Mail

" (pink)" blinks Reception Result display appears Select "Mail" Select the i-mode mail to be displayed

14

Attaching Melody

Bringing up the Message Composition display

- Attach file
- Attach melody Select a folder
- Select a melody

Attaching an i-motion image

- Bringing up the Message Composition display
- Attach file -motion Select a folder
- Select an i-motion movie

11

Check New Message



Check new message

Other Mail Functions

Replying to Received i-mode Mail

- Bring up i-mode mail to be replied
- Reply or Reply with quote Select the field for the message Enter the message After sending, press

Forwarding i-mode Mail

- Bring up i-mode mail to be forwarded
- Forward Select the address field Enter the address After sending, press

15

Function List

Menu	Function name
-	Inbox
-	Outbox
-	Draft
-	Compose message
-	Chat mail
-	Compose SMS
-	Receive option
-	Check new SMS
-	Templates
-	Mail settings
-	Ringling time
-	Info notice setting
-	Open phone
-	Screen memo
-	Last URL
-	Go to location
-	Message
-	Check new message
-	Client certificate
-	Home settings

16

Menu	Function name
-	Ⓔ qppi settings
-	Display software info
-	Ⓔ display light
-	vibrator
-	Ext standby display
-	External option
51	Earpone
94	Automatic answer
Other settings	
30	Keypad sound
-	Charge sound
71	Battery level
-	Side keys guard
35	Character input method
-	Record display set
84	Pause dial
-	Sub-address
-	Pinx setting
-	Initial setting
-	PLMN setting
-	USB mode setting
23	Reset
-	Initialize
-	Software update

20

Menu	Function name
-	Software list
-	Auto start set
-	Ⓔ qppi info
-	Incoming call
50	Ring volume
13	Select ring tone
54	Vibrator
89	Notification
20	Manner mode set
-	Disp. phonebook image
58	Answer setting
18	Ford setting
68	Mail/Msg. ring time
90	Ringling time
65	Info notice setting
-	Open phone
-	Screen memo
-	Last URL
76	Noise reduction
75	Quality alarm
77	Reconnect control
-	Illumination in talk
-	Call response setting

17

Menu	Function name
46	My picture
-	Ⓔ motion
16	Melody
-	Chara-dan
-	Camera
79	Receive Ir data
-	Guide
-	Bar code reader
-	Text reader
-	SD-PIM
45	Schedule
-	Alarm
44	Battery level
85	Calculator
95	ToDo
42	Free memo
55	Play/Erase msg.
43	Record message
-	Voice memo during standby
43	Voice memo during a call
91	Voice announce
-	Forwarding image
-	UIM operation

21

Menu	Function name
-	Video-phone
-	Moving image quality
-	Camera image sending
-	Select image
-	Voice call auto switch
-	Remote observation
-	Disp. setting V-phone
Display	
56	Display setting
70	Display light
86	Color pattern
33	Private window
66	Font
63	Desktop icon
15	Select language
52	Private menu
57	Menu display set
-	Viewer settings
47	Automatic display
36	Icons
-	Call time change
61	Call data
60	Reset call duration
48	Call time display

18

Menu	Function name
25	Check messages
17	Caller ID notification
-	Voice mail
-	Call waiting
-	Call forwarding
-	Nuisance call barring
-	Caller ID request
-	Arrival call act.
-	Set arrival act.
-	Remote access
-	Dual network
-	English guidance
-	Additional service
-	Service dialing number
-	Multi number
-	Add to phonebook
-	Search phonebook
22	No. of phonebook
62	Utilities
12	Restrictions
26	Group setting

22

Menu	Function name
Clock	Set time
31	Set window clock
39	Main window clock
-	Alarm setting
-	Lock/Security
-	All lock
-	PIN lock
-	Set mode
-	Keypad dial lock
-	Repeat unknown
10	Call setting w/o ID
29	Change security code
-	PIN setting
40	Secret mode
41	Secret only mode
-	Scanning function
99	Remote all lock
Connection setting	
-	Set connection timeout
-	Set check new message
81	Host selection
-	SMS center selection
-	Certificate
-	Certificate host

19

Menu	Function name
0	Own number
24	Received calls
-	Dialed calls
97	Mail member
-	Chat group
38	Common phrases
82	Own dictionary
-	Dl dictionary

Manner Mode

Activating/Deactivating
During standby/During a call **[**]** (for at least one second)

Drive Mode

Activating/Deactivating
During standby **[*#]** (for at least one second)

23

<Cutout line>

Network Services

Voice Mail Service

Activating



Voice mail Activate
YES YES Enter a ringing time
(seconds) YES

Deactivating



Voice mail Deactivate
YES

Playing Messages



Voice mail Play
messages YES Operate following the
voice guidance

24

Call Waiting

Activating



Call waiting Activate YES

Deactivating



Call waiting Deactivate
YES

Answering an Incoming Call during a Call

A call comes in during a call



Each time you press , you can switch
the party you can talk with.

25

Call Forwarding Service

Activating



Call forwarding Activate

Register fwd number Enter the phone

number of forwarding destination

Set ringing time Enter a ringing time

(seconds) Activate YES

Deactivating



Call forwarding

Deactivate YES

26

Services Available with FOMA Phone

Available service	Phone number
Collect calls (calls charged to the receiver)	(No prefix) 106
Directory assistance for ordinary phones and DoCoMo mobile phones (Charges apply)	(No prefix) 104
Telegrams (Telegram charges apply) 8 a.m. to 10 p.m.	(No prefix) 115
Time (Charges apply)	(No prefix) 117
Weather forecast (Charges apply)	Area code + 177
Emergency calls to police	(No prefix) 110
Emergency calls to fire station & ambulance	(No prefix) 119
Emergency calls for accidents at sea	(No prefix) 118
Disaster message service (Charge apply)	(No prefix) 171

27

Major Icons



: Shows the battery level

: During All Lock

: During PIM Lock

: During Keypad Dial Lock

: During Secret or Secret Only Mode

: During both Keypad Dial Lock and PIM Lock

28

: During both Keypad Dial Lock and Secret or Secret Only Mode

: Unread i-mode mail or Short Messages (SMS) exist

: Unread Messages R (Request) exist

: Unread Messages F (Free) exist

: I-mode center

: Messages R (Request) remain at the i-mode center

: Messages F (Free) remain at the i-mode center

29

: i-mode mail is held at the i-mode center (While Receive Option Setting is set to "ON".)

: Shows strength of the received signal

: During Self Mode

: While Vibrator is set to "ON" (see page 17)

: While Ring Volume is set to "Silent" (see page 23)

: During Manner Mode (see page 23)

: During Drive Mode (see page 23)

: Side Keys Guard is set to "ON" (see page 20)

30

General Inquiries <DoCoMo Information Center>

From DoCoMo mobile phones and PHSS

(No prefix) 151 (In Japanese, toll-free) * Cannot be called from ordinary phones.

From ordinary phones

0120-005-250 (In English, toll-free)

0120-800-000 (In Japanese, toll-free)

* Can be called from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHSS. Make sure that you dial the correct number.

Repairs

From DoCoMo mobile phones and PHSS

(No prefix) 113 (In Japanese, toll-free) * Cannot be called from ordinary phones.

From ordinary phones

0120-800-000 (In Japanese, toll-free)

* Can be called from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHSS. Make sure that you dial the correct number.

Confirm the 全国ワンストップセンター一覧 (Service Station List) provided with the FOMA phone for more details.

31

<Cutout line>

Don't forget your FOMA phone ... or your manners!

When using your FOMA phone, do not forget to show common courtesy and consideration to the people around you.

In the following cases, be certain to turn the power off.

Where use is prohibited

Some places prohibit the use of mobile phones. Be sure to turn off the power to your FOMA phone in any of the following places:

- In airplanes · In hospitals

Electronic medical equipment is used in places other than the actual wards. Make sure you have the power switched off even if you are in a lobby or waiting room.

While driving

Using the FOMA phone while driving interferes with safe driving and could cause danger.

Park the car in a safe place before using the FOMA phone, or switch to Drive Mode.

When in crowded places such as packed trains, where you could be near a person with an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted defibrillator.

The implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted defibrillator operation can be affected by radio emissions from the FOMA phone.

When in theaters, theater lobbies, museums, and similar venues

If you use your FOMA phone where you are supposed to be quiet, you will disturb those around you.

Adjust the volume of your voice and ring tone according to where you are.

If you use the FOMA phone in quiet places such as restaurants and hotel lobbies, keep the volume of your voice and the ring tone down.

Do not block thoroughfares when using the FOMA phone.

These functions help you keep your manners in public.

Handy functions are available such as for setting the response to incoming calls and setting all the tones to silent.

Manner Mode/Super Silent/Original Manner (Page 118)

In Manner Mode or Super Silent, the keypad sound, ring tone and all other sounds generated by the FOMA phone are silenced.

In Original Manner, you can set whether or not to activate the Record Message function, and can change the settings for the vibrator and ring tone.

The Shutter Sound cannot be silenced.

Drive Mode (Page 67)

In this mode, the FOMA phone responds to incoming calls with a message that you are driving and cannot answer the phone. Then the call is disconnected. The incoming call tone does not sound, so you are able to drive safely without any disturbance.

Vibrator (Page 113)

When the vibrator is set, it vibrates for incoming calls.

Record Message function (Page 69)

Callers can record a message when you cannot come to the phone.

Optional services are also available, such as Voice Mail Service (Page 426) and Call Forwarding Service (Page 430).



Please respect the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones.



You can apply the following services on “ドコモeサイト” (DoCoMo e-site):
 “Voice Mail Service”, “Call Waiting Service”, “Call Forwarding Service”,
 “Nuisance Call Blocking Service”, “WORLD CALL” and “WORLD WING”.

● Accessing from an i-mode handset

i Menu ▶ □ 料金 & お申込 (Charge & Apply) ▶ ■ ドコモeサイト (DoCoMo e-site) **No packet transmission charge!**

● Accessing from a PC

<Access from the DoCoMo Website> <http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/> ▶ オンライン手続き/照会サービス (Online applications/inquiry service) ▶ ドコモeサイト (DoCoMo e-site)
 <Direct access to DoCoMo e-site> <http://www.esite.nttdocomo.co.jp/>

Accessing e-site from an i-mode handset requires a network security code you applied to DoCoMo.

You are not charged for packet transmissions when you access e-site from i-mode (some exceptions apply).

Accessing from a PC requires a user ID and password.

If you do not have a network security code, user ID, or password, or you have forgotten one of them, contact the DoCoMo Information Center.

This service may not be available depending on the contents of the contract.

During system maintenance, you may not be able to access some services.

General inquiries
 <DoCoMo Information Center>

(In English)

0120-005-250 (toll-free)

Can be called from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHSS.

(In Japanese only)

(No prefix) 151 (toll-free)

Can only be called from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHSS.

0120-800-000 (toll-free)

Can be called from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHSS.

● Please confirm the phone number before you dial.

Repairs

(In Japanese only)

(No prefix) 113 (toll-free)

Can only be called from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHSS.

0120-800-000 (toll-free)

Can be called from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHSS.

- Please confirm the phone number before you dial.
- For further information, refer to the Nationwide Service Station List included with your FOMA phone and other devices.



**Don't forget your cellular phone
 ... or your manners!**

When using your portable phone in a public place, don't forget to show common courtesies and consideration for others around you.

Sales: NTT DoCoMo Group

NTT DoCoMo Hokkaido, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Tohoku, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Tokai, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Hokuriku, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Kansai, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Chugoku, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Shikoku, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Kyushu, Inc.

Manufacturer: Panasonic Mobile Communications Co., Ltd.



For the environmental protection, bring the exhausted battery to the nearest NTT DoCoMo, dealers, or the recycle shop.

Li-ion



This manual is printed on the 100% recycled paper.



This manual is printed with soy based ink.

February '05 (Ver.1.1)



3TR003377AAA
 F0205F0 - (A)